Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index
Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index

Devised by Melvil Dewey

EDITION 20

Edited by
John P. Comaromi, Editor
Julianne Beall, Assistant Editor
Winton E. Matthews, Jr., Assistant Editor
Gregory R. New, Assistant Editor

VOLUME 3
Schedules 600–999

FOREST PRESS
A Division of
OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc.
ALBANY, NEW YORK
1989
Contents

Volume 1

Publisher’s Foreword xi
Preface by the Decimal Classification Editorial Policy Committee xiii
Acknowledgments xvii
New Features in Edition 20 xix
Introduction to the Dewey Decimal Classification xxv
  About the Introduction xxv
  Classification: What It Is and What It Does xxv
History and Current Use of the Dewey Decimal Classification xxvi
Overview of the Dewey Decimal Classification xxvi
  Conceptual Framework xxvi
  Notation xxvii
  Principle of Hierarchy xxviii
Classifying with the DDC xxix
  Determining the Subject of a Work xxix
  Determining the Discipline for a Work xxx
  More Than One Subject xxxi
  More Than One Discipline xxxi
  When All Else Fails xxxii
How DDC 20 Is Arranged xxxiii
Key Features of the Schedules and Tables xxxiii
  Summaries xxxiii
  Entries xxxiv
  Notes xxxv
Number Building xl
Number Building: Citation and Precedence Order xliii
  Citation Order xliii
  Precedence Order xliii
The Relative Index xliv
  How to Use the Relative Index xlv
  Format and Arrangement of the Relative Index xlv
  Order in Which Numbers Are Displayed xlvi
  Interdisciplinary Numbers xlvi
  Terms Included in the Relative Index xlvii
  Terms Not Included in the Relative Index xlviii
**Dewey Decimal Classification**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Options</td>
<td>xlviii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close and Broad Classification</td>
<td>xlix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book Numbers</td>
<td>xlix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected Bibliography</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glossary</td>
<td>li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index to the Introduction and Glossary</td>
<td>lix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publishing History of the Dewey Decimal Classification</td>
<td>lxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tables</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of the Tables</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 1. Standard Subdivisions</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 2. Geographic Areas, Historical Periods, Persons</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 3. Subdivisions for Individual Literatures, for Specific Literary Forms</td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 3-A. Subdivisions for Works by or about Individual Authors</td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 3-B. Subdivisions for Works by or about More than One Author</td>
<td>394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 3-C. Notation to Be Added Where Instructed in Table 3-B and in 808-809</td>
<td>409</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 4. Subdivisions of Individual Languages</td>
<td>415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 5. Racial, Ethnic, National Groups</td>
<td>421</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 6. Languages</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 7. Groups of Persons</td>
<td>457</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relocations and Reductions</td>
<td>479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparative Tables</td>
<td>496</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music</td>
<td>496</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British Columbia</td>
<td>505</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equivalence Tables</td>
<td>506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music</td>
<td>506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British Columbia</td>
<td>514</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Contents

## Volume 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summaries</th>
<th>ix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Schedules</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of the Schedules</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>000 Generalities</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 Philosophy, parapsychology and occultism, psychology</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200 Religion</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300 Social Sciences</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400 Language</td>
<td>692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500 Natural sciences and mathematics</td>
<td>718</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Volume 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Schedules</th>
<th>1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use of the Schedules</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600 Technology (Applied sciences)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700 The arts Fine and decorative arts</td>
<td>446</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800 Literature (Belles-lettres) and rhetoric</td>
<td>643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900 Geography, history, and auxiliary disciplines</td>
<td>693</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Volume 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relative Index</th>
<th>1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use of the Relative Index</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviations Used in the Index</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-Z</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>731</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of the Manual</td>
<td>732</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes on Table Numbers</td>
<td>733</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes on Schedule Numbers</td>
<td>791</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix: Policies and Procedures of the Library of Congress Decimal Classification Division</td>
<td>959</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

vii
Schedules
Use of the Schedules

Full instructions on the use of the Schedules are found in the Introduction to the Dewey Decimal Classification in Volume 1.

The first three digits of a DDC number are normally found at the top of the page.

A number in square brackets [ ] is not currently in use.

A number in parentheses ( ) is an option to standard usage.
600 Technology (Applied sciences)

See also 303.483 for technology as a cause of cultural change, 306.46 for sociology of technology, 338.1–338.4 for economic aspects of industries based on specific technologies, 338.926 for technology transfer, 338.927 for appropriate technology

See Manual at 300 vs. 600; 500 vs. 600

601 Philosophy and theory

602 Miscellany

[.72] Patents

Do not use; class in 608

.75 Trademarks and service marks

Class here comprehensive works on trademarks generally used for products rather than services

Class interdisciplinary works on trademarks and service marks in 929.9

.9 Commercial miscellany

Class interdisciplinary commercial miscellany in 380.1029; commercial miscellany of products and services used in individual and family living in 640.29, of manufactured products in 670.29

603 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances

604 Technical drawing, hazardous materials technology, history and description with respect to kinds of persons

.2 Technical drawing

Class here engineering graphics, drafting illustrations

Class drafting illustrations in a specific subject with the subject, using notation 0221 from Table 1, e.g., map drawing 526.0221, drafting in electronics 621.3810221

For architectural drawing, see 720.284

.22 Arrangement and organization of drafting rooms, preservation and storage of drawings

.24 Specific drafting procedures and conventions

Use of this number for comprehensive works on drafting procedures and conventions discontinued; class in 604.2
.242 Production illustration
   Nontechnical graphic representations

.243 Lettering, titling, dimensioning, shades, shadows

.245 Projections
   Orthographic, isometric, spherical
   Including perspectives

.25 Preparation and reading of copies
   Examples: blueprints, photostats
   See also 686.42 for printing blueprints

[.6] Waste technology
   Relocated to 628.4

.7 Hazardous materials technology
   Methods of extracting, manufacturing, processing, utilizing, handling,
   transporting, storing solids, liquids, gases of corrosive, explosive, flammable,
   infectious, radioactive, toxic nature

   Class comprehensive works on and social aspects of hazardous materials safety
   in 363.17; technology of a specific hazardous material with the technology, e.g.,
   of explosives 662.2; safety techniques for a specific application of hazardous
   materials with the application outside 300, using notation 0289 from Table 1,
   e.g., safety techniques in working with hazardous paving materials 625.80289
   (not 363.179)

   See Manual at 363.176 vs. 604.7; 660.2804 vs. 604.7

.8 History and description with respect to kinds of persons [formerly 609]
   Add to base number 604.8 the numbers following —08 in notation 081–089
   from Table 1, e.g., novices 604.880909, students and learners 604.88375 [both
   formerly 607.33]

605 Serial publications

606 Organizations

[.8] Management of technology
   Relocated to 658

607 Education, research, related topics

   .01–.03 Treatment in areas, regions, places in general; in ancient world
   Add to base number 607.0 notation 1 or 3 from Table 2, e.g., in ancient
   Rome 607.037

   [.04–.09] Treatment in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
   Do not use; class in 607.4–607.9
.1 Schools and courses

.2 Industrial research

Class here products research; historical, descriptive, experimental research

Add to base number 607.2 notation 1 or 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., products research in China 607.251

Class product planning in management in 658.5038, management of research for new and improved products in 658.57

.3 Other aspects of education and research

[.33] Students, learners, apprentices, novices

Apprentices relocated to 331.55, novices to 604.880909, students and learners to 604.88375

.34–.39 Specific aspects

Add to base number 607.3 the numbers following —07 in notation 074–079 from Table 1, e.g., museums, collections, exhibits 607.34

See also 381.1 for commercial aspects of fairs and expositions; 900 for fairs and expositions of civilization, e.g., the 1964–1965 New York World’s Fair 909.826074747243

.4–.9 Education, research, related topics in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Add to base number 607 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., education and research in Japan 607.52

608 Inventions and patents

Do not use for history and description of technology with respect to kinds of persons; class in 604.8

See Manual at 608 vs. 609

[.09] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 608.7

.7 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Add to base number 608.7 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., patents from Brazil 608.781

Class history of inventions in 609

609 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here history of inventions, technological aspects of industrial archaeology

History and description with respect to kinds of persons relocated to 604.8

Class historical and geographical treatment of production and economic aspects of industrial archaeology in 338.09, historical aspects of industrial archaeology in 900

See Manual at 300 vs. 600: Comprehensive works; 608 vs. 609

5
Medical sciences  Medicine

Class home care of the sick and infirm in 649.8

For veterinary medicine, see 636.089

See Manual at 591 vs. 610; 362.1–362.4 vs. 610; 362.17 vs. 610; 616 vs. 610

SUMMARY

610.1-.9  [Standard subdivisions, medical personnel, nursing]

611  Human anatomy, cytology (cell biology), histology (tissue biology)

  .01  Anatomic embryology, cytology (cell biology), histology (tissue biology)
  .1  Cardiovascular organs
  .2  Respiratory organs
  .3  Digestive tract organs
  .4  Lymphatic and glandular organs
  .6  Urogenital organs
  .7  Motor and integumentary organs
  .8  Nervous system  Sense organs
  .9  Regional and topographical anatomy

612  Human physiology

  .01-.04  [Biophysics, biochemistry, control processes, tissue and organ culture, physiology of specific activities]
  .1  Blood and circulation
  .2  Respiration
  .3  Digestion
  .4  Secretion, excretion, related functions
  .6  Reproduction, development, maturation
  .7  Motor functions and integument
  .8  Nervous functions  Sensory functions
  .9  Regional physiology

613  Promotion of health

  .04  Promotion of health of specific sex and age groups
  .1  Environmental factors
  .2  Dietetics
  .3  Beverages
  .4  Personal cleanliness and related topics
  .5  Artificial environments
  .6  Special topics
  .7  Physical fitness
  .8  Substance abuse (Drug abuse)
  .9  Birth control and sex hygiene

614  Forensic medicine, incidence of disease, public preventive medicine

  .1  Forensic medicine (Medical jurisprudence)
  .4  Incidence of and public measures to prevent disease
  .5  Incidence of and public measures to prevent specific diseases and kinds of diseases
  .6  Disposal of the dead
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>615</th>
<th>Pharmacology and therapeutics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.1</td>
<td>Drugs (Materia medica)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>Inorganic drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>Organic drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>Practical pharmacy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>Therapeutics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.6</td>
<td>Methods of administering medication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.7</td>
<td>Pharmacodynamics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.8</td>
<td>Specific therapies and kinds of therapies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.9</td>
<td>Toxicology</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>616</th>
<th>Diseases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.001-.009</td>
<td>Standard subdivisions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.01-.09</td>
<td>[General topics]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.1</td>
<td>Diseases of the cardiovascular system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>Diseases of the respiratory system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>Diseases of the digestive system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>Diseases of the blood-forming, lymphatic, glandular systems Diseases of the endocrine system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>Diseases of the integument, hair, nails</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.6</td>
<td>Diseases of the urogenital system Diseases of the urinary system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.7</td>
<td>Diseases of the musculoskeletal system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.8</td>
<td>Diseases of the nervous system and psychiatric disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.9</td>
<td>Other diseases</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>617</th>
<th>Surgery and related topics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.001-.008</td>
<td>Standard subdivisions of surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.01-.09</td>
<td>[General topics]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.1</td>
<td>Wounds and injuries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>Results of injuries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>Orthopedics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>Surgery by systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>Regional medicine Regional surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.6</td>
<td>Dentistry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.7</td>
<td>Ophthalmology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.8</td>
<td>Otology and audiology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.9</td>
<td>Operative surgery and special fields of surgery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>618</th>
<th>Other branches of medicine Gynecology and obstetrics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.01-.09</td>
<td>[Standard subdivisions and special topics of gynecology and obstetrics]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.1</td>
<td>Gynecology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>Obstetrics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>Diseases and complications of pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>Childbirth (Parturition) Labor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>Complicated labor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.6</td>
<td>Normal puerperium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.7</td>
<td>Puerperal diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.8</td>
<td>Obstetrical surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.9</td>
<td>Pediatrics and geriatrics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>619</th>
<th>Experimental medicine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>Fowl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.7</td>
<td>Dogs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.8</td>
<td>Cats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.9</td>
<td>Other mammals</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[.23] Medicine as a profession, occupation, hobby

Do not use; class in 610.69
.28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
   Class here comprehensive works on biomedical engineering, medical instrumentation
   Class biological instrumentation in 574.028

.6 Organizations, management, professions

.65 Group practice
   Class the economics of group practice in 338.7–338.8

.69 Medical personnel
   Class medical personnel (other than nurses) of a specific specialty with the specialty, using notation as directed, e.g., obstetricians 618.2023; critical appraisal and description of work, individual and collected biographies with the specialty using notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., biography of psychiatrists 616.890092
   See Manual at 610.69

.695 Specific kinds of medical personnel
   Nature of duties, characteristics of professions
   Class here medical missionaries
   Class medical records librarians in 651.504261, medical secretaries in 651.3741
   For nursing personnel, see 610.73069

.695 2 Physicians

.695 3 Medical technicians and assistants

.696 Medical relationships
   Examples: relationships between medical personnel and patients, between medical personnel and the public, within medical professions

.7 Education, research, nursing, related topics

.72 Research

.724 Experimental research
   Class experimental medicine in 619

.73 Nursing and services of medical technicians and assistants
   Class here general medical nursing
   Patient education by nurses relocated to 615.507
   See Manual at 610.73
SUMMARY

610.730 1-.730 9 Standard subdivisions of nursing
.732 Private duty nursing
.733 Institutional nursing and ward management
.734 Public health nursing
.736 Specialized nursing
.737 Services of medical technicians and assistants

.730 1 Philosophy and theory of nursing
.730 2 Miscellany of nursing
[.730 23] Nursing as a profession, occupation, hobby
Do not use; class in 610.73069

.730 3-.730 5 Standard subdivisions of nursing
.730 6 Nursing organizations and personnel
Class management of services of nurses in 362.173068

.730 69 Nursing personnel
Nature of duties, characteristics of the profession, relationships
See Manual at 610.69

.730 692 Professional nurses and nursing
Including associate-degree nurses and nursing, nurse practitioners

.730 693 Practical nurses and nursing
Example: registered nursing assistants (Canada)

.730 698 Auxiliary personnel
Examples: aides, attendants, orderlies, volunteers

.730 699 Relationships of nurses
Examples: relationships between nurses and patients, between nurses and the public, within the nursing profession

.730 7-.730 9 Standard subdivisions of nursing

610.732–610.736 Nursing
Class comprehensive works in 610.73

.732 Private duty nursing
.733 Institutional nursing and ward management
Class nonmedical aspects of ward management in 362.173068

.734 Public health nursing
Class here Red Cross nursing
.734 3 Community and district nursing
   Example: work of visiting nurses
.734 6 Occupational health nursing (Industrial nursing)
.734 9 Disaster nursing
.736 Specialized nursing

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of precedence, e.g., pediatric surgical nursing 610.73677 (not 610.7362)

- Surgical, obstetrical, gynecologic nursing 610.7367
- Pediatric nursing 610.7362
- Geriatric nursing 610.7365
- Nursing of specific diseases 610.7369
- Psychiatric and neurologic nursing 610.7368
- Intensive (Critical), emergency, long-term, terminal care nursing 610.7361

For public health nursing, see 610.734

.736 1 Intensive (Critical), emergency, long-term, terminal care nursing
.736 2 Pediatric nursing
.736 5 Geriatric nursing
.736 7 Surgical, obstetrical, gynecologic nursing
.736 77 Surgical nursing
   Including ophthalmic nursing, orthopedic nursing
   Class nursing for obstetrical and gynecologic surgery in 610.73678, nursing for cancer surgery in 610.73698
.736 78 Obstetrical and gynecologic nursing
.736 8 Psychiatric and neurologic nursing
   Example: nursing for mentally retarded people
.736 9 Nursing with respect to specific diseases
   For psychiatric and neurologic nursing, see 610.7368

.736 91 Cardiovascular diseases
.736 92 Respiratory diseases
.736 98 Cancer
.736 99 Communicable diseases
.737 Services of medical technicians and assistants
   [.737 023] Work of medical technicians and assistants as a profession, occupation, hobby
   Do not use; class in 610.6953

.9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

See Manual at 610.9
Human anatomy, cytology (cell biology), histology (tissue biology)

Use 611.001–611.009 for standard subdivisions for human anatomy, cytology, histology; for human anatomy alone

For pathological anatomy, see 616.07

See Manual at 573.6 vs. 611; 611 vs. 612

SUMMARY

611.01 Anatomic embryology, cytology (cell biology), histology (tissue biology)

.01 Anatomic embryology, cytology (cell biology), histology (tissue biology)

Class here specific systems, organs, regions

.013 Anatomic embryology

.018 Cytology (Cell biology) and histology (tissue biology)

.018 1 Cytology (Cell biology)

.018 15 Pathology (Cytopathology)

.018 16 Physiological genetics

> 611.018 2–611.018 9 Histology (Tissue biology)

Class here histogenesis, histophysiologica, histopathology, tissue regeneration

Class comprehensive works in 611.018

.018 2 Connective tissue

Examples: adipose, areolar, collagenous, elastic, reticular tissues; pigmented cells; fibers, ground substances

Class cartilaginous tissue in 611.0183

.018 3 Cartilaginous tissue

Contains elastic, fibrous, hyaline cartilage

.018 4 Osseous (Bone) tissue

Examples: spongy and compact bone tissues, endosteum, periosteum

Including red and yellow bone marrow (medulla)
Blood and lymph elements

Examples: blood plasma, red corpuscles (erythrocytes), white corpuscles (leucocytes), platelets (thrombocytes), lymph plasma, lymphocytes

Muscular tissue

Contains smooth (nonstriated, involuntary), skeletal (striated, voluntary), cardiac (striated, involuntary) muscle tissues

Epithelial tissue

Examples: serous and mucous membranes; simple columnar, simple squamous, stratified squamous epithelia

Nerve tissue

Examples: neurons, interstitial nerve tissue (neuroglia, neurilemma, satellite cells), meninges, sheaths

Histology (Tissue biology) of specific systems, organs, regions

Add to base number 611.0189 the numbers following 611 in 611.1–611.9, e.g., the histology of the thymus gland 611.018943; however, class specific tissues of specific systems, organs, regions in 611.0182–611.0188

> 611.1–611.9 Gross anatomy

Class here comprehensive works on gross anatomy and tissue structure

Class comprehensive works in 611, tissue structure in 611.0182–611.0189

See Manual at 612.1–612.8

Cardiovascular organs

Pericardium

Heart

Including ventricles, auricles, endocardium, myocardium

For pericardium, see 611.11

Arteries

Class here comprehensive works on blood vessels

Class blood vessels of a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., cerebral blood vessels 611.81

For veins, see 611.14; capillaries, 611.15

Veins

Capillaries

Respiratory organs

Nose and nasal accessory sinuses
.22 Larynx
    Including epiglottis, glottis, laryngeal muscles
.23 Trachea and bronchi
.24 Lungs
.25 Pleura
.26 Diaphragm
.27 Mediastinum

.3 Digestive tract organs

.31 Mouth
.313 Tongue
    Including muscles of the tongue [formerly also 611.734]
.314 Teeth
.315 Palate
.316 Salivary glands
.317 Lips
.318 Cheeks
.32 Pharynx, tonsils, esophagus
.33 Stomach
    Including the pylorus
    Class here comprehensive works on gastrointestinal organs
    For intestine, see 611.34

.34 Intestine
.341 Small intestine
    Contains duodenum, jejunum, ileum
.345 Cecum and vermiform appendix
.347 Large intestine
    Including colon, sigmoid flexure (sigmoid colon)
    For cecum and vermiform appendix, see 611.345; rectum, 611.35

.35 Rectum and anus
    See also 611.96 for perineum

.36 Biliary tract
    Contains liver, gall bladder, bile ducts

.37 Pancreas and islands of Langerhans
.38 Peritoneum
  Including mesentery, omentum

.4 Lymphatic and glandular organs
  Class glandular organs of a specific system with the system, e.g., salivary glands 611.316

.41 Spleen
  Class here comprehensive works on the anatomy of the blood-forming (hematopoietic or hemopoietic) system
  Class bone marrow in 611.0184

.42 Lymphatic system
  For lymphatic glands, see 611.46

.43 Thymus gland
 .44 Thyroid and parathyroid glands
 .45 Adrenal glands
 .46 Lymphatic glands
 .47 Carotid, pituitary, pineal glands
 .49 Breasts

.6 Urogenital organs
 .61 Kidneys and ureters
  Class here comprehensive works on anatomy of urinary organs
  For bladder and urethra, see 611.62

.62 Bladder and urethra
 .63 Testicles, prostate, scrotum
  Class here comprehensive works on male genital organs
  For penis, see 611.64

.64 Penis
 .65 Ovaries and fallopian tubes
  Class here comprehensive works on female genital organs
  For uterus, see 611.66; vagina, hymen, vulva, 611.67

.66 Uterus
  Including the cervix of the uterus

.67 Vagina, hymen, vulva
Motor and integumentary organs

Bones

For the ossicles, see 611.85

Of the spinal column

Of the chest

Example: ribs

For the sternum, see 611.713

Sternum

Of the brainpan

For the mastoid processes, see 611.85

Of the face

Of the upper extremities

Contains scapulas, clavicles, humeri, radii, ulnas, carpal and metacarpal bones, phalanges and sesamoid bones of hands

Class comprehensive works on bones of the extremities in 611.718

Of the lower extremities

Contains hip bones, femurs, patellas, tibias, fibulas, tarsal and metatarsal bones, phalanges and sesamoid bones of feet

Class here comprehensive works on bones of the extremities

For bones of the upper extremities, see 611.717

Articulations (Ligaments and joints)

Muscles

Class muscles of a specific system or organ with the subject, e.g., heart muscles 611.12

Of the back

Of the head

Of the neck

Of the tongue

Relocated to 611.313

Of the chest

Of the abdomen and pelvis

Of the upper extremities

Contains muscles of shoulders, arms, forearms, hands
.738 Of the lower extremities
Contains muscles of hips, buttocks, thighs, legs, feet
Class here comprehensive works on muscles of extremities

For muscles of upper extremities, see 611.737

.74 Connective tissue
Examples: tendons, fasciae
Class bursae and sheaths of tendons in 611.75

For ligaments, see 611.72

.75 Bursae and sheaths of tendons

.77 Integument
For hair and nails, see 611.78

.78 Hair and nails

.8 Nervous system Sense organs
Class here neuroanatomy

.81 Brain
Class here the central nervous system

For spinal cord, see 611.82

.82 Spinal cord

.83 Nerves and ganglia
Class nerves of a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g.,
optic nerves 611.84

.84 Eyes
Class here the orbit

.85 Ears
Including the mastoid processes, ossicles

.86 Olfactory organs

.87 Gustatory organs

.88 Tactile organs

.9 Regional and topographical anatomy
Including back
Class specific systems or organs in a region in 611.1–611.8

.91 Head

For the face, see 611.92
.92 Face

See also 611.317 for lips, 611.318 for cheeks

.93 Neck

.94 Thorax

.95 Abdomen

Epigastric through lumbar regions

.96 Perineum and pelvic region

.97 Upper extremities

.98 Lower extremities

Class here comprehensive works on the extremities

For the upper extremities, see 611.97

612 Human physiology

Class here comprehensive works on anatomy and physiology

Use 612.001–612.009 for standard subdivisions

Class physiological psychology in 152

For human anatomy, cytology (cell biology), histology (tissue biology), see 611; pathological physiology, 616.07

See Manual at 611 vs. 612; 612 vs. 616

SUMMARY

612.01–.04 [Biophysics, biochemistry, control processes, tissue and organ culture, physiology of specific activities]

.01 Biophysics and biochemistry

.014 Biophysics

.014 2 Physical phenomena in humans

Including the human aura when scientifically considered

See also 133.8 for the aura as a manifestation of psychic power

.014 21 Bioenergetics

For body heat, see 612.01426; bioelectricity, 612.01427
.014 26  Body heat
    Including regulation
    Class here production, maintenance

.014 27  Bioelectricity
    Including electrophysiology

.014 4  Effects of terrestrial agents
    Including aerospace physiology
    Class space physiology in 612.0145

.014 41  Mechanical forces

.014 412  Gravitational forces

.014 414  Acceleration and deceleration

.014 415  Pressure
    Including submarine physiology

.014 42  Electricity

.014 44  Visible light

.014 45  Sound and related vibrations

.014 452  Subsonic vibrations

.014 453  Sound

.014 455  Ultrasonic vibrations

.014 46  Thermal forces

.014 462  Heat and high temperatures

.014 465  Cold and low temperatures

  For cryogenic temperatures, see 612.014467

.014 467  Cryogenic temperatures

.014 48  Radiation (Radiobiology)
    Class here dosimetry
    Add to base number 612.01448 the numbers following 574.1915
    in 574.19151–574.19157, e.g., gamma radiation 612.014486;
    however, class visible light in 612.01444

.014 5  Extraterrestrial biophysics
    Class here bioastronautics, space physiology
    Add to base number 612.0145 the numbers following 574.191 in
    574.1913–574.1917, e.g., gravitation 612.014532
    Class aerospace physiology in 612.0144, space medicine in
    616.980214
.015  Biochemistry
   Class metabolism in 612.39
   .015 01  Philosophy and theory
      Class theoretical biochemistry in 612.01582
   .015 02  Miscellany
   .015 028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
      Class analytical biochemistry in 612.01585
   .015 1  Enzymes
      Add to base number 612.0151 the numbers following 574.1925 in 574.19253–574.19258, e.g., saccharolytic enzymes 612.01514
   .015 2  Fluids, inorganic constituents, pigments
   .015 22  Fluids
      Example: water
      Including electrolytic balance, fluid balance
      *See Manual at 612.3923 vs. 612.01522*
   .015 24  Inorganic constituents
      Example: minerals
      Class inorganic fluids in 612.01522, inorganic pigments in 612.01528
   .015 28  Pigments
      Class biochemistry of skin pigmentation in 612.7927
   .015 4  Biosynthesis
      Add to base number 612.0154 the numbers following 574.1929 in 574.19293–574.19297, e.g., biosynthesis of proteins 612.01546
   .015 7  Organic compounds
      Add to base number 612.0157 the numbers following 547.7 in 547.72–547.79, e.g., carbohydrates 612.01578; however, class enzymes in 612.0151, vitamins in 612.399, hormones in 612.405
      Class organic fluids in 612.01522, organic pigments in 612.01528
   .015 8  Theoretical, physical, analytical biochemistry
      Class physical, theoretical, analytical biochemistry of a specific constituent with the subject, e.g., physical chemistry of carbohydrates 612.01578
   .015 82  Theoretical biochemistry
   .015 83  Physical biochemistry
   .015 85  Analytical biochemistry
612 Dewey Decimal Classification

.02 Control processes and tissue and organ culture
  .022 Control processes
     Including biological rhythms, homeostasis
  .028 Tissue and organ culture
  .04 Physiology of specific activities
     Class here comprehensive works on the physiology of physical movements in relation to multiple physiological systems
     Class the physiology of physical movements in relation to a specific system with the system, e.g., the musculoskeletal system 612.76
  .042 Work
  .044 Sports
     Class here recreation

> 612.1–612.8 Specific functions, systems, organs
     Class comprehensive works in 612
     See Manual at 612.1–612.8

.1 Blood and circulation
     Class circulation in a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., the brain 612.824
     For lymph and lymphatics, see 612.42

.11 Blood
     Class the spleen in 612.41, bone marrow in 612.491
     For blood chemistry, see 612.12

.111 Red corpuscles (Erythrocytes)
  .1111 Biochemistry
     Including hemoglobins
  .1112 Counts and counting

.112 White corpuscles (Leucocytes)
  .1121 Biochemistry
  .1122 Biophysics
  .1127 Counts and counting

.115 Coagulation (Clotting)
     Including the role of fibrin, fibrinoplasmin, plasma, thrombin in clotting

.116 Plasma
     For the role of plasma in clotting, see 612.115
.117 Platelets and hemoconia

.118 Biophysics and biological properties

.118 1 Biophysics
   Physical properties and phenomena, effect of physical agents
   Including hemorrhheology (study of blood flow)
   Class biophysics of specific components or functions in
   612.111–612.117

.118 2 Biological properties

[.118 22] Immunity (Immunology)
   Relocated to 616.079

.118 25 Blood types (groups) and typing

.12 Blood chemistry
   Including carbohydrates, cholesterol, enzymes, lipids, minerals
   Class chemistry of specific components or functions in 612.111–612.117,
   biological properties in 612.1182

.13 Blood vessels and vascular circulation
   For vasomotors, see 612.18

.133 Arteries and arterial circulation

.134 Veins and venous circulation

.135 Capillaries and capillary circulation

.14 Blood pressure

.17 Heart

.171 Biophysics
   Including contraction and dilation of heart cavities, valvular activity,
   recording methods
   For blood pressure, see 612.14

.173 Biochemistry

.178 Innervation

.18 Vasomotors
   Nerves causing dilation (vasodilators) and constriction (vasoconstrictors) of
   blood vessels
.2 Respiration
   Including comprehensive works on physiology of the nose
   Class physiology of the nose as an olfactory organ in 612.86

.21 Biophysics
   Including respiratory movements, rhythm, sounds

.22 Biochemistry
   Including oxygen supply, gas exchange, carbon dioxide removal

.26 Tissue (Internal) respiration

.28 Innervation of respiratory apparatus

.3 Digestion
   Class here nutrition
   Class dietetics in 613.2

.31 Mouth and esophagus
   Including ingestion and start of digestion

.311 Teeth
   Including mastication

.312 Tongue and tonsils
   Class here comprehensive works on physiology of the tongue
   Class physiology of the tongue as a gustatory organ in 612.87

.313 Salivary glands and saliva

.315 Esophagus

.32 Stomach and gastric secretions
   Class here comprehensive works on gastrointestinal organs and secretions
   For intestine and intestinal secretions, see 612.33

.33 Intestine and intestinal secretions
   For large intestine, see 612.36

.34 Pancreas and pancreatic secretions

.35 Biliary tract
   Contains liver, gall bladder, bile and bile ducts

.36 Large intestine and defecation

.38 Absorption
   Transfer of digested food from the alimentary canal into the blood stream
   Class absorption in a specific part of the alimentary canal with the part, e.g., intestine 612.33
.39 Metabolism

Class metabolism of drugs in 615.7, of toxic substances in 615.9; metabolism within a specific function, system, or organ with the function, system, or organ, e.g., the metabolism of plasma 612.116

.391 Hunger and thirst mechanisms

.392 Metabolism of inorganic substances

Class here minerals

.392 3 Water

See Manual at 612.3923 vs. 612.01522

.392 4 Elements

Examples: iron, phosphorus, sulfur

.392 6 Compounds other than water

Example: salts

.396 Carbohydrate metabolism

.397 Lipid metabolism

Including fats

.398 Protein metabolism

.399 Vitamins

.4 Secretion, excretion, related functions

Class here the endocrine system

Use 612.4001-612.4009 for standard subdivisions

Class glands and glandular activity in a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., salivary glands 612.313

For mammary glands and lactation, see 612.664

.405 Hormones

.41 Spleen

Class here comprehensive works on the blood-forming (hematopoietic or hemopoietic) system

Class the physiology of bone marrow in 612.491

.42 Lymph and lymphatics

.43 Thymus gland

.44 Thyroid and parathyroid glands

.45 Adrenal glands
.46 Excretion
Class here the urinary system

*For defecation, see 612.36*

.461 Urine
.463 Kidneys
.467 Ureters, bladder, urethra
.49 Bone marrow and carotid, pituitary, pineal glands
Use of this number for other glands discontinued; class in 612.4
.491 Bone marrow
.492 Carotid, pituitary, pineal glands

.6 Reproduction, development, maturation
Class here comprehensive medical works on sex
Interdisciplinary works on sex relocated to 306.7
Class a specific aspect of sex with the aspect, e.g., sexual disorders 616.69

.600 1-.600 9 Standard subdivisions

.61 Male reproductive system
Including function in sexual activity

*For climacteric, see 612.665*

.62 Female reproductive system
Including function in sexual activity
Class pregnancy in 612.63, menstruation in 612.662

*For climacteric, see 612.665*

.63 Pregnancy and childbirth
Including placenta
Class comprehensive works on pregnancy and childbirth in 618.2, physiology of embryo in 612.64

.64 Physiology of embryo and fetus
Class here comprehensive works on embryology
Use 612.64001–612.64009 for standard subdivisions

*For anatomic embryology, see 611.013*

.640 1 Development of specific systems, organs, regions
Add to base number 612.6401 the numbers following 611 in 611.1–611.9, e.g., development of the eye 612.640184

.646 Development of embryo
.647 Development of fetus

> 612.65-612.67 Postnatal development

Class comprehensive works in 612.6; postnatal development of a specific system, organ, region with the system, organ, region, e.g., postnatal development of teeth 612.311

.65 Child development

.652 Development of newborn (neonate)
   First month of postnatal development

.654 Development from infancy to beginning of puberty
   From second month of postnatal development

.66 Adult development and maturity
   For aging, see 612.67

.661 Puberty and development prior to attainment of full maturity

.662 Menstruation
   Including menarche

.663 Full maturity

.664 Mammary glands and lactation

.665 Climacteric
   Including menopause

.67 Aging
   Class here physical gerontology
   See also 616.078 for death

.68 Longevity factors

.7 Motor functions and integument

.74 Muscles
   Class locomotion, exercise, rest in 612.76; muscles of a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., eye muscles 612.846

.741 Biophysics
   Including contractions, elasticity, irritability, tonus

.743 Innervation

.744 Biochemistry
   Including fatigue products
.75 Bones, joints, connective tissues
   Class bone marrow in 612.491; locomotion, exercise, rest in 612.76
   For mastoid processes, ossicles, see 612.854

.76 Locomotion, exercise, rest
   Including body mechanics
   Class the total physiology of physical movements (including muscle
   contractions, breathing, blood flow, digestion during exercise) in 612.04

.78 Voice and speech
   Class here organs of speech

.79 Integument Skin

.791 Biophysics of the skin
   Including absorbency, contractions, irritability, resistivity, tonus

.792 Biochemistry of the skin

.792 1 Glands and glandular secretions
   Example: perspiration

.792 7 Pigmentation

.798 Innervation of the skin

.799 Hair and nails

.8 Nervous functions Sensory functions
   Class here neurophysiology, psychophysiology
   See Manual at 152 vs. 612.8

SUMMARY

612.801-.809 Standard subdivisions

.81 Nerves and nerve fibers
.82 Brain
.83 Spinal cord
.84 Eyes and vision
.85 Ears and hearing
.86 Nose and smelling
.87 Tongue and tasting
.88 Other sense organs and sensory functions
.89 Autonomic nervous system

.801 Philosophy and theory
   Use of this number for principles of innervation discontinued; class in
   612.8

.804 Special topics

.804 2 Neurochemistry
   Including cerebrospinal fluid
612.804 3 Biophysics of the nervous system

612.81 Nerves and nerve fibers
Class here peripheral nervous system
Class innervation and neural activity in a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., heart innervation 612.178
For autonomic nervous system, see 612.89

612.811 Motor and sensory nerves

612.813 Biophysics
Including electrophysiology
Class biophysics of a specific kind of nerve with the nerve, e.g., biophysics of cranial nerves 612.819
For irritability, see 612.816

612.814 Biochemistry
Class biochemistry of a specific kind of nerve with the nerve, e.g., biochemistry of motor nerves 612.811

612.816 Irritability

612.819 Cranial and spinal nerves

612.82 Brain
Class here central nervous system; physiology of memory, of thinking
For spinal cord, see 612.83
See also 153 for psychology of memory and thinking

612.821 Sleep phenomena
Physiology of the brain during sleep and dreams
See Manual at 154.6 vs. 612.821

612.822 Biochemistry and biophysics
Class biochemistry and biophysics of a specific part of the brain with the part, e.g., biophysics of the cerebrum 612.825

612.824 Circulation
Class circulation in a specific part of the brain with the part, e.g., circulation in the cerebellum 612.827

612.825 Cerebrum
Including cerebral hemispheres, convolutions, corpus striatum, cortex, rhinencephalon
Class here prosencephalon (forebrain)
For cerebral commissures and peduncles, see 612.826; diencephalon, 612.8262

612.825 2 Localization of motor functions
.825 5 Localization of sensory functions
.826 Diencephalon and brain stem
    Including cerebral commissures and peduncles
    *For medulla oblongata, see 612.828*
.826 2 Diencephalon
    Including geniculate bodies, hypothalamus, thalamus
.826 4 Mesencephalon (Midbrain)
    Including corpora quadrigemina
.826 7 Pons Variolii
.827 Cerebellum
.828 Medulla oblongata
.83 Spinal cord

> 612.84–612.88 Sense organs and sensory functions
   Class comprehensive works in 612.8
   .84 Eyes and vision
       Class here physiological optics, eyeballs
       .841 Fibrous tunics, conjunctivas, anterior chambers
           Including corneas, scleras
       .842 Uveas
           Contains choroids, ciliary bodies, irises
       .843 Optic nerves and retinas
       .844 Aqueous humors, crystalline lenses, vitreous bodies
       .846 Movements
           Class here ocular neuromuscular mechanism
       .847 Eyelids and tear ducts
           Class conjunctivas in 612.841
   .85 Ears and hearing
       .851 External ears
       .854 Middle ears
           Including eustachian tubes (auditory tubes), mastoid processes, ossicles, tympanic membranes
Medical sciences  Medicine  612

.858  Internal ears
   Including cochleas, labyrinths, semicircular canals, vestibules

.86  Nose and smelling
   Class here chemical senses
   Class comprehensive works on physiology of the nose in 612.2
   
   For tasting, see 612.87

.87  Tongue and tasting
   Class comprehensive works on physiology of the tongue in 612.312

.88  Other sense organs and sensory functions
   Examples: sense of movement (motion), tactile and proprioceptive organs
   and senses
   Including pain sensations and reactions

.89  Autonomic nervous system
   Contains sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems

.9  Regional physiology
   Including back
   Add to base number 612.9 the numbers following 611.9 in 611.91–611.98, e.g.,
   physiology of face 612.92
   Class physiology of specific systems and organs in specific regions in
   612.1–612.8

613  Promotion of health

Former heading: General and personal hygiene
   Including inherited diseases as a factor
   Class here measures to promote health and prevent disease taken by the individual
   and his medical advisers, comprehensive medical works on personal and public
   measures to promote health and prevent disease
   Class public measures to promote health and prevent disease in 614, personal
   preventive measures applied to specific diseases or groups of diseases in 616–618,
   child rearing in 649

   See Manual at 613 vs. 615.8

SUMMARY

613.04  Promotion of health of specific sex and age groups
   .1  Environmental factors
   .2  Dietetics
   .3  Beverages
   .4  Personal cleanliness and related topics
   .5  Artificial environments
   .6  Special topics
   .7  Physical fitness
   .8  Substance abuse (Drug abuse)
   .9  Birth control and sex hygiene
.04 Promotion of health of specific sex and age groups

.042 Promotion of health of specific sex groups

.042 3 Males

.042 32 Boys under twelve

.042 33 Young men

Aged twelve through twenty

.042 34 Adult men

.042 4 Females

.042 42 Girls under twelve

.042 43 Young women

Aged twelve through twenty

.042 44 Adult women

.043 Promotion of health of specific age groups

Class promotion of health of specific age groups of specific sexes in 613.042

.043 2 Infants and children

Through age eleven

Class here pediatric preventive measures

.043 3 Young adults

Aged twelve through twenty

.043 4 Mature adults

Examples: college-age, middle-aged persons

For persons in late adulthood, see 613.0438

.043 8 Persons in late adulthood

Former heading: Adults aged 65 and over

Class here geriatric preventive measures

[.081-.084] Persons of specific sex and age groups

Do not use; class in 613.04
.1 Environmental factors
Class here acclimation

For artificial environments, see 613.5

.11 Weather and climate

For seasonal changes, see 613.13; humidity, 613.14

.111 Cold weather and climate
Example: arctic climate

.113 Hot weather and climate
Example: tropical climate

.12 Physiographic and other regions
Examples: mountains, seashore

.122 Health resorts

.13 Seasonal changes

.14 Humidity

.19 Air and light

.192 Breathing

.193 Sun bathing

.194 Nudism

.2 Dietetics

Comprehensive works on diet and physical fitness relocated to 613.7

Class human nutritional requirements considered in relation to physiological processes and the role of nutrients in the body in 612.3; diet therapy in 615.854; dietetics for pregnant women in 618.24; diets to prevent a specific disease with the disease, using notation 05 from the tables under 616.1–616.9, 617, 618.1–618.8

For beverages, see 613.3

See also 616.39 for conditions resulting from nutritional deficiencies, 641.563 for cooking for preventive and therapeutic diets, 649.3 for domestic aspects of feeding children

See Manual at 613.2 vs. 641.3, 363.8

.24 Weight-gaining programs

.25 Weight-losing programs
.26 Specific dietary regimens
   Example: regimens involving specific foods
   Including breast feeding
   Class interdisciplinary works on breast feeding in 649.33, regimens
   involving specific nutritive elements in 613.28
   For weight-gaining programs, see 613.24; weight-losing programs,
   613.25

.262 Vegetarian

.28 Specific nutritive elements
   Examples: diets high and low in carbohydrates, fats, proteins, salt
   Class weight modification programs involving specific nutritive elements in
   613.24–613.25

.3 Beverages
   Class personal aspects of preventing alcohol abuse in 613.81

.4 Personal cleanliness and related topics
   Class personal grooming in 646.7
   .41 Bathing
   .48 Clothing and cosmetics
   .482 Clothing
   .488 Cosmetics

.5 Artificial environments
   In enclosed spaces
   Examples: homes, offices
   Including indoor temperatures and air conditioning

.6 Special topics
   Class here personal safety
   Class personal safety in a specific field with the subject, using notation 0289
   from Table 1, e.g., personal safety in welding 671.520289

.62 Industrial and occupational health
   See Manual at 613.62 vs. 363.11

.66 Self-defense

.67 Military and camp health

.68 Travel health
   Example: shipboard health
.69  Survival

After accidents and disasters, in other unfavorable circumstances

*For self-defense, see 613.66*

.7  **Physical fitness**

Class here comprehensive works on diet and physical fitness [formerly 613.2]

*For breathing, see 613.192*

.704  Special topics

> 613.704  2–613.704  5  Specific age and sex groups

Class comprehensive works in 613.704, physical yoga of specific age and sex groups in 613.7046

.704  2  Physical fitness of children

.704  3  Physical fitness of young adults

   Aged twelve through twenty

.704  4  Physical fitness of adults

   Class physical fitness of adult women in 613.7045

.704  46  Physical fitness of persons in late adulthood

   Class physical fitness of men in late adulthood in 613.70449

.704  49  Physical fitness of adult men

   Class here physical fitness of males

   Class physical fitness of boys in 613.7042, of young men (aged twelve to twenty) in 613.7043

.704  5  Physical fitness of adult women

   Class here physical fitness of females

   Class physical fitness of girls in 613.7042, of young women (aged twelve to twenty) in 613.7043

.704  6  Physical yoga

   Class here hatha yoga

   Class exercises from the martial arts traditions in 613.7148

[.708  1–.708  4]  Persons of specific sex and age groups

   Do not use; class in 613.7042–613.7045
.71 Exercise [formerly also 796.4] and sports activities

Class here aerobic exercise, comprehensive works on exercise and sports activities for fitness and for improvement in the shape of the body

Class physical yoga in 613.7046, exercises to aid childbirth in 618.24, exercise and sports activities to improve the shape of the body in 646.75, parental supervision of children’s exercise and sports activities in 649.57

See Manual at 613.71 vs. 646.75, 796

[.710 247 96] For persons occupied with athletics and sports

Do not use; class in 613.711

[.710 887 96] Treatment with respect to persons occupied with athletics and sports

Do not use; class in 613.711

.711 Fitness training for sports

Including fitness training for specific sports not provided for below, e.g., football

Class here promotion of health of athletes

Class specific kinds of fitness training with the kind, e.g., weight lifting 613.713; fitness training for specific sports listed below with the sport, e.g., swimming 613.716

.713 Weight lifting [formerly also 796.41]

See Manual at 613.71 vs. 646.75, 796

.714 Calisthenics [formerly also 796.41] and isometric exercises

Class here gymnastic exercises [formerly also 796.41]

Standard subdivisions are added for calisthenics and isometric exercises, or for calisthenics alone

See also 613.713 for weight lifting, 613.715 for aerobic dancing, 613.716 for aquatic exercises

.714 8 Exercises from the martial arts traditions

Examples: aikido, karate exercises

Class here fitness training for the martial arts, T’ai chi ch’üan exercises

See also 796.8 for the martial arts as sports

.714 9 Isometric exercises

.715 Aerobic dancing

.716 Aquatic exercises and swimming

.717 Running and walking

.717 2 Running

.717 6 Walking
Substance abuse (Drug abuse)

Limited to personal preventive aspects

Examples: abuse of analgesics, depressants, inhalants, sedatives, tranquilizers

Class here appeals to the individual to avoid substance abuse for health reasons

Class interdisciplinary works on substance abuse in 362.29, comprehensive medical works on addictive and disorienting drugs in 615.78, comprehensive medical works on substance abuse as a disease in 616.86

Alcohol

Class here personal aspects of prevention of alcoholism

Narcotics, hallucinogens, psychedelics, cannabis

Use of this number for comprehensive works on personal aspects of preventing drug abuse discontinued; class in 613.8

Cannabis

Class here specific kinds of cannabis, e.g., hashish, marijuana

Stimulants and related substances

Examples: amphetamine, ephedrine; cocaine

Class nicotine in 613.85

Tobacco

Birth control and sex hygiene

Education, research, related topics

Class sex education of children in the home in 649.65

Birth control (Contraception)

Including artificial insemination, measures to increase the likelihood of having a child of the desired sex

Class here family planning

Class interdisciplinary works on birth control and family planning in 363.96

Surgical methods

Limited to personal health aspects

Examples: tubal sterilization, vasectomy

Class comprehensive works on surgical methods of birth control for males in 617.463; for females in 618.1, e.g., tubal sterilization 618.12059
.943 Chemical, rhythm, mechanical methods
.943.2 Chemical
    Limited to personal health aspects
    Example: pills (oral contraceptives)
    Class the pharmacodynamics of chemical contraceptives in 615.766
.943.4 Rhythm
.943.5 Mechanical
    Example: intrauterine devices
.95 Sex hygiene
    Class manuals of sexual technique in 613.96
    [.950 81-.950 84] Sex hygiene of specific age and sex groups
    Do not use; class in 613.951–613.955
.951 Sex hygiene of children and young adults
    Through age twenty
    Class sex hygiene of boys and young men in 613.953, of girls and young women in 613.955
.952 Sex hygiene of adult men
    Class here sex hygiene of males
    Class sex hygiene of boys and young men (through age twenty) in 613.953
.953 Sex hygiene of boys and young men
    Through age twenty
.954 Sex hygiene of adult women
    Class here sex hygiene of females
    Class sex hygiene of girls and young women (through age twenty) in 613.955
.955 Sex hygiene of girls and young women
    Through age twenty
.96 Manuals of sexual technique

614 Forensic medicine, incidence of disease, public preventive medicine

Former heading: Public health and related topics

Class social provision for public health services other than those concerned with incidence and prevention of disease in 362.1, public safety programs in 363.1, environmental problems and services in 363.7
SUMMARY

614.1 Forensic medicine (Medical jurisprudence)

.4 Incidence of and public measures to prevent disease

.5 Incidence of and public measures to prevent specific diseases and kinds of diseases

.6 Disposal of the dead

.1 Forensic medicine (Medical jurisprudence)

Examples: determination of time and cause of death; of cause, nature and extent of injury

Including forensic dentistry, psychiatry, toxicology

.4 Incidence of and public measures to prevent disease

Class here epidemiology

For incidence of and public measures to prevent specific diseases and kinds of diseases, see 614.5

See also 351.774 for premarital examinations and certification, 351.816 for registration and certification of births and deaths

See Manual at 614.4; 614.4–614.5 vs. 362.1–362.4

.409 Historical, geographical, persons treatment of epidemiology

Class geographical treatment of incidence of diseases in 614.42, history of epidemics in 614.49

.42 Incidence

Rate, range, or amount of occurrence

Class here health surveys, medical geography

.422 Treatment by areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 614.422 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., diseases in the tropics 614.4223

.423–.429 Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 614.42 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., diseases in the United States 614.4273

.43 Disease carriers (Vectors) and their control

Class diseases transmitted by vertebrates other than humans in 614.56

.432 Insects

.432 2 Flies

.432 3 Mosquitoes

.432 4 Lice and fleas

.433 Arachnids

Examples: mites, ticks
.434 Birds
.438 Rodents
.44 Public preventive medicine

For specific preventive measures, see 614.45–614.48

> 614.45–614.48 Specific preventive measures

Class comprehensive works in 614.44

.45 Isolation

Prevention of the spread of disease in homes, hospitals, schools, public places through isolation

For quarantine, see 614.46

.46 Quarantine

Isolation procedures at frontiers and ports of entry

Class comprehensive works on isolation in 614.45

.47 Immunization

Public measures for preventing disease through protective inoculation

.48 Disinfection, fumigation, sterilization

.49 History of epidemics

Add to base number 614.49 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., history of epidemics in the United Kingdom 614.4941

.5 Incidence of and public measures to prevent specific diseases and kinds of diseases

Class incidence of and public measures to prevent mental and emotional illnesses and disturbances in 362.2

See Manual at 614.5; 614.4–614.5 vs. 362.1–362.4

SUMMARY

614.51 Salmonella and bacillary diseases, cholera, dysentery, epidemic diarrhea, influenza

.52 Eruptive diseases (Exanthems) and rickettsial diseases

.53 Protozoan diseases

.54 Miscellaneous diseases

.55 Parasitic diseases

.56 Zoonoses

.57 Bacterial and viral diseases

.59 Diseases of regions, systems, organs; other diseases
Salmonella and bacillary diseases, cholera, dysentery, epidemic diarrhea, influenza

Salmonella diseases

Typhoid fever (Enteric fever)

Paratyphoid fever

Bacillary diseases

For bacillary dysentery, see 614.516

Diphtheria

Botulism

Tetanus

Cholera

See Manual at 616.932 vs. 616.33

Amebic and bacillary dysentery

Epidemic diarrhea

Influenza

Including acute influenzalike diseases in epidemic form

Eruptive diseases (Exanthems) and rickettsial diseases

Smallpox (Variola major) and attenuated forms

Scarlet fever (Scarlatina)

Measles (Rubeola)

German measles (Rubella)

Chicken pox (Varicella)

Rickettsial diseases

Add to base number 614.526 the numbers following 616.922 in 616.9222–616.9226, e.g., Q fever 614.5265

Protozoan diseases

Add to base number 614.53 the numbers following 616.936 in 616.9362–616.9364, e.g., malaria 614.532

For amebic dysentery, see 614.516

Miscellaneous diseases

Limited to the diseases provided for below

Yellow fever

Tuberculosis

Whooping cough (Pertussis)

Mumps (Epidemic parotitis)
.545 Puerperal septicemia and pyemia
Class comprehensive works on incidence of and public measures to prevent septicemia and pyemia in 614.577

.546 Leprosy (Hansen’s disease)

.547 Venereal diseases
Class Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome (AIDS) in 614.5993

.547 2 Syphilis
.547 8 Gonorrhea

.549 Poliomyelitis

.55 Parasitic diseases
Add to base number 614.55 the numbers following 616.96 in 616.962–616.969, e.g., schistosomiasis 614.553; however, class trichinosis in 614.562

.56 Zoonoses
Class incidence of and public measures to prevent a specific zoonosis not provided for here with the disease, e.g., Q fever 614.5265

.561 Anthrax
Variant names: charbon, splenic fever
Example: Woolsorters’ disease

.562 Trichinosis

.563 Rabies (Hydrophobia)

.564 Glanders (Equinia)

.565 Undulant fever (Brucellosis)

.566 Parrot fever (Psittacosis)

.57 Bacterial and viral diseases

.571 Dengue fever

.573–.575 Bacterial and other viral diseases
Add to base number 614.57 the numbers following 616.92 in 616.923–616.925, e.g., tularemia 614.5739

For bacterial blood diseases, see 614.577

.577 Bacterial blood diseases
Examples: erysipelas, pyemia, septicemia
Class puerperal septicemia and pyemia in 614.545

.59 Diseases of regions, systems, organs; other diseases
.591-.598 Diseases of regions, systems, organs

Add to base number 614.59 the numbers following 616 in 616.1–616.8, e.g., heart disease 614.5912, nutritional diseases 614.5939; however, class epidemic diarrhea in 614.517; allergies affecting specific regions, systems, organs in 614.5993; tumors (neoplasms) of regions, systems, organs in 614.5999

See Manual at 614.5939 vs. 363.82

.599 Other diseases

.599 2 Gynecological, obstetrical, pediatric, geriatric disorders

Class puerperal septicemia and pyemia in 614.545

.599 3 Diseases of the immune system

Examples: allergies; autoimmune diseases; immune deficiency diseases, e.g., acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS)

.599 6 Dental diseases

Including fluoridation of water supply

.599 7 Eye diseases

.599 8 Ear diseases

.599 9 Tumors (Neoplasms)

Benign and malignant

Class public programs to control cancer-causing agents in 363.179, to control carcinogens in food in 363.192

.6 Disposal of the dead

Class social aspects and services in 363.75

615 Pharmacology and therapeutics

See Manual at 615

SUMMARY

615.1 Drugs (Materia medica)

.2 Inorganic drugs

.3 Organic drugs

.4 Practical pharmacy

.5 Therapeutics

.6 Methods of administering medication

.7 Pharmacodynamics

.8 Specific therapies and kinds of therapies

.9 Toxicology
.1 Drugs (Materia medica)

Substances used for diagnosis, cure, mitigation, treatment, or prevention of disease

Class here pharmacology

Class drug therapy in 615.58

For specific drugs and groups of drugs, see 615.2–615.3; practical pharmacy, 615.4; physiological and therapeutic action of drugs, 615.7

See Manual at 615.1 vs. 615.7

.11 Pharmacopeias

Add to base number 615.11 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., pharmacopeias of Japan 615.1152

[.12] Dispensatories

Relocated to 615.13

.13 Formularies

Class here dispensatories [formerly 615.12]

Add to base number 615.13 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., formularies of the United States 615.1373

.14 Posology

Including incompatibilities

Class here dosage determination, prescription writing

.18 Drug preservation technique

Class here packaging designed to preserve drug quality and potency

.19 Pharmaceutical chemistry

Development, manufacture, analysis of drugs

.190 01 Philosophy and theory

.190 02 Miscellany

[.190 028 7] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 615.1901

.190 03–.190 09 Standard subdivisions

.190 1 Analysis

[.190 15–.190 18] Chemical analysis and assay methods

Numbers discontinued; class in 615.1901

[.191] Manufacture and preparation

Number discontinued; class in 615.19
615.2–615.3 Specific drugs and groups of drugs

General aspects: pharmaceutical chemistry, preservation, general therapeutics

Class comprehensive works in 615.1, a specific drug or group of drugs affecting a specific system in 615.7

See Manual at 615.2–615.3; 615.2–615.3 vs. 615.7

.2 Inorganic drugs

Add to base number 615.2 the numbers following 546 in 546.2–546.7, e.g., calomel 615.2663

Class radiopharmacy (the use of radioactive medicines) in 615.842

.3 Organic drugs

See Manual at 615.2–615.3

.31 Synthetic drugs

Add to base number 615.31 the numbers following 547.0 in 547.01–547.08, e.g., sulfonamides 615.3167

Class a specific synthetic drug not provided for here with the drug, e.g., synthetic vitamins 615.328

.32 Drugs of plant origin

Class enzymes of plant origin in 615.35

.321 Pharmacognosy

Class here herbals, minimally processed alkaloids; comprehensive works on crude drugs and simples (products that serve as drugs with minimal processing, e.g., medicinal teas, baking soda, royal jelly)

For drugs derived from specific plants, see 615.323–615.327

.322 Drugs derived from bryophytes

Add to base number 615.322 the numbers following 588 in 588.1–588.3, e.g., drugs derived from Musci 615.3222

.323–.327 Drugs derived from specific plants

Add to base number 615.32 the numbers following 58 in 583–587, e.g., belladonna 615.32379

For drugs derived from bryophytes, see 615.322; drugs derived from thallophytes, 615.329

.328 Vitamins

Including synthetic vitamins, vitamins of animal origin

Class here vitamin therapy [formerly also 615.854]
Drugs derived from thallophytes

Class here antibiotics

Add to base number 615.329 the numbers following 589 in 589.1–589.9, e.g., streptomycin 615.32992

Fish-liver oils

Enzymes

Examples: chymotrypsin, diastase, papain, pepsin, trypsin

Drugs of animal origin

Class here hormones

Class each drug of animal origin not provided for here with the subject, e.g., fish-liver oils 615.34

Thyroid and parathyroid extracts

Pituitary hormones

Example: ACTH (adrenocorticotropic hormone) [formerly also 615.364]

Adrenal hormones

Examples: adrenalin, aldosterone, cortisol

ACTH (adrenocorticotropic hormone) relocated to 615.363

For sex hormones, see 615.366

Insulin

Sex hormones

Liver extracts

Serums and immunological drugs

Vaccines, bacterins, serobacterins

Toxins and toxoids

Antitoxins, toxin-antitoxins, convalescent serums

Human blood products and their substitutes

Examples: gamma globulins, plasma substitutes

Including blood and blood plasma transfusion [formerly 615.65]

For convalescent serums, see 615.375

See also 362.1784 for blood and blood plasma banks

Practical pharmacy

Preparing prescriptions and dispensing drugs

See Manual at 615.4
.42 Solutions and extracts
Examples: collodions, decoctions, elixirs, glycerites, infusions, syrups, tinctures

.43 Pills, capsules, tablets, troches, powders

.45 Ointments and emulsions

.5 Therapeutics
Class here comprehensive works on iatrogenic diseases, patient compliance, placebo effect
Class therapies applied to specific diseases or groups of diseases in 616–618; specific occurrences of iatrogenic diseases, patient compliance, placebo effect with the occurrence, e.g., drug interactions not anticipated by a doctor 615.7045, surgical complications and sequelae 617.01

For specific therapies and kinds of therapies, see 615.8; first aid, 616.0252

.507 Education, research, related topics
Class here patient education by nurses [formerly 610.73], comprehensive works on patient education
Class patient education on a specific topic with the topic, e.g., patient education about diabetes mellitus 616.462007

.53 General therapeutic systems
Including eclectic and botanic medicine
Class here Ayurveda ("Hindu medicine")
Class drug therapy regardless of system in 615.58
See also 615.32 for botanic remedies
See Manual at 615.53

.530 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
Class methods of administering medication in 615.6

.531 Allopathy
System of therapy based on the theory that the best cure is a treatment having effects that are opposite to the effects of the disease
Class allopathy as a synonym for orthodox or standard medical practice in medical numbers other than 615.531

.532 Homeopathy

.533 Osteopathy
As a therapeutic system
Class osteopathy as a medical science in medical numbers other than 615.533, e.g., osteopathic medical education 610.7, osteopathic discussion of thyroid diseases 616.44
.534  Chiropractic

See Manual at 615.534

.535  Naturopathy

[.537]  Eclectic and botanic medicine

Number discontinued; class in 615.53

.54  Pediatric and geriatric therapeutics

.542  Pediatric therapeutics

Class a specific aspect of pediatric therapeutics with the subject, e.g., medical gymnastics 615.824

.547  Geriatric therapeutics

Class a specific aspect of geriatric therapeutics with the subject, e.g., acupuncture 615.892

.58  Drug therapy

Class here chemotherapy

Class general therapeutics of a specific drug or group of drugs in 615.2–615.3

For methods of administering medication, see 615.6

.6  Methods of administering medication

Examples: external, inhalatory, oral, rectal methods; parenteral methods (e.g., intra-arterial, intradermal, intramuscular, intravenous, subcutaneous injections); administering medication through serous and mucous membranes

Use this number only for works that focus narrowly on methods of administering medication

Class methods of administering a specific drug or group of drugs in 615.2–615.3; general works on a specific type of therapy with the therapy, e.g., drug therapy 615.58, inhalatory therapy 615.836, parenteral therapy 615.855

[.61–.64]  Oral, rectal, parenteral, inhalatory medication

Numbers discontinued; class in 615.6

[.65]  Blood and blood plasma transfusions

Relocated to 615.39

[.66–.67]  Medication through serous and mucous membranes; external medication

Numbers discontinued; class in 615.6
.7 Pharmacodynamics

Physiological and therapeutic action of drugs

Class here pharmacokinetics

For toxicology, see 615.9

See Manual at 612.1–612.8; 615.1 vs. 615.7; 615.2–615.3 vs. 615.7; 615.7 vs. 615.9; 615.7 vs. 616–618

.704 Special effects and actions of drugs

Class here adverse reactions, toxic reactions

Class drug allergies in 616.975

.704.2 Side effects

[.704.3] Aftereffects

Number discontinued; class in 615.704

.704.5 Interactions

.71 Drugs affecting the cardiovascular system

.711 Heart stimulants

.716 Heart depressants

.718 Drugs affecting the blood and blood-forming organs

.72 Drugs affecting the respiratory system

Examples: cough remedies, expectorants

.73 Drugs affecting the digestive system and metabolism

.731 Emetics

.732 Cathartics (Laxatives, Purgatives)

.733 Anthelmintics

.734 Digestants

.735 Demulcients

.739 Drugs affecting metabolism

.74 Drugs affecting the lymphatic and glandular systems

.75 Antipyretics (Febrifuges)

.76 Drugs affecting the urogenital system

.761 Drugs affecting the urinary system

Examples: diuretics, antidiuretics

.766 Drugs affecting the reproductive system
615 Dewey Decimal Classification

.77 Drugs affecting the motor and integumentary systems
  .771 Drugs affecting the bones
  .773 Drugs affecting the muscles
  .778 Drugs affecting the skin
  .779 Drugs affecting nails and hair

.78 Drugs affecting the nervous system
  Class here psychopharmacology, comprehensive medical works on addictive and disorienting drugs
  Class interdisciplinary works on drug addiction in 362.29, comprehensive medical works on addictions as diseases in 616.86, works on personal aspects of preventing drug addiction in 613.8
  For antipyretics, see 615.75
  See also 178 for the ethics of using addictive and disorienting drugs

.781 Anesthetics

.782 Sedative-hypnotic drugs
  Example: barbiturates

.782 2 Narcotics

.782 7 Cannabis
  Example: marijuana

.782 8 Alcohol

.783 Analgesics
  Including comprehensive works on drugs used as both analgesics and antipyretics
  Class antipyretic use in 615.75

.784 Antispasmodics (Anticonvulsants)

.785 Stimulants

.788 Psychotropic drugs
  .788 2 Tranquilizers
    Examples: chlorpromazine, diazepam, meprobamate
  .788 3 Hallucinogenic and psychedelic drugs

.8 Specific therapies and kinds of therapies
  Class comprehensive works in 615.5, drug therapy in 615.58, surgery in 617
  See Manual at 613 vs. 615.8; 615.8

.804 Special topics

.804 3 Therapies directed toward a specific objective
  Example: resuscitation
.82 Physical therapies

Class here physiotherapy, therapeutic manipulations and exercises

For phototherapy and related therapies, see 615.83; radiotherapy and electrotherapy, 615.84; hydrotherapy and balneotherapy, 615.853

.822 Mechanotherapy and therapeutic massage

Example: acupressure

Class here comprehensive works on massage

Class reducing and slenderizing massage in 646.75

.824 Medical gymnastics

.83 Therapies of light, heat, sound

Including ultrasonic therapy

.831 Phototherapy

.831 4 Heliotherapy

.831 5 Ultraviolet-radiation therapy

.832 Thermotherapy

.832 2 Infrared-radiation therapy

.832 3 Diathermy (Thermopenetration)

.832 5 Fever therapy

.832 9 Cryotherapy

.834 Climatotherapy

.836 Aerotherapy and inhalation therapy

Examples: oxygen and carbon dioxide therapies, pneumatotherapy

.84 Radiotherapy and electrotherapy

.842 Radiotherapy (Radiation therapy, Actinotherapy)

For phototherapy, see 615.831

.842 2 X-ray therapy

.842 3 Radium therapy

.842 4 Radioactive isotope therapy

Class radium therapy in 615.8423

.845 Electrotherapy

Example: electronic therapy

Including magnetic therapy

.85 Miscellaneous therapies

Limited to the therapies provided for below
.851 Mental and activity therapies

  For faith healing, see 615.852

.851 2 Hypnotherapy (Suggestion therapy)

.851 5 Activity (Occupational) therapies

  For biblio- and educational therapies, see 615.8516

[.851 52] Occupational therapy

  Number discontinued; class in 615.8515

.851 53 Recreational therapy

.851 54 Music therapy

.851 55 Dance therapy

.851 56 Art therapy

.851 6 Biblio- and educational therapies

.852 Religious therapy (Hierotherapy, Faith healing)

  Including psychic and spiritualistic surgery

.853 Hydrotherapy and balneotherapy

.854 Dietotherapy

  Vitamin therapy relocated to 615.328

  See Manual at 615.854

.855 Parenteral therapy

.856 Controversial and spurious therapies

  Class here quackery

  Specific controversial or spurious therapies relocated to the kind of
  therapy, e.g., controversial dietotherapy 615.854

.88 Empirical and historical remedies

  Class here home remedies

  For ancient and medieval remedies, see 615.899

  See Manual at 615.8809

.882 Folk medicine

  See Manual at 615.8809; 615.882

.886 Patent medicines

.89 Other therapies

.892 Acupuncture

  Class here comprehensive works on acupuncture and acupressure

  Class acupressure in 615.822
.899 Ancient and medieval remedies

*See Manual at 615.8809*

.9 **Toxicology**

Class here poisons and poisoning

Class forensic toxicology in 614.1, effects of poisons on specific systems and organs in 616–618

*See Manual at 615.7 vs. 615.9*

.900 1 Philosophy and theory

.900 2 Miscellany

[.900 287] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 615.907

.900 3–.900 9 Standard subdivisions

.902 Industrial toxicology

Including toxicology of pollution

Class here environmental toxicology

Class toxic reactions and interactions of drugs in 615.704, toxicology of food additives in 615.954

.905 Prevention of poisoning

.907 Tests, analysis, detection of poisons and poisoning

Class here diagnoses and prognoses of poisoning

The topics listed under 616.075 Diagnoses and prognoses are all included here

.908 Treatment of poisoning

.91 Gaseous poisons

Example: asphyxiating gases

Class here lethal gases

.92 Inorganic poisons

Class gaseous inorganic poisons in 615.91, radiation poisoning in 616.9897

.921 Acids

Class specific acids in 615.925

.922 Alkalis

Class specific alkalis in 615.925

.925 Specific inorganic poisons

Add to base number 615.925 the numbers following 546 in 546.2–546.7, e.g., mercurial poisons 615.925663
.94 Animal poisons

.942 Venoms
Examples: bee, scorpion, snake, spider venoms

.945 Poisonous food animals
Example: poisonous fish
Including mammalian organs; food animals made poisonous by microorganisms, e.g., shellfish made poisonous by red tides

.95 Organic poisons
Class gaseous organic poisons in 615.91
For animal poisons, see 615.94

.951 Synthetic and manufactured poisons
Add to base number 615.951 the numbers following 547.0 in 547.01–547.08, e.g., ethers 615.95135

.952 Plant and plant-derived poisons
Add to base number 615.952 the numbers following 58 in 583–589, e.g., opium 615.9523122, bacterial food poisons 615.95299
Class food animals made poisonous by plants in 615.945

.954 Food poisons
Including toxicology of food additives
Class poisonous food animals in 615.945; plant and plant-derived poisons in 615.952, e.g., bacterial food poisons 615.95299

616 Diseases
Class here internal medicine
Class wounds and injuries, surgical treatment of diseases, diseases by body region, diseases of teeth, eyes, ears in 617; gynecological, obstetrical, pediatric, geriatric diseases in 618

For incidence of and public measures to prevent disease, see 614.4; therapeutics, 615.5

See Manual at 612 vs. 616; 615.7 vs. 616–618; 616 vs. 610; 616 vs. 616.075; 616.01; 616.01 vs. 616.9; 617 vs. 616; 617.4 vs. 616; 618.92 vs. 616, 618.32
SUMMARY

616.001-.009 Standard subdivisions
  .01-.09 [General topics]
  .1 Diseases of the cardiovascular system
  .2 Diseases of the respiratory system
  .3 Diseases of the digestive system
  .4 Diseases of the blood-forming, lymphatic, glandular systems
  .5 Diseases of the integument, hair, nails
  .6 Diseases of the urogenital system
  .7 Diseases of the musculoskeletal system
  .8 Diseases of the nervous system and mental disorders
  .9 Other diseases

.001 Philosophy and theory
  See Manual at 616 vs. 610

.002 Miscellany
  See Manual at 616 vs. 610

[.002 3] Work with diseases as a profession, occupation, hobby
  Do not use; class in 610.69

[.002 87] Testing and measurement
  Do not use; class in 616.075

.003-.007 Standard subdivisions
  See Manual at 616 vs. 610

.008 History and description with respect to kinds of persons
  See Manual at 616 vs. 610

.008 3 Young people
  Class diseases of infants and children up to puberty in 618.92

.008 4 Persons in specific stages of adulthood

[.008 46] Late adulthood
  Do not use; class in 618.97

.009 Historical, geographical, persons treatment
  See Manual at 616 vs. 610

.009 2 Persons
  Class life with a physical disease in 362.19, with a mental disorder in 616.890092
SUMMARY

616.01 Medical microbiology
   Study of pathogenic microorganisms and their relation to disease
   Class here drug resistance in microorganisms
   Class resistance to specific drugs in 615
   See Manual at 616.01; 616.01 vs. 616.9

.02 Bacteria
   Add to base number 616.014 the numbers following 589.9 in
   589.92-589.99, e.g., Enterobacteriaceae 616.0145
   For rickettsiae, see 616.0192

.014

.015 Fungi

.016 Protozoa

.019 Ultramicrobes

.019 2 Rickettsiae

.019 4 Viruses

.02 Special topics

.024 Domestic medicine
   Diagnosis and treatment of ailments without direction of physician
   Including advice on when to go to a doctor
   For first aid, see 616.0252
   See also 649.8 for home care of sick and infirm

.025 Medical emergencies
   Class intensive care in 616.028

.025 2 First aid

.028 Intensive (Critical) care

.029 Terminal care

.04 Special medical conditions

.042 Genetic (Hereditary) diseases
   Class amniocentesis to diagnose genetic diseases in 618.32042
.043 Congenital diseases
   Including teratology
   Class congenital diseases of genetic origin in 616.042
   See Manual at 618.92 vs. 616, 618.32

.047 Manifestations of disease
   Symptoms as problems in their own right
   Examples: edemas, fevers, infections, shock
   Class here symptomatology [formerly 616.072]; pathology, diagnosis,
   treatment of symptoms of various etiologies
   Class interpretation of symptoms for diagnosis and prognosis in 616.075;
   symptoms of a specific disease or class of diseases with the disease, e.g.,
   symptoms of heart diseases 616.12

.047 2 Pain
   Headaches of unknown origin relocated to 616.8491
   Class headaches in 616.8491

.047 3 Inflammation

.07 Pathology
   Use for detailed descriptions of diseased conditions, causes and
   manifestations, diagnostic techniques. For works lacking detail, prefer 616
   over 616.07
   Class forensic pathology in 614.1
   For cytopathology, see 611.01815; histopathology,
   611.0182–611.0189; medical microbiology, 616.01

.071 Etiology
   Class social factors contributing to the spread of a disease in 362.1042,
   genetic diseases in 616.042
   [.072] Symptomatology
   Relocated to 616.047

.075 Diagnosis and prognosis
   Including ocular diagnosis
   Class here differential diagnosis
   Class nonprofessional diagnosis in 616.024
   See Manual at 616 vs. 616.075

.075 1 Medical history taking
.075 4 Physical diagnosis
   Including thermography
   Class here comprehensive works on diagnostic imaging
   For radiological diagnosis, see 616.0757
   See Manual at 616.0757

.075 43 Ultrasonic diagnosis
   Class here sonography (echography)

.075 44 Sound

.075 45 Optical diagnosis
   Class here endoscopy
   Class microscopy in 616.0758

.075 47 Electrical diagnosis

.075 48 Magnetic diagnosis
   Class here nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) imaging

.075 6 Chemical diagnosis
   Example: immunodiagnosis
   Class here clinical chemistry
   Class radioimmunoassay in 616.0757

.075 61 Blood analysis

.075 63 Analysis of gastroenteric contents

.075 66 Urinalysis
   Class radioscopic urinalysis in 616.0757

.075 7 Radiological diagnosis
   Diagnosis involving use of X-rays, radioactive materials, other
   ionizing radiations
   Examples: radioimmunoassay, radioscopic urinalysis
   Class here comprehensive works on tomography, on medical
   radiology
   For radiotherapy, see 615.842
   See Manual at 616.0757

.075 72 Roentgenology (X-ray examination)
   Including computerized axial (computed) tomography (CAT, CT),
   fluoroscopy
   Use of this number for comprehensive works on tomography
   discontinued; class in 616.0757
   See Manual at 616.0757
Radioisotope scanning
Often called nuclear medicine
Including positron emission tomography (PET)

See also 616.07548 for nuclear magnetic resonance imaging

Microscopy in diagnosis
Class here biopsies

Bacteriological examination

Cytological examination

Histological and histochemical examination

Autopsy (Post-mortem examination)
Class forensic autopsy in 614.1

Death
Class interdisciplinary works on human death in 306.9

Immunity (Immunology) [formerly also 612.11822]
Including interferon, reticuloendothelial system
Class here immunogenetics
Failures of immunity relocated to 616.97, autoimmunity to 616.978
Class immunodiagnosis in 616.0756

See Manual at 591.29 vs. 616.079

Antigens
Antibodies
Immune reactions
Examples: agglutination, precipitation
Class here serology

Psychosomatic medicine
This number is largely limited to the psychosomatic aspects of the diseases defined in 616.1–616.7, 616.9
Class comprehensive works on psychological and psychosomatic aspects of disease in 616.0019, psychosomatic symptoms considered as problems in their own right in 616.047, mental disorders and their somatic manifestation in 616.89, diseases caused by stress in 616.98

See also 616.8525 for hypochondriacal neuroses

Case histories
616.1–616.9 Specific diseases

All notes under 616.01–616.08 are applicable here

Except for additions, changes, deletions, exceptions shown under specific entries, add to the notation for each term identified by * as follows:

001 Philosophy and theory
002 Miscellany
[0023] The specialty as a profession, occupation, hobby
  Do not use; class in 023
[00287] Testing and measurement
  Do not use; class in 075
003–006 Standard subdivisions
007 Education, research, related topics
[00724] Experimental research
  Do not use; class in 027
008 History and description with respect to kinds of persons
0083 Young people
  Class diseases of infants and children up to puberty in 618.92
0084 Persons in specific stages of adulthood
[00846] Late adulthood
  Do not use; class in 618.97
009 Historical, geographical, persons treatment
0092 Persons
  Class life with a physical disease in 362.19, with a mental disorder in 616.890092
01 Microbiology
  Add to 01 the numbers following 616.01 in 616.014–616.019, e.g., fungi 015
  When the cause of a disease or class of diseases is known to be a single type of microorganism, use 01 without further subdivision for works about the type of microorganism
  See Manual at 616.1–616.9: Add table: 071 vs. 01
02 Special topics
023 Personnel
  Nature of duties, characteristics of profession, relationships
  Do not use for the technology of the operations that the personnel perform, e.g., techniques used by a cardiological paramedic 616.12 (not 616.120233)
0232 Physicians
0233 Technicians and assistants
024 Domestic medicine
  Class a specific kind of therapy in 06, e.g., drug therapy 061
  For first aid, see 0252
025 Medical emergencies
  Class here comprehensive works on emergency therapy for specific diseases or kinds of diseases
  Class intensive care in 028; a specific kind of emergency therapy in 06, e.g., emergency drug therapy 061
0252 First aid
027 Experimental medicine

(continued)
> 616.1–616.9 Specific diseases (continued)

028 Intensive care
   Class a specific kind of therapy in 06, e.g., drug therapy 061
029 Terminal care
   Class a specific kind of therapy in 06, e.g., drug therapy 061
03 Rehabilitation
   Restoration of a sick or disabled person by therapy and by training for participation in the activities of a normal life within the limitations of disabilities
   Class comprehensive works on rehabilitation in 617.03, rehabilitative therapy in 06
04 Special classes of diseases
042 Genetic (Hereditary) diseases
   When a specific type of genetic disease has an indirect etiology, class with the system showing the most visible manifestations, e.g., mental retardation caused by hereditary metabolic disorders 616.8588042, not 616.39042
043 Congenital diseases
   Class congenital diseases of genetic origin in 042
05 Preventive measures
   By the individual and by medical personnel
   Class comprehensive works in 613, public measures for preventing specific diseases in 614.5
06 Therapy
   Class here rehabilitative therapy; specific kinds of therapy used in domestic medicine, medical emergencies, intensive care, terminal care
   Class comprehensive works on therapy in 615.5;
   comprehensive works on therapy for specific diseases or kinds of diseases in domestic medicine in 024, in medical emergencies in 025, in intensive care in 028, in terminal care in 029; comprehensive works on rehabilitative therapy and training for persons with a specific disease or kind of disease in 03; comprehensive works on therapy and pathology (07) of a specific disease or kind of disease in the number for the disease or kind of disease, without adding from the add table, e.g., cause, course, and cure of heart disease 616.12 (not 616.1206)
061 Drug therapy
062–069 Other therapies
   Add to 06 the numbers following 615.8 in 615.82–615.89, e.g., X-ray therapy 06422, rehabilitative activity therapies 06515
07 Pathology
   Add to 07 the numbers following 616.07 in 616.071–616.079, e.g., etiology 071, diagnosis 075
   Class social factors contributing to the spread of a disease in 362.19
   See Manual at 616.1–616.9: Add table: 071 vs. 01
08 Psychosomatic medicine
09 Case histories

Class comprehensive works in 616

See Manual at 612.1–612.8
616.1–616.8 Diseases of specific systems and organs

Class comprehensive works in 616, diseases of the immune system in 616.97, tumors (neoplasms) of specific systems and organs in 616.992, tuberculosis of specific systems and organs in 616.995

See Manual at 616.1–616.8

.1 *Diseases of the cardiovascular system

Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) is classed in 616.1025

Class diseases of the blood-forming system in 616.41

SUMMARY

616.11 Diseases of the endocardium and pericardium
.12 Diseases of the heart
.13 Diseases of the blood vessels
.14 Diseases of the veins and capillaries
.15 Diseases of the blood

.11 *Diseases of the endocardium and pericardium

.12 *Diseases of the heart

Example: cor pulmonale

Class here cardiology; necrosis and other degenerative diseases of the heart

For diseases of the endocardium and pericardium, see 616.11

.122 *Angina pectoris

.123 *Coronary diseases (Ischemic heart diseases)

Comprehensive works on heart attacks are classed in 616.123025; works on heart attacks in the sense of myocardial infarction are classed in 616.1237

Class heart attacks not caused by narrowing or blocking of the coronary arteries with the cause, e.g., heart attacks caused by congestive heart failure 616.129025

For angina pectoris, see 616.122

See Manual at 616.123028

.123 2 *Coronary arteriosclerosis

.123 7 *Myocardial infarction

.124 *Myocarditis

Class here comprehensive works on diseases of the myocardium

For myocardial infarction, see 616.1237

.125 *Valvular diseases

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
616 Medical sciences Medicine 616

.127 *Rheumatic heart diseases
   Class rheumatic valvular diseases in 616.125

.128 *Arrhythmia
   Including allorhythmia
   Class implantation of heart pacers in 617.412059, their functioning in 617.4120645

.129 *Heart failure

.13 *Diseases of the blood vessels
   Class here angiology; diseases of the blood vessels in a specific region, e.g., the abdominal and pelvic cavities
   Class diseases of the blood vessels in a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., cerebrovascular diseases 616.81
   *Diseases of the veins and capillaries, see 616.14

.131 *Peripheral vascular diseases
   *For cerebrovascular diseases, see 616.81

.132 *Hypertension
   Essential and renal

.133 *Aneurysms

.135 *Arterial embolisms and thromboses
   *For pulmonary embolisms and thromboses, see 616.249

.136 *Arteriosclerosis
   Class here atherosclerosis

.138 *Diseases of the aorta

.14 *Diseases of the veins and capillaries

.142 *Phlebitis and thrombophlebitis

.143 *Varicose veins (Varix)

.145 *Venous embolisms and thromboses

.148 *Diseases of capillaries
   Including telangiectasis, telangitis

.15 *Diseases of the blood
   Class here hematology
   *For bacterial blood diseases, see 616.94

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
.151 *Diseases of erythrocytes
   Class here hemoglobin disorders
   
   For anemia, see 616.152; polycythemia, 616.153

.152 *Anemia
   Example: thalassemia

.152 7 *Sickle cell anemia

.153 *Polycythemia

.154 *Diseases of leucocytes
   Including agranulocytosis

.156 *Reticulosis

.157 *Hemorrhagic diseases
   Class here comprehensive works on disorders of blood coagulation
   
   For arterial embolisms and thromboses, see 616.135; venous embolisms and thromboses, 616.145

.157 2 *Hemophilia

.2 Diseases of the respiratory system
   Including apnea
   Class here dyspnea

.200 1-.200 3 Standard subdivisions
   As modified under 616.1-616.9

.200 4 Special topics
   Add to base number 616.2004 the numbers following 0 in notation 01-09 from table under 616.1-616.9, e.g., diagnosis of respiratory diseases 616.200475

.200 5-.200 9 Standard subdivisions
   As modified under 616.1-616.9

.201 *Croup

.202 *Respiratory allergies
   Class here hay fever
   Class asthma in 616.238

.203 *Influenza

.204 *Whooping cough (Pertussis)

.205 *Common cold (Coryza)

.208 *Hyperventilation (Overbreathing)

*Add as instructed under 616.1-616.9
*Diseases of the nose, larynx, accessory organs

Class otorhinolaryngology, comprehensive works on diseases of the eyes, ears, nose, throat in 617.51

For laryngology, see 616.22

*Of nose, nasopharynx, accessory sinuses

Class here rhinology

Class the common cold in 616.205

*Diseases of larynx, glottis, vocal cords, epiglottis

Class here laryngology

*Diseases of trachea and bronchi

Examples: bronchiectasis, tracheitis

Class bronchopneumonia in 616.241

*Bronchitis

*Bronchial asthma

Class here comprehensive works on asthma

Class cardiac asthma in 616.12

*Diseases of the lungs

Class here comprehensive works on diseases of lungs and bronchi

Class diseases of bronchi in 616.23, pulmonary tuberculosis in 616.99524

*Pneumonia

Including Legionnaires’ disease

See also 616.245 for necropneumonia

*Pneumoconiosis

Diseases caused by dust and other particles

Examples: asbestosis, black lung disease, byssinosis (brown lung disease), pulmonary abscesses, silicosis

*Necropneumonia

*Emphysema

*Pulmonary embolisms and thromboses

*Diseases of the pleura

Class pleural pneumonia in 616.241

*Diseases of the mediastinum

*Diseases of the digestive system

Class allergies of the digestive system in 616.975

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
SUMMARY

616.31 Diseases of the mouth and throat
   .32 Diseases of the pharynx and esophagus
   .33 Diseases of the stomach
   .34 Diseases of the intestine
   .35 Diseases of the rectum and anus
   .36 Diseases of the biliary tract
   .37 Diseases of the pancreas
   .38 Diseases of the peritoneum
   .39 Nutritional and metabolic diseases

.31 *Diseases of the mouth and throat
   Class the oral region (a broader concept than the mouth as a digestive organ) in 617.522, diseases of the teeth and gums in 617.63
   For laryngology, see 616.22; diseases of the pharynx, 616.32

.312 *Trench mouth (Vincent’s angina)

.313 *Mumps (Epidemic parotitis)

.314 *Diseases of the tonsils

.316 *Diseases of the salivary glands

.32 *Diseases of the pharynx and esophagus

.33 *Diseases of the stomach
   Example: gastroptosis
   Class here gastroenteritis, comprehensive works on gastroenterology (gastrointestinal diseases)
   For diseases of the intestine, see 616.34; typhoid fever, 616.9272; cholera, 616.932; dysenteries, 616.935
   See Manual at 616.932 vs. 616.33

.332 *Functional disorders
   Examples: dyspepsia, disorders of secretion, gastric indigestion

.333 *Gastritis

.334 *Gastric ulcers
   Class peptic ulcers in 616.343

.34 *Diseases of the intestine

.342 *Functional disorders
   Including obstructions

.3423 *Malabsorption

.3427 *Diarrhea

.3428 *Constipation

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
.343  *Peptic ulcers
       Class here comprehensive works on gastric and peptic ulcers
       For gastric ulcers, see 616.334
.343 3  *Duodenal ulcers
.343 4  *Gastrojejunal ulcers
.344  *Enteritis
       Examples: duodenitis, jejunitis
.344 5  *Ileitis
       Including Crohn's disease
.344 7  *Colitis
.35   *Diseases of the rectum and anus
       Class here proctology
.36   *Diseases of the biliary tract
.362  *Diseases of the liver
       362 3  *Hepatitis
       362 4  *Cirrhosis
       362 5  *Jaundice
.365  *Diseases of the gall bladder and bile duct
.37   *Diseases of the pancreas
       Including cystic fibrosis
       Class diseases of pancreatic internal secretion in 616.46
.38   *Diseases of the peritoneum
.39   *Nutritional and metabolic diseases
       Inborn (inherited) errors of metabolism are classed in 616.39042
       Class nutritional and metabolic diseases of a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., metabolic bone diseases 616.716
       For endocrinology, see 616.4

>  616.392–616.396 Deficiency diseases
       Class comprehensive works in 616.39
       .392  *Beriberi
       .393  *Pellagra
       .394  *Scurvy
*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
.395 *Rickets

.396 Other deficiency diseases and states

Examples: emaciation, fatty degeneration, kwashiorkor

Class anorexia nervosa in 616.85262

For multiple deficiency states, see 616.399

.398 *Obesity

Contains nutritional and endocrinal obesity

Food addiction is classed in 616.39808

Class appetite and eating disorders as neuroses in 616.8526

.399 Other nutritional and metabolic diseases

Including multiple deficiency states

.399 5 *Diseases of protein metabolism

Example: amyloidosis

.399 7 *Diseases of lipid metabolism

.399 8 *Diseases of carbohydrate metabolism

.399 9 *Gout

.4 *Diseases of the blood-forming, lymphatic, glandular systems  *Diseases of the endocrine system

Class here endocrinology

Class endocrinal obesity in 616.398; diseases of glands in a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., diseases of female sex glands 618.1

.41 *Of the blood-forming (hematopoietic) system

Spleen and bone marrow disorders

For anemia, see 616.152

.42 *Of the lymphatic system

Examples: lymphatitis, lymphomatosis

Class Hodgkin’s disease in 616.99446

> 616.43–616.48 Of endocrine system

Class comprehensive works in 616.4

.43 *Of the thymus gland

.44 *Of the thyroid and parathyroid glands

.442 *Goiter

.443 *Hyperthyroidism

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
*Hypothyroidism

For myxedema, see 616.858848

*Hyperparathyroidism and hypoparathyroidism

*Diseases of the adrenal glands

Examples: Addison’s disease, Cushing’s syndrome, hyperadrenalism, hypoadrenalism

*Diseases of pancreatic internal secretion (Diseases of the islands of Langerhans)

*Diabetes mellitus

Class here comprehensive works on diabetes

For diabetes insipidus, see 616.47

*Hypoglycemia

*Diseases of the pituitary gland

Examples: diabetes insipidus, dwarfism, gigantism

Including acromegaly, Simmond’s disease

*Diseases of other glands

Example: hyperpinealism

Including polyglandular disorders

*Diseases of the male breast

Class comprehensive works on diseases of the breast in 618.19

*Diseases of the integument, hair, nails

Examples: photosensitivity diseases, sunburn

Class here dermatology

Class comprehensive works on allergies of the skin in 616.973, dermatological manifestations of food and drug allergies in 616.975

Class venereal diseases in 616.951

*Papular eruptions

Including urticaria (hives)

Class here dermatitis

For vesicular and pustular eruptions, see 616.52; contact allergies, 616.973

*Vesicular and pustular eruptions

Example: herpes simplex type 1 (cold sores, fever blisters)

Class herpes simplex type 2 (genital herpes) in 616.9518

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
.521 *Eczema
   Including atopic dermatitis

.522 *Shingles (Herpes zoster)

.523 *Boils and carbuncles (Furuncles)

.524 *Impetigo

.526 *Psoriasis

.53 *Diseases of sebaceous glands
   Examples: acne, blackheads, seborrhea, wens

.54 *Skin hypertrophies, scalp diseases, related disorders
   For pigmentary changes, see 616.55

.544 *Skin hypertrophies
   Examples: callosities, corns, ichthyosis, keratosis, scleroderma, warts
   (verrucae), xeroderma

.545 *Skin ulcerations
   Examples: decubitus ulcers (bedsores)

.546 *Diseases of scalp, hair, hair follicles
   Examples: baldness (alopecia), dandruff, excessive hairiness
   (hypertrichosis)

.547 *Diseases of nails

.55 *Pigmentary changes
   Examples: albinism, moles, pigmentary nevi
   Including comprehensive works on nevi
   Class capillary nevi in 616.99315

.56 *Diseases of sweat glands
   Examples: anhidrosis, heat rash, prickly heat

.57 *Parasitic skin diseases
   Examples: athlete’s foot, mange, ringworm, scabies, yaws

.58 Chilblains, frostbite, chapping

.6 *Diseases of the urogenital system *Diseases of the urinary system
   Class here urology

> 616.61–616.64 Diseases of the urinary system
   Class comprehensive works in 616.6

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
616 *Of kidneys and ureters
   Class here nephrology
   Subdivisions are added for kidneys and ureters, for kidneys alone
   Class renal hypertension in 616.132, kidney stones in 616.622, kidney
   dialysis in 617.461059

616.61 *Nephritis
   Examples: Bright's disease, glomerulonephritis

616.62 *Of bladder and urethra
   For diseases of the male urethra, see 616.64

616.622 *Kidney stones (Urinary calculi)
   Renal and vesical calculi

616.623 *Cystitis

616.624 *Urethritis

616.63 *Urinary manifestations
   Limited to manifestations of diseases of the urogenital system
   Examples: albuminuria, hematuria, proteinuria
   Class interpretation of symptoms for diagnosis and prognosis in 616.6075;
   psychosomatic enuresis in 616.849; urinary manifestations of a specific
   disease or of disease in a specific organ with the disease or organ, e.g.,
   urinary manifestations of renal failure 616.614
   See also 616.07566 for urinalysis in diagnosis of diseases in general

616.633 *Pyuria

616.635 *Uremia

616.64 *Diseases of the male urethra

616.65 *Diseases of the genital system
   Class here *diseases of the male genital system, *diseases of the prostate
   gland
   Class diseases of the female genital system in 618.1; diseases of a specific
   male genital organ not provided for here with the organ, e.g., diseases of the
   male urethra 616.64

616.66 *Diseases of the penis

616.67 *Diseases of the scrotum

616.68 *Diseases of the testicles and accessory organs

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
.69  *Sexual disorders
    Class here male sexual disorders
    Class sexual personality disorders in 616.8583, female sexual disorders in 618.17

.692  *Impotence and infertility
    Class here comprehensive works on male and female infertility, on impotence
    Class impotence as a psychological disorder in 616.85832; female infertility, artificial insemination in 618.178

.693  *Male climacteric disorders
    Class comprehensive works on climacteric disorders in 618.175

.694  *Hermaphroditism

.7  *Diseases of the musculoskeletal system
    See Manual at 617.3 vs. 616.7, 617.5

.71  †Of bones
    Class here chronic diseases of the skeletal system
    Class correction of deformities of the skeletal system (orthopedics), treatment of chronic diseases of the skeletal system in 617.3

    For diseases of the spine, see 616.73

.712  †Osteitis
    Examples: osteitis deformans, osteochondritis, periostitis

.715  †Osteomyelitis

.716  †Disorders of metabolic origin
    Example: osteoporosis
    For rickets, see 616.395

.72  *Diseases of the joints
    For gout, see 616.3999

.722  *Arthritis

.722 3  *Osteoarthritis (Hypertrophic arthritis)

.722 7  *Rheumatoid arthritis
    Class ankylosing spondylitis in 616.73

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
†Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9, except class treatment of chronic diseases in 617.3
.73 *Rheumatism
   Class here rheumatology
   Class a specific rheumatic disease with the disease, e.g., rheumatoid
   arthritis 616.7227, rheumatic fever 616.991

.73 *Diseases of the spine
   Example: ankylosing spondylitis

.74 *Diseases of the muscles
   Class diseases of muscles in a specific system or organ with the system or
   organ, e.g., diseases of the heart 616.12

.742 *Muscular rheumatism

.743 *Myositis

.744 *Neuromuscular diseases
   Class neuromuscular diseases resulting from disorders of the central
   nervous system in 616.83

.744 2 *Myasthenia gravis

.748 *Progressive muscular dystrophy

.75 *Diseases of tendons and fasciae

.76 *Diseases of bursae and sheaths of tendons

.77 *Diseases of connective tissue
   Including Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, Marfan syndrome, systemic lupus
   erythematosus
   Class here collagen diseases
   *Add as instructed under 616.1-616.9

.8 Diseases of the nervous system and mental disorders
   Class here neuropsychiatry
   Use 616.8001-616.8009 for standard subdivisions

   SUMMARY

   616.801-.809 Standard subdivisions of neurology, of brain diseases
   .81 Cerebrovascular diseases
   .82 Meningeal diseases
   .83 Other organic diseases of the central nervous system
   .84 Manifestations of neurological diseases and mental disorders
   .85 Miscellaneous diseases of the nervous system and mental disorders
   .86 Substance abuse (Drug abuse)
   .87 Diseases of the cranial, spinal, peripheral nerves
   .88 Diseases of the autonomic (sympathetic and parasympathetic) nervous
   system
   .89 Mental disorders

*Add as instructed under 616.1-616.9
.801–.803 Standard subdivisions of neurology, of brain diseases
    As modified under 616.1–616.9

.804 Special topics in neurology, in brain diseases
    Add to base number 616.804 the numbers following 0 in notation 01–09
    from table under 616.1–616.9, e.g., diagnosis of brain diseases
    616.80475
    Class manifestations of neurological diseases as problems in their own
    right in 616.84

.805–.809 Standard subdivisions of neurology, of brain diseases
    As modified under 616.1–616.9

> 616.81–616.84 Neurology Brain diseases

Class comprehensive works in 616.8, diseases of nerves in a specific system or
organ with the system or organ, e.g., neuromuscular diseases 616.74

For diseases of the cranial, spinal, peripheral nerves, see 616.87; of the
autonomic nervous system, 616.88

.81 *Cerebrovascular diseases
    Examples: apoplexy (stroke)

.82 *Meningeal diseases
    Example: meningitis

.83 Other organic diseases of the central nervous system
    Examples: amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, Friedreich’s ataxia, tardive
dyskinesia
    Class here diseases of basal ganglia, of the spinal cord

    For chorea, see 616.851; epilepsy, 616.853; senile dementia, 616.8983

.831 *Alzheimer’s disease

.832 *Encephalitis

.833 *Parkinson’s disease (Paralysis agitans)

.834 *Multiple sclerosis

.835 *Poliomyelitis

.836 *Cerebral palsy

.837 *Paraplegia
    Neurological aspects only
    Class comprehensive works on neurological and surgical aspects in
    617.58

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
.838  *Locomotor ataxia (Tabes dorsalis)

Class comprehensive works on syphilis in 616.9513, general paresis in 616.892

.84  Manifestations of neurological diseases and mental disorders

Symptoms as problems in their own right

Class here pathology, diagnosis, treatment of symptoms

Class interpretation of symptoms for diagnosis and prognosis of neurological disease in 616.80475, of mental disorders in 616.89075; migraine in 616.857; diagnostic and prognostic interpretation of symptoms of a specific disease or class of diseases with the disease, e.g., of schizophrenia 616.8982075

.841  Dizziness (Vertigo)

.842  Paralysis

[.844]  Spinal irritation

Number discontinued; class in 616.84

.845  Convulsions

.849  Miscellaneous symptoms

Limited to coma, enuresis, pain, reflex disturbances, and the symptoms provided for below

Use of this number for other symptoms discontinued; class in 616.84

.849 1  *Headache

Example: cluster headache

Including headaches of unknown origin [formerly 616.0472]

For migraine, see 616.857

.849 8  Sleep disturbances

Example: insomnia

.85  Miscellaneous diseases of the nervous system and mental disorders

Only those named below

**SUMMARY**

616.851  Chorea

.852  Neuroses

.853  Epilepsy

.855  Speech and language disorders

.856  Cutaneous sensory disorders

.857  Migraine

.858  Disorders of personality and intellect

.851  *Chorea

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
.852 †Neuroses

Class neurotic aspects of a specific disease with the disease, e.g., of asthma 616.238

For speech and language disorders, see 616.855

See also 616.856 for cutaneous sensory disorders

.852 1 †Traumatic neuroses

Examples: compensation and occupation neuroses, posttraumatic stress disorder

.852 12 †War neuroses (Combat fatigue)

.852 2 †Anxiety, phobic, obsessive-compulsive neuroses

.852 23 †Anxiety neuroses

.852 25 †Phobic neuroses

Example: agoraphobia

.852 27 †Obsessive-compulsive neurosis

Example: compulsive gambling

.852 3 †Dissociative reactions

.852 32 †Amnesia and fugue

Subdivisions are added for amnesia and fugue, for amnesia alone

.852 36 †Dual and multiple personalities

.852 4 †Hysterical neuroses

For dissociative reactions, see 616.8523

.852 5 †Hypochondriacal neuroses

.852 6 †Eating disorders

Class here appetite disorders

.852 62 †Anorexia nervosa

.852 63 †Bulimia

.852 7 †Depressive neuroses

Class here comprehensive works on depression

Class postpartum depression in 618.76

For neurasthenia, see 616.8528; manic-depressive psychoses, 616.895

.852 8 †Neurasthenia (Asthenic reactions)

Chronic fatigue and depression

Class comprehensive works on depression in 616.8527

.853 *Epilepsy

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

†Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9, except use 0651 also for psychotherapies
.855  †Speech and language disorders
Class here comprehensive works on communicative disorders, on voice disorders
Class comprehensive works on learning and communicative disorders in 616.85889

.855 2 *Neurological language disorders (Aphasias)
Diminution or loss of faculty of language in any of its forms due to cerebral lesions, e.g., agnosia, agrammatism, aphasia, apraxia

For written language disorders, see 616.8553

.855 3  †Written language disorders
Class here dyslexia

.855 4  †Stammering and stuttering

.856 *Cutaneous sensory disorders
Examples: anesthesia, hyperesthesia, hypesthesia, paresthesia

.857 *Migraine

.858 Disorders of personality and intellect

.858 2  †Sociopathic personality disorders
Class here self-destructive tendencies, violent behavior
Class sexual disorders in 616.8583, substance abuse in 616.86

For other sociopathic neuroses and suicidal compulsions, see 616.8584

.858 22  †Family violence and abuse
Examples: child abuse, spouse abuse
Class incest, sexual abuse of children in 616.8583

.858 3  †Sexual disorders
Including incest, sexual abuse of children

.858 32  †Frigidity and impotence
Class comprehensive works on impotence in 616.692

.858 33  †Nymphomania and satyromania

.858 34  †Homosexuality

.858 35  †Sadism and masochism

.858 4 Other sociopathic neuroses and suicidal compulsions

.858 42  †Kleptomania

.858 43  †Pyromania

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
†Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9, except use 0651 also for psychotherapies
Homicidal and suicidal compulsions

†Suicidal compulsions

†Compulsive lying and †defrauding

Borderline and narcissistic personality disorders

†Borderline personality disorder

*Mental deficiency and learning disabilities

Class here feeblemindedness, mental retardation

Due to deformity, injury, disease

*Down’s syndrome

*Hydrocephalus

*Meningocele

*Cerebral sphingolipidosis

Former heading: Amaurotic idiocy

Example: Tay-Sachs disease

*Myxedema

Example: congenital myxedema (cretinism)

*Learning disabilities

Regardless of level of intelligence

Class here comprehensive works on learning and communicative disorders

Class communicative disorders in 616.855; learning disabilities associated with a specific disorder with the disorder, e.g., minimal brain dysfunction 616.8589

*Attention deficit disorder and *hyperactivity (hyperkinesia)

Class here minimal brain dysfunction

‡Substance abuse (Drug abuse)

Examples: abuse of analgesics, depressants, inhalants, sedatives, tranquilizers

Class here addiction, habituation, intoxication

Class interdisciplinary works on substance abuse in 362.29, comprehensive medical works on addictive and disorienting drugs in 615.78, personal measures to prevent substance abuse in 613.8, food addiction in 616.3980

‡Alcohol

Class here alcoholism

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

†Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9, except use 0651 also for psychotherapies

‡Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9, except use 0651 also for psychotherapies and do not use 05; class prevention in 613.8 or its subdivisions
[.862] Effect of metallic intoxication on nervous system and mental condition
   Number discontinued; class in 616.8

.863 ‡Narcotics, hallucinogens, psychedelics, cannabis
   Use of this number for comprehensive works on drug abuse discontinued; class in 616.86

.863 2 ‡Narcotics
   Opium and its derivatives and synthetic equivalents
   Class here specific narcotics, e.g., heroin, morphine

.863 4 ‡Hallucinogens and ‡psychedelics
   Class here specific hallucinogens and psychedelics, e.g., LSD, mescaline, PCP
   Class cannabis in 616.8635

.863 5 ‡Cannabis
   Class here specific kinds of cannabis, e.g., hashish, marijuana

.864 ‡Stimulants and related substances
   Class here specific kinds of stimulants, e.g., amphetamine, ephedrine
   Class nicotine in 616.865

.864 7 ‡Cocaine
   Class here specific forms of cocaine, e.g., crack

.865 ‡Tobacco

.87 *Diseases of the cranial, spinal, peripheral nerves
   Examples: disorders of taste and smell, neuralgias, neuritis, sciatica
   Class neurofibromatosis in 616.99383

   For herpes zoster, see 616.522; cutaneous sensory disorders, 616.856; diseases of the autonomic system, 616.88

.88 *Diseases of the autonomic (sympathetic and parasympathetic) nervous system

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
‡Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9, except use 0651 also for psychotherapies and do not use 05; class prevention in 613.8 or its subdivisions
.89  *Mental disorders

Class here comparative abnormal behavior of animals [formerly also 156.7], abnormal and clinical psychologies [formerly also 157], psychiatry

Class manifestations of mental disorders in 616.84 when considered as symptoms so serious that they become problems in their own right; puerperal mental disorders in 618.76; physical manifestations of mental disorders involving a specific system with the system, using 08 from the table under 616.1–616.9 if appropriate, e.g., psychosomatic ulcers 616.3408

For neuroses, see 616.852; disorders of personality and intellect, 616.858

See Manual at 150.195 vs. 616.89

[.890 083 5]  With respect to young adults

Do not use; class in 616.89022

.890 22  Mental disorders of young adults

Aged twelve to twenty

[.890 6]  Therapy

Do not use; class in 616.891

.891  Therapy

.891 2  Shock therapy

Examples: insulin and other drug shock therapies

.891 22  Electric shock therapy (Electroconvulsive therapy)

.891 3  Physical therapies

For electric shock therapy, see 616.89122; psychosurgery, 617.481

.891 4  Psychotherapy

For group and family psychotherapy, see 616.8915; mental and activity therapies, 616.8916; psychoanalysis, 616.8917

.891 42  Behavior therapy (Behavior modification therapy)

.891 43  Gestalt therapy

.891 44  Milieu therapy

Utilization of the environment for treatment

.891 45  Transactional analysis

.891 5  Group and family psychotherapy

.891 52  Group psychotherapy

.891 523  Psychodrama

.891 56  Family psychotherapy

Including marital psychotherapy

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
.891 6 Mental and activity therapies

Add to base number 616.8916 the numbers following 615.851 in 615.8512–615.8516, e.g., hypnotherapy 616.89162

.891 7 Psychoanalysis

[.891 701 9] Psychological principles of psychoanalysis

Do not use; class in 150.195 unless applied to therapy, in which case class in 616.8917

.891 8 Drug therapy

Class drug shock therapy in 616.8912

> 616.892–616.898 Psychoses

Class here functional psychoses, organic psychoses

Class comprehensive works in 616.89; puerperal psychoses in 618.76; a specific organic psychosis not provided for here with the subject, e.g., psychosis due to brain tumors 616.99281

.892 *General paresis (Neurosyphilis)

Class comprehensive works on syphilis in 616.9513, locomotor ataxia in 616.838

.895 †Manic-depressive psychoses

Including depressive reactions, involutional psychoses

Class here manic, depressive, circular and alternating manic-depressive psychoses

Class comprehensive works on depression in 616.8527

.897 †Paranoia and paranoid conditions

.898 Schizophrenia, autism, senile dementia

.898 2 †Schizophrenia and †autism

.898 3 †Senile dementia

See also 616.831 for Alzheimer’s disease

.9 Other diseases

Class here communicable diseases not otherwise provided for

See Manual at 616.01 vs. 616.9

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

†Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9, except use 0651 also for psychotherapies
SUMMARY

616.901-.909 Standard subdivisions of communicable diseases

.91 Eruptive diseases (Exanthems)
.92 Bacterial and viral diseases
.93 Bacillary and protozoan diseases, cholera, dysenteries
.94 Bacterial blood diseases
.95 Venereal diseases and zoonoses
.96 Parasitic diseases
.97 Diseases of the immune system
.98 Noncommunicable diseases
.99 Tumors and miscellaneous communicable diseases

.901-.903 Standard subdivisions of communicable diseases

As modified under 616.1–616.9

.904 Special topics in communicable diseases

Add to base number 616.904 the numbers following 0 in notation 01–09 from table under 616.1–616.9, e.g., diagnosis of communicable diseases 616.90475

.905-.909 Standard subdivisions of communicable diseases

As modified under 616.1–616.9

> 616.91–616.96 Communicable diseases

Class comprehensive works in 616.9; a specific communicable disease not provided for here with the disease, e.g., mumps 616.313

.91 *Eruptive diseases (Exanthems)

For eruptive fevers, see 616.9223

.912 *Smallpox (Variola major)
.913 *Attenuated forms of smallpox

Examples: alastrim (amaas, Cuban itch, variola minor), cowpox (variola vaccinia)

.914 *Chicken pox (Varicella)
.915 *Measles (Rubeola)
.916 *German measles (Rubella)
.917 *Scarlet fever (Scarlatina)

.92 *Bacterial and viral diseases

Examples: Lyme disease, toxic shock syndrome

Class a specific bacterial disease or group of bacterial diseases not provided for here with the disease or group of diseases, e.g., bacterial blood diseases 616.94

.921 *Dengue fever

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
.922 *Rickettsial diseases
.922 2 *Epidemic (Louse-borne) and murine (flea-borne) typhus
  Including Brill’s disease
.922 3 *Rickettsialpox and tick typhus
  Including boutonneuse fever
  Class here eruptive fevers, spotted fevers
  
  *For North Queensland tick typhus, see 616.9226
.922 4 *Tsutsugamushi disease (Scrub typhus, Japanese river fever)
.922 5 *Q fever
.922 6 Bullis fever, North Queensland tick typhus, trench fever
.923 *Pasteurella and related diseases
.923 2 *Bubonic plague
.923 9 *Tularemia
.924 *Colorado tick fever and relapsing fevers
.924 2 *Colorado tick fever
.924 4 *Relapsing fevers
.925 *Viral diseases
  Including comprehensive works on herpesvirus diseases
  Class a specific viral disease or group of viral diseases with the disease or
  group of diseases, e.g., shingles 616.522, herpes simplex 2 (genital
  herpes) 616.9518
.927 *Salmonella diseases
.927 2 *Typhoid fever (Enteric fever)
.927 4 *Paratyphoid fever
.928 *Yellow fever
.93 Bacillary and protozoan diseases, cholera, dysenteries
.931 *Bacillary diseases
  
  For bacillary dysentery, see 616.9355
.931 3 *Diphtheria
.931 5 *Botulism
.931 8 *Tetanus
.932 *Cholera
  
  See Manual at 616.932 vs. 616.33

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
.935 *Dysenteries
.935 3 *Amebic dysentery
.935 5 *Bacillary dysentery (Shigella diseases)
.936 *Protozoan diseases

For amebic dysentery, see 616.9353

.936 2 *Malaria
.936 3 *Trypanosomiasis

Examples: African sleeping sickness, e.g., Gambian and Rhodesian
trypanosomiasis; Chagas’ disease (South American trypanosomiasis)

.936 4 *Leishmaniasis

Examples: cutaneous leishmaniasis (oriental sores), mucocutaneous
leishmaniasis (forest yaws), visceral leishmaniasis (kala-azar)

.94 *Bacterial blood diseases
.942 *Erysipelas
.944 *Septicemia and pyemia

.95 Venereal diseases and zoonoses

For tularemia, see 616.9239

.951 *Venereal diseases

Class acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) in 616.9792

.951 3 *Syphilis

For locomotor ataxia, see 616.838; general paresis
(neurosyphilis), 616.892

.951 5 *Gonorrhea

.951 8 Other venereal diseases

Examples: chancroid, herpes simplex type 2 (genital herpes),
lymphogranuloma venereum

.953 *Rabies (Hydrophobia)
.954 *Glanders (Equinia)
.956 *Anthrax

Variant names: charbon, splenic fever

Example: Woolsorters’ disease

.957 *Undulant fever (Brucellosis)
.958 *Parrot fever (Psittacosis)
.959 *Zoonoses

Class a specific zoonosis with the disease, e.g., Q fever 616.9225

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
*Parasitic diseases
   Class here medical parasitology
   *For parasitic skin diseases, see 616.57

*Diseases due to endoparasites
   *For diseases due to worms, see 616.963–616.965

> 616.963–616.965 Diseases due to worms
   Class here medical helminthology
   Class comprehensive works in 616.962

*Diseases due to flukes (Trematoda)
   Example: schistosomiasis (bilharziasis)

*Diseases due to tapeworms (Cestoda)
   Examples: hydatid diseases (echinococcosis)

*Diseases due to roundworms (Nematoda)

*To filariae
   Examples: elephantiasis, onchocerciasis, wuchereriasis
   Class here filariasis

*To other nematodes
   Including ascariasis, enterobiasis, hookworm infestations
   (ancyclostomiasis), trichinosis

*Diseases due to ectoparasites
   Class here medical entomology
   Class a specific entomological disease with the disease, e.g., Colorado
   tick fever 616.9242

*Diseases due to fungi
   Including fungal allergies
   Class here medical mycology

*Diseases of the immune system
   Former heading: Allergies and autoimmune diseases
   Class here failures of immunity [formerly also 616.079], comprehensive
   works on allergies
   Class a specific allergy not provided for here with the subject, e.g., hay fever
   616.202

*Contact allergies
   Class here dermatological allergies

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
.975 *Food and drug allergies
   Class here allergies of the digestive system

.977 *Physical allergies
   Hypersensitivity to physical agents, e.g., heat, sunlight, cold, humidity

.978 *Autoimmune diseases
   Diseases caused by immune reactions to the body’s own tissues
   Class here autoimmunity [formerly 616.079]
   Class systemic lupus erythematosus in 616.77

.979 *Immune deficiency diseases

.979 2 *Acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS)

.98 Noncommunicable diseases
   Class here environmental medicine, diseases due to stress
   Use 616.98001–616.98009 for standard subdivisions
   Class noncommunicable diseases of a specific organ or system with the subject, e.g., mental disorders 616.89
   For tumors, see 616.992

.980 2 Specialized medical fields
   Example: travel medicine
   For industrial and occupational medicine, see 616.9803

.980 21 Aerospace medicine

.980 213 Aviation medicine

.980 214 Space medicine

.980 22 Submarine medicine
   Class diseases due to compression and decompression in 616.9894

.980 23 Military medicine
   For naval medicine, see 616.98024

.980 24 Naval medicine

.980 3 Industrial and occupational medicine
   See also 613.62 for industrial and occupational health

.988 *Diseases due to climate and weather
   Class here medical climatology and meteorology
   Add to base number 616.988 the numbers following — 1 in notation 11–13 from Table 2, e.g., diseases due to tropical climate 616.9883
*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
*Diseases due to physical agents

Examples: heat exhaustion, hypothermia

Diseases due to light are predominantly dermatological and are classed in 616.5

*To motion

*To altitude

Example: mountain sickness

*To compression and decompression

*To sound and other vibrations

*To radiation

Class here comprehensive medical works on radiation sickness and injuries

Tumors and miscellaneous communicable diseases

Only those named below

Use of this number for other diseases discontinued; class in 616.9

*Rheumatic fever

†Tumors (Neoplasms and neoplastic diseases)

Medical and surgical treatment

Class here oncology

Add to base number 616.992 the numbers following 611 in 611.1–611.9, e.g., tumors of teeth and surrounding tissues 616.992314 [formerly 617.63], tumors of eyes 616.99284 [formerly 617.7]; tumors of ears 616.99285 [formerly 617.8]; then add further as instructed under 618.1–618.8

For benign tumors, see 616.993; malignant tumors, 616.994

See Manual at 616.992 vs. 616.994

†Benign tumors (neoplasms)

Medical and surgical treatment

Example: adenomas [formerly also 616.994]

Add to base number 616.993 the numbers following 611 in 611.1–611.9, e.g., neurofibromatosis (Recklinghausen's disease) 616.99383, benign skin tumors 616.99377; then add further as instructed under 618.1–618.8

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

†Add as instructed under 618.1–618.8
.994 †Cancers (Malignant tumors [neoplasms])
   Medical and surgical treatment
   Class here carcinomas
   Adenomas relocated to 616.993
   See Manual at 616.992 vs. 616.994

.994 1 †Of cardiovascular organs and blood

.994 11–.994 15 Of cardiovascular organs
   Add to base number 616.9941 the numbers following 611.1 in
   611.11–611.15, e.g., cancer of heart 616.99412; then add further
   as instructed under 618.1–618.8

.994 18 †Of the blood
   Including erythrocytes, plasma, platelets
   For cancer of leucocytes, see 616.99419

.994 19 †Leukemia
   Cancer of leucocytes

.994 2–.994 9 Cancers (Malignant tumors [neoplasms]) of other organs and of regions
   Add to base number 616.994 the numbers following 611 in
   611.2–611.9, e.g., cancer of lymphatic glands (Hodgkin’s disease)
   616.99446; then add further as instructed under 618.1–618.8

.995 *Tuberculosis
   Add to base number 616.995 the numbers following 611 in 611.1–611.9,
   e.g., tuberculosis of the teeth and surrounding tissues 616.995314
   [formerly 617.63], tuberculosis of the eyes 616.99584 [formerly 617.7],
   tuberculosis of the ears 616.99585 [formerly 617.8], pulmonary
   tuberculosis 616.99524; then add further as instructed, under
   616.1–616.9
   See Manual at 616.995

.998 *Leprosy (Hansen’s disease)

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9
†Add as instructed under 618.1–618.8
617 **Miscellaneous branches of medicine**  

Only those branches named below

Comprehensive works on major, minor, emergency surgery are classed in 617.024–617.026; on surgery by instrument and technique in 617.05; on surgical pathology in 617.07; on operative surgery and special fields of surgery in 617.9

Except where contrary instructions are given, all notes under 616.01–616.08 and in the table under 616.1–616.9 are applicable here

Except for additions, changes, deletions, exceptions shown under specific entries, add to notation for each term identified by * as follows:

- **001–007** Standard subdivisions  
  As modified under 616.1–616.9

- **008** History and description with respect to kinds of persons

- **0083** Young people  
  Class dentistry for infants and children in 617.645; surgery for infants and children up to puberty in 617.98; regional medicine, ophthalmology, otology, audiology for infants and children up to puberty in 618.92097

- **0084** Persons in specific stages of adulthood
  - [00846] Late adulthood  
    Do not use; class in 618.97, except class surgery in 617.97

- **0088** Occupational and religious groups

- **0088355** Military personnel  
  Class military surgery in 617.99

- **[009]** Historical, geographical, persons treatment  
  Do not use; class in 09

- **01** Surgical complications and sequelae  
  Examples: complicating preconditions, e.g., heart problems; surgical infections

- **02** Special topics
  - **023** Personnel  
    Nature of duties, characteristics of profession, relationships
  - **0232** Physicians
  - **0233** Technicians and assistants
  - **024** Domestic medicine  
    *For first aid, see 0262*

- **026** Emergencies

- **0262** First aid

- **027** Experimental medicine

- **028** Intensive care

- **03** Rehabilitation  
  Restoration of a sick or disabled person by therapy and by training for participation in the activities of a normal life within the limitations of disabilities  
  Including self-help devices for persons with disabilities  
  Class rehabilitative therapy in 06

- **04** Special classes of diseases

- **042** Genetic diseases

- **043** Congenital diseases  
  Class congenital diseases of genetic origin in 042

- **044** Wounds and injuries

- **05** Preventive measures and surgery (continued)
617 Miscellaneous branches of medicine  Surgery (continued)

052 Preventive measures
  By the individual and by medical personnel
  Class comprehensive works on prevention in 613, public
  measures for preventing specific diseases in 614.5

059 Surgery
  Including surgery utilizing specific instruments or techniques,
  e.g., catheterization, cryosurgery, laser surgery, microsurgery
  For surgical complications and sequelae, see 01
  See Manual at 617: Add table: 059

0592 Cosmetic and restorative plastic surgery, transplantation of
  tissue and organs, implantation of artificial organs

06 Therapy
  Class here rehabilitative therapy
  Class comprehensive works on rehabilitative therapy and training
  for persons with a specific disease or kind of disease in 03
  For surgery, see 059
  See Manual at 617: Add table: 06

061 Drug therapy

062–069 Other therapies
  Add to 06 the numbers following 615.8 in 615.82–615.89, e.g.,
  X-ray therapy 06422, rehabilitative activity therapies 06515

07 Pathology
  Add to 07 the numbers following 616.07 in 616.071–616.079,
  e.g., physical diagnosis 0754

08 Psychosomatic medicine

09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment
  Add to 09 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., the subject in India
  0954

See Manual at 615.7 vs. 616–618; 617 vs. 616; 618.9209 vs. 617; 618.977
vs. 617

SUMMARY

617.001–.008 Standard subdivisions of surgery
  .01–.09 [General topics]
    .1 Wounds and injuries
    .2 Results of injuries
    .3 Orthopedics
    .4 Surgery by systems
    .5 Regional medicine  Regional surgery
    .6 Dentistry
    .7 Ophthalmology
    .8 Otology and audiology
    .9 Operative surgery and special fields of surgery

  .001 Philosophy and theory of surgery

  .002 Miscellany of surgery

[.002 3] Surgery as a profession, occupation, hobby
  Do not use; class in 617.023
.002 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
Do not use; class in 617.9, except class testing and measurement in 617.075

.003-.007 Standard subdivisions of surgery

.008 History and description of surgery with respect to kinds of persons

.008 3 Young people
Class surgery for infants and children up to puberty in 617.98

.008 4 Persons in specific stages of adulthood

[.008 46] Late adulthood
Do not use; class in 617.97

.008 8 Occupational and religious groups

[.008 835 5] Military personnel
Do not use; class in 617.99

[.009] Historical, geographical, persons treatment of surgery
Do not use; class in 617.09

.01 Surgical complications and sequelae
Examples: complicating preconditions, e.g., heart problems; surgical infection

.02 Special topics

.023 Personnel
Nature of duties, characteristics of profession, relationships
Do not use for the technology of the operations that the personnel perform, e.g., physical diagnosis by a surgeon 617.0754 (not 617.0232)

.023 2 Surgeons

.023 3 Surgical technicians and assistants

.024 Minor surgery
Class here outpatient surgery

.025 Major surgery

.026 Emergency surgery

.026 2 First aid

.03 Rehabilitation
Restoration of a sick or disabled person by therapy and by training for participation in the activities of a normal life within the limitations of disabilities
Including self-help devices for persons with disabilities
Class rehabilitative therapy in 617.06
.05 Surgery by instrument and technique
   Examples: cryosurgery, laser surgery, microsurgery

.06 Nonsurgical therapy
   Class here rehabilitative therapy
   Add to base number 617.06 the numbers following 615.8 in 615.82–615.89, e.g., X-ray therapy 617.06422, rehabilitative activity therapies in 617.06515
   Class comprehensive works on rehabilitative therapy and training in 617.03

.07 Pathology
   Add to base number 617.07 the numbers following 616.07 in 616.071–616.079, e.g., physical diagnosis 617.0754

.08 Psychosomatic medicine

.09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment of surgery
   Add to base number 617.09 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., collective biographies of surgeons 617.0922

> 617.1–617.5 Surgery
   Class comprehensive works in 617, surgical treatment of tumors in 616.992–616.994
   For operative surgery and special fields of surgery, see 617.9

.1 Wounds and injuries
   Class here traumatology
   Use 617.1001–617.1009 for standard subdivisions
   Class wounds and injuries of specific systems, regions, organs in 617.4–617.5
   Class results of injuries in 617.2

.102 Special topics

.102 6 Emergencies

.102 62 First aid
   Class first aid for a specific type of wound or injury with the type, e.g., first aid for crash wounds 617.1028

.102 7 Athletic injuries
   Class here sports medicine
   Class a specific branch of sports medicine with the subject, e.g., promotion of health of athletes 613.711

.102 8 Crash injuries
   Injuries resulting from transportation accidents
.103 Rehabilitation
Restoration of a sick or disabled person by therapy and by training for participation in the activities of a normal life within the limitations of disabilities
Including self-help devices for persons with disabilities
Class rehabilitative therapy in 617.106

.106 Nonsurgical therapy
Class here rehabilitative therapy
Add to base number 617.106 the numbers following 615.8 in 615.82–615.89, e.g., therapeutic massage 617.10622, rehabilitative activity therapies 615.8+515
Class comprehensive works on rehabilitative therapy and training in 617.103

.107 Pathology
Add to base number 617.107 the numbers following 616.07 in 616.071–616.079, e.g., physical diagnosis 617.10754

.11 *Burns and scalds
Class burns and scalds resulting from injuries from electricity and radiation in 617.12

.12 *Injuries from electricity and radiation
.122 *From electricity
.124 *From radiation
Class comprehensive medical works on radiation sickness and injuries in 616.9897

.13 *Abrasions and contusions

.14 *Wounds
For abrasions and contusions, see 617.13

.140 6 Therapy
Class removal of foreign bodies from wounds in 617.146

.143 *Incisions, lacerations, punctures
.145 *Gunshot wounds
.146 Removal of foreign bodies from wounds

.15 Fractures
Add to base number 617.15 the numbers following 611.71 in 611.711–611.718, e.g., fracture of femur 617.158

.16 *Dislocations
*Add as instructed under 617
.17 *Sprains and strains

.18 *Asphyxiation
   Examples: choking, drowning, hanging, strangulation, suffocation

.19 *Blast injuries

.2 Results of injuries
   See also 617.103 for rehabilitation, 617.106 for rehabilitative therapy

.21 Traumatic and surgical shock

.22 Inflammation, infection, fever

.3 Orthopedics
   Correction of deformities
   Class here treatment of chronic diseases of the skeletal system
   Class plastic surgery of bones in 617.4710592
   For fractures, see 617.15
   See Manual at 617.3 vs. 616.7, 617.5

.300 1 Philosophy and theory

.300 2 Miscellany

.300 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
   Class orthopedic appliances in 617.307

.300 3-.300 9 Standard subdivisions

.307 Orthopedic appliances
   See Manual at 617.307 vs. 617.9

.37 *Deformities
   For deformities of the extremities, see 617.39

.371 *Head and neck

.374 *Chest

.375 *Spine
   Example: scoliosis

.376 *Hip and pelvis

.39 *Deformities of the extremities
   Class amputations in 617.58

.397 *Upper extremities

.398 *Lower extremities
   See also 617.585 for podiatry

*Add as instructed under 617
> 617.4–617.5 Surgery by systems and regions

Class here wounds and injuries of specific systems, regions, organs; surgery of specific organs

Class comprehensive works in 617

.4 Surgery by systems

*Cardiovascular system

*Heart

Implantation of heart pacers is classed in 617.412059, their functioning in 617.4120645

*Arteries

Class here comprehensive works on surgery of blood vessels (vascular surgery)

Class surgery of blood vessels in a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., cerebrovascular surgery 617.481

For veins, see 617.414; capillaries, 617.415

*Veins

*Capillaries

*Digestive system

Including bariatric surgery

Class surgery of specific organs of digestive system in 617.5

*Glands and lymphatic system

Including bone marrow

Class surgery of a specific gland with the gland, e.g., thyroid gland 617.539

*Urogenital system

Class gynecological and obstetrical surgery in 618

*Kidneys, adrenal glands, ureters

Class here comprehensive works on surgery of urinary organs

Subdivisions may be added for surgery of kidneys

Hemodialysis, peritoneal dialysis are classed in 617.461059

For bladder and urethra, see 617.462

*Bladder and urethra

*Add as instructed under 617
.463 *Male genital organs

.47 *Motor and integumentary systems
   
   *Add as instructed under 617

   For amputations, see 617.58

.471 *Bones
   
   Class chronic diseases of the skeletal system in 616.71
   
   See also 617.44 for bone marrow

.471 044 Wounds and injuries
   
   For fractures, see 617.15

.472 *Joints
   
   Surgery of joints of the extremities relocated to 617.58
   
   For jaws, see 617.522
   
   See also 616.72 for nonsurgical medical aspects of joints

.472 044 Wounds and injuries
   
   For dislocations, see 617.16

.473 *Muscles

.473 044 Wounds and injuries
   
   For sprains and strains, see 617.17

.474 *Tendons

.475 *Bursae

.477 *Integument
   
   Class here surgery of the skin

.477 9 *Hair
   
   Including removal, transplantation

.48 *Nervous system
   
   Class here neurosurgery

   Class ophthalmological surgery in 617.71; otological surgery in 617.81–617.88; surgery of nerves of a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., neuromuscular surgery 617.473

.481 *Brain
   
   Including psychosurgery, topectomy

.482 *Spinal cord
   
   Including surgical treatment of spina bifida

.483 *Nerves

For amputations, see 617.58
.5 Regional medicine  Regional surgery

Class nonsurgical medicine of specific systems or organs in specific regions in 616

See Manual at 617.3 vs. 616.7, 617.5; 617.5

SUMMARY

617.51  Head
  .52  Face
  .53  Neck
  .54  Thorax (Chest) and respiratory system
  .55  Abdominal and pelvic cavities
  .56  Back
  .57  Upper extremities
  .58  Lower extremities

.51  *Head

Class here otorhinolaryngology, comprehensive works on diseases of eyes, ears, nose, throat

Class ears in 617.8

For face, see 617.52; throat, 617.531

.514  *Skull

.52  *Face

Class eyes in 617.7

.522  *Oral region

Including lips, tongue, jaws, parotid gland

Class the mouth as a digestive organ in 616.31, teeth in 617.6

See Manual at 617.522 vs. 617.605

.522 5  *Palate

.523  *Nose

Class here comprehensive works on nose and throat

Class comprehensive works on diseases of eyes, ears, nose, throat in 617.51

For throat, see 617.531

.53  *Neck

.531  *Throat

For pharynx, see 617.532; larynx and trachea, 617.533

.532  *Pharynx

Including tonsils

*Add as instructed under 617
.533 *Larynx and trachea
    Including epiglottis, vocal cords
.539 *Thyroid and parathyroid glands
.54 *Thorax (Chest) and respiratory system
    Class surgery of heart in 617.412, of nose in 617.523, of larynx and trachea
    in 617.533
.542 *Lungs
.543 *Pleura
.544 *Bronchi
.545 *Mediastinum
.546 *Thymus gland
.547 *Diaphragm
.548 *Esophagus
.549 *Male breast
    Class comprehensive works on surgery of the breast in 618.19
.55 *Abdominal and pelvic cavities
    For urogenital system, see 617.46
.551 *Spleen
.553 *Stomach
    Including pylorus
.554 *Intestine
    *Small intestine
        Contains duodenum, jejunum, ileum
.554 5 *Cecum and vermiform appendix
.554 7 *Large intestine
    Including colon, sigmoid flexure (sigmoid colon)
        For cecum and vermiform appendix, see 617.5545; rectum, 617.555
.555 *Rectum, anus, perineum
.556 *Biliary tract
    Contains liver, gall bladder, bile ducts
.557 *Pancreas and islands of Langerhans

*Add as instructed under 617
617  
*Peritoneum
   Including mesentery, omentum

*Abdominal hernias

*Back
   Class shoulders in 617.572, hips in 617.581

*Backache

*Upper extremities

*Shoulders

*Arms, elbows, wrists

*Hands

*Lower extremities
   Class here surgery of joints of the extremities [formerly also 617.472],
   comprehensive works on the extremities, on amputations
   
   For upper extremities, see 617.57
   See also 616.72 for nonsurgical medical aspects of joints

*Hips

*Thighs and knees

*Legs and ankles
   Leg: segment of inferior limb between knee and ankle

*Feet
   Class here podiatry (chiropody)

*Dentistry

Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Oral hygiene and preventive dentistry
   Class here dental hygiene
   Class surgical complications and sequelae in 617.605

Surgery
   Including surgical complications and sequelae
   Class preventive measures in 617.601, orthodontics in 617.643, cavities
   in 617.67
   
   See Manual at 617.522 vs. 617.605

Surgical therapy
   Number discontinued; class in 617.605

*Add as instructed under 617
Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 617.6009

*.63 *Dental diseases

Tumors of teeth and surrounding tissues relocated to 616.992314, tuberculosis of teeth and surrounding tissues to 616.995314

*.632 *Of gums and tooth sockets

Including alveolar abscesses, gingivitis, periodontitis, pyorrhea

Class here periodontics

*.634 *Of tooth tissues

Examples: diseases of cementum, dentine, enamel

For cavities, see 617.67

*.6342 *Of dental pulp

Class here endodontics

*.64 Orthodontics and pedodontics

*.643 *Orthodontics

*.645 *Pedodontics

Class a specific aspect of pedodontics with the aspect, e.g., periodontics 617.632

*.66 *Extractions

Class here exodontics

*.67 *Cavities (Caries)

*.672 Preparation and treatment

*.675 Fillings and inlays

Examples: amalgam, cement, porcelain, plastic fillings and inlays

*.69 Prosthetic dentistry (Prosthodontics)

*.69028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Class materials in 617.695

*.692 Dentures, crowns, bridges

*.695 Materials

*.7 *Ophthalmology

Treatment of ocular diseases, correction of refractive errors

Tumors of eyes relocated to 616.99284, tuberculosis of eyes to 616.99584

*.7044 Wounds and injuries

Do not use; class in 617.713

*Add as instructed under 617
617  Medical sciences  Medicine  617

[.705 9] Surgical therapy
  Do not use; class in 617.71

[.707] Pathology
  Do not use; class in 617.71

.71 Pathology and surgery of eyes
  Class pathology and surgery of specific diseases and parts of eyes with the
disease or part, e.g., diagnosis of glaucoma 617.741075

.712 *Loss of function
  Blindness and partial blindness

  See also 617.75 for disorders of refraction and accommodation,
color blindness

.713 *Wounds and injuries

.715 Diagnosis and prognosis
  Add to base number 617.715 the numbers following 616.075 in
616.0751–616.0759, e.g., physical diagnosis 617.7154

.719 Diseases of corneas and scleras

  See also 362.1783 for eye banks

.719 001–.719 009 Standard subdivisions

.72 *Diseases of uveas
  Contains diseases of choroids, ciliary bodies, irises

.73 *Diseases of optic nerves and retinas
  Class diseases of ocular neuromuscular mechanism in 617.762

.74 *Diseases of eyeballs

  For diseases of corneas and scleras, see 617.719; of uveas, 617.72; of
retinas, 617.73

.741 *Glaucoma

.742 *Diseases of crystalline lenses
  Class here cataracts

.746 *Diseases of vitreous bodies

.75 Disorders of refraction and accommodation, color blindness
  Class here optometry
  Use of this number for other functional disorders of vision discontinued;
class in 617.7

  See also 617.712 for blindness and partial blindness

*Add as instructed under 617
.752 Optical work
   Setting and adjusting lenses, mechanical work of opticians
.752 2 Eyeglasses
   Other than contact lenses, intraocular lenses
   See also 617.7523 for contact lenses, 617.7524 for intraocular lenses
.752 3 Contact lenses
.752 4 Intraocular lenses
.755 Disorders of refraction and accommodation
   Examples: astigmatism, hyperopia, myopia, presbyopia
   For aniseikonia, see 617.758
.758 Aniseikonia
.759 Color blindness
.76 Diseases of ocular muscles and lacrimal mechanisms
   *Of ocular neuromuscular mechanism
   Examples: binocular imbalance, diplopia, strabismus
   Class here orthoptics
   *Of lacrimal glands and ducts
.77 Diseases of conjunctivases and eyelids
   *Of eyelids
   *Trachoma
   *Conjunctivitis
   For trachoma, see 617.772
.78 *Diseases of orbits
.79 Prosthetic ophthalmology
   Fitting of artificial eyes
.8 *Otology and audiology
   Class here loss and impairment of function (deafness and hearing impairment)
   Tumors of ears relocated to 616.99285, tuberculosis of ears to 616.99585
.81 *Diseases of external ears
   For diseases of auricles, see 617.82; of auditory canals, 617.83
.82 *Diseases of auricles
.83 *Diseases of auditory canals
*Add as instructed under 617
.84 *Diseases of middle ears

For diseases of tympanic membranes, see 617.85; of eustachian tubes, 617.86; of mastoid processes, 617.87

.842 *Of ossicles

.85 *Diseases of tympanic membranes

.86 *Diseases of eustachian tubes (auditory tubes)

.87 *Diseases of mastoid processes

.88 *Diseases of internal ears and the aural nervous system

.882 *Diseases of internal ears

Example: Menière’s disease

Including diseases of cochleas (labyrinths), semicircular canals, vestibules

.886 *Diseases of the aural nervous system

Including sensorineural deafness

.89 Correction of impaired hearing

Example: use of hearing aids

Class treatment of diseases of specific parts of the hearing apparatus in 617.81–617.88

.9 Operative surgery and special fields of surgery

Class here auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials; comprehensive works on surgical appliances, on prosthetic equipment

Class a specific appliance or piece of equipment with its specific use, e.g., dentures 617.692

See Manual at 617.307 vs. 617.9

> 617.91–617.96 Surgical techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class comprehensive works in 617.9; except for anesthesiology class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials of surgery of a specific system, organ, region with surgical therapy of the subject, e.g., preoperative care in neck surgery 617.53059

.91 Operative surgery

For anesthesiology, see 617.96

.910 01 Philosophy and theory

.910 02 Miscellany

*Add as instructed under 617
.910 028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures
   Class surgical instruments, apparatus, equipment, materials in 617.9178

.910 03–.910 09 Standard subdivisions
.910 1 Asepsis and antisepsis
.917 Operating room
.917 2 Preparation of the operating room
.917 8 Surgical instruments, apparatus, equipment, materials
   For surgical dressings, see 617.93

.919 Preoperative and postoperative care

.93 Surgical dressings and their use

.95 Cosmetic and restorative plastic surgery, transplantation of tissue and organs, implantation of artificial organs
   Class plastic surgery and transplantation of tissue of specific systems, regions, organs in 617.4–617.5, transplantation of specific organs and implantation of artificial substitutes for specific organs in 617.4, in all cases using subdivision 0592 under 617

   See also 362.1783 for tissue and organ banks

.950 01–.950 09 Standard subdivisions

.96 Anesthesiology
   Methods and techniques of inducing anesthesia, management of accidents and complications resulting from it
   Class acupuncture as an anesthetic in 615.892

.960 4 Special topics
.960 41 Complications and sequelae
.960 42 Emergencies
   Class resuscitology in 615.8043

> 617.962–617.966 Types of anesthesia
   Class comprehensive works in 617.96, anesthesiology regardless of type for specific kinds of surgery in 617.967

.962 General anesthesia
   Examples: inhalation, intravenous, rectal anesthesias

.964 Regional anesthesia
   Examples: caudal, epidural (peridural), saddle block, spinal anesthesias

.966 Local anesthesia
Anesthesiology for specific kinds of surgery
General, regional, local anesthesia
Add to base number 617.967 the numbers following 617 in 617.1–617.9, e.g., dental anesthesia 617.9676

For anesthesiology for gynecology and obstetrics, see 617.968

Anesthesiology for gynecology and obstetrics

Gynecology
Obstetrics

617.97–617.99 Special fields of surgery
Class comprehensive works in 617.9; specific surgical techniques regardless of field in 617.91–617.96; surgery of a specific organ, system, disorder regardless of field with the subject, e.g., fractures 617.15

*Geriatric surgery
*Pediatric surgery
*Military surgery

Other branches of medicine Gynecology and obstetrics

See Manual at 615.7 vs. 616–618

SUMMARY

618.01–.09 [Standard subdivisions and special topics of gynecology and obstetrics]

.1 Gynecology
.2 Obstetrics
.3 Diseases and complications of pregnancy
.4 Childbirth (Parturition) Labor
.5 Complicated labor
.6 Normal puerperium
.7 Puerperal diseases
.8 Obstetrical surgery
.9 Pediatrics and geriatrics

.01 Philosophy and theory of gynecology and obstetrics
.02 Miscellany of gynecology and obstetrics

[.028 7] Testing and measurement
Relocated to 618.0475

.03 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of gynecology and obstetrics

.04 Special topics of gynecology and obstetrics
Add to base number 618.04 the numbers following 0 in notation 01–09 from table under 618.1–618.8, e.g., testing and measurement 618.0475 [formerly 618.0287], emergencies 618.0425; however, class gynecology and obstetrics as a profession, occupation, hobby in 618.023

*Add as instructed under 617
Standard subdivisions of gynecology and obstetrics

History and description of gynecology and obstetrics with respect to kinds of persons

Young people

Class gynecology for girls up to puberty in 618.92098

Persons in specific stages of adulthood

Late adulthood

Do not use; class 618.978

Historical, geographical, persons treatment of gynecology and obstetrics

Class life with a disease in 362.198

618.1–618.8 Gynecology and obstetrics

Medical and surgical

Except where contrary instructions are given, all notes under 616.01–616.08 and in the table under 616.1–616.9 are applicable here

Except for additions, changes, deletions, exceptions shown under specific entries, add to the notation for each term identified by * as follows:

001–008 Standard subdivisions

As modified under 616.1–616.9

009 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

0092 Persons

Class life with a disease in 362.198

01–04 Microbiology, special topics, rehabilitation, special classes of diseases

Add to 0 the numbers following 0 in notation 01–04 from table under 616.1–616.9, e.g., medical emergencies 025

05 Preventive measures and surgery

052 Preventive measures

By the individual and by medical personnel

Class comprehensive works on prevention in 613, public measures preventing specific diseases in 614.5992

059 Surgery

Including surgical complications and sequelae; surgery utilizing specific instruments or techniques, e.g., catheterization, cryosurgery, laser surgery, microsurgery

06 Therapy

Class here rehabilitative therapy

Class comprehensive works on rehabilitative therapy and education for living with handicaps and disabilities in 03

For surgery, see 059

061 Drug therapy

062–069 Other therapies

Add to 06 the numbers following 615.8 in 615.82–615.89, e.g., X-ray therapy 06422

07 Pathology

Add to 07 the numbers following 616.07 in 616.071–616.079, e.g., physical diagnosis 0754

(continued)
618.1–618.8 Gynecology and obstetrics (continued)

08  Psychosomatic medicine
09  Case histories

Class comprehensive works in 618

.1  *Gynecology

Including endocrine gynecology, endometriosis

Class tumors of genital system in 616.99265

For puerperal diseases, see 618.7; pediatric gynecology, 618.92098

.11  *Diseases of the ovaries

.12  *Diseases of the Fallopian tubes (oviducts)

.13  *Diseases of the perimetrium (Periuterine diseases)

.14  *Diseases of the uterus

Class here diseases of the uterine cervix

For diseases of the perimetrium, see 618.13

[.140 59]  Surgery

Do not use; class in 618.145

.142  *Infections

Examples: cervicitis, endometritis, pyometra

For leukorrhea, see 618.173

See also 618.1 for endometriosis

.143  *Erosions

.144  *Malformations

Examples: atrophies, hypertrophies, prolapse of uterus

.145  Surgery

.145 3  Hysterectomies

.145 8  Dilation and curettage

See also 618.88 for surgical abortion

.15  *Diseases of the vagina

For leukorrhea, see 618.173

.16  *Diseases of the vulva

*Add as instructed under 618.1–618.8
.17  *Functional and systemic disorders

.172  *Menstruation disorders
  Examples: amenorrhea, dysmenorrhea, menorrhagia, oligomenorrhea, premenstrual syndrome (PMS)

.173  *Leukorrhea

.175  *Menopause disorders
  Class here comprehensive works on climacteric disorders
  Class male climacteric disorders in 616.693, involutional psychoses in 616.895

.178  *Infertility
  Including artificial insemination
  Embryo transplant ("test-tube baby") is classed in 618.178059
  Class comprehensive works on male and female infertility in 616.692

.19  *Diseases of the breast
  Class here comprehensive works on diseases of the male and female breast
  Class tumors of the breast in 616.99249, surgery of the male breast in 617.549
  For diseases of the male breast, see 616.49; diseases of lactation, 618.71

.2  *Obstetrics
  For diseases, disorders, management of pregnancy, parturition, puerperium, see 618.3–618.8

.205 2]  Preventive measures
  Do not use; class 618.24

.205 9]  Surgical therapy
  Do not use; class in 618.8

.207 5]  Diagnosis
  Do not use; class in 618.22

.22  Diagnosis
  Use of this number for symptomatology discontinued; class in 618.2

.24  Prenatal care and preparation for childbirth
  Examples: dietetics for pregnant women, exercises to aid childbirth

.25  *Multiple pregnancy and childbirth
  *Add as instructed under 618.1–618.8
618.3–618.8 Diseases, disorders, management of pregnancy, parturition, puerperium

Class comprehensive works in 618.2

.3 *Diseases and complications of pregnancy

.31 Extraterine pregnancy (Ectopic pregnancy)

Examples: abdominal, cervical, ovarian, tubal pregnancies

.32 *Fetal disorders

Examples: fetal degeneration, calcification

Class here perinatal medicine

Amniocentesis to diagnose genetic diseases is classed in 618.32042

Class neonatal medicine in 618.9201

For childbirth, see 618.4

See Manual at 618.92 vs. 616, 618.32

.326 *Diseases of specific systems and organs

.326 1 *Of the cardiovascular system

.326 8 *Of the nervous system

Including drug dependence

[.33] Spontaneous abortion

Relocated to 618.392

.34 *Diseases of the placenta and amniotic fluid

.39 Miscarriage and premature delivery

.392 Spontaneous abortion [formerly 618.33] and miscarriage

Before fetus is viable

.397 Premature delivery

After fetus is viable and before full term

.4 Childbirth (Parturition) Labor

Class a specific aspect not provided for here with the aspect, e.g., Caesarean section 618.86

.42 Presentations

Position of fetal body during labor

.45 Natural childbirth

Childbirth without use of analgesics

*Add as instructed under 618.1–618.8
.5 Complicated labor
   .51 Maternal complications
       Difficult labor due to anomalies of expellant forces and mechanical obstructions
   .53 Fetal complications
       Difficult labor due to size of fetus
   .54 Uterine hemorrhage
   .56 Placental complications
   .58 Complications from umbilical cord

.6 Normal puerperium
   Postpartum management and care

.7 *Puerperal diseases
   Example: Sheehan’s syndrome
   .71 *Diseases of lactation
   .73 *Puerperal metritis and peritonitis
   .74 *Puerperal septicemia and pyemia
   .75 *Puerperal eclampsia
   .76 *Puerperal mental disorders
       Example: postpartum depression
   .77 *Hemic disorders
   .79 Maternal death

.8 Obstetrical surgery
   Class embryo transplant (“test-tube baby”) in 618.178059
   .82 Version and extraction
       Class embryo transplant (“test-tube baby”) in 618.178059
   .83 Embryotomy and craniotomy
       Mutilation of fetus to facilitate delivery when impossible by natural means
   .85 Minor surgery
       Examples: episiotomy, repair of lacerations of genital tract, symphyseotomy, vaginiperineotomy
   .86 Caesarean section
   .87 Surgical removal of placenta
   .88 Surgical abortion

*Add as instructed under 618.1-618.8
.89 Asepsis and antisepsis

.9 Pediatrics and geriatrics

.92 Pediatrics

Diseases of infants and children up to puberty
Including sudden infant death syndrome (crib death, cot death)
Class medicine for young people who have reached puberty in 616.00835; pediatric aspects of wounds and injuries in 617.1, of results of injuries in 617.2; pediatric orthopedics in 617.3

For pedodontics, see 617.645; pediatric surgery, 617.98

See Manual at 618.92 vs. 616, 618.32

.920 001-.920 008 Standard subdivisions

As modified under 616.1–616.9

.920 009 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

.920 009 2 Persons

Class life with a physical disease in 362.19892, with a psychiatric disorder in 618.92890092

.920 01-.920 09 General topics

Add to base number 618.920 notation 01–09 from table under 616.1–616.9, e.g., diagnosis 618.920075; however, class pediatric preventive measures in 613.0432, pediatric therapeutics in 615.542

.920 1 Newborn infants (Neonates)

In first month after birth
Class perinatal medicine in 618.32

.920 11 Premature infants

.920 12 Full-term infants

.920 9 Special branches of medicine

Class sports medicine in 617.1027, orthopedics in 617.3, pedodontics in 617.645, surgery in 617.98

See Manual at 618.9209 vs. 617

.920 97 Regional medicine, ophthalmology, otology, audiology

.920 975 Regional medicine

Add to base number 618.920975 the numbers following 617.5 in 617.51–617.58, e.g., disorders of the face 618.9209752

.920 977-.920 978 Ophthalmology, otology, audiology

Add to base number 618.92097 the numbers following 617 in 617.7–617.8, e.g., trachoma in children 618.92097772
618  

Dewey Decimal Classification 618

.920 98  
  Gynecology

.920 981  
  Specific diseases
  Add to base number 618.920981 the numbers following 618.1 in 618.11-618.19, e.g., diseases of the uterus 618.9209814

.921-.929  
  Specific diseases
  Add to base number 618.92 the numbers following 616 in 616.1-616.9, e.g., cardiac diseases in children 618.9212
  Class orthopedic diseases in 617.3, dental diseases in 617.645, other diseases not provided for here in 618.9209

.97  
  *Geriatrics
  Diseases of persons in late adulthood
  [.970 5]  
    Preventive measures
    Do not use; class in 613.0438
  [.970 6]  
    Therapy
    Do not use; class in 615.547

.976-.978  
  Specific diseases
  Add to base number 618.97 the numbers following 61 in 616-618, e.g., geriatric mental illness 618.97689; however, class geriatric aspects of wounds and injuries in 617.1, of results of injuries in 617.2; geriatric orthopedics in 617.3; geriatric surgery in 617.97

  See Manual at 618.977 vs. 617

619  

Experimental medicine

  Class experimental medicine with respect to pharmacology and therapeutics in 615, with respect to specific diseases in 616-618; animal experimentation with respect to anatomy and physiology in 591-599, human experimentation with respect to anatomy and physiology in 611-612

.5  
  Fowl

.7  
  Dogs

.8  
  Cats

.9  
  Other mammals

  .93  
    Rodents and rabbits
    Examples: guinea pigs, hamsters, mice, rats

  .98  
    Primates
    Examples: apes, monkeys, humans

*Add as instructed under 616.1-616.9
Engineering and allied operations

Class here manufacturing of products of various branches of engineering

Class comprehensive works on manufacturing in 670

For chemical engineering, see 660

SUMMARY

620.001-.009 [Standard subdivisions and general topics]

.1 Engineering mechanics and materials
.2 Sound and related vibrations
.3 Mechanical vibration
.4 Engineering for specific kinds of geographical environments, fine particle and remote control technology
.8 Human-factors and safety engineering

621 Applied physics

.04 [Energy and plasma engineering]

.1 Steam engineering
.2 Hydraulic-power technology
.3 Electric, electronic, magnetic, communications, computer engineering; lighting
.4 Heat engineering and prime movers
.5 Pneumatic, vacuum, low-temperature technologies
.6 Fans, blowers, pumps
.8 Machine engineering
.9 Tools and fabricating equipment

622 Mining and related operations

.1 Prospecting and exploratory operations
.2 Excavation techniques
.3 Mining for specific materials
.4 Mine environment
.5 Mine drainage
.6 Mine transport systems
.7 Ore dressing
.8 Mine health and safety

623 Military and nautical engineering

.04 General topics

.1 Fortifications
.2 Mine laying, mine clearance, demolition
.3 Engineering of defense
.4 Ordnance
.5 Ballistics and gunnery
.6 Military transportation technology
.7 Communications, vehicles, sanitation, related topics
.8 Nautical engineering and seamanship

624 Civil engineering

.1 Structural engineering and underground construction
.2 Bridges
.3 Specific types of bridges
.4 Tubular and box-girder bridges
.5 Suspension bridges
.6 Arch bridges
.7 Compound bridges
.8 Movable bridges
Engineering of railroads, roads, highways
   .1  Railroads
   .2  Railroad rolling stock
   .3  Inclined, mountain, ship railroads
   .4  Rapid transit systems
   .5  Cable and aerial railways
   .6  Surface rail and trolley systems
   .7  Roads
   .8  Artificial road surfaces

Hydraulic engineering
   .04  [Hydrodynamics and recreational waters]
      .1  Inland waterways
      .2  Harbors, ports, roadsteads
      .3  Port installations
      .4  Flood control
      .5  Reclamation, irrigation, related topics
      .7  Underwater operations
      .8  Dams and reservoirs
      .9  Other hydraulic structures

Sanitary and municipal engineering
   Environmental protection engineering
      .1  Water supply
      .2  Sewers and sewage
      .3  Sewage treatment and disposal
      .4  Waste technology, public toilets, street cleaning
      .5  Pollution technology and industrial sanitation engineering
      .7  Sanitary engineering for rural and sparsely populated areas
      .9  Other branches of sanitary and municipal engineering

Other branches of engineering
   Transportation engineering
      .1  Aerospace engineering
      .2  Motor land vehicles, and cycles
      .3  Air-cushion vehicles (Ground-effect machines, Hovercraft)
      .4  Astronautics
      .8  Automatic control engineering

Philosophy and theory
   Systems
      Class interdisciplinary works on systems in 003; works covering systems of agriculture, home economics, or management in addition to engineering in 601.1; design of engineering systems in 620.0042; manufacturing systems in 670.11

Computer modeling and simulation
      Class computer-aided design in 620.00420285

Large-scale systems
      Class here analysis of large, complex systems [formerly 620.72]
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.001 53</td>
<td>Physical principles in engineering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do not use; class comprehensive works in 621, engineering mechanics in 620.1, sound engineering in 620.2, electrical and magnetic engineering in 621.3, optical engineering in 621.36, electronic engineering in 621.381, heat engineering in 621.402, nuclear engineering in 621.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.002</td>
<td>Miscellany</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.002 87</td>
<td>Testing and measurement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do not use; class in 620.0044</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.002 88</td>
<td>Maintenance and repair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do not use; class in 620.0046</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.002 89</td>
<td>Safety engineering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Relocated to 620.86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.003</td>
<td>Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.004</td>
<td>Design, testing, measurement, quality, maintenance, repair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.004 2</td>
<td>Engineering design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class here design of large, complex systems [formerly 620.72]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.004 202 85</td>
<td>Computer-aided design (CAD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class comprehensive works on computer-aided design and computer-aided manufacturing (CAD/CAM) in 670.285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.004 22</td>
<td>Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number discontinued; class in 620</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.004 25</td>
<td>Design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number discontinued; class in 620.0042</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.004 4</td>
<td>Testing and measurement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including inspection, simulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class interdisciplinary works on measurement in 530.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.004 5</td>
<td>Quality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Examples: interchangeability, maintainability, precision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class testing and measurement for quality in 620.0044, maintenance in 620.0046</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.004 52</td>
<td>Reliability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.004 54</td>
<td>Durability</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
.004 6 Maintenance and repair
   Class here interdisciplinary works on maintenance and repair
   Class maintenance and repair in a specific subject with the subject,
   using notation 0288 from Table 1, e.g., clock and watch repair
   681.110288

.005-.008 Standard subdivisions

.009 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

.009 1 Treatment by areas, regions, places in general
   Class engineering to overcome problems of specific kinds of
   geographical environments in 620.41

.009 2 Persons
   Class persons treatment of engineers known primarily as
   entrepreneurs in 338.76

.1 Engineering mechanics and materials
   Use 620.1001–620.1009 for standard subdivisions of engineering mechanics
   and materials, of engineering mechanics alone

SUMMARY

620.103–.107 Engineering (Applied) mechanics
   .11 Engineering materials
   .12 Wood
   .13 Masonry materials
   .14 Ceramic and allied materials
   .16 Metals
   .17 Ferrous metals
   .18 Nonferrous metals
   .19 Other engineering materials

> 620.103–620.107 Engineering (Applied) mechanics
   Class comprehensive works in 620.1

   For fine particle technology, see 620.43
   See also 531 for mechanics as a subject in physics
   See Manual at 621 vs. 530

.103 Applied statics
   Class applied solid statics in 620.1053, applied fluid statics in 620.1063

.104 Applied dynamics
   Class applied solid dynamics in 620.1054, applied fluid dynamics in
   620.1064
.105  Applied solid mechanics
  Class structural theory in 624.17
  For mechanical vibration, see 620.3
  See also 621.811 for physical principles of machinery

.105 3 Statics
.105 4 Dynamics

.106  Applied fluid mechanics
  Class here applied hydromechanics, comprehensive works on fluid-power technology
  Class steam engineering in 621.1, hydraulic-power technology in 621.2, hydraulic engineering in 627
  For applied gas mechanics, see 620.107

.106 3 Statics
.106 4 Dynamics
  Including cavitation, pressure surge, water hammer
  Class here flow
  See also 621.4022 for convective transport, heat convection

.107  Applied gas mechanics
  Class here applied aeromechanics
  Class steam engineering in 621.1, pneumatic and vacuum technology in 621.5, aeromechanics of flight in 629.1323, air-conditioning engineering in 697.93

.107 3 Statics
.107 4 Dynamics

.11  Engineering materials
  Class comprehensive works on materials, manufacture of materials in 670
  For specific kinds of materials, see 620.12–620.19

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>620.110 287</th>
<th>Testing and measurement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.112</td>
<td>Resistance and other specific properties of materials, nondestructive testing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.116</td>
<td>Porous materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.117</td>
<td>Organic materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.118</td>
<td>Composite materials</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

.110 287  Testing and measurement
  Do not use for nondestructive testing; class in 620.1127
.112 Resistance and other specific properties of materials, nondestructive testing

Class here failure, strength of materials

Class properties and nondestructive testing of porous, organic, composite materials in 620.116–620.118

SUMMARY

620.112 1 Resistance to thermal forces
.112 2 Resistance to decay, decomposition, deterioration
.112 3 Resistance to mechanical deformation (Mechanics of materials)
.112 4 Resistance to specific mechanical stresses
.112 5 Properties affecting permanent deformation
.112 6 Resistance to fracture (Fracture mechanics)
.112 7 Nondestructive testing
.112 9 Other properties

> 620.112 1–620.112 6 Resistance to specific forces

Class comprehensive works in 620.112

.112 1 Resistance to thermal forces

Class resistance to thermal radiation in 620.11228

See also 620.11296 for thermal properties

.112 15 Changes in temperature

Examples: cyclical and sudden changes

.112 16 Low and cryogenic temperatures

.112 17 High temperatures

.112 2 Resistance to decay, decomposition, deterioration

Physicochemical actions not basically thermal or mechanical

Including action of pests

.112 23 Biodegradation, corrosion, weathering

Examples: rot, rust

.112 28 Resistance to radiations

.112 3 Resistance to mechanical deformation (Mechanics of materials)

Fatigue relocated to 620.1126

For resistance to specific mechanical stresses, see 620.1124; resistance to fracture, 620.1126

.112 302 87 Testing and measurement

Including strain gauges

.112 32 Temporary deformation (Elasticity)

Including elastic limit

116
Permanent deformation (Plasticity)
Including creep, plastic flow

*For properties affecting permanent deformation, see 620.1125*

Resistance to specific mechanical stresses
Class resistance to change of form, regardless of stress, in 620.1125; resistance to fracture, regardless of stress, in 620.1126

Tension
Compression
Torsion (Twisting)
Flexure (Bending)
Shearing
Vibrations

Properties affecting permanent deformation
Examples: impact strength, rigidity, shock resistance; ductility, malleability

Resistance to fracture (Fracture mechanics)
Including brittleness, hardness
Class here fatigue [formerly 620.1123]; fatigue, fracture, rupture strength; crack resistance, resistance to penetration and breaking

Nondestructive testing
Radiographic (X-ray) testing
Tracer testing
Ultrasonic testing
Magnetic testing

Other properties
Mechanical properties
Examples: adhesiveness, roughness, texture; friction, wear resistance

*See also 620.44 for surface technology*

Acoustical properties
Optical properties
Examples: luminescence, photoelasticity, refractivity

Thermal properties
Example: heat conductivity

*See also 620.1121 for resistance to thermal forces*
Electric, electronic, magnetic properties

Semiconductivity

Superconductivity

Microphysical properties

Examples: atomic, molecular, nuclear, crystallographic properties

Including microstructure

For electronic properties, see 620.11297

620.116–620.118 Porous, organic, composite materials

Class comprehensive works in 620.11, a specific kind of porous, organic, composite material in 620.12–620.19

*Porous materials

Class porous organic materials in 620.117, porous composite materials in 620.118

*Organic materials

Class organic composite materials in 620.118

*Composite materials

Class specific composite materials with the predominant component in 620.12–620.19, e.g., ferroconcrete 620.137

620.12–620.19 Specific kinds of materials

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

0287 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive testing; class in 7

1–9 Specific properties and nondestructive testing

Add the numbers following 620.112 in 620.1121–620.1129, e.g., nondestructive testing 7

Class comprehensive works in 620.11; porous, organic, composite materials in 620.116–620.118; manufacturing and chemical properties of specific kinds of materials with the materials, e.g., wood 674

*Wood

Including laminated wood

Class here physical properties [formerly also 674.132]

*Masonry materials

For brick, tile, terra-cotta, see 620.142

130 287 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.130427

*Add as instructed under 620.12–620.19
.130 4  Special topics
.130 42  *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.132  *Natural stones

.135  *Cement

Class here masonry adhesives [formerly 620.15]

.136  *Concrete

For reinforced and prestressed concrete, see 620.137; concrete blocks, 620.139

.137  *Reinforced and *prestressed concrete

.139  Artificial stones

Examples: cinder and concrete blocks

.139 028 7  Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.1390427

.139 04  Special topics
.139 042  *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.14  Ceramic and allied materials

Class masonry materials in 620.13

.140 287  Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.140427

.140 4  Special topics
.140 42  *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.142  Brick, tile, terra-cotta

.143  *Refractory materials

Example: fireclays

Class refractory metals in 620.16

For asbestos, see 620.195

.144  *Glass

Including fiber glass

.146  Porcelain and enamel

[.15]  Masonry adhesives

Relocated to 620.135

*Add as instructed under 620.12–620.19
.16 *Metals
Class here alloys

For ferrous metals, see 620.17; nonferrous metals, 620.18

.17 *Ferrous metals
Class here iron, steel

.18 Nonferrous metals
Class here nonferrous alloys

.180 287 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.180427

.180 4 Special topics

.180 42 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.182 *Copper
Class here brass, Muntz metal; bronzes, gunmetal; copper-aluminum alloys; copper-beryllium alloys

.183 *Lead

.184 Zinc and cadmium

.184 2 *Zinc

For brass, Muntz metal, see 620.182

.184 6 *Cadmium

.185 *Tin

For bronzes, gunmetal, see 620.182

.186 *Aluminum

For copper-aluminum alloys, see 620.182

.187 *Magnesium

.188 *Nickel

.189 Other metals

.189 1 *Mercury

.189 2 Precious, rare-earth, actinide-series metals

Add to base number 620.1892 the numbers following 669.2 in 669.22–669.29, e.g., uranium 620.1892931

.189 3 Metals used in ferroalloys

For nickel, see 620.188

*Add as instructed under 620.12–620.19
Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.18930427

Special topics

*Specific properties and nondestructive testing

Titanium, manganese, vanadium

*Titanium

*Cobalt

Chromium, molybdenum, tungsten

Zirconium and tantalum

*Zirconium

*Beryllium

For copper-beryllium alloys, see 620.182

Antimony, arsenic, bismuth

Alkali and alkaline-earth metals

Examples: barium, calcium, lithium, potassium, sodium, strontium

Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.18960427

Special topics

*Specific properties and nondestructive testing

Miscellaneous rare metals

Limited to gallium, germanium, hafnium, indium, niobium, selenium, tellurium, thallium

Other engineering materials

Soils and related materials

Examples: aggregates, gravel, clay, sand

Class interdisciplinary works on soils in 631.4, foundation soils in 624.151

Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.1910427

Special topics

*Specific properties and nondestructive testing

*Add as instructed under 620.12–620.19
.192 Polymers

For elastomers, see 620.194

.192 028 7 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.1920427

.192 04 Special topics

.192 042 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.192 3 *Plastics

Class here plastic laminating materials

.192 4 *Gums and *resins

.193 Nonmetallic elements

Examples: carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, oxygen, phosphorus, silicon, sulfur; inert gases

Class phosphor bronze in 620.182

.193 028 7 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.1930427

.193 04 Special topics

.193 042 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.194 *Elastomers

Class here rubber

.195 Insulating materials

Examples: asbestos, corkboard, diatomaceous earth, kapok, rock wool

Including dielectric materials

.195 028 7 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.1950427

.195 04 Special topics

.195 042 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.196 Bituminous materials

Examples: synthetic and natural asphalt, tar

.196 028 7 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.1960427

.196 04 Special topics

*Add as instructed under 620.12–620.19
.196 042 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing
.197 Organic fibrous materials
   Examples: paper, paperboard, rope, textiles
   .197 028 7 Testing and measurement
       Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.1970427
.197 04 Special topics
.197 042 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing
.198 Other natural and synthetic minerals
   Examples: corundum, feldspar, gems, graphite, oil, quartz, water
.199 Adhesives and sealants
   Class here comprehensive works on laminating materials
   *For masonry adhesives, see 620.135; plastic laminating materials, 620.1923*
   .199 028 7 Testing and measurement
       Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.1990427
.199 04 Special topics
.199 042 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.2 Sound and related vibrations
   See also 534 for physics of sound
   See Manual at 621 vs. 530

> 620.21–620.25 Applied acoustics (Acoustical engineering)
   Class comprehensive works in 620.2; electroacoustical communications in 621.3828; interdisciplinary works on architectural acoustics in 729.29; engineering works on architectural acoustics in 690.2

.21 General topics of applied acoustics
   Examples: analysis and synthesis [formerly 534.4], sources of sound

.23 Noise and countermeasures

.25 Acoustics in specific physical environments
   Example: underwater acoustics

.28 Applied ultrasonics and subsonics
   *For ultrasonic testing of materials, see 620.11274*

*Add as instructed under 620.12–620.19*
.3 Mechanical vibration
   Class effects of vibrations on materials in 620.11248
   \textit{For sound and related vibrations, see 620.2}

.302 87 Measurement [formerly 620.32] and testing

.31 Generation and transmission

[.32] Measurement
   Relocated to 620.30287

.37 Effects and countermeasures

.4 Engineering for specific kinds of geographical environments, fine particle and remote control technology

.41 Engineering for specific kinds of geographical environments
   Class a specific technology with the technology, using notation 091 from Table 1 when the environment is not inherent in the subject, e.g., ergonomics for deserts 620.8209154, nautical engineering 623.8

.411-.417 Specific kinds of terrestrial environments
   Add to base number 620.41 the numbers following \(-1\) in \(-11-17\) from Table 2, e.g., ocean engineering 620.4162; however, class engineering of estuaries in 627.124
   Class hydraulic engineering in 627

.419 Extraterrestrial environments

.43 Fine particle technology
   Example: dust
   Class here powder technology
   Including liquid particle technology

.44 Surface engineering

.46 Remote control and telecontrol

[.7] Engineering of large, complex systems
   Number discontinued; class in 620

[.72] Analysis and design of large, complex systems
   Analysis relocated to 620.001171, design to 620.0042

.8 Human-factors and safety engineering
   Class here work environment engineering
   Class a specific application with the application, e.g., engineering of the home kitchen work environment 643.3
   \textit{See also 628 for environmental protection engineering}
.82 Human-factors engineering
   Variant names: biotechnology, design anthropometry, ergonomics

[.85] Environmental health engineering
   Relocated to 628

.86 Safety engineering [formerly also 620.00289]
   Class safety engineering of a specific technology with the technology, using
   notation 0289 from Table 1, e.g., safety in machine engineering 621.80289

621 Applied physics

Mechanical, electrical, electronic, electromagnetic, heat, light, nuclear engineering

Standard subdivisions are added for mechanical engineering

Class applied mechanics in 620.1, applied acoustics in 620.2, a specific application
with the application, e.g., military engineering 623

See Manual at 621 vs. 530

SUMMARY

621.04 [Energy and plasma engineering]
   .1 Steam engineering
   .2 Hydraulic-power technology
   .3 Electric, electronic, magnetic, communications, computer engineering;
      lighting
   .4 Heat engineering and prime movers
   .5 Pneumatic, vacuum, low-temperature technologies
   .6 Fans, blowers, pumps
   .8 Machine engineering
   .9 Tools and fabricating equipment

.04 Special topics

.042 Energy engineering
   Class here engineering of alternative, renewable energy sources
   Class interdisciplinary works on energy in 333.79

.044 Plasma engineering
   See also 530.44 for plasma as a subject in physics

   > 621.1–621.2 Fluid-power technologies
   Class comprehensive works in 620.106

   .1 Steam engineering

   > 621.15–621.16 Specific kinds of steam engines
   Class comprehensive works in 621.1, marine steam engines in 623.8722
   For steam locomotives, see 625.261; steam tractors and rollers, 629.2292
Portable engines
Class comprehensive works on specific structural types of steam engines in 621.16

Stationary engines
Class here comprehensive works on specific structural types of steam engines
Class portable engines of specific structural types in 621.15

Reciprocating engines

Turbines

Other stationary engines
Example: rotary engines

Generating and transmitting steam
Class generating steam in specific kinds of steam engines in 621.15–621.16, in central stations in 621.19

> 621.182–621.183 Generation
Class comprehensive works in 621.18

Fuels and fuel consumption

Boilers and boiler furnaces
Including accessories [formerly 621.184], mechanical stokers, chimneys

Thermodynamics, design, construction
Number discontinued; class in 621.18
Accessories relocated to 621.183

Transmitting steam
Including insulation, pressure regulators, safety valves, steam pipes

Central stations

Boiler operations (Boiler-house practices)
Including feed-water treatment

Accessories
Including condensers, cooling towers, superheaters

Cogeneration of electric power and heat
Class interdisciplinary works on cogeneration of electricity and heat in 333.793

Hydraulic-power technology
Class hydraulic control in 629.8042
Engineering and allied operations

.204 Special topics
.204.2 Specific liquids
.204.22 Water
.204.24 Hydraulic fluids
    Other than water
.21 Water mills
    Including waterwheels, water lifting devices
.24 Turbines
.25 Pumps and accumulators
.252 Pumps
    Class comprehensive works on pumps in 621.69
.254 Accumulators
.26 Hydraulic transmission
    Use of this number for comprehensive works on hydraulic-power machinery
    and appliances discontinued; class in 621.2
    Class specific liquids in hydraulic transmission in 621.2042
    For rams, see 621.27
.27 Rams

.3 Electric, electronic, magnetic, communications, computer engineering; lighting
    Including superconductivity
    Standard subdivisions are added for electromagnetic engineering, for combined
    electric and electronic engineering, for electrical engineering alone
    See also 537 for physics of electricity and electromagnetism

SUMMARY

621.302 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
..31 Generation, modification, storage, transmission of electric power
..32 Lighting
..33 Electric power transmission for railroads
..34 Magnetic engineering
..36 Applied optics and paraphotic engineering
..37 Testing and measurement of electrical quantities
..38 Electronics and communications engineering
..39 Computers

.302 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
Class electrical equipment in 621.31042

.302 87 Testing and measurement
Class electrical testing and measurement in 621.37
.31  Generation, modification, storage, transmission of electric power
   Class here alternating current [formerly also 537.63]

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>621.310 4</th>
<th>[Electrical machinery and equipment]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.312</td>
<td>Generation, modification, storage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.313</td>
<td>Generating machinery and converters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.314</td>
<td>Transformers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.315</td>
<td>Capacitors (Condensers)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.316</td>
<td>Details and parts of generators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.317</td>
<td>Control devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.319</td>
<td>Transmission</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

.310 4    Special topics

.310 42   Electrical machinery and equipment
   Including eddy currents, shaft currents
   Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., refrigerators 621.57

   *For electric motors, see 621.46*

.312     Generation, modification, storage
   *For equipment for generation, modification, control, see 621.313–621.317*

.312 1    Generation
   Class here central and auxiliary power plants, mechanical generation
   *For direct energy conversion, see 621.3124*

.312 13   Specific kinds of mechanical generation
   Use of this number for comprehensive works on mechanical generation discontinued; class in 621.3121

.312 132  Steam-powered generation
   Class here comprehensive works on generation from fossil fuels
   *For generation by internal combustion engines, see 621.312133; nuclear steam-powered generation of electricity, 621.483*

.312 133  Generation by internal combustion engines

.312 134  Hydroelectric generation
   Including tidal generation
   Class engineering of dams for hydroelectric power in 627.8

.312 136  Wind-powered generation
621.312 4 Direct energy conversion
   *For direct nuclear generation, see 621.3125*

621.312 42 Electrochemical energy conversion
   Class comprehensive works on electrochemical engineering in 660.297

621.312 43 Primary batteries

621.312 44 Secondary batteries (Storage batteries)

621.312 45 Fuel cells

621.312 43 Thermoelectric generation
   Including thermionic converters
   Class generation of electricity from solar radiation in 621.31244

621.312 44 Generation of electricity from solar radiation
   Class here photovoltaic generation, use of solar batteries and cells

621.312 45 Magnetohydrodynamic generation

621.312 5 Direct nuclear generation
   Including radioisotope-powered generators

621.312 52 Nuclear steam-powered generation of electricity
   Relocated to 621.483

621.312 56 Direct nuclear generation
   Number discontinued; class in 621.3125

621.312 6 Modification and storage
   Examples: operation of transformer, converter substations
   Class storage of electrical energy by chemical methods in 621.312424

> 621.313–621.317 Machinery and equipment for generation, modification, control

   Class comprehensive works in 621.31042

621.313 Generating machinery and converters
   Including static generators [*formerly also* 537.23]
   Class here comprehensive works on generators and motors
   *For details and parts of generators, see 621.316; electric motors, 621.46*

621.313 2 Direct-current machinery
   Examples: dynamos, converters to alternating current
.313 3 Alternating-current machinery

Class here synchronous machinery

For synchronous generators, see 621.3134; synchronous converters to direct current, 621.3135; asynchronous machinery, 621.3136

.313 4 Synchronous generators

.313 5 Synchronous converters to direct current

For rectifiers, see 621.3137

.313 6 Asynchronous machinery

For rectifiers, see 621.3137

.313 7 Rectifiers

.314 Transformers

.315 Capacitors (Condensers) [formerly also 537.242]

.316 Details and parts of generators

Contains armatures and armature winding, brushes, commutators, contactors, electromagnets (field cores)

Class a specific part not provided for here with the subject, e.g., transformers 621.314

.317 Control devices

Class here protective devices [formerly also 621.319], power electronics, switching equipment

Examples: circuit breakers, fuses, grounding devices, lightning arresters, meters, relays, rheostats

Class switches at service end of line in 621.31924

.319 Transmission

Including access to power lines [formerly also 634.93], power failure

Class here electrification [formerly 621.394]

Protective devices relocated to 621.317

Class interdisciplinary works on electrification, on power failure in 333.7932

For electric power transmission for railroads, see 621.33

[.319 011] Systems

Do not use; class in 621.3191

.319 1 Systems

Class lines and circuitry in 621.3192

.319 12 Direct-current systems
.319 13 Alternating-current systems
  Including high-tension systems

.319 15 Composite current systems
  Direct and alternating currents combined

.319 16 Polycyclic current systems

.319 2 Circuitry [formerly also 537.61, 537.63] and lines (Networks)

.319 21 Physical phenomena in circuits
  Examples: heat losses in lines, transients

.319 22 Overhead lines and their components

.319 23 Underground lines and their components

.319 24 Apparatus at service end of line
  Examples: extension cords, junctions, outlets, sockets, switches
  Class here interior wiring

  For exterior service wiring and its components, see 621.31925

.319 25 Exterior service wiring and its components

.319 3 Equipment and components
  Class equipment for generation, modification, control in 621.313–621.317, use in lines and circuitry in 621.3192

.319 32 Uninsulated wires

.319 33 Insulated wires

.319 34 Cables

.319 37 Insulators and insulation

.32 Lighting
  Class here electric lighting

.321 Principles of lighting
  Former heading: Illumination

.321 1 Layouts, calculations, photometry

.321 2 Direct lighting

.321 3 Indirect and semi-indirect lighting

.321 4 Floodlighting
  Class here directed lighting
  Class exterior floodlighting in 621.3229

[.321 5] Transillumination
  Number discontinued; class in 621.321
.322 Lighting in specific situations

Use of this number for comprehensive works on lighting discontinued; class in 621.32

Class specific forms of lighting in 621.323–621.327; lighting of airports, 629.1365

*For public lighting, see 628.95*

.322 5–.322 8 Interior lighting

Add to base number 621.322 the numbers following 72 in 725–728, e.g., lighting for libraries 621.32278

Class comprehensive works in 621.322

.322 9 Exterior lighting

Examples: advertising and display lighting, garden and patio lighting

> 621.323–621.327 Specific forms of lighting

Class comprehensive works in 621.32

.323 Nonelectrical lighting

Examples: candles, oil-burning devices, torches

*For gas lighting, see 621.324*

.324 Gas lighting

> 621.325–621.327 Electric lighting

Class comprehensive works in 621.32

.325 Arc lighting

Electric-discharge lighting in which light is produced by consumable electrodes or by vapors emanating from consumable electrodes

Class here enclosed arc lighting [formerly 621.327]

.326 Incandescent lighting

.327 Vapor (Luminous-tube) lighting

Enclosed arc lighting relocated to 621.325

.327 3 Fluorescent lighting

.327 4 Mercury-vapor lighting

.327 5 Neon lighting

.327 6 Sodium-vapor lighting

.33 Electric power transmission for railroads
.34 Magnetic engineering
Class here artificial magnets and magnetic induction [formerly also 538.2],
emdemagnets
Class electromagnets as parts of generators in 621.316, of electric motors in
621.46
Use 621.3 for comprehensive works on electromagnetic technology
See also 538 for physics of magnetism

.36 Applied optics and paraphotic engineering
Class manufacture of optical instruments in 681.4, interdisciplinary works
on photography in 770
For lighting, see 621.32
See also 535 for optics and light as subjects in physics
See Manual at 621.36 vs. 621.381045, 621.3827

.361 Industrial and engineering spectroscopy
.361 2 Infrared spectroscopy
.361 3 Visible (Chromatic) spectroscopy
   Including Raman spectroscopy
.361 4 Ultraviolet spectroscopy
   Including vacuum ultraviolet spectroscopy
.361 5 Radio-frequency and microwave spectroscopy
.361 6 X-ray and gamma-ray spectroscopy
.361 7 Magnetic resonance spectroscopy

> 621.362–621.364 Paraphotic technology
Class comprehensive works in 621.36, paraphotic spectroscopy in 621.361,
paraphotic photography in 621.3672

.362 Infrared technology
.364 Ultraviolet technology
.366 Laser technology [formerly also 535.58]
Light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation
For laser communications, see 621.3827
See Manual at 621.36 vs. 621.381045, 621.3827

.366 1 Solid-state lasers
.366 2 Fluid-state lasers
For gaseous-state lasers, see 621.3663
.366 3 Gaseous-state lasers
.366 4 Chemical and dye lasers
.367 Technological photography and photo-optics
  Including spectrography, stroboscopic photography
  Class here image processing, optical data processing
    For photoelectrical and photoelectronic devices, see 621.381542; optical communications, 621.3827
    See Manual at 006.37 vs. 006.42, 621.367, 621.391, 621.399; 778.3 vs. 621.367
.367 2 Infrared and ultraviolet photography
.367 3 Radiography (X-ray and gamma-ray photography)
.367 5 Holography
.367 8 Remote sensing technology
  For photogrammetry, see 526.982
.369 Other branches of applied optics
.369 2 Fiber optics [formerly also 535.89]
    See also 621.381045 for optoelectronics
    See Manual at 621.36 vs. 621.381045, 621.3827
.369 3 Integrated optics
.37 Testing and measurement of electrical quantities
  Instruments and their use
  Class testing and measurement of a specific apparatus, part, or function with the subject, using notation 0287 from Table 1, e.g., testing overhead lines 621.319220287
.372 Units and standards of measurement
  Including calibration of electrical instruments
.373 Recording meters
  Class meters recording specific electrical quantities in 621.374
.374 Instruments for measuring specific electrical quantities
  Use of this number for comprehensive works on measuring electric quantities discontinued; class in 621.37
.374 2 For measuring resistance, capacitance, inductance
    Examples: bridges, ohmmeters, resistance boxes, shunts
    Including comprehensive works on electrical bridges (bridge circuits)
    For frequency bridges, see 621.3747
For measuring potential
Examples: electrometers, potentiometers, voltage detectors, voltmeters

For measuring current
Examples: ammeters, ampere-hour meters, coulometers, galvanometers, milliammeters, voltameters

For measuring energy
Examples: demand meters, electric supply meters, watt-hour meters

For measuring power
Examples: electrodynamometers, volt-ammeters, wattmeters

For measuring frequency
Examples: frequency bridges, oscillographs
Class electric phasemeters in 621.3749

For measuring phase
Examples: power-factor meters, synchroscopes

Electrical instruments for measurement of nonelectrical quantities
Relocated to 681.2

Electronics and communications engineering

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>621.381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.389</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Electroacoustical apparatus and equipment
Relocated to 621.38284

Antennas
Relocated to 621.3824

Special topics
Special topics of communications engineering relocated to 621.382

Audiovisual engineering
Relocated to 621.3897
Electronics

Including x-ray and gamma-ray circuitry [formerly also 537.5353] and tubes [formerly also 537.5355]

Class here microelectronics, shortwave and long-wave electronics

Class signal processing in 621.3822, electronic noise and interference in 621.38224; a specific application with the subject, e.g., laser technology 621.366, radio engineering 621.384

See also 537.5 for physics aspects

See Manual at 621.381

SUMMARY

621.381 01-.381 09  Standard subdivisions
              .381 3    Microwave electronics
              .381 5    Components and circuits

.381 011  Systems [formerly 621.3811]

.381 028 7  Measurement [formerly 621.381043] and testing

.381 04  Special topics

[.381 042]  Analysis, synthesis, design
           Number discontinued; class in 621.381

[.381 043]  Measurement
           Relocated to 621.3810287

.381 044  Power and energy in electronic systems

.381 045  Optoelectronics
           See also 621.3692 for fiber optics
           See Manual at 621.36 vs. 621.381045, 621.3827

.381 046  Packaging

[.381 1]  Systems
           Relocated to 621.381011

.381 3  Microwave electronics

.381 302 18  Standards [formerly 621.38137]

.381 302 87  Testing and measurement [formerly 621.38137]

.381 31  Wave propagation and transmission
           Including interference

.381 32  Circuits
           Analysis, design, constituent parts, functions

Add to base number 621.38132 the numbers following 621.38153 in 621.381532–621.381537, e.g., amplifiers 621.381325
.381 33 Components and devices
   Class use of components in specific circuits in 621.38132

.381 331 Wave guides

.381 332 Cavity resonators

.381 333 Klystrons

.381 334 Magnetrons

.381 335 Traveling-wave tubes

.381 336 Masers [formerly also 537.5344]
   Microwave amplification by stimulated emission of radiation

[.381 336 1-.381 336 2] Specific kinds of masers
   Numbers discontinued; class in 621.381336

[.381 37] Standards; testing and measurement
   Standards relocated to 621.38130218, testing and measurement to
   621.38130287

.381 5 Components and circuits
   Analysis, design, functions, manufacture
   Class here integrated, microelectronic, thin-film circuits [all formerly
   621.38173]; analog, digital, semiconductor circuits; circuits and
   components common to electronics and communications engineering
   Use of this number for comprehensive works on shortwave and
   long-wave electronics discontinued; class in 621.381
   Class microwave components and circuits in 621.3813, components
   and circuits of a specific branch of communications engineering in
   621.383–621.389, very large scale integration in 621.395
   See Manual at 621.381

.381 502 18 Standards [formerly 621.381548]

[.381 502 87] Testing and measurement
   Do not use; class in 621.381548

> 621.381 51–621.381 52 Components
   Class comprehensive works in 621.3815, use of components in specific circuits
   in 621.38153, devices not intrinsic to circuits in 621.38154

.381 51 Electronic tubes
   Use of this number for comprehensive works on components
   discontinued; class in 621.3815

.381 512 Vacuum tubes
Specific kinds of vacuum tubes
   Numbers discontinued; class in 621.381512

Gas tubes

Specific kinds of gas tubes
   Numbers discontinued; class in 621.381513

Semiconductors
   Class here miniaturization and thin-film production technology
   [both formerly 621.3817], microelements and thin-film components
   [both formerly 621.38171], crystal devices, optoelectronic devices

Diodes
   Examples: junction, light-emitting, tunnel (Esaki), Zener diodes; varactors

Transistors and thyristors
   Example: phototransistors

Junction transistors

Field-effect transistors

Thyristors

Printed circuits and circuits for specific functions
   Use of this number for comprehensive works on circuits discontinued;
   class in 621.3815

Semiconductor circuits
   Number and its subdivisions discontinued; class in 621.3815

Printed circuits [formerly 621.38174]
   Including microlithography

621.381 532–621.381 537 Circuits for specific functions
   Class comprehensive works in 621.3815

Converters (Rectifiers and inverters), filters, interference eliminators

Converters (Rectifiers and inverters)

Filters

Oscillators
   Class use of oscillators in pulse circuits in 621.381534
.381 534 Pulse circuits
   Examples: pulse generators, counting circuits
   Including pulse processes
   Class modulation, demodulation, detection of pulses in 621.3815365

.381 535 Amplifiers and feedback circuits
   Class operational amplifiers in 621.395

.381 536 Modulators, demodulators, detectors
   Class here modulation, demodulation, detection

.381 536 2 Amplitude
   Including attenuators

.381 536 3 Frequency
   See also 621.3815486 for frequency synthesizers

.381 536 4 Phase
   Including phase-locked loops

.381 536 5 Pulse

.381 537 Switching, control, trigger circuits, relays
   Logic circuits relocated to 621.395

.381 537 2 Switching theory
   Class switching theory in logic circuit design in 621.395

.381 54 Supplementary components
   Devices not intrinsic to circuits
   Class here electronic instrumentation (applications of electronics)
   Class instrumentation in a specific field with the field, e.g., electronic control 629.89

.381 542 Photoelectric and photoelectronic devices
   Examples: photoconductive, photoemissive, photovoltaic cells; electric eyes; photomultipliers; cathode-ray, electron-ray tubes; phototubes
Testing and measuring components

Examples: bridges (bridge circuits); signal, square-wave, sweep generators; thermisters

Class here testing and measuring electronic circuits and components, instruments for testing and measuring electronic signals

Standards of electronic circuits and components relocated to 621.38150218; electronic gauges, indicators, meters, probes of general utility to 681.2

Class testing and measuring a specific circuit or component with the circuit or component, using notation 0287 from Table 1, e.g., testing amplifiers 621.3815350287

Oscilloscopes

Including oscillographs

Frequency synthesizers

X-ray and gamma-ray electronics

Number discontinued; class in 621.381

Microelectronics

Use of this number for microelectronics discontinued; class in 621.381

Miniaturization and thin-film production technology relocated to 621.38152

Microelements and thin-film components

Relocated to 621.38152

Integrated, microelectronic, thin-film circuits

Integrated, microelectronic, thin-film circuits relocated to 621.3815; very large scale integration to 621.395

Printed circuits

Relocated to 621.381531

Electronic eavesdropping devices

Relocated to 621.38928

Special developments

Number discontinued; class in 621.381

Computers

Relocated to 621.39

Turing machines

Relocated to 511.3
Turing and infinite-state machines
Relocated to 511.3

Communications engineering
Telegraphy relocated to 621.383. In addition, the following subdivisions are reused: 621.3823, 621.3824, 621.3825, 621.3827, 621.3828

Class here special topics in communications engineering (formerly 621.3804); analog, digital, electronic communications; communications systems; telecommunications

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the one coming last, e.g., signal processing in acoustical communications 621.3828 (not 621.3822)

Class components and circuits common to electronics and communications engineering in 621.3815, e.g., amplifiers 621.381535, switching circuits 621.381537; data communications engineering in 621.3981

*For specific communications systems, see 621.383–621.389*

*See Manual at 621.382 vs. 621.3981, 004.6*

Signal processing
Class here information theory
*See Manual at 621.3822 vs. 003.54*

Signal analysis and theory

Noise and interference
Including electromagnetic compatibility and incompatibility
Class here electronic noise and interference

Miscellaneous topics
Limited to studios, transmission facilities, and the topics provided for below

Power and energy in communications systems

Recording devices
Use for works covering recording devices of two or more communications systems, e.g. video recorders and sound recorders
Examples: discs, tapes
Class video recorders in 621.38833, sound recorders in 621.38932

Facsimile transmission
By wire or radio wave
Example: radiofacsimile (formerly 621.3842)
Class here telefacsimile
Space communications

See also 621.3825 for satellite relay

Antennas [formerly 621.380283] and propagation

Relay communication
  Class here satellite relay

Satellite antennas and propagation

Optical communications
  Transmission of sound, visual images, other information by light
  Including optical disc technology
  Class here laser communications [formerly 621.3896]
  Class opticoacoustic communications in 621.3828
  See Manual at 621.36 vs. 621.381045, 621.3827

Optical-fiber communication
  Class here guided-light communication

Acoustical communications
  Audio systems covering broadcasting and transmission as well as
  recording and reproduction of sound
  Including acousto-optical communications
  Class here electroacoustical communications
  Class audio systems limited to recording and reproduction of sound in
  621.3893

Specific devices
  Class here electroacoustical apparatus and equipment [formerly
  621.380282]
  Examples: microphones, speakers
  Class antennas in 621.3824

Specific communications systems
  Class comprehensive works in 621.382

Telegraphy [formerly also 621.382]
  For radiotelegraphy, see 621.3842

Radio and radar
  Class here broadcast radio, comprehensive works on radio and television
  For television, see 621.388
SUMMARY

621.384 01-.384 09 Standard subdivisions
   .384 1 Specific topics in general radio
   .384 2 Radiotelegraphy
   .384 5 Radiotelephony
   .384 8 Radar

   .384 021 8 Standards [formerly 621.38417]
   .384 028 7 Measurement [formerly 621.38417] and testing
   .384 028 8 Maintenance and repair
      Class maintenance and repair of receiving sets in
      621.384187

> 621.384 1–621.384 5 Radio
   Class comprehensive works in 621.384

   .384 1 Specific topics in general radio
      Use of this number for comprehensive works on radio, on radio and
      television discontinued; class in 621.384

SUMMARY

621.384 11 Wave propagation and transmission
   .384 12 Circuits
   .384 13 Components and devices
   .384 15 Systems by wave type, satellite and relay systems
   .384 16 Amateur (Ham) radio
   .384 18 Radio receiving sets
   .384 19 Special developments

   .384 11 Wave propagation and transmission
      Including interference
      See also 384.5452 for allocation of frequencies

   .384 12 Circuits
      Analysis, design, components, functions
      Examples: filters, interference eliminators [both formerly
      621.384133], amplifiers, modulation circuits, oscillators, rectifiers
      Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., receiving set
      circuits 621.38418

   .384 13 Components and devices

   .384 131 Transmitters
      Design, circuits, components

   .384 132 Tubes
      Class use of tubes in specific circuits in 621.38412
.384 133 Miscellaneous supplementary devices
    Limited to condensers (capacitors), grounding devices, inductors, microphones, resistors, testing equipment
    Filters and interference eliminators relocated to 621.38412

.384 134 Semiconductor devices
    Class use of semiconductor devices in specific circuits in 621.38412

.384 135 Antennas

[.384 136] Radio receiving sets
    Relocated to 621.38418

.384 15 Systems by wave type, satellite and relay systems

> 621.384 151–621.384 153 Systems by wave type
    Class comprehensive works in 621.38415, satellite and relay systems of a specific wave type in 621.384156

.384 151 Shortwave systems
    Examples: very-high-frequency (VHF), ultrahigh frequency (UHF)
    For frequency-modulation systems, see 621.384152

.384 152 Frequency-modulation (FM) systems
    Including stereo-multiplex systems

.384 153 Long-wave systems
    Examples: amplitude modulation (AM), very-low-frequency (VLF), single-sideband systems

.384 156 Satellite and relay systems

.384 16 Amateur (Ham) radio
    Class here comprehensive works on amateur and citizens band radio
    Use of this number for comprehensive works on radio stations discontinued; class in 621.384
    For citizens band radio, see 621.38454
    See Manual at 621.38416 vs. 621.38454

[.384 162–.384 164] Clear-channel, regional, broadcasting stations
    Numbers discontinued; class in 621.384

[.384 165] Mobile radio stations
    Relocated to 621.3845
[.384 166] Amateur (Ham)
   Number discontinued; class in 621.38416

[.384 168] Portable radio stations
   Relocated to 621.3845

[.384 17] Standards and measurement
   Standards relocated to 621.3840218, standards of receiving sets to 621.384180218, measurement to 621.3840287, measurement of receiving sets to 621.384180287, allocation of frequency to 384.5452

[.384 18] Radio receiving sets [formerly 621.384136]

[.384 180 218] Standards [formerly 621.38417]

[.384 180 287] Measurement [formerly 621.38417] and testing

[.384 180 288] Maintenance and repair
   Do not use; class on 621.384187

[.384 185–.384 186] Assembling and installation
   Numbers discontinued; class in 621.38418

[.384 187] Maintenance and repair

[.384 19] Special developments

[.384 191] Direction and position finding
   Including radio beacons, radio compasses, loran

[.384 196] Radio control
   Variant names: remote control, telecontrol

[.384 197] Space communication

[.384 2] Radiotelegraphy
   Class here specific instruments and apparatus of radiotelegraphy [formerly 621.3843]
   Radiofacsimile relocated to 621.38235

[.384 3] Specific instruments and apparatus of radiotelegraphy
   Relocated to 621.3842

[.384 5] Radiotelephony
   Including portable radio stations [formerly 621.384168], e.g., walkie-talkies
   Class here mobile radio stations [formerly 621.384165], specific instruments and apparatus of radiotelephony [formerly 621.3846], comprehensive works on radio transmission in telephony

   For radio relays, see 621.38782

   See Manual at 621.3845 vs. 621.38782
.384 54  Citizens band radio
       Class comprehensive works on amateur and citizens band radio in 621.38416

       See Manual at 621.38416 vs. 621.39454

.384 56  Cellular telephone systems (Cellular radio)
       Variant names: cellular radio, portable telephone systems

[.384 6]  Specific instruments and apparatus of radiotelephony
       Relocated to 621.3845

.384 8  Radar

[.384 81]  Fundamentals
       Number discontinued; class in 621.3848

.384 83  Specific instruments and devices
       Examples: antennas, receivers, transmitters

.384 85  Systems
       Examples: continuous, monopulse, pulse-modulated

.384 86  Stations

.384 88  Scanning patterns

.384 89  Special developments

.384 892  Racon

.384 893  Shoran

.385  Telephony
       Class here telephone systems based on wires, cables, lasers, optical fibers
       Class cellular telephone systems in 621.38456, data communications engineering in 621.3981

       For radiotelephony, see 621.3845; telephone equipment and transmission, 621.386-621.387

.385 1  Network analysis

.385 7  Automatic and semiautomatic switching systems
       Example: direct distance dialing

>  621.386-621.387 Telephone equipment and transmission
       Class comprehensive works in 621.385

.386  Telephone terminal equipment
       Dialing, transmitting, receiving equipment

.386 7  Telephone answering and message recording devices
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.386 9</td>
<td>Pay telephones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.387</td>
<td>Telephone transmission and nonterminal equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.387 8</td>
<td>Transmission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.387 82</td>
<td>Long-distance systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including radio relays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>See Manual at 621.3845 vs. 621.38782</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.387 83</td>
<td>Local systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.387 84</td>
<td>Transmission lines and cables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including poles, auxiliary line equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.388</td>
<td>Television</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.388 001</td>
<td>Philosophy and theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.388 002</td>
<td>Miscellany</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.388 002 18</td>
<td>Standards <em>formerly 621.3887</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.388 002 87</td>
<td>Measurement <em>formerly 621.3887</em> and testing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.388 002 88</td>
<td>Maintenance and repair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maintenance and repair covering broadcast and transmission equipment as well as receiving sets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class maintenance and repair of receiving sets in 621.38887</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.388 003-.388 009</td>
<td>Standard subdivisions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.388 02</td>
<td>Black-and-white television</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.388 04</td>
<td>Color television</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.388 1</td>
<td>Wave propagation and transmission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including definition, resolution, interference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use of this number for fundamentals discontinued; class in 621.388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[.388 11]</td>
<td>Wave propagation and transmission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number discontinued; class in 621.3881</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[.388 12-.388 13]</td>
<td>Circuits and optics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Numbers discontinued; class in 621.388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.388 3</td>
<td>Components and devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.388 31</td>
<td>Transmitters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.388 32</td>
<td>Tubes, transistors, semiconductor diodes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
.388 33 Video recorders and video recordings
Use of this number for comprehensive works on television supplementary devices discontinued; class in 621.3883

[.388 330 288] Maintenance and repair
Do not use; class in 621.388337

.388 332 Video recordings
Examples: cassettes, discs
Use of this number for video recorders discontinued; class in 621.38833

[.388 332 028 8] Maintenance and repair
Maintenance and repair of video recorders and video recordings relocated to 621.388337

.388 337 Maintenance and repair of video recorders and video recordings [formerly 621.3883320288]

.388 34 Cameras and components
.388 35 Antennas
[.388 36] Television receiving sets
Relocated to 621.3888

.388 5 Communication systems
.388 53 Satellite television
.388 57 Cable television
.388 6 Stations
Class here studios
.388 62 Broadcasting stations
.388 63 Closed-circuit stations
.388 64 Mobile stations
[.388 7] Standards and measurement
Standards relocated to 621.38800218, measurement to 621.38800287

.388 8 Television receiving sets [formerly 621.38836]

[.388 802 88] Maintenance and repair
Do not use; class 621.38887

[.388 85-.388 86] Assembly and installation
Numbers discontinued; class in 621.3888

.388 87 Maintenance and repair

[.388 872-.388 874] Of black-and-white and color sets
Numbers discontinued; class in 621.38887
Special developments

Number discontinued; class in 621.388

Sound recording, security, related systems

Example: underwater devices

Public address, security, related systems

Examples: announcing, calling, paging systems

Security electronics

Including electronic eavesdropping devices [formerly 621.381792] and other surveillance systems and countermeasures

Class here alarm systems

Sound recording and reproducing systems

Audio systems limited to recording and reproduction of sound

Class comprehensive works on acoustical communications, on audio systems covering transmission as well as recording and reproduction in 621.3828; telephone message recording in 621.3867

Recorders and recordings

Examples: compact disc, cylinder, disc, film records and recorders

Tape recorders and recordings

Example: cassettes

Reproducers

Example: jukeboxes

Class here phonographs

Class combination recorders-reproducers in 621.38932

High-fidelity systems (Hi-fi)

*For stereophonic systems, see 621.389334*

Stereophonic systems

Including quadraphonic systems [formerly 621.389336]

Quadraphonic systems

Relocated to 621.389334

Language translators

Sonar

Use of this number for underwater devices discontinued; class in 621.389

Projectors and hydrophones

Number discontinued; class in 621.389
Sonar
Number discontinued; class in 621.3895

Laser communications
Relocated to 621.3827

Audiovisual engineering [formerly 621.38044]

Computers [formerly 621.38195]
This schedule was first published as a separate in 1985
Class here electronic digital computers, central processing units, computer reliability, general computer performance evaluation
Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 621.39 in the one coming last, e.g., circuitry of computer internal storage in 621.3973 (not 621.395)
Use of this number for other branches of electrical engineering discontinued; class in 621.3
Class selection and use of computer hardware, works treating both hardware and either programming or programs in 004; specific applications with the subject, e.g., use of computers to regulate processes automatically 629.895

Testing and measurement
Do not use; class in 621.392

General works on specific types of computers
Including optical computers
Class here specific types of processors, e.g., multiprocessors
Class programmable calculators in 681.14

See Manual at 006.37 vs. 006.42, 621.367, 621.391, 621.399

621.391 1–621.391 6 Digital computers
Class comprehensive works in 621.39

See Manual at 004.11–004.16

Digital supercomputers

Digital mainframe computers

For digital supercomputers, see 621.3911

Digital minicomputers
Class comprehensive works on digital minicomputers and microcomputers in 621.3916
Digital microcomputers
Class here personal computers, comprehensive works on
minicomputers and microcomputers

Hybrid and analog computers

Systems analysis and design, computer architecture
Including hardware description languages
See Manual at 004.21 vs. 004.22, 621.392

Rural electrification
Relocated to 333.7932

Electrification
Relocated to 621.319

Circuitry
Class here logic circuits [formerly also 621.381537], very large scale
integration (VLSI) [formerly also 621.38173], logic design of circuits

Electric heating
Relocated to 621.4028

Storage
Internal storage (Main memory)
Examples: magnetic-core memory
Class here random-access memory (RAM), read-only memory
(ROM)
Class compact disk read-only memory (CD-ROM) in 621.3976

Semiconductor memory
Class here bipolar, metal-oxide-semiconductor (MOS), thin-film
memory

External (Auxiliary) storage
Examples: hard and floppy disks; compact disk read-only memory
(CD-ROM); magnetic tapes (cartridges, cassettes, reel-to-reel tapes),
tape and disk drives

Magnetic bubble memory

Optical storage devices
Class storage of pictorial data in optical storage devices in 621.367

Interfacing and communications devices, peripherals
Interfacing and communications devices
Class here data communications engineering
See Manual at 004.6; 621.382 vs. 621.3981, 004.6
.398 14 Analog-to-digital and digital-to-analog converters
   Example: modems

.398 4 Peripherals
   Class peripheral storage in 621.3976
   For peripherals combining input and output functions, see 621.3985; input peripherals, 621.3986; output peripherals, 621.3987

.398 5 Peripherals combining input and output functions
   Class here computer terminals
   Class tape and disk devices in 621.3976

.398 6 Input peripherals
   Examples: card readers, keyboards

.398 7 Output peripherals
   Examples: monitors (video display screens)
   Computer output microform devices relocated to 681.6, computer output printers to 681.62
   See also 621.399 for computer graphics

.399 Devices for special computer methods
   Examples: devices for computer graphics, pattern recognition
   See Manual at 006.37 vs. 006.42, 621.367, 621.391, 621.399

.4 Heat engineering and prime movers
   Class here engines, power plants, propulsion systems
   Use 621.4001–621.4009 for standard subdivisions
   For steam engineering, see 621.1; hydraulic-power technology, 621.2

SUMMARY

621.402–.406 [Heat engineering and turbines]
   .42 Stirling engines, air motors and propulsion
   .43 Internal-combustion engines and propulsion
   .44 Geothermal engineering
   .45 Wind engines and propulsion
   .46 Electric and related propulsion
   .47 Solar-energy engineering
   .48 Nuclear engineering

.402 Heat engineering
   Class a kind of heat engineering with the kind, e.g., geothermal engineering in 621.44, heating buildings in 697
   For low-temperature technology, see 621.56
   See also 536 for physics of heat
Thermal systems [formerly 621.4028]

Heat transfer

Conduction, convection, radiation, heat exchange

Heat exchangers relocated to 621.4025

Fuels and combustion

Class pollution by-products of combustion in 628.532

Insulation

Equipment

Examples: heat exchangers [formerly also 621.4022], furnaces, heat engines, heat pipes, heat pumps

Class solar furnaces in 621.477

Specific heat systems

Not provided for elsewhere

Examples: electric heating [formerly 621.396]; distribution, storage systems

Comprehensive works on thermal systems relocated to 621.40201

Class a specific aspect of a specific heat system with the aspect, e.g., heat transfer in electric heating 621.4022

Turbines

Class here turbomachines

Stirling engines, air motors and propulsion

Example of air motor: rotary vane positive expansion motors

For wind engines and propulsion, see 621.45

Internal-combustion engines and propulsion

Class generation of electricity by internal combustion engines in 621.312133

621.433–621.436 Specific internal-combustion engines

Class comprehensive works in 621.43, parts and accessories of specific engines in 621.437

Gas turbines and free-piston engines

Standard subdivisions are added for gas turbines and free-piston engines and for gas turbines alone

For turbojet engines, see 621.4352

Simple gas turbines

Number discontinued; class in 621.433
.433 5 Free-piston engines
.434 Spark-ignition engines
   Nondiesel piston engines
   Example: rotary spark-ignition engines
   Class here reciprocating spark-ignition engines
.435 Jet and rocket engines
   .435 2 Jet engines and propulsion
      Including turbojet engines
   .435 6 Rocket engines and propulsion (Rocketry)
.436 Diesel and semidiesel engines
   Class here compression-ignition engines
   [.436 028 8] Maintenance and repair
      Do not use; class in 621.4368
.436 1 General topics
   Examples: breathing, combustion, compression, cooling, exhaust, injection
.436 2 Design and construction
.436 8 Operation, maintenance, repair
.437 Parts and accessories of internal-combustion engines
   Examples: carburetors, connecting rods, cylinders, governors, ignition devices, pistons, valves
.44 Geothermal engineering
   Including prospecting for sources of geothermal energy, utilization of differences in ocean temperature
.45 Wind engines and propulsion
   Class wind-powered generation of electricity in 621.312136
.453 Windmills
.46 Electric and related propulsion
   Class here electric motors
   [.462] Electric motors
      Number discontinued; class in 621.46
.465 Ion motors
.466 Plasma motors
Solar-energy engineering
Class engineering of secondary sources of solar energy with the secondary source, e.g., wind energy 621.45

For generation of electricity from solar radiation, see 621.31244

General topics
Examples: heat storage, radiation, thermodynamics

Solar engines and propulsion
Solar furnaces

Nuclear engineering
Fission and fusion technology
Class direct nuclear generation of electricity in 621.3125

See also 539.7 for nuclear physics

Generation of thermal power
Use of this number for radioisotope-powered generators discontinued; class in 621.48
Nuclear generation of thermal power relocated to 621.483

Nuclear reactors, power plants, by-products
Class here nuclear steam-powered generation of electricity [formerly 621.31252], nuclear generation of thermal power [formerly 621.481], fission reactors

For fusion reactors, power plants, by-products, see 621.484

Physical principles
Class reactor physics in 621.4831

Safety measures
Do not use; class in 621.4835

Reactor physics
Including critical size
Class here physics of reactor cores
Class physics of a specific component, material, process with the subject, using notation 0153 from Table 1, e.g., nuclear reactions in fuel elements 621.483350153975

Design, construction, shielding, siting

Shielding

Materials

Structural materials
.483 35 Fuel element materials
   Fuels and cladding
.483 36 Coolants
.483 37 Moderators
.483 4 Specific types of reactors
   Classified by neutron energy, moderator, fuel and fuel conversion, coolant
   Examples: breeder reactors
   Class a specific aspect of a specific type with the aspect, e.g., shielding of fast reactors 621.48323
.483 5 Operation, control, safety measures
.483 7 Radioactive isotopes
   Class here comprehensive technological works on radioisotopes
   Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., radioactive isotope therapy 615.8424
.483 8 Waste technology
   General aspects: treatment, disposal, utilization of radioactive waste
.484 Fusion (Thermonuclear) reactors, power plants, by-products
   Examples: tokamaks
.485 Nuclear propulsion

.5 Pneumatic, vacuum, low-temperature technologies
.51 Pneumatic technology
   Class here air compression technology, air compressors
   For compressed-air transmission, see 621.53; pneumatic conveying and cleaning, 621.54; fans, blowers, pumps, 621.6; pneumatic control, 629.8045
.53 Compressed-air transmission
.54 Pneumatic conveying and cleaning
   Including carriers, cleaners, sandblasters
.55 Vacuum technology [formerly also 533.5]
   Including vacuum pumps [formerly 621.692]
   See also 533.5 for vacuum physics
.56 Low-temperature technology
   Class here refrigeration
   For refrigerators and freezers, see 621.57; ice manufacture, 621.58; cryogenic technology, 621.59
   See also 536.56 for physics of low temperatures

.560 11 Systems [formerly 621.567]

.563 Heat pumps

.564 Refrigerants and coolants

[.567] Systems
   Relocated to 621.56011

.57 Refrigerators and freezers

.58 Ice manufacture

.59 Cryogenic technology
   Technology of temperatures below -100°C or -148°F
   Including liquefaction and solidification of gases having low boiling points

.6 Fans, blowers, pumps

.61 Fans and blowers
   For rotary fans and blowers, see 621.62; centrifugal fans and blowers, 621.63

.62 Rotary fans and blowers

.63 Centrifugal fans and blowers

> 621.64–621.69 Pumps
   Class comprehensive works in 621.69, hydraulic pumps in 621.252

.64 Hand pumps

.65 Reciprocating pumps

.66 Rotary pumps

.67 Centrifugal pumps

.69 Pumps Pneumatic pumps
   Class hydraulic pumps in 621.252
   For hand pumps, see 621.64; reciprocating pumps, 621.65; rotary pumps, 621.66; centrifugal pumps 621.67

.691 Jet pumps
Vacuum pumps

Relocated to 621.55

Density and direct-fluid-pressure displacement pumps

**8 Machine engineering**

Class a specific kind of machinery not provided for here with the kind, e.g., hydraulic machinery 621.2; a specific use of machinery with the use, e.g., gears in clocks 681.112

**SUMMARY**

621.801-.809 Standard subdivisions

.81 General topics

.82 Machine parts

.83 Gears, ratchets, cams

.84 Valves and pistons

.85 Power transmission systems

.86 Materials-handling equipment

.87 Cranes, derricks, elevators

.88 Fasteners

.89 Friction and its elimination (Tribology)

.801 53 Physical principles

Relocated to 621.811

.802 87 Testing and measuring

Class here strength tests of mechanisms

.802 88 Maintenance and repair

Relocated to 621.816

.81 General topics

.811 Physical principles [formerly also 621.80153]

Examples: kinematics, vibration

Class here principles of simple machines [formerly also 531.8]

.812 Speed and power control devices

.815 Machine design

.816 Maintenance and repair [formerly also 621.80288]

Including balancing

.82 Machine parts

_for gears, ratchets, cams, see 621.83; valves, pistons, 621.84_

.821 Journals

.822 Bearings

Examples: ball, roller, sliding bearings

Class journals in 621.821
.823 Shafts and shafting
   Example: axles
   Class bearings in 621.822
   *For journals, see 621.821*

.824 Springs

.825 Couplings, clutches, universal joints

.827 Connecting rods, cranks, eccentrics

.83 Gears, ratchets, cams

.833 Gears and gearing
   .833 1 Spur gears
   .833 2 Bevel and skew bevel gears
   .833 3 Worm and spiral gears

.837 Ratchets and ratchet wheels

.838 Cams

.84 Valves and pistons
   Variant names for valves: cocks, faucets, taps
   Standard subdivisions are added for valves and pistons and for valves alone

.85 Power transmission systems
   Class power transmission systems for materials-handling equipment in 621.86; a specific machine part of a transmission system with the part, e.g., shafts 621.823

.852 By belt

.853 By rope

.854 By wire

.859 By chain

.86 Materials-handling equipment
   *For cranes, derricks, elevators, see 621.87*

.862 Hoisting equipment
   *For specific kinds of hoisting equipment, see 621.863–621.865*

> 621.863–621.865 Specific kinds of hoisting equipment
   Class comprehensive works in 621.862

.863 Chain hoists, fork lifts, tackles

.864 Windlasses, winches, capstans
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.865</td>
<td>Power shovels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.867</td>
<td>Conveying equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>For telpherage, see 621.868</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.867 2</td>
<td>Pipes and pipelines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including pipe laying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class pipelines for transporting coal in 662.624, petroleum in 665.544, industrial gases in 665.744; manufacturing pipes of a specific material with the material, e.g., metal pipes 671.832</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.867 5</td>
<td>Belt conveyors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.867 6</td>
<td>Escalators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.868</td>
<td>Telpherage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Examples: chair lifts, ski tows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class here comprehensive works on people movers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>For escalators, see 621.8676; elevators, 621.877</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.87</td>
<td>Cranes, derricks, elevators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.872</td>
<td>Derricks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class cranes in 621.873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.873</td>
<td>Cranes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.877</td>
<td>Elevators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including jacks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.88</td>
<td>Fasteners</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>See also 621.97 for fastening equipment</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.882</td>
<td>Screws, nuts, bolts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.883</td>
<td>Cotters and cotter pins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.884</td>
<td>Nails and rivets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.885</td>
<td>Sealing devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.89</td>
<td>Friction and its elimination (Tribology)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including lubrication, lubricants, wear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>For bearings, see 621.822</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.9</td>
<td><strong>Tools and fabricating equipment</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use 621.9001–621.9009 for standard subdivisions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class a specific use with the use, e.g., lathes in woodworking 684.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.902</td>
<td>Machine tools</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.902 3</td>
<td>Numerical control</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
.904 Pneumatic tools
.908 Hand tools
.91 Planing and milling tools

See also 671.35 for machining metal

.912 Planers, shapers, slotters
.914 Crushing tools
.92 Grinding and abrading tools
.922 Lapping tools
Examples: buffing, polishing tools
.923 Emery wheels and grindstones
.924 Filing tools
.93 Cutting, sawing, disassembling tools
Examples: axes, crowbars, saws, shears, slicers, trimmers
.932 Knives
.94 Turning tools
Class turning tools used for perforating and tapping in 621.95
.942 Lathes
[.943] Chucks
Relocated to 621.992
.944 Gear-cutting, pipe-threading, screw-cutting tools

For tapping tools, see 621.955

[.945] Boring tools
Relocated to 621.952
.95 Perforating and tapping tools

For punching tools, see 621.96
.952 Drilling tools
Class here boring tools [formerly 621.945]
.954 Reaming and broaching tools
.955 Tapping tools

See also 621.84 for taps (valves)
.96 Punching tools
Class die punches in 621.984
.97  Fastening and joining equipment
     Class fasteners in 621.88
.972  Screwdrivers and wrenches
.973  Hand hammers
.974  Power hammers
.977  Welding and soldering equipment
.978  Riveting equipment
.98  Pressing, molding, impressing equipment
.982  Bending tools
.983  Straightening tools
.984  Molding and impressing equipment
     Examples: molds, dies, stamps
.99  Other tools and equipment
.992  Holding, guiding, safety equipment
     Examples: chucks [formerly 621.943], clamps, guards, jigs, shields, vises
[.994]  Measuring tools
     Relocated to 681.2

622  Mining and related operations

SUMMARY

622.1  Prospecting and exploratory operations
  .2  Excavation techniques
  .3  Mining for specific materials
  .4  Mine environment
  .5  Mine drainage
  .6  Mine transport systems
  .7  Ore dressing
  .8  Mine health and safety

[.028 9]  Safety measures
     Do not use; class safety measures regardless of technique employed
     or mineral extracted in 622.8

.1  Prospecting and exploratory operations

>  622.12–622.17 General topics
     Class comprehensive works in 622.1, general topics applied to specific
     materials in 622.18, to treasure in 622.19
.12 Surface exploration
   Examples: biogeochemical, geobotanical, geological prospecting

.13 Geochemical prospecting
   Including mineral surveys (qualitative and quantitative measurement of
   mineral content)
   Class biogeochemical prospecting in 622.12

.14 Mine surveys
   Determination of size, depth, shape of mines

.15 Geophysical exploration

.152 Gravitational prospecting

.153 Magnetic prospecting

.154 Electrical prospecting
   Examples: galvanic-electromagnetic, resistivity, self-potential
   prospecting

.159 Other methods of prospecting
   Examples: gas-detection, geothermal, radioactivity prospecting

.159 2 Seismic prospecting
   Variant name: acoustical, vibration prospecting

.17 Underwater prospecting

.18 Prospecting for specific materials
   Add to base number 622.18 the numbers following 553 in 553.2–553.9, e.g.,
   for petroleum 622.1828; however, prospecting for water relocated from
   622.187 to 628.114
   Standard subdivisions are added to subdivisions for specific materials even if
   only one type of prospecting is used, e.g., seismic exploration for petroleum
   in Texas 622.182809764

.19 Prospecting and exploring for treasure
   Underground and underwater treasure hunting
   Class archaeological methods and equipment in 930.1028

.2 Excavation techniques
   Class here subsurface mining
   Class extraction techniques for specific materials in 622.3
   See also 622.4–622.8 for nonextractive mining technologies

[.202 89] Safety measures
   Do not use; class safety measures regardless of technique
   employed in 622.8
> 622.22–622.28 Underground mining

Class comprehensive works in 622.2

.22 In-situ processing

Class here leach mining wells, solution mining

See Manual at 622.7, 622.22 vs. 669, 662.6

.23 Underground blasting and drilling
.24 Underground boring
.25 Underground shafts and shaft sinking
.26 Underground tunnels and tunneling
.28 Underground supporting structures and their erection

Class here control of roof and wall failure (rock failure) [formerly 622.8]

.29 Surface and underwater mining

.292 Surface mining [formerly 622.3]

Class here open-pit, strip mining [formerly 622.31]

Class reclamation after surface mining in 631.64

.292 7 Alluvial mining [formerly 622.32]

Examples: hydraulic, placer mining

.295 Underwater mining

Class here off-shore mining, mineral extraction from ocean floor

.3 Mining for specific materials

Class here extraction techniques of specific materials

Use of this number for comprehensive works on types of mining discontinued; class in 622

Surface mining relocated to 622.292, dressing of specific mineral ores to 622.7

Class prospecting for specific materials in 622.18; nonextractive mining technologies relating to specific materials in 622.4–622.8, e.g., mine safety technology 622.8

[.31] Open-pit and strip mining

Relocated to 622.292

[.32] Alluvial mining

Relocated to 622.2927

.33 Carbonaceous materials
Coal, graphite, solid and semisolid bitumens

Add to base number 622.33 the numbers following 553.2 in 553.21–553.27, e.g., coal 622.334; however, bituminous shale relocated from 622.333 to 622.3383

Oil, oil shales, tar sands, natural gas

Use 622.338 for extraction of petroleum in the broad sense covering oil and gas, 622.3382 for petroleum in the narrow sense limited to oil

Class interdisciplinary works on petroleum in 553.28, comprehensive technical works in 665.5

Drilling techniques

Including use of drilling muds (drilling fluids)

Offshore drilling

Class here comprehensive works on offshore petroleum extraction

Class a specific aspect of offshore petroleum extraction with the aspect, e.g., offshore enhanced oil recovery 622.3382

Oil

Including tertiary recovery, well blowouts

Class here reservoir engineering; enhanced, secondary, tertiary recovery; well flooding

Oil shale relocated to 622.3383

Class techniques of drilling for oil in 622.3381

Specific enhanced oil recovery methods

Examples: enhanced recovery by use of bacteria, carbon dioxide, heat, water

Oil shale [formerly 622.3382] and tar sands

Variant names for oil shale: bituminous shale [formerly 622.333], black shale; for tar sands: bituminous sands, oil sands

Class extraction of oils from oil shale and tar sands in 665.4

Gas

Class techniques of drilling for gas in 622.3381

Fossil gums and resins

Metals and their ores

Iron and iron ores

Gold, silver, platinum

622.342–622.349 Nonferrous metals and their ores

Class comprehensive works in 622.34
.342 2 Gold
.342 3 Silver
.342 4 Platinum
.343-.349 Other nonferrous metals and their ores
   Add to base number 622.34 the numbers following 553.4 in
   553.43-553.49, e.g., uranium ores 622.34932
.35-.39 Other materials
   Add to base number 622.3 the numbers following 553 in 553.5-553.9, e.g.,
   gem diamonds 622.382; however, water extraction relocated from 622.37 to
   628.114

> 622.4-622.8 Nonextractive mining technologies
   Class here nonextractive mining technologies relating to specific materials
   Class comprehensive works in 622
   .4 Mine environment
      For mine drainage, see 622.5; mine health and safety, 622.8
   .42 Ventilation and air conditioning
      For temperature control, see 622.43
   .43 Temperature control
   .47 Illumination
   .473 Portable lamps
   .474 Electric lighting systems
   .48 Electricity
      Class electricity applied to a specific operation with the operation, e.g.,
      temperature control 622.43
   .49 Sanitation
   .5 Mine drainage
   .6 Mine transport systems
      Haulage and hoisting
   .65 Hand and animal haulage
   .66 Mechanical haulage
      Example: mine railroads
      Class vertical haulage in 622.68
   .67 Direct- and gear-driven hoists
.68 Elevators
   Including skips

.69 Surface transportation
   General aspects: loading, unloading, transshipment

.7 Ore dressing
   Class here dressing of specific mineral ores [formerly 622.3]
   See Manual at 622.7, 622.22 vs. 669, 662.6

.73 Crushing and grinding

.74 Sizing
   Example: screening

622.75–622.77 Ore concentration
   Variant names: beneficiation, ore separation
   Class comprehensive works in 622.7

.75 Mechanical separation

.751 Gravity concentration

.752 Flotation

.77 Magnetic and electrostatic (inductive charging) separation

.79 Milling plants
   Class specific milling-plant operations in 622.73–622.77

.8 Mine health and safety
   Control of roof and wall failure (rock failure) relocated to 622.28
   Class interdisciplinary works on mine safety in 363.119622
   For sanitation, see 622.49

.82 Control of gas and explosions
   Class here comprehensive works on fire control, on respiratory safety
   For dust control, see 622.83

.83 Dust control

.89 Rescue operations
623 Military and nautical engineering

See Manual at 355 vs. 623

SUMMARY

623.04 General topics
.1 Fortifications
.2 Mine laying, mine clearance, demolition
.3 Engineering of defense
.4 Ordnance
.5 Ballistics and gunnery
.6 Military transportation technology
.7 Communications, vehicles, sanitation, related topics
.8 Nautical engineering and seamanship

.04 General topics
.042 Optical and paraphotic engineering
.043 Electronic engineering
.044 Nuclear engineering
.045 Mechanical engineering
.047 Construction engineering

623.1–623.7 Military engineering

Class comprehensive works in 623, general topics in 623.04, naval engineering in 623.8

.1 Fortifications

Class here forts and fortresses

Class artistic aspects in 725.18

.109 Historical and persons treatment

Geographical treatment relocated to 623.19

[.12] Permanent fortifications

Number discontinued; class in 623.1

.15 Temporary fortifications

.19 Geographical treatment [formerly also 623.109]

Add to base number 623.19 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., forts in France 623.1944

.2 Mine laying, mine clearance, demolition

.26 Mine laying and mine clearance

See also 623.45115 for manufacture of mines

.262 On land

.263 In water
Demolition

Engineering of defense

Class warning systems in 623.737
See also 623.4 for ordnance

Against invasion
Examples: countermining, flooding, mechanical barriers, moats, traps
Class artistic aspects of moats in 725.18
For fortifications, see 623.1; mine laying and demolition, 623.2

[Warning systems]
Relocated to 623.737

Protective construction
Example: air raid shelters

Ordnance

Class combat ships in 623.82
For combat vehicles, see 623.74

SUMMARY

623.402 88 Maintenance and repair

.41 Artillery
.42 Specific pieces of artillery
.43 Gun mounts
.44 Small arms and other weapons
.45 Ammunition and other destructive agents
.46 Accessories

Maintenance and repair [formerly 623.48]

.41 Artillery
For specific pieces of artillery, see 623.42; artillery projectiles, 623.4513

.412 Field artillery
Including railroad-borne artillery

.417 Coast artillery

.418 Naval artillery

.419 Space artillery
Use of this number for other artillery discontinued; class in 623.41

[Space artillery]
Number discontinued; class in 623.419
Specific pieces of artillery

Examples: cannons, howitzers, mortars, crew-served rocket launchers
Including mortars for launching chemical projectiles [formerly 623.445]

Gun mounts

Small arms and other weapons

Class here side arms
Class artistic aspects of arms and armor in 739.7, vehicle-mounted small arms with the specific vehicle, e.g., on armored cars 623.7475

See also 623.455 for small arms ammunition

Weaponry of prefirearm origin

Examples: armor, bayonets, bows and arrows, catapults, knives, maces, shields, spears, swords, tomahawks

Portable firearms

For pistols and revolvers, see 623.443

Automatic firearms

Examples: automatic rifles, machine and submachine guns
Class automatic pistols and revolvers in 623.443

Rifles, muskets, carbines

Portable rocket launchers (Bazookas)

Pistols and revolvers

Chemical weapons

Examples: flame throwers; rifle attachments for launching smoke and gas canisters
Mortars for launching chemical projectiles relocated to 623.42
Class artillery for launching chemical projectiles in 623.41, chemical delivery devices in 623.4516

For chemical agents, see 623.4592

Destructive radiation weapons

Examples: laser weapons, thermal weapons
Class here destructive radiations [formerly 623.4595]

Destructive vibration weapons

Example: ultrasonic weapons
Class here destructive vibrations [formerly 623.4596]
SUMMARY

623.451 Charge-containing devices

.452 Explosives

.454 Detonators, rockets, demolition charges

.455 Small arms ammunition

.459 Nonexplosive agents

.451 Charge-containing devices

Class here bombs, missiles, projectiles

For tactical rockets, see 623.4543

See also 623.455 for small arms ammunition

.451 1 Grenades, mines, nuclear weapons

Class grenades and mines with special types of charges in 623.4516–623.4518

.451 14 Rifle and hand grenades

.451 15 Mines

.451 19 Nuclear weapons

Examples: artillery projectiles, bombs

For nuclear missiles, see 623.4519

.451 3 Artillery projectiles

Class artillery projectiles with special types of charges in 623.4516–623.4518, nuclear artillery projectiles in 623.4519

.451 4 Antipersonnel devices

Example: booby traps

Class here shrapnel devices

Specific antipersonnel devices other than booby traps relocated to the subject, e.g., antipersonnel hand grenades 623.45114

> 623.451 6–623.451 8 Devices with special types of charges

Class comprehensive works in 623.451

For nuclear weapons, see 623.45119

.451 6 Chemical and biological devices

Projectiles and related devices containing gas, incendiary materials, microbes, smoke

Standard subdivisions are added for chemical and biological devices and for chemical devices alone

Class chemical agents in 623.4592, biological agents in 623.4594
.451 7 High-explosive devices
   Examples: blockbusters, high-explosive-antitank (HEAT) projectiles, torpedoes

   *For bangalore torpedoes, see 623.4545*

.451 8 Armor-piercing devices

.451 9 Guided missiles
   Nuclear and nonnuclear missiles
   Class here storage and launching equipment, launch vehicles; strategic missiles, comprehensive works on rockets

.451 91 Air-to-air guided missiles

.451 92 Air-to-surface guided missiles

.451 93 Air-to-underwater guided missiles

.451 94 Surface-to-air guided missiles
   Class here antimissile missiles, interceptor missiles

.451 95 Ballistic missiles (Surface-to-surface guided missiles)

.451 952 Short range ballistic missiles

.451 953 Intermediate range ballistic missiles

.451 954 Long range ballistic missiles
   Class here intercontinental ballistic missiles

.451 96 Surface-to-underwater guided missiles

.451 97 Underwater guided missiles
   Underwater-to-air, underwater-to-surface, underwater-to-underwater

.451 98 Space guided missiles

.452 Explosives

.452 6 Burning and deflagrating explosives
   Examples: cordite, guncotton, gunpowder, smokeless powder
   Class here propellant explosives

.452 7 High explosives
   Examples: dynamite, nitroglycerin, TNT (trinitrotoluene)

.454 Detonators, rockets, demolition charges

.454 2 Detonators
   Examples: fuses, percussion caps, primers
Tactical rockets
Unguided nuclear and nonnuclear rockets
Class comprehensive works on rocket weapons, on rocket-propelled guided missiles in 623.4519

Demolition charges
Examples: bangalore torpedoes, destructors, shaped charges
Class shaped charges in bombs, missiles, projectiles in 623.451

Small arms ammunition
Examples: bazooka rockets, bullets, cartridges

Nonexplosive agents
Class here detection of nonexplosive agents

Chemical agents
Example: tear gas
Class here poisons and gases

Biological agents

Destructive radiations
Relocated to 623.446

Destructive vibrations
Relocated to 623.447

Accessories
Examples: sighting and range apparatus

Maintenance and repair
Relocated to 623.40288

Ballistics and gunnery

Ballistics

Motion of projectiles within the bore (Interior ballistics)
Motion of projectiles after leaving gun tube (Exterior ballistics)
Effect of projectiles on targets (Terminal ballistics)

Gunnery
For recoil, see 623.57

Land gunnery
Naval gunnery
Aircraft gunnery
Spacecraft gunnery
Target selection and detection
Class siting and range apparatus in 623.46, application to specific types of gunnery in 623.551–623.556

Firing and fire control
Class application to specific types of gunnery in 623.551–623.556

For target selection and detection, see 623.557

Recoil

Military transportation technology

For vehicles, see 623.74

Land transportation
For roads, see 623.62; railroads and their rolling stock, 623.63; bridges, 623.67; tunnels, 623.68

Roads

Railroads and their rolling stock

The way
Earthwork and track

Rolling stock

Naval facilities
Examples: artificial harbors, docks, naval bases
Class artistic aspects of naval facilities in 725.34

Air facilities
Class here air bases, airports, comprehensive works on military aerospace engineering
Add to base number 623.66 the numbers following 629.136 in 629.1361–629.1368, e.g., airstrips 623.6612
Class artistic aspects of air facilities in 725.39

For military astronautics, see 623.69; aircraft, 623.746

Bridges

Tunnels

Space facilities
Class here comprehensive works on military astronautics

For spacecraft, see 623.749
.7 Communications, vehicles, sanitation, related topics

SUMMARY

623.71 Intelligence and reconnaissance topography
  .72 Photography and photogrammetry
  .73 Communications technology
  .74 Vehicles
  .75 Sanitation and safety engineering
  .76 Electrical engineering
  .77 Camouflage and concealment

.71 Intelligence and reconnaissance topography

Standard subdivisions are added for intelligence and reconnaissance topography and for intelligence alone

Including sketching and map making

For photography and photogrammetry, see 623.72

.72 Photography and photogrammetry

.73 Communications technology

Class comprehensive works on military electronics in 623.043

.731 Visual signals
  .731 2 Semaphore, heliograph, flag signals
  .731 3 Pyrotechnical devices
  .731 4 Electrooptical devices
    Example: blickers

.732 Wire telegraphy

.733 Wire telephony

.734 Radio communication and radar
  .734 1 Shortwave radio
  .734 2 Radiotelegraphy
    Class shortwave radiotelegraphy in 623.7341
  .734 5 Radiotelephony
    Class shortwave radiotelephony in 623.7341
  .734 8 Radar

.735 Television

.737 Warning systems [formerly 623.37]

Class here air-raid warning systems
Vehicles

Support vehicles, combat vehicles and their ordnance

Class railroad rolling stock in 623.633

For nautical craft, see 623.82

See Manual at 629.046 vs. 385.388

SUMMARY

623.741 Lighter-than-air aircraft
.742 Free balloons
.743 Airships (Dirigibles)
.744 Barrage balloons
.746 Aircraft Heavier-than-air aircraft
.747 Motor land vehicles
.748 Air-cushion vehicles
.749 Spacecraft

.741 Lighter-than-air aircraft

For specific types of lighter-than-air aircraft, see 623.742–623.744

> 623.742–623.744 Specific types of lighter-than-air aircraft

Class comprehensive works in 623.741

.742 Free balloons

Class here comprehensive works on military balloons

.743 Airships (Dirigibles)
.743 5 Rigid airships
.743 6 Semirigid airships
.743 7 Nonrigid airships
.744 Barrage balloons
.746 Aircraft Heavier-than-air aircraft

Class lighter-than-air aircraft in 623.741

.746 04 Special topics

> 623.746 042–623.746 047 General types of heavier-than-air aircraft

Class here piloting general types of heavier-than-air aircraft

Class comprehensive works in 623.746, comprehensive works on piloting in 623.746048

.746 042 Propeller-driven airplanes
.746 044 Jet planes
.746 045 Rocket planes
.746 047  Vertical-lift (VTOL) aircraft
   Example: helicopters

.746 048  Piloting
   Class piloting of a specific type of heavier-than-air aircraft with the aircraft, e.g., piloting jet planes 623.746044, piloting fighters 623.7464

.746 049  Components
   Examples: engines, escape equipment
   Including instrumentation (avionics)
   Class components of a specific type of aircraft with the aircraft, e.g., components of jet planes 623.746044, of fighters 623.7464
   
   For aircraft ordnance, see 623.7461

.746 1  Aircraft ordnance
   
   For charge-containing devices, see 623.451

> 623.746 2–623.746 7  Heavier-than-air aircraft for specific uses
   Class here piloting heavier-than-air aircraft for specific uses
   Class comprehensive works in 623.746, comprehensive works on piloting in 623.746048, aircraft ordnance regardless of type of aircraft in 623.7461, pilotless aircraft regardless of type in 623.7469

.746 2  Trainers
.746 3  Bombers and fighter-bombers
.746 4  Fighters
.746 5  Personnel and cargo transports
.746 6  Rescue aircraft
.746 7  Reconnaissance aircraft
.746 9  Pilotless aircraft (Guided aircraft)
   Variant name: drones
   Reconnaissance and combat

.747  Motor land vehicles

.747 2  For transporting personnel
   Class armored personnel carriers in 623.7475
.747 22  Jeeps and similar vehicles
.747 23  Buses
.747 24  Ambulances
.747 4  For transporting supplies
.747 5  For combat
   Examples: armored cars, other armored vehicles
.747 52  Tanks
.748  Air-cushion vehicles
.748 2  Overland air-cushion vehicles
.748 4  Overwater air-cushion vehicles
.748 5  Amphibious air-cushion vehicles
.749  Spacecraft
.75  Sanitation and safety engineering
   Class here health engineering
.751  Water supply
.753  Sewage treatment and disposal
.754  Garbage and refuse treatment and disposal
.76  Electrical engineering
.77  Camouflage and concealment
.8  Nautical engineering and seamanship

   Nautical engineering: engineering of ships and boats and their component parts
   Class here naval engineering, comprehensive works on military water transportation
   Class harbors, ports, roadsteads in 627.2

   For naval facilities, see 623.64

**SUMMARY**

| 623.81 | Naval architecture |
| .82 | Nautical craft |
| .83 | Shipyards |
| .84 | Hulls of nautical craft |
| .85 | Engineering systems of nautical craft |
| .86 | Equipment and outfit of nautical craft |
| .87 | Power plants of nautical craft |
| .88 | Seamanship |
| .89 | Navigation |

.81  Naval architecture

   Variant names: marine architecture, naval design

   Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., design of steel plates for battleship in 623.81252 *not* 623.817765 or 623.81821

   Design of craft  | 623.812 |
   Design in specific materials  | 623.818 |
   Design tests  | 623.819 |
   Structural analysis and design  | 623.817 |
.810 287  Measurement
Class design testing in 623.819

.812  Design of craft
Class here hydrodynamics of hulls [formerly 623.8144]

.812 04  Design of general types of craft
Add to base number 623.81204 the numbers following 623.820 in
623.8202–623.8205, e.g., design of submersible craft 623.812045

.812 1-.812 9  Design of specific kinds of craft
Add to base number 623.812 the numbers following 623.82 in
623.821–623.829, e.g., design of sailboats 623.81223

[.814]  Design of specific parts and details
Relocated to 623.84–623.87

[.814 4]  Hulls
Hydrodynamics of hulls relocated to 623.812

.817  Structural analysis and design
Add to base number 623.817 the numbers following 624.17 in
624.171–624.177, e.g., structural analysis 623.8171, wreckage studies
623.8176

.818  Design in specific materials
Add to base number 623.818 the numbers following 624.18 in
624.182–624.189, e.g., design in steel 623.81821

.819  Design tests

.82  Nautical tests
Class shipyards in 623.83, overwater hovercraft in 629.324

For naval architecture, see 623.81; parts and details, 623.84–623.87

SUMMARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>623.820 01-.820 09</th>
<th>Standard subdivisions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.820 1-.820 07</td>
<td>[Models and miniatures, general types of craft, craft of specific materials]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.821</td>
<td>Ancient and medieval craft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.822</td>
<td>Modern wind-driven ships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.823</td>
<td>Small and medium power-driven ships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.824</td>
<td>Power-driven merchant and factory ships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.825</td>
<td>Power-driven warships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.826</td>
<td>Support warships and other government ships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.827</td>
<td>Nonmilitary submersible craft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.828</td>
<td>Other power-driven ships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.829</td>
<td>Hand-propelled and towed craft</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

.820 01  Philosophy and theory

.820 02  Miscellany
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dewey Decimal Classification</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>623.82022</td>
<td>Illustrations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[.820 022]</td>
<td>Models and miniatures (Do not use; class models and miniatures of all types of craft in 623.8201)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.820 028</td>
<td>Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.820 028 8</td>
<td>Maintenance and repair <em>[formerly 623.8208]</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.820 03-.820 09</td>
<td>Standard subdivisions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.820 1</td>
<td>Models and miniatures (Class ships in bottles in 745.5928)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.820 104</td>
<td>Models and miniatures of general types of craft (Add to base number 623.820104 the numbers following 623.820 in 623.8202-623.8205, e.g., models of sailing craft 623.8201043)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.820 11-.820 19</td>
<td>Models and miniatures of specific types of craft (Add to base number 623.8201 the numbers following 623.82 in 623.821-623.829, e.g., models of battleships 623.820152)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

> 623.820 2-623.820 5 General types of craft

*Class comprehensive works in 623.82, general types of craft in specific materials in 623.8207, specific types of craft in 623.821-623.829*

| .820 2                     | Small craft (Class small sailing craft in 623.8203; small submersible craft in 623.8205; small power-driven craft in 623.823) |
| .820 23                   | Pleasure craft (Example: yachts) |
| .820 26                   | Working craft |
| .820 3                    | Sailing ships |
| .820 4                    | Power-driven ships (Examples: hydrofoils, steamships) |
| .820 5                    | Submersible craft |
| .820 7                    | Craft of specific materials (Class works limited to hulls of specific materials in 623.84) |
| [.820 8]                  | Maintenance and repair (Relocated to 623.8200288) |
Ancient and medieval craft
Examples: biremes, caravels, galleys, triremes

Modern craft
Class comprehensive works in 623.82
Modern wind-driven ships
Including rotor ships
Pleasure craft
Example: sailing yachts
Merchant ships
Example: clipper ships
Warships
Work ships
Example: research ships
For merchant ships, see 623.8224

Power-driven craft
Class comprehensive works in 623.8204
Small and medium power-driven ships
Class small and medium power-driven craft not provided for here in 623.824–623.828
Motorboats
Class here speedboats
Outboard motorboats
Inboard motorboats
Examples: hydroplanes, motor yachts
Inboard-outboard motorboats
Tugboats and towboats
Ferryboats
Power-driven merchant and factory ships
Class trawlers in 623.828
Passenger ships
Class ferryboats in 623.8234
Ocean liners
Inland-waterway ships
Example: river steamers

Cargo ships
Examples: bulk carriers, freighters, tankers

Factory ships
Examples: whaleboats and ship canneries

Power-driven warships
*For support warships, see 623.826*

Naval ordnance
Armor, weapons
*For naval artillery, see 623.418; charge-containing devices, 623.451*

Class comprehensive works in 623.825, naval ordnance in 623.8251

Battleships

Cruisers

Destroyers and destroyer escorts

Aircraft carriers

Landing craft

Submarines

Diesel-engine and electric-motor powered submarines

Nuclear-powered submarines

Light combat craft
Example: torpedo boats

Minelayers and minesweepers

Police boats, revenue cutters, coast guard craft

Hospital ships and military transports

Military supply ships

Nonmilitary submersible craft
Examples: bathyscaphes, bathyspheres

Other power-driven ships
Examples: lightships [formerly 627.923], dredgers, drilling ships, icebreakers, trawlers
Hand-propelled and towed craft
Examples: barges, canoes, coracles, lifeboats, rafts, rowboats, scows, towed canalboats

Shipyards
Including dry docks, floating dry docks [both formerly also 627.35]

> 623.84–623.87 Parts and details of nautical craft
Class here design of specific parts and details [formerly 623.814]
Class comprehensive works in 623.82

Hulls of nautical craft
Class hydrodynamics of hulls in 623.812

Lofting

Metalwork

Welding and riveting

Ship fitting

Carpentry

Construction with masonry, ceramics, allied materials
Add to base number 623.845 the numbers following 624.183 in 624.1832–624.1838, e.g., concrete hulls 623.8454

Resistant construction
Examples: corrosion-, fire-resistant construction

Engineering systems of nautical craft
Use 623.85001–623.85009 for standard subdivisions
For power plants, see 623.87

Mechanical systems

Electrical systems

Electronic systems

Electric lighting

Air conditioning and temperature controls

Cooling
Including refrigeration

Heating and air conditioning

Water supply and sanitation

Potable water
.854 3  Seawater
   Used for sanitation and fire fighting

.854 6  Sanitation
   Class seawater for sanitation in 623.8543

.856  Communication systems
   Add to base number 623.856 the numbers following 623.73 in
   623.731–623.737, e.g., flag systems 623.85612

.86  Equipment and outfit of nautical craft
   Including flares, other portable lights
   Class use of equipment and outfit in 623.88

.862  Gear and rigging
   Examples: anchors, cordage, masts, rope, rudders, sails, spars

.863  Nautical instruments

.865  Safety equipment
   Examples: fire fighting, lifesaving equipment
   Class comprehensive works on marine safety technology in 623.888

.866  Furniture

.867  Cargo-handling equipment
   Class cargo handling in 623.8881
   See also 627.34 for onshore cargo-handling equipment

.87  Power plants of nautical craft
   Class here marine engineering

.872  Specific kinds of engines
   Use of this number for comprehensive works on engines discontinued;
   class in 623.87

.872 2  Steam engines

.872 3  Internal-combustion engines
   Inboard and outboard
   Add to base number 623.8723 the numbers following 621.43 in
   621.433–621.437, e.g., diesel engines 623.87236

.872 6  Electric engines

.872 7  Solar engines

.872 8  Nuclear engines

.873  Engine auxiliaries
   Examples: boilers, piping, propellers, pumps, shafting
.874 Fuels

.88 Seamanship

For navigation, see 623.89

[.880 289] Safety measures

Do not use; class in 623.888

.881 Handling general types of craft

Add to base number 623.881 the numbers following 623.820 in 623.8202–623.8205, e.g., handling small craft 623.8812

Class handling specific types of craft in 623.882, safety and related topics in handling general types of craft in 623.888

.882 Handling specific types of craft

Add to base number 623.882 the numbers following 623.82 in 623.821–623.829, e.g., handling power-driven merchant ships 623.8824

Class safety and related topics in handling specific types of craft in 623.888

.888 Specific topics

Class here marine safety technology

For safety equipment, see 623.865

.888 1 Loading and unloading of nautical craft

Class here cargo handling

.888 2 Knotting and splicing ropes and cables

Class here interdisciplinary works on knotting and splicing

Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., knotting in camping 796.545

.888 4 Prevention of collision and grounding

Including rules of the road

.888 5 Wreckage studies

Class wreckage studies in marine architecture in 623.8176

.888 6 Fire fighting technology

See also 623.865 for manufacture of fire fighting equipment

.888 7 Rescue operations

.89 Navigation

Selection and determination of course

Class navigation procedures to prevent collision and grounding in 623.8884
.892 Geonavigation

For electronic aids to geonavigation, see 623.893

.892 021 2 Tables, formulas, specifications

Class tide and current tables in 623.8949

.892 2 Piloting and pilot guides

Positioning craft by visual observation of objects of known position

For piloting in and pilot guides to specific marine harbors and shores, see 623.8929

.892 209 Historical and persons treatment

Class geographical treatment in specific oceans and intercontinental seas in 623.89223–623.89227, in specific inland waters in 623.89229, in specific marine harbors and shores in 623.8929

.892 23–.892 27 Piloting in and pilot guides to specific oceans and intercontinental seas

Add to base number 623.8922 the numbers following —16 in notation 163–167 from Table 2, e.g., pilot guides to North Sea 623.8922336

.892 29 Piloting in and pilot guides to specific inland waters

Add to base number 623.89229 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., pilot guides to Great Lakes 623.8922977

.892 3 Dead reckoning

.892 9 Piloting in and pilot guides to specific marine harbors and shores

Class here approach and harbor piloting and pilot guides

.892 909 Historical and persons treatment

Class geographical treatment in 623.89291–623.89299

.892 91–.892 99 Geographical treatment

Add to base number 623.8929 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., harbor piloting for Scandinavia 623.892948; however, class approach and harbor piloting and pilot guides dealing comprehensively with specific oceans and intercontinental seas in 623.89223–623.89227

.893 Electronic aids to geonavigation

Class here comprehensive works on aids to geonavigation

For nonelectronic aids to geonavigation, see 623.894

> 623.893 2–623.893 3 Direction- and position-finding devices

Class comprehensive works in 623.893

.893 2 Radio aids

Examples: compasses, loran, radio

186
623 Engineering and allied operations

- Microwave aids
  Examples: racon, radar, shoran
- Sounding devices
  Sonar, other echo and sound-ranging devices

- Nonelectronic aids to geonavigation

- Lighthouses
  Class interdisciplinary works on lighthouses in 387.155, construction of lighthouses in 627.922

- Lightships
  Class construction of lightships in 623.828

- Beacons, buoys, daymarks
  Class construction of beacons, buoys, daymarks in 627.924

- Light lists

- Tide and current tables

624 Civil engineering

Including engineering of landscape architecture

Class here construction engineering

Class specific branches of civil engineering in 625–629, construction of buildings in 690

*For military construction engineering, see 623.047*

*See Manual at 624.1 vs. 624; 690 vs. 624*

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>624.01-.09</th>
<th>Standard subdivisions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.1</td>
<td>Structural engineering and underground construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>Bridges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>Specific types of bridges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>Tubular and box-girder bridges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>Suspension bridges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.6</td>
<td>Arch bridges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.7</td>
<td>Compound bridges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.8</td>
<td>Movable bridges</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[.029 9] Estimates of labor, time, materials

Do not use; class 624.1042

.068 5 Management of production [*formerly also 658.5]*

.1 Structural engineering and underground construction

Class a specific application with the application, e.g., structural engineering of dams 627.8

*See Manual at 624.1 vs. 624*
### SUMMARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dewey Decimal Classification</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>624.101-109</td>
<td>Standard subdivisions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.15</td>
<td>Foundation engineering and engineering geology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.16</td>
<td>Supporting structures other than foundations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.17</td>
<td>Structural analysis and design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.18</td>
<td>Design and construction in specific materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.19</td>
<td>Underground construction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

.101 Philosophy and theory

Class structural analysis and design in 624.17

[.102 99] Estimates of labor, time, materials

Do not use; class in 624.1042

.104 Special topics

.104 2 Estimates of labor, time, materials

Class interdisciplinary works on quantity surveying in 692.5

.15 Foundation engineering and engineering geology

.151 Engineering geology

Class here properties of soils that support structures (foundation soils)

.151 09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class soil surveys in 624.1517

.151 3 Rock and soil mechanics

.151 32 Rock mechanics

.151 36 Soil mechanics

Including drainage properties, permeability; permafrost

.151 362 Consolidation

.151 363 Stabilization

.151 4 Soil content analysis

.151 7 Soil surveys

Add to base number 624.1517 notation 1-9 from Table 2, e.g., soil survey of Japan 624.151752

Class general soil surveys not focusing on engineering problems in 631.47

> 624.152-624.158 Foundation engineering

Class comprehensive works in 624.15, engineering geology of foundations in 624.151
.152 Excavation
   Including blasting, shoring
   Class here earthwork
   Class embankment in 624.162

.153 Foundation materials
   Add to base number 624.153 the numbers following 620.1 in 620.12–620.19, e.g., iron 624.1537
   Class foundation materials for specific types of foundations in 624.154–624.158

> 624.154–624.158 Specific types of foundations
   Class comprehensive works in 624.15

   .154 Pile foundations
   .156 Floating foundations
      Examples: cantilever and platform foundations
   .157 Underwater foundations
      Including caissons, cofferdams
      See also 627.702 for underwater construction operations

   .158 Pier foundations

   .16 Supporting structures other than foundations
      Examples: abutments, piers

   .162 Embankments
   .164 Retaining walls

   .17 Structural analysis and design
      Class here interdisciplinary works on structural analysis and design, structural theory
      Class a specific application with the application, e.g., structural analysis of aircraft 629.1341

   .171 Structural analysis
      Class analysis of specific structural elements in 624.1772–624.1779
      For loads, see 624.172, stresses and strains, 624.176

   .171 2 Graphic statics
   .171 3 Static determinacy and indeterminacy
      Including statically indeterminate structures
   .171 4 Deflections
624.171 5 Moments and moment distribution

> 624.172–624.176 Loads, stresses, strains

Class comprehensive works in 624.171; loads, stresses, strains of specific structural elements in 624.1772–624.1779

.172 Loads

For wind loads, see 624.175

.175 Wind loads

.176 Stresses and strains (Deformation)

Produced by loads, winds, vibrations, impacts, blasts, temperature changes

Class here wreckage studies

.176 2 Earthquake engineering

.177 Structural design and specific structural elements

Class analysis in 624.171

.177 1 Structural design

For design of specific structural elements, see
624.1772–624.1779; design in specific materials, 624.18

> 624.177 2–624.177 9 Design and construction of specific structural elements

Class here specific structural elements in metal [formerly 624.182]

Class comprehensive works in 624.17, design of specific structural elements in specific materials other than metal in 624.18

.177 2 Beams, girders, cylinders, columns, slabs

.177 23 Beams and girders

.177 3 Trusses and frames

.177 4 Cables, wires, bars, rods

.177 5 Arches and domes

.177 6 Shells and plates

.177 62 Shells

.177 65 Plates

.177 9 Sandwich and honeycomb constructions

Class specific sandwich and honeycomb constructions in 624.1772–624.1776

.18 Design and construction in specific materials
.182 Metals

Specific structural elements in metal relocated to 624.1772–624.1779

.182 1 Iron and steel (Ferrous metals)

.182 2–.182 9 Nonferrous metals

Add to base number 624.182 the numbers following 620.18 in 620.182–620.189, e.g., construction in aluminum 624.1826

.183 Masonry, ceramic, allied materials

.183 2 Stone

Including artificial stone, e.g., concrete blocks

.183 3 Cement

.183 4 Concrete

Class concrete and cinder blocks in 624.1832

See also 721.0445 for visual concrete

.183 41 Reinforced concrete (Ferroconcrete)

Class a specific concrete structural element of reinforced concrete in 624.18342–624.18349

.183 412 Prestressed concrete

.183 414 Precast concrete

.183 42–.183 49 Specific concrete structural elements

Add to base number 624.1834 the numbers following 624.177 in 624.1772–624.1779, e.g., concrete shells 624.18362

.183 6 Brick and tile

.183 8 Glass

.184 Wood and laminated wood

.189 Other materials

Add to base number 624.189 the numbers following 620.19 in 620.191–620.199, e.g., design in plastics 624.18923

.19 Underground construction

Class here ventilation

Class subsurface mining in 622.2, construction of underground waste disposal facilities in 628.44566

.192 Mountain tunnels

.193 Tunnels

For mountain tunnels, see 624.192; underwater tunnels, 624.194

Class artistic aspects in 725.98

.194 Underwater tunnels
.2 Bridges

Class artistic aspects in 725.98

For specific types of bridges, see 624.3

[.202 88] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 624.28

.25 Structural analysis and design

.252 Loads, stresses, strains

Class loads, stresses, strains of specific structural elements and materials in 624.257

.253 Floor systems

.254 Foundations

.257 Structural elements and materials

For floor systems, see 624.253; foundations, 624.254

.28 Construction, maintenance, repair

.283 Floor systems

Class here comprehensive works on floor systems of bridges

For structural analysis and design of floor systems, see 624.253

.284 Foundations

Class here comprehensive works on foundations of bridges

For structural analysis and design of foundations, see 624.254

.3 Specific types of bridges

For tubular bridges, see 624.4; arch bridges, 624.6; compound bridges, 624.7; movable bridges, 624.8

> 624.32–624.35 Long-span bridges

Class comprehensive works in 624.3

For suspension bridges, see 624.5

.32 Trestle bridges

.33 Continuous bridges

Bridges consisting of beams, girders, or trusses extending uninterruptedly over more than two supports

For trestle bridges, see 624.32

.35 Cantilever bridges
.37 Girder and beam bridges
Examples: covered-, lattice-, plate-girder bridges; Bailey bridges
Class long-span girder and beam bridges in 624.32–624.35
For box-girder bridges, see 624.4; plate-girder suspension bridges, 624.5

.38 Truss bridges
Class long-span truss bridges in 624.32–624.35

.4 Tubular and box-girder bridges

.5 Suspension bridges
Examples: plate-girder suspension bridges
[.52–.55] Early and modern suspension bridges
Numbers discontinued; class in 624.5

.6 Arch bridges
Class here truss arch bridges

.63 Of masonry

.67 Of metal

.7 Compound bridges
Class a specific type of compound bridge with the type, e.g., plate-girder suspension bridges 624.5

.8 Movable bridges

.82 Bascule bridges

.83 Swing bridges
Variant names: swing drawbridges, swivel bridges

.84 Vertical lift bridges

.86 Transporter bridges

.87 Pontoon bridges

625 Engineering of railroads, roads, highways
General aspects: planning, analysis, design, construction
Class military transportation engineering in 623.6, tunnel engineering in 624.193, bridge engineering in 624.2
SUMMARY

625.1 Railroads
   .2 Railroad rolling stock
   .3 Inclined, mountain, ship railroads
   .4 Rapid transit systems
   .5 Cable and aerial railways
   .6 Surface rail and trolley systems
   .7 Roads
   .8 Artificial road surfaces

.1 Railroads

Including comprehensive works on special-purpose railroads

Class here comprehensive works on broad-, narrow-, standard-gage railroads

Class electrification of railroads in 621.33

For railroad rolling stock, see 625.2; special-purpose railroads, 625.3–625.6

.100 1 Philosophy and theory
.100 2 Miscellany

[.100 228] Models and miniatures
   Do not use; class in 625.19

[.100 288] Maintenance and repair
   Do not use; class in 625.17

.100 3–.100 9 Standard subdivisions

.103 Monorail railroads

Class elevated monorail systems in 625.44

.11 Surveying and design

Examples: final location surveys; determination of grades, switchbacks, right-of-way

625.12–625.16 Permanent way

Class comprehensive works in 625.1

.12 Earthwork

.122 Engineering geology

   Including surveys, tests, analysis of foundation soils; soil and rock mechanics

.123 Roadbed preparation

Example: excavation
.13 Protective structures
   Examples: snow fences, permanent snowsheds, retaining walls

.14 Track
   *For rails and rail fastenings, see 625.15; track accessories, 625.16*

.141 Ballast

.143 Ties (Sleepers) and tie plates

.144 Track laying
   Class laying of monorail tracks in 625.146, of tracks over ice cover in 625.147

.146 Monorail tracks

.147 Tracks over ice cover

.15 Rails and rail fastenings

.16 Track accessories

.163 Turnouts and crossings
   Including frogs, switches, sidings

.165 Control devices
   Examples: signals, signs

.17 Maintenance and repair
   Example: snow removal operations

.18 Railroad yards (Terminal layouts)

.19 Model and miniature railroads and trains

.2 Railroad rolling stock

Class here comprehensive works on specific types of cars, on rolling stock for roads with two running rails

Class rolling stock for special-purpose railroads in 625.3–625.6

See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388

[.202 28] Models and miniatures
   Do not use; class in 625.19

> 625.21–625.26 For roads with two running rails

Class comprehensive works in 625.2

.21 Running gear
   Examples: axles, bearings, springs, wheels

Class here running gear for specific types of cars
625.22-625.24 Specific types of cars

Class comprehensive works in 625.2, running gear for specific types of cars in 625.21, accessory equipment for specific types of cars in 625.25

.22 Work cars (Nonrevenue rolling stock)

Examples: cabooses, handcars, railroad snowplows

.23 Passenger-train cars

Examples: coaches; baggage, dining, sleeping cars

.24 Freight cars

Examples: boxcars, gondola cars, refrigerator cars, tank cars

.25 Accessory equipment

Examples: brakes, buffers, couplings

Class here accessory equipment for specific types of cars

.26 Locomotives

Class running gear in 625.21, accessory equipment in 625.25

.261 Steam locomotives

.262 Gas-turbine locomotives

.263 Electric locomotives

*For diesel electric locomotives, see 625.2662*

.265 Air-compression-powered locomotives

.266 Diesel and semidiesel locomotives

.266 2 Diesel-electric locomotives

.266 4 Diesel-hydraulic locomotives

.27 Mechanical operation

.28 Monorail rolling stock

625.3-625.6 Special-purpose railroads

Class here roadbeds, tracks and accessories, rolling stock

Class comprehensive works in 625.1, mine railroads in 622.66

.3 Inclined, mountain, ship railroads

.32 Funicular railroads

.33 Rack railroads

.39 Ship railroads
.4 **Rapid transit systems**
   Including guided-way systems
   *For surface systems, see 625.6*

.42 Underground railways (Subways)

.44 Elevated railroads
   Including elevated monorail systems

.5 **Cable and aerial railways**
   *For funicular railroads, see 625.32*

.6 **Surface rail and trolley systems**
   Light interurban and local

.65 Roadbeds, tracks, accessories

.66 Streetcars and trolleys
   Including horse-drawn streetcars

.7 **Roads**
   Class here highways, streets

   Class grade crossings (road crossings of railroads) in 625.163
   *For artificial road surfaces, see 625.8*

[.702 88] Maintenance and repair
   Do not use; class in 625.76

[.702 89] Safety measures
   Do not use; class in 625.7042

.704 **Special topics**

.704 2 Safety engineering

.72 **Surveying and design**

.723 Surveying
   Example: final location surveys
   Class soil surveys in 625.732

.725 Design
   Including determination of bankings, grades

.73 **Earthwork**

.732 Engineering geology
   Including surveys, tests, analysis of foundation soils; soil and rock mechanics
.733 Foundation preparation
   Including excavation

.734 Drainage
   Including conduits, dikes, ditches, gutters, pipes
   *For culverts, see 625.7342*

.734 2 Culverts

.735 Subsurface highway materials

.74 Dirt roads
   Stabilized and unstabilized
   Including soil stabilization processes
   *For surfacing dirt roads, see 625.75*

.75 Surfacing dirt roads

.76 Maintenance and repair
   Class maintenance and repair not provided for here with the subject, using
   notation 0288 from Table 1, e.g., maintenance of roadside areas 625.770288,
   maintenance and repair of forestry roads in 634.93

.761 Damages and their repairs
   Examples: resurfacing, shoulder maintenance

.763 Snow and ice control measures
   Examples: use of snowplows, snow fences
   Class here municipal snow and ice removal [formerly 628.466]

.77 Roadside areas
   Examples: parking turnouts, picnic areas, rest areas
   Including planting and cultivation of roadside vegetation

.79 Ice crossings, traffic control equipment, protective roadside barriers
   *For public lighting for roads, see 628.95*

.792 Ice crossings
   Class here ice and snow-compacted roads

.794 Traffic control equipment
   Examples: markings, signals, signs

.795 Protective roadside barriers
   Examples: dividers, fences
   Class snow fences in 625.763, curbs in 625.888
Artificial road surfaces

General aspects: design, construction, materials
Class here comprehensive works on paving
Class paving surfaces not provided for here with the surface, e.g., airport runways 629.13634

[.802 88] Maintenance and repair
Do not use; class in 625.76

> 625.81−625.86 Pavements in specific materials
Class comprehensive works in 625.8, sidewalks in specific materials in 625.881−625.886

.81 Flagstones

.82 Brick and stone
Including gravel and crushed stone pavements

For flagstones, see 625.81

.83 Wood

.84 Concretes

For bituminous concrete, see 625.85

.85 Bituminous materials
Examples: asphalts, tar, bituminous concrete

For macadam, see 625.86

.86 Macadam and telford surfaces

.88 Sidewalks and auxiliary pavements

.881−.886 Sidewalks in specific materials
Add to base number 625.88 the numbers following 625.8 in 625.81−625.86, e.g., brick sidewalks 625.882

.888 Curbs

.889 Auxiliary pavements
Examples: driveways, parking aprons

For curbs, see 625.888

[626] [Unassigned]
Most recently used in Edition 14
627  **Hydraulic engineering**

The branch of engineering dealing with utilization and control of natural waters of the earth

Class here hydraulic structures, water resource engineering

Class comprehensive works on ocean engineering in 620.4162, water supply engineering in 628.1

**SUMMARY**

627.04  [Hydrodynamics and recreational waters]

.1  Inland waterways

.2  Harbors, ports, roadsteads

.3  Port installations

.4  Flood control

.5  Reclamation, irrigation, related topics

.7  Underwater operations

.8  Dams and reservoirs

.9  Other hydraulic structures

.04  Special topics

.042  Hydrodynamics of waterways and water bodies

.046  Recreational waters

.1  **Inland waterways**

Class dredging and related operations in 627.7

.12  Rivers and streams

Class canalized rivers in 627.13

.122  Silt and sediment

General aspects: measurement, analysis, preventive measures

.123  Water diversions

Example: construction of barrages

.124  River mouths and estuaries

.125  Applied dynamics of rivers and streams

.13  Canals

Class here canalized rivers, comprehensive works on canals

Class tunnels carrying canals in 624.193, bridges carrying canals in 624.2, irrigation canals in 627.52

[.130 288]  Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 627.136

.131  Surveying and design
.132 Earthwork
   Examples: clearing and grubbing, rock cutting
.133 Bank protection and reinforcement
.134 Water supply for canals
.135 Auxiliary devices
.135 2 Locks, gates, sluices
.135 3 Lifts, inclines, ramps
.136 Maintenance and repair

> 627.137–627.138 Specific types of navigation canals
   Class comprehensive works in 627.13, engineering and construction details of
   specific types of canals in 627.131–627.136
   .137 Ship canals
   .138 Barge canals
   .14 Lakes
   [.17] Subsurface water
   Relocated to 628.114

.2 Harbors, ports, roadsteads
   Class dredging and related operations in 627.7
   For port installations, see 627.3
   .22 Anchorages and mooring grounds
      Including supertanker berthing areas
      Class freestanding mooring and berthing structures in 627.32
   .23 Channels and fairways
   .24 Protective structures
      Examples: breakwaters, jetties, seawalls

.3 Port installations
   Class artistic aspects in 725.34
   For navigation aids, see 627.92

> 627.31–627.34 Specific types of structures and equipment
   Class comprehensive works in 627.3, specific types of structures in small craft
   installations in 627.38
.31 Docks  
Class here piers, quays, wharves

[.312-.313] Specific kinds of docks  
Numbers discontinued; class in 627.31

.32 Freestanding mooring and berthing structures

.33 Port buildings

.34 Cargo-handling equipment  
See also 623.867 for shipboard cargo-handling equipment

[.35] Other terminal facilities  
Number discontinued; class in 627.3
Dry docks, floating dry docks relocated to 623.83

.38 Small-craft installations (Marinas)

.4 Flood control  
Including flood wreckage studies

Class here use of dams and reservoirs for flood control [formerly 627.8]

Class construction of dams and reservoirs for flood control in 627.8; flood control for and wreckage studies of a specific type of structure with the structure, e.g., flood wreckage studies of bridges 624.2

.42 Flood barriers  
Examples: dikes, levees, seawalls

.44 Water storage  
In ponds, lakes, reservoirs

.45 Water diversion  
Through enlargement of natural channels and construction of auxiliary channels

.5 Reclamation, irrigation, related topics  
Class here comprehensive works on soil erosion and its control

Class erosion of agricultural soils and its control in 631.45, reclamation of agricultural soils in 631.6, revegetation and surface mine reclamation in 631.64

.52 Irrigation  
Class here construction and use of irrigation canals

Use of this number for comprehensive works on land reclamation, on soil erosion and its control discontinued; class in 627.5

Class engineering of dams and reservoirs for irrigation in 627.8
.54 Drainage and reclamation from sea
   Including polders
.56 Artificial recharge of groundwater [formerly also 628.114]
   Former heading: water reclamation
   Class comprehensive works on engineering of groundwater in 628.114
.58 Shore protection and reclamation
   Examples: dune stabilization, seawall construction
   Class here beach erosion and its control
   Class inland dune stabilization in 631.64

.7 **Underwater operations**

.700 1 Philosophy and theory
.700 2 Miscellany
[.700 288] Maintenance and repair
   Do not use; class in 627.705
.700 3–.700 9 Standard subdivisions

> 627.702–627.705 General topics
   Class comprehensive works in 627.7

.702 Underwater construction
.703 Salvage operations
.704 Research operations
.705 Maintenance and repair operations

.72 Diving
   Class here interdisciplinary works on diving
   *For diving sports, see 797.2*

.73 Dredging
.74 Blasting
.75 Drilling

.8 **Dams and reservoirs**
   Class here engineering of dams and reservoirs for specific purposes
   Use of dams and reservoirs for flood control relocated to 627.4
   Class a specific use of dams and reservoirs with the use, e.g., water storage and conservation 628.132

.802 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment
   Class materials in 627.81
.81 Materials, earthwork, planning, surveying
Class materials, earthwork, planning, surveying for specific kinds of dams in 627.82–627.85; for reservoirs in 627.86; for auxiliary structures in 627.88

> 627.82–627.85 Specific kinds of dams
Class comprehensive works in 627.8, ancillary structures of specific kinds of dams in 627.88

.82 Masonry dams

.83 Earth- and rock-fill dams

.84 Movable dams
Examples: bear-trap, shutter (wicket) dams

.85 Metal dams

.86 Reservoirs
Including silting control
Class ancillary structures of reservoirs in 627.88

.88 Ancillary structures

.882 Sluices, gates, penstocks

.883 Spillways and weirs

.9 Other hydraulic structures

.92 Navigation aids
Class use of navigation aids in 623.894

.922 Lighthouses

.923 Lightships
Relocated to 623.828

.924 Light beacons, buoys, daymarks

.98 Offshore structures
Example: drilling platforms
Class here artificial islands
Class use of offshore structures with the use, e.g., use of drilling platforms in petroleum extraction 622.33819

For freestanding mooring and berthing structures, see 627.32
Sanitary and municipal engineering

628

Environmental protection engineering

Class here environmental health engineering [formerly also 620.85], public sanitation technology

Class interdisciplinary works on environmental protection on 363.7, military sanitary engineering in 623.75; a specific aspect of municipal engineering not provided for here with the subject, e.g., road and street engineering in 625.7, laying gas pipelines 665.744

For plumbing, see 696.1

See Manual at 300 vs. 600; 363

SUMMARY

628.1 Water supply

.2 Sewers and sewage

.3 Sewage treatment and disposal

.4 Waste technology, public toilets, street cleaning

.5 Pollution technology and industrial sanitation engineering

.7 Sanitary engineering for rural and sparsely populated areas

.9 Other branches of sanitary and municipal engineering

[.091 734] Treatment in rural regions

Do not use; class in 628.7

.1 Water supply

Class here comprehensive works on water supply, sewers, sewage

Class water supply for rural and sparsely populated areas in 628.72

For sewers and sewage, see 628.2

SUMMARY

628.102 87 Measurement

.11 Sources

.13 Storage and conservation

.14 Collection and distribution systems

.15 Mains and service pipes

.16 Testing, analysis, treatment, pollution

.102 87 Measurement

Class testing in 628.161

.11 Sources

Including waste water

Class here protection and engineering evaluation of sources

Class interdisciplinary works on sources, on evaluation of sources in 553.7; economic and social evaluation of adequacy, development requirements, conservation of sources in 333.91; hydraulic engineering in 627

See also 628.132 for reservoirs
.112 Lakes, rivers, springs
Class artesian wells in 628.114

.114 Groundwater (Subsurface water) \[formerly also 627.17\]
Including prospecting for water \[formerly also 622.187\], artesian wells, prevention of seawater intrusion
Class here water extraction \[formerly also 622.37\], wells
Artificial recharge of groundwater relocated to 627.56

.116 Seawater
Class desalinization in 628.167

[.119] Waste water
Number discontinued; class in 628.11

.13 Storage and conservation
Including storage tanks, water towers

.132 Reservoirs
Including evaporation control
Class engineering of reservoirs for water supply, comprehensive works on protection of reservoirs in 627.86

.14 Collection and distribution systems
Class storage in collection and distribution systems in 628.13
\textit{For mains and service pipes, see 628.15}

.142 Collection systems

.144 Distribution systems
.144 028 7 Testing and measurement
Class here measurement of consumption \[formerly also 628.17\]

.15 Mains and service pipes
Class here aqueducts

.16 Testing, analysis, treatment, pollution
\textit{See Manual at 363.61}

\textbf{SUMMARY}

| .161       | Testing and analysis |
| .162       | Treatment            |
| .164       | Mechanical treatment |
| .165       | Aeration and deaeration |
| .166       | Chemical treatment   |
| .167       | Desalinization       |
| .168       | Pollution and countermeasures |
.161 Testing and analysis
   Class here testing and measurement of pollution [formerly 628.1680287]

.162 Treatment
   Class here comprehensive works on treatment of water supply and
   sewage, treatment of sewage effluent for reuse
   For mechanical treatment, see 628.164; chemical treatment,
   628.166; desalinization, 628.167; sewage treatment, 628.3

.162.2 Coagulation (Flocculation), screening, sedimentation (settling)

.164 Mechanical treatment
   Examples: filtration, membrane (osmotic) processes
   Class membrane processes for desalination in 628.1674
   For screening, sedimentation, see 628.1622

.165 Aeration and deaeration
   See also 628.1662 for ozone treatment

.166 Chemical treatment
   For coagulation, see 628.1622; aeration and deaeration, 628.165

.166.2 Disinfection
   Examples: chlorination, copper sulfate treatment, ozone treatment,
   ultraviolet radiation
   Including dechlorination

.166.3 Fluoridation
   Class interdisciplinary works on fluoridation in 614.5996,
   defluoridation in 628.1667

.166.6 Demineralization processes
   Example: softening
   Class desalination in 628.167

.166.7 Defluoridation

.167 Desalinization

.167.2 By distillation

.167.23 Using nuclear energy

.167.25 Using solar energy

.167.3 By electrolysis

.167.4 By membrane processes

.167.42 Electrodialysis

.167.44 Reverse osmosis

.167.46 Piezodialysis
By freezing

With gas hydrates

Pollution and countermeasures

Comprehensive works on liquid wastes relocated to 628.43

Class interdisciplinary works on water pollution and countermeasures in 363.7394; prevention of natural pollution of water sources in 628.11; pollution countermeasures that consist of routine water-supply or water-supply and sewage treatment in 628.162, of sewage treatment in 628.3

Testing and measurement

Relocated to 628.161

Pollution from sewage and domestic wastes

From detergents

From sanitary landfills

Pollution from industrial waste

Class countermeasures by originating industry with the industry, e.g., engineering control of acid mine drainage by coal companies 622.5

For pollution from radioactive wastes, see 628.1685

Thermal pollution

Acid mine drainage

Oil spills

Including disposal of cleanup debris

Waste from chemical and related industries

Waste from manufacturing industries

Pollution from agricultural waste

Soil improvement wastes

Examples: fertilizers, irrigation return flow

Pesticides

Animal wastes

Including feedlot runoff

Pollution from radioactive wastes
Pollution in specific areas
Relocated to 628.16809

Abatement programs
Abatement programs relocated to 363.73946, technological countermeasures in specific areas to 628.16809

Water requirements and use
Water requirements relocated to 333.9112, water use to 333.9113, measurement of consumption to 628.1440287

.2 Sewers and sewage

Class road drainage in 625.734

For sewage treatment and disposal, see 628.3

Maintenance and repair
Do not use; class in 628.24

.21 Sewer systems for handling precipitation
Including overflows

Class here urban drainage
Use of this number for comprehensive works on sewerage systems discontinued; class in 628.2

.212 Separate storm sewer systems
.214 Combined sewer systems

.23 Ventilation and deodorization of sewers

.24 Design, construction, maintenance, repair of sewers

.25 Appurtenances of sewers
Examples: catch basins, house connections, manholes, ventilators

.29 Pumping stations

.3 Sewage treatment and disposal

Class creation, treatment, disposal of sewage in a specific technology with the technology, e.g., treatment of food-processing sewage by food processors 664.096

For unsewered sewage disposal, see 628.742

See Manual at 363.61

628.32–628.35 Treatment
Class comprehensive works in 628.3

.32 Disinfection
628 Dewey Decimal Classification

.34 Primary treatment
   Examples: centrifugation, primary sedimentation, screening, skimming
   Class comprehensive works on a specific process that is used also in both
   primary and secondary treatment in 628.351–628.354

.35 Secondary and tertiary treatment
   Class here aeration, biological treatment

> 628.351–628.354 Secondary treatment
   Class comprehensive works in 628.35

.351 Oxidation ponds
   Variant names: sewage lagoons, stabilization ponds
   Including oxidation ditches
   Use of this number for comprehensive works on aeration, on biological
   treatment discontinued; class in 628.35

.352 Filtration
   Examples: sand and trickling filters

.353 Secondary sedimentation

.354 Activated sludge process

.357 Tertiary treatment
   Examples: nitrogen removal
   Removal of mineral nutrients, of specific minerals relocated to 628.358
   Class comprehensive works on a specific process that is used in
   secondary and tertiary treatment in 628.351–628.354

   For demineralization, see 628.358

.358 Demineralization
   Class here removal of mineral nutrients, of specific minerals [both
   formerly 628.357]

.36 Disposal
   For disposal into water, see 628.39

.362 Sewage effluent disposal
   Class artificial recharge of groundwater in 627.56, treatment for reuse as
   water supply in 628.162

.362 3 Sewage irrigation
.364 Sewage sludge disposal
   Example: sanitary landfills
   For underground disposal of sludge, see 628.366; incineration of
   sludge, 628.37; utilization of sludge, 628.38

.366 Underground disposal of sludge
   Including storage

.37 Incineration of sludge
   Former heading: Disposal by destruction

.38 Utilization of sludge
   Class a specific use with the use, e.g., use as fertilizer 631.869

.39 Disposal of sewage, sewage effluent, sewage sludge into water

.4 Waste technology [formerly also 604.6], public toilets, street cleaning
   Class here industrial waste treatment and disposal by type of industry [formerly
   628.54]

   Use of this number for public sanitation discontinued; class in 628

   Class interdisciplinary works on waste in 363.728; pollution from wastes in
   628.5; waste technology for rural and sparsely populated areas in 628.74;
   creation, control, utilization of waste in a specific technology with the
   technology, e.g., waste control in pulp and paper technology 676.042, use of
   scrap metal 669.042

   For gaseous wastes, see 628.53

.42 Toxic and hazardous wastes
   Class toxic and hazardous liquid wastes in 628.43, solid wastes in 628.44,
   gaseous wastes in 628.53

.43 Liquid wastes [formerly 628.168]
   Class liquid wastes released into bodies of water in 628.168

   For sewers and sewage, see 628.2

.44 Solid wastes (Refuse)
   .440 4 Special topics
   .440 42 Specific kinds of solid wastes

   See Manual at 628.44042 vs. 363.7288, 628.445

.442 Collection

.445 Treatment and disposal

   See Manual at 628.44042 vs. 363.7288, 628.445
> 628.445 6–628.445 9 Disposal

Class comprehensive works in 628.445

.445 6 Disposal on land and underground
Use of this number for comprehensive works on reduction discontinued; class in 628.445

.445 62 In open dumps

.445 64 In sanitary landfills

.445 66 Underground disposal
  Other than in sanitary landfills
  Including construction of facilities, storage

.445 7 Incineration

.445 8 Conversion into useful products
  Class here recycling technology
  Class specific conversion technology with the technology, e.g., converting household garbage into fertilizer 668.6377

.445 9 Disposal into water

.45 Public toilets

.46 Street cleaning

[.462] Sprinkling and sweeping
Number discontinued; class in 628.46

[.466] Municipal snow and ice removal
Relocated to 625.763

.5 Pollution technology and industrial sanitation engineering

Class here industrial pollution

Standard subdivisions may be used for combined treatment of pollution technology and industrial sanitary engineering, or for pollution technology alone

Class interdisciplinary works on pollution in 363.73; water pollution in 628.168; engineering causes of pollution in a specific technology and reengineering a specific technology to control pollution with the technology, e.g., engineering to control pollution in petroleum refineries 665.53

For noise, see 620.23

.509 173 4 Rural regions
Class here pollution in rural and sparsely populated areas
[formerly 628.7]
.51 Industrial sanitation engineering
   Class here industrial plant sanitation

.52 Specific kinds of pollutants
   General aspects: movement through the environment, control measures
   Example: pesticides [formerly also 628.7462]
   Class specific kinds of water pollutants in 628.168, air pollutants in 628.53,
   soil pollutants in 628.55

.53 Air pollution
   Class here gaseous wastes, the immediate dispersal of pollutants from the
   source
   Class air quality surveys in 363.73922

.532 By products of combustion
   Class here smog
   Use of this number for comprehensive works on fumes, gases
   discontinued; class in 628.53

.535 By radioactive substances
   Example: radon

.536 By microbes

[.54] Industrial waste treatment and disposal by type of industry
   Relocated to 628.4

.55 Soil pollution

.7 Sanitary engineering for rural and sparsely populated areas
   Pollution in rural and sparsely populated areas relocated to 628.5091734
   Class pest control in rural and sparsely populated areas in 628.96091734
   See Manual at 628.7

.72 Water supply

.74 Waste technology

.742 Unsewered sewage disposal
   Including septic tanks

.744 Solid waste technology
   Class agricultural solid waste technology in 628.746

.746 Agricultural waste technology
   Class water pollution from agricultural wastes in 628.1684; utilization of
   agricultural wastes in a specific technology with the technology, e.g., for
   biogas 665.776
[.746 1] Utilization of animal wastes for soil improvement

Comprehensive works relocated to 631.86, manufacture of fertilizers from animal wastes to 668.636, animal manures not used for soil improvement to 628.7466

[.746 2] Pesticides

Relocated to 628.52

.746 6 Animal wastes

Class here animal manures [formerly 628.7461]

.9 Other branches of sanitary and municipal engineering

.92 Fire-safety and fire-fighting technology

Class interdisciplinary works on fire hazards and their control in 363.37, forest fire technology in 634.9618

.922 Fire-safety technology

Including fire escapes

Class here fire prevention

.922 2 Flammability studies and testing

Class development of fire resistance in products in 628.9223

.922 3 Fireproofing and fire retardation

Examples: fire doors, fire retardants

Class here development of fire resistance in products

Class development of fire resistance in a specific product with the product, e.g., textiles 677.689, buildings 693.82

.922 5 Fire detection and alarms

.925 Fire-fighting technology

Class here use of equipment and supplies, comprehensive works on their manufacture

Class fire-fighting technology for airports in 629.1368; manufacture of specific kinds of equipment and supplies with the kind, e.g., fire engines 629.225, fire resistant clothing 687.16, fire stations 690.519

.925 2 Extinction with water

Examples: hydraulic systems, sprinkler systems

.925 4 Extinction with chemicals

.95 Public lighting

Examples: lighting for parks, roads

Class lighting of airports in 629.1365
.96  Pest control
    Class here comprehensive works on pest control technology
    Class interdisciplinary works on pest control in 363.78, control of
    agricultural pests in 632.6
    *For control of plant pests, see 628.97*

.963  Aquatic invertebrates
    Class aquatic insects in 628.9657
    *For mollusks and molluscoids, see 628.964*

.964  Mollusks and molluscoids

.965  Terrestrial invertebrates
        .965 7  Insects

.967  Cold-blooded vertebrates

.968  Birds

.969  Mammals
        .969 3  Rodents
        .969 7  Land carnivores

Examples: stray cats and dogs

.97  Control of plant pests

629  Other branches of engineering
    General aspects: planning, analysis, design, construction, operation

    See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388

SUMMARY

629.04  Transportation engineering
        .1  Aerospace engineering
        .2  Motor land vehicles, and cycles
        .3  Air-cushion vehicles (Ground-effect machines, Hovercraft)
        .4  Astronautics
        .8  Automatic control engineering

.04  Transportation engineering

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in
two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the number coming last in the
schedule, e.g., land vehicles 629.049 (*not* 629.046)

Class military transportation technology in 623.6, operation of transportation
equipment for recreational purposes in 796–797, technical problems
peculiar to transportation of a specific commodity with the commodity, e.g.,
slurry transportation of coal 662.624

[.040 289]  Safety measures

Do not use; class in 629.042
.042 Health and safety engineering
   Including control devices, e.g., markings, signals, signs

.045 Navigation
   For celestial navigation, see 527

.046 Transportation equipment
   Class here vehicles
   See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388

.047 Stationary transportation facilities
   Class here trafficways
   Class transportation buildings in 690.53

> 629.048–629.049 Engineering of transportation in specific mediums
   Class comprehensive works in 629.04
   For aerospace engineering, see 629.1

.048 Water transportation engineering
   For nautical engineering and seamanship, see 623.8; inland waterways, 627.1; harbors, ports, roadsteads, 627.2; overwater air-cushion vehicles, 629.324

.049 Land transportation engineering
   Class pipes and pipelines in 621.8672
   For railroads, roads, highways, see 625; motor land vehicles, cycles, 629.2; overland air-cushion vehicles, 629.322; nonmotor land vehicles, 688.6

.1 Aerospace engineering
   For astronautics, see 629.4

SUMMARY

629.11 Mechanics and operation of aerospace flight
.12 Aerospace vehicles and stationary facilities
.13 Aeronautics
.14 Portable flight vehicles

.11 Mechanics and operation of aerospace flight
   Class mechanics and operation of a specific type of aerospace flight with the type, e.g., astromechanics 629.411

.12 Aerospace vehicles and stationary facilities
   Class a specific facility with the facility, e.g., air-cushion vehicles 629.3
.13 Aeronautics

Use 629.13001–629.13009 for standard subdivisions

SUMMARY

629.130 1–.130 9 Standard subdivisions of flight
 .132 Principles of aerial flight
 .133 Aircraft types
 .134 Aircraft components and general techniques
 .135 Aircraft instrumentation and systems (Avionics)
 .136 Airports

.130 1 Philosophy and theory of flight

[.130 153 36] Aeromechanics of flight

Do not use; class in 629.1323

[.130 155 15] Aviation meteorology

Do not use; class in 629.1324

.130 2–.130 8 Standard subdivisions of flight

.130 9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment of flight [formerly also 629.132509]

Record of flying activities in all types of aircraft

Class flight guides in 629.13254

.130 91 Transoceanic flights

Add to base number 629.13091 the numbers following 551.46 in 551.461–551.469, e.g., transpacific flights 629.130915

Do not use for other regional treatment; class in 629.1309

.130 92 Fliers

.132 Principles of aerial flight

SUMMARY

629.132 2 Aerostatics
 .132 3 Aerodynamics
 .132 4 Aviation meteorology
 .132 5 Flying and related topics
 .132 6 Automatic control

.132 2 Aerostatics

.132 3 Aerodynamics

Including aircraft noise

Class here comprehensive works on aeromechanics

Use 629.1323001–629.1323009 for standard subdivisions

For aerostatics, see 629.1322; weather aerodynamics, 629.1324

.132 303 Subsonic aerodynamics
.132 304 Transonic aerodynamics
   Including sonic booms
.132 305 Supersonic aerodynamics
.132 306 Hypersonic aerodynamics
.132 31 Gliding and soaring
.132 32 Airflow
   Example: turbulence
   For boundary layers, see 629.13237
.132 322 Incompressible airflow
.132 323 Compressible airflow
.132 327 Air pockets (Air holes)
.132 33 Lift and thrust
.132 34 Drag (Air resistance)
.132 35 Pressure distribution and aerodynamic load
.132 36 Stability and control
.132 362 Aeroelasticity, flutter, vibration
.132 364 Moments of inertia
   Examples: pitch, roll, yaw
   Including restoring torques and damping
.132 37 Boundary layers
.132 38 Propulsion principles
.132 4 Aviation meteorology
   Weather conditions and aerodynamics
.132 5 Flying and related topics
   Class flying kites and model airplanes in 796.15, air sports in 797.5
   Historical, geographical, persons treatment of flight
   Relocated to 629.1309
.132 51 Navigation
.132 52 Piloting
   Class here comprehensive works on flight operations, on piloting airplanes
   For navigation, see 629.13251
   Pilots
   Do not use; class in 629.13092
.132 521 General topics
Use of this number for comprehensive works on on piloting airplanes discontinued; class in 629.13252
Class general topics of specific types of aircraft in 629.132522–629.132528

.132 521 2 Takeoff
.132 521 3 Landing
.132 521 4 Piloting under adverse conditions
Examples: nighttime, bad weather, disablement of craft

.132 521 6 Piloting commercial craft [formerly also 629.1325240423]
.132 521 7 Piloting private craft [formerly also 629.1325240422]

.132 522 Piloting lighter-than-air aircraft

.132 523–.132 528 Piloting specific types of heavier-than-air aircraft
Add to base number 626.13252 the numbers following 629.1333 in 629.13333–629.13338, e.g., piloting of helicopters 629.132522; however, piloting private craft relocated from 629.1325240422 to 629.1325217, piloting commercial craft from 629.1325240423 to 629.1325216
Class comprehensive works on piloting airplanes in 629.13252, hang gliding in 629.14

.132 54 Flight guides (Pilot guides)
Class here charts, logbooks, maps
Add to base number 629.13254 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., pilot guides to Spain 629.1325446

.132 55 Wreckage studies

.132 6 Automatic control
Former heading: Command systems
Of manned and guided aircraft
See also 629.1352 for automatic pilots

.133 Aircraft types
Class components and general techniques of specific aircraft types in 629.134

.133 021 8 Standards [formerly also 629.13457]

[.133 022 8] Models and miniatures
Do not use; class models and miniatures of all types of aircraft in 629.1331

[.133 028 7] Testing and measurement
Do not use; class testing and measurement of all types of aircraft in 629.1345
629.133 25–629.133 27 Specific types of airships

Class comprehensive works in 629.13324

.133 25 Rigid airships
.133 26 Semirigid airships
.133 27 Nonrigid airships
.133 3 Heavier-than-air aircraft
.133 32 Kites
.133 33 Gliders

Class hang gliders in 629.14

.133 34 Airplanes

For rocket planes, see 629.13338

.133 340 4 Special topics
.133 340 42 General topics
.133 340 422 Private airplanes
.133 340 423 Commercial airplanes
.133 340 426 Short takeoff and landing (STOL) airplanes

.133 343 Propeller-driven airplanes

Piston and turboprop
Including ultralight airplanes
Class propeller-driven seaplanes in 629.133347, propeller-driven amphibious planes in 629.133348
.133 347  Seaplanes
.133 348  Amphibious planes
.133 349  Jet airplanes
.133 35  Vertical-lift (VTOL) craft
  Examples: autogiros, convertiplanes, flying jeeps
.133 352  Helicopters
.133 36  Orthopters (Ornithopters)
.133 38  Rocket planes
.134  Aircraft components and general techniques

For aircraft instrumentation and systems, see 629.135

SUMMARY

629.134 1  Analysis and design
.134 2  Manufacturing and assembling
.134 3  Parts
.134 4  Interiors and special equipment
.134 5  Tests and measurements
.134 6  Maintenance and repair

[.134 028 7]  Testing and measurement
  Do not use; class in 629.1345

[.134 028 8]  Maintenance and repair
  Do not use; class in 629.1346

.134 1  Analysis and design
  Class analysis and design of parts in 629.1343, of interiors and special equipment in 629.1344

.134 2  Manufacturing and assembling
  Class manufacturing and assembling of parts in 629.1343, of interiors and special equipment in 629.1344

.134 3  Parts

.134 31  Airframes
  Class a specific component part with the component, e.g., fuselages 629.13434

.134 32  Airfoils
  Including wing accessories
  Class here wings
  For control surfaces, see 629.13433; propellers, vertical lift rotors, 629.13436

.134 33  Control surfaces
  Examples: ailerons, flaps, rudders
.134 34 Fuselages
.134 35 Engines and fuels
   Including pollution control
.134 351 Fuels
   Class here propellants
   Class fuels and propellants for specific engines in
   629.134352–629.134355
.134 352 Reciprocating and compound engines
   Piston and compound piston-turbine engines
   Class comprehensive works on reciprocating, compound,
   gas-turbine, jet engines in 629.13435
.134 353 Gas-turbine and jet engines
   Standard subdivisions are added for gas-turbine and jet
   engines, for gas-turbine engines alone, for jet engines alone
.134 353 2 Turboprop engines
.134 353 3 Turbojet engines
.134 353 4 Turboramjet engines
.134 353 5 Ramjet engines
.134 353 6 Pulse-jet engines
.134 353 7 Fan-jet engines
.134 354 Rocket engines
.134 355 Nuclear power plants
.134 36 Propellers and vertical lift rotors
.134 37 Rigging and bracing equipment
.134 38 Other equipment
.134 381 Takeoff and landing gear

See also 678.32 for manufacture of tires
.134 386 Escape equipment
   Examples: capsule cockpits, parachutes, pilot ejection seats
.134 4 Interiors and special equipment
.134 42 Comfort equipment
   Examples: air conditioning, heating, pressurization,
   soundproofing, ventilating equipment
.134 43 Safety equipment
   Examples: fire prevention equipment, life rafts, safety belts
.134 45 Interiors
   Including cabins

.134 5 Tests and measurements
   Class wreckage studies in 629.13255

.134 52 Ground tests and inspection
   Including wind and shock tunnels

.134 53 Flight tests

.134 57 Measurements
   Standards relocated to 629.1330218

.134 6 Maintenance and repair
   Class maintenance and repair of a specific part with the part, using notation 0288 from Table 1, e.g., maintenance of interiors 629.134450288

.135 Aircraft instrumentation and systems (Avionics)

.135 1 Navigation instrumentation
   Examples: air-mileage and air-position indicators, radio compasses (direction finders)
   Including landing and navigation lights

.135 2 Flight instrumentation
   Examples: automatic pilots; air-speed, vertical-speed, turn and bank indicators; accelerometers, altimeters, Machmeters; directional gyros, gyrohorizons

.135 3 Power-plant monitoring instrumentation

.135 4 Electrical systems

.135 5 Electronic systems

.136 Airports
   Class here commercial land airports

.136 1 Specific types other than commercial land airports
   Example: floating airports (seadromes)
   Class details of specific types of airports in 629.1363–629.1368

.136 12 Airstrips

[.136 13] Commercial land airports
   Number discontinued; class in 629.136

.136 16 Heliports
> 629.136 3–629.136 8 Details of airports

Class comprehensive works in 629.136

.136 3 Runways
.136 34 Pavements
.136 35 Drainage systems
.136 37 Snow removal and compaction
[.136 4] Airport terminal buildings
  Relocated to 690.539
.136 5 Lighting systems
.136 6 Air traffic control systems
  Radar control and radar devices
.136 8 Fire fighting equipment

.14 Portable flight vehicles

  Units intended to be carried by a single person
  Including hang gliders and gliding

Class hang gliding as a sport in 797.55

.2 Motor land vehicles, and cycles

SUMMARY

629.201–.209 Standard subdivisions
    .22 Types of vehicles
    .23 Design, materials, construction
    .24 Chassis
    .25 Engines
    .26 Bodies
    .27 Other equipment
    .28 Tests, driving, maintenance, repair
    .29 Specialized land vehicles

.202 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus and equipment

Class materials in 629.232

.202 89 Safety measures

Class safety engineering of motor land vehicles in 629.2042

.204 Special topics

.204 2 Safety engineering of motor land vehicles

Class here comprehensive works on motor land vehicle and highway
safety engineering

For highway safety engineering, see 625.7042
Types of vehicles
Class here three-wheel vehicles
Class specific details in 629.23-629.28

Models and miniatures
Do not use; class models and miniatures of all types of vehicles in 629.221

Testing and measurement
Do not use; class testing and measurement of all types of vehicles in 629.282

Maintenance and repair
Do not use; class maintenance and repair of all types of vehicles in 629.287

Safety measures
Class safety accessories in 629.276

Special topics
Off-road vehicles
Examples: all-terrain vehicles, snowmobiles
For dune buggies, see 629.222

Models and miniatures
Add to base number 629.221 the numbers following 629.22 in 629.222-629.229, e.g., models of racing cars 629.2218

> 629.222-629.228 Gasoline-, oil-, man-powered vehicles
Class comprehensive works in 629.22

Passenger automobiles
Including dune buggies, sport cars, station wagons
Class racing cars in 629.228

Specific named passenger automobiles
Arrange alphabetically by name or make of car
Use of this number for comprehensive works on passenger automobiles for private transportation discontinued; class in 629.222

For public transportation
Taxicabs and limousines
Buses
Ambulances
629  Dewey Decimal Classification  629

.223  Light trucks
    Examples: pickup trucks
    Including customized vans

.224  Trucks (Lorries)
    Class here tractor trailers
    For light trucks, see 629.223

.225  Work vehicles
    Examples: bulldozers, tractors
    Class automotive materials-handling equipment in 621.86, steam tractors in 629.2292
    For trucks, see 629.224

.226  Motorized homes, campers, trailers (caravans)
    Class here comprehensive works on recreational vehicles (RVs)
    Class construction of towed mobile homes in 690.879; a specific kind of recreational vehicle not provided for here with the vehicle, e.g., dune buggies 629.222
    For tractor trailers, see 629.224
    See Manual at 629.226 vs. 643.2, 690.879, 728.79

.227  Cycles
    .227 1  Monocycles
    .227 2  Bicycles
          Mopeds and motor bicycles relocated to 629.2275
          Class tandem bicycles in 629.2276
    .227 3  Tricycles
    .227 5  Motorcycles and motorscooters
          Including mopeds and motor bicycles [both formerly 629.2272], minibikes
    .227 6  Tandem bicycles

.228  Racing cars
    Conventional and converted
    Including karts, hot rods

.229  Other types of vehicles
    .229 2  Steam-powered vehicles
          Including steam tractors and steamrollers
    .229 3  Electric-powered vehicles
Engineering and allied operations

.229 4 Air-compression-powered vehicles
.229 5 Solar energy-powered vehicles
.229 6 Nuclear-powered vehicles
.23 Design, materials, construction
   Class materials for, design and construction of parts in 629.24–629.27
.231 Analysis and design
   Including anthropometric and safety design
.232 Materials
.234 Manufacturing techniques
   Including factory inspection

> 629.24–629.27 Parts
   Class comprehensive works in 629.2
.24 Chassis
.242 Supporting frames
.243 Springs and shock absorbers
.244 Transmission devices
.244 6 Automatic transmission devices
.245 Rear axles, differentials, drive shafts
.246 Brakes
   Including brake fluids
.247 Front axles and steering gear
.248 Wheels
   Including rims, hubcaps, bearings
.248 2 Tires
   See also 678.32 for manufacture of tires
.25 Engines
   Class here pollution control
   Use 629.25001–629.25009 for standard subdivisions
   Most works covering automobile engines as a whole focus on spark-ignition
   engines and are classed in 629.2504

> 629.250 1–629.250 9 Specific types of engines
   Class comprehensive works in 629.25
629

Dewey Decimal Classification

629

.250 1  Steam engines
.250 2  Electric power plants
.250 3-.250 6  Internal-combustion engines
  Add to base number 629.250 the numbers following 621.43 in
  621.433–621.436, e.g., diesel engines 629.2506
.250 7  Air-compression engines
.250 8  Solar engines
.250 9  Nuclear power plants

> 629.252–629.258 Parts and auxiliary systems of internal-combustion engines

  Class here comprehensive works on specific kinds of parts and auxiliary
  systems of automotive engines

  Class comprehensive works in 629.25, a specific part and auxiliary system of
  noninternal-combustion engines in 629.259

.252  Motor parts of internal-combustion engines
  Including mufflers (silencers)
.252 8  Emission control devices
.253  Fuel systems and fuels of internal-combustion engines
  .253 3  Carburetors and carburetion
  .253 8  Fuels
.254  Ignition, electrical, electronic systems of internal-combustion engines
  Standard subdivisions are added for ignition, electrical, electronic
  systems, for ignition systems alone, for electrical systems alone
  Class specific uses of electrical and electronic systems with the use, e.g.,
  electronic fuel injection 629.253, electric starters 629.257
.254 2  Batteries
.254 8  Auxiliary electrical systems
  For lighting equipment, see 629.271
.254 9  Electronic systems
.255  Lubricating systems and lubricants of internal-combustion engines
.256  Cooling systems of internal-combustion engines
  Including antifreeze solutions
.257  Starting devices of internal-combustion engines
.258  Throttles and spark control devices of internal-combustion engines
.259 Parts and auxiliary systems of other kinds of power plants
   .259 2 Of steam engines
   .259 3 Of electric power plants
   .259 4 Of air-compression engines
   .259 5 Of solar engines
   .259 6 Of nuclear power plants

.26 Bodies
   Including convertible tops, doors, fenders, interior and exterior decoration, running boards, seats, windows, windshield

.27 Other equipment
   .271 Lighting equipment
   .273 Panel instrumentation
   .275 Hardware
      Examples: handles, hinges, locks
   .276 Safety accessories
      Examples: air bags, bumpers, mirrors, seat belts, windshield wipers and washers
   .277 Comfort, convenience, entertainment equipment
      Examples: air conditioners, ashtrays, glove compartments, heaters, radios, tape players, telephones, televisions, two-way radios

.28 Tests, driving, maintenance, repair
   .282 Tests and related topics
      For factory inspection, see 629.234
   .282 4 Road tests (Performance tests)
   .282 5 Periodic inspection and roadability tests
   .282 6 Wreckage studies
      Determination of mechanical failure through examination of remains

.283 Driving (Operation)
   General aspects: methods of driving, factors in safe driving
   Class here driving private passenger automobiles
      For driving vehicles other than internal-combustion passenger vehicles, see 629.284
   .283 04 Special topics
   .283 042 Driving off-road vehicles
      Examples: all-terrain vehicles, snowmobiles
[.283 2] Driving private passenger automobiles

Use of this number discontinued; class in 629.283

.283 3 Driving public transportation vehicles

.283 32 Taxicabs and limousines

.283 33 Buses

.283 34 Ambulances

.284 Driving vehicles other than internal-combustion passenger vehicles

Add to base number 629.284 the numbers following 629.22 in 629.223–629.229, e.g., driving trucks 629.2844

.286 Services provided by garages and service stations

See also 690.538 for garage and service station buildings

For maintenance and repair, see 629.287

.287 Maintenance and repair

Add to base number 629.287 the numbers following 629.22 in 629.2204–629.229, e.g., repair of motorcycles 629.28775

Arrange alphabetically by trade name under each type of vehicle

(Optional: Arrange all vehicles regardless of type alphabetically by trade name)

Class works on car tune-ups limited to maintenance and repair of the engine in 629.25; maintenance and repair of a specific part with the part, using notation 0288 from Table 1, e.g., maintenance of bodies 629.260288

.29 Specialized land vehicles

Use of this number for other topics discontinued; class in 629.2

For overland air-cushion vehicles, see 629.322

.292 Nonsurface motor land vehicles

Examples: subterranean, ocean-floor vehicles

.295 Vehicles for extraterrestrial surfaces

Example: moon cars

.3 Air-cushion vehicles (Ground-effect machines, Hovercraft)

.31 General topics

Class general topics applied to specific types of vehicles in 629.32

.313 Lift systems

.314 Propulsion systems

.317 Structural analysis and design

.32 Types of vehicles

230
.322  Overland air-cushion vehicles
Class amphibious air-cushion vehicles in 629.325

.324  Overwater air-cushion vehicles
Class amphibious air-cushion vehicles in 629.325

.325  Amphibious air-cushion vehicles

.4  Astronautics

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>629.401-.409</th>
<th>Standard subdivisions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.41</td>
<td>Space flight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.43</td>
<td>Unmanned space flight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.44</td>
<td>Auxiliary spacecraft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.45</td>
<td>Manned space flight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.46</td>
<td>Engineering of unmanned spacecraft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.47</td>
<td>Astronautical engineering</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[.401 521]  
Astromechanics
Do not use; class in 629.411

.409 2  
Astronautical engineers
Class astronauts in 629.450092

.41  
Space flight
Class preparation for flight to a specific celestial body with the flight, e.g.,
preparation for manned lunar flight 629.454

*For unmanned space flight, see 629.43; manned space flight, 629.45*

.411  
Astromechanics

.411 1  
Gravitation

.411 3  
Orbits

[.411 4]  
Perturbations
Use of this number discontinued; class in 629.411

.415  
Planetary atmospheres
Including exit and reentry problems

.415 1  
Aerodynamics

.415 2  
Atmospheric thermodynamics

.416  
Space phenomena and environments affecting flight
Examples: meteoroids, radiations

.418  
Weightlessness
General aspects: phenomena, effects, countermeasures
.43 Unmanned space flight

.432 Launching

.433 Guidance and homing

.434 Flight of artificial satellites
   Class satellite flight for a specific purpose with the purpose, e.g., weather satellites 551.6354

.435 Astronautical exploratory and data-gathering operations

.435 2 Ionospheric and near-space

.435 3 Lunar

.435 4 Planetary
   Add to base number 629.4354 the numbers following 523.4 in 523.41–523.48, e.g., Venusian probes 629.43542

.437 Communications and tracking

.44 Auxiliary spacecraft

.441 Space shuttles

.442 Space stations
   Class here space colonies

.445 Space laboratories

.45 Manned space flight
   Use 629.45001–629.45009 for standard subdivisions
   Class auxiliary spacecraft in 629.44

.450 1 Projected accounts
   Class projected accounts of flight to a specific celestial body in 629.454–629.455

.450 7 Selection and training of astronauts

.452 Launching and takeoff

.453 Guidance, homing, navigation

.454 Circumterrestrial and lunar flights

.454 2 Preflight activities
   Examples: flight planning, preparation, training

.454 3 Takeoff and in-flight activities

.454 4 Approach, orbiting, landing

.454 5 Retakeoff and return flight
.455 Planetary flights
   Class here flights to planetary satellites
   Add to base number 629.455 the numbers following 523.4 in
   523.41–523.48, e.g., flights to Mars 629.4553; then add 0* and to the
   result add the numbers following 629.454 in 629.4542–629.4545, e.g.,
   landing on Mars 629.455304

.457 Communications and tracking

.458 Piloting and related activities
   .458 2 Piloting
   .458 3 Rendezvous with other spacecraft
   .458 4 Extravehicular activities
      Example: space walks
   .458 5 Rescue operations
   .458 8 Atmospheric entry and landing

.46 Engineering of unmanned spacecraft
   Example: artificial satellites
   [.460 4] Special topics
      Use of this number discontinued; class in 629.4
   [.460 44] Environmental control
      Relocated to 629.467

.461–.468 Analysis, design, construction, materials, parts, systems, facilities
   Add to base number 629.46 the numbers following 629.47 in
   629.471–629.478, e.g., environmental control 629.467 [formerly also
   629.46044]

.47 Astronautical engineering
   Class here comprehensive works on spacecraft
   For auxiliary spacecraft, see 629.44; engineering of unmanned
   spacecraft, 629.46
   [.470 4] Special topics
      Use of this number discontinued; class in 629.47
   [.470 44] Environmental control
      Relocated to 629.477

.471 Structural analysis and design of spacecraft
.472 Spacecraft materials and components
.473 Spacecraft construction

*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1
Spacecraft engineering systems

For propulsion systems, see 629.475; life-support systems, 629.477

Flight operations systems

Examples: piloting, guidance, homing, navigation, landing systems

Communication and tracking systems

Auxiliary power systems

Nuclear power systems

Electric and magnetohydrodynamic power systems

Propulsion systems

Engines, fuels, auxiliary equipment and instrumentation

Chemical propulsion

Liquid propellant

Solid propellant

Nuclear propulsion

Photon propulsion

Electric and magnetohydrodynamic propulsion

Examples: plasma and ion propulsion

Environmental control [formerly also 629.47044] and life-support systems

Space suits

Food and water supply

Sanitation and sterilization

Including control of wastes

Control of temperature, humidity, air supply and pressure

Terrestrial facilities

Examples: launch complexes, space ports; spacecraft maintenance, ground testing, repair facilities

Automatic control engineering

Class here automatons that are not computer controlled

Class a specific application with the application, e.g., numerical control of machine tools 621.9023

See Manual at 003.5 vs. 629.8

Philosophy and theory

Class control theory in 629.8312

Special topics
Hydraulic control
  Including fluidics
Electric control
  Electronic control relocated to 629.89
  Class computer control in 629.89
Pneumatic control

Open-loop systems
  Mechanisms in which outputs have no effect on input signals
  Example: vending machines
  Class computer control of open-loop systems in 629.89

Closed-loop (Feedback) systems
  Mechanisms which maintain prescribed relationships between the controlled outputs and the inputs
  Class computer control of closed-loop systems in 629.89

Philosophy and theory
  Class control theory in 629.8312

Maintenance and repair
  Do not use; class in 629.8318

General principles
  Class general principles of specific mechanisms and systems in 629.832–629.836

Control theory
  Mathematical design, analysis, synthesis
  Including optimal control
  Class here comprehensive works on control theory
  Class interdisciplinary works on control theory in 003.5, control theory for open-loop systems in 629.82

Circuitry
Feedback characteristics
System components
  Examples: amplifiers, error correctors, error detectors
Construction and assembly
Maintenance and repair
> 629.832–629.836 Specific mechanisms and systems
   General aspects: components, circuitry, construction
   Class comprehensive works in 629.83
   .832 Linear mechanisms and systems
   .832 3 Servomechanisms
   .833 Multiple-loop mechanisms and systems
   .836 Nonlinear mechanisms and systems
   Example: adaptive control systems
   .89 Computer control
   Class here electronic control [formerly 629.8043], comprehensive works on computer control
   Computer control of factory operations for manufacture of products listed in 670–680 is classed in 670.427
   [.891] Sequential machines
   Relocated to 511.3
   .892 Robots
   Former heading: Automatons
   Unless it is redundant, add to base number 629.892 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital microcomputers 629.892416, but use of digital computers 629.892 (not 629.8924)
   Use of this number for automatons that are not computer controlled discontinued; class in 629.8
   .895 Computerized process control
   Use of computers to keep conditions of continuous processes as close as possible to desired values or within a desired range by controlling continuous variables such as temperature or pressure
   Unless it is redundant, add to base number 629.855 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital microcomputers 629.895416, but use of digital computers 629.895 (not 629.8954)
   Use of this number for comprehensive works on computer control discontinued; class in 629.89
Agriculture and related technologies

Class here farming, farms, comprehensive works on plant crops

See also 306.349 for agricultural sociology, 307.72 for rural sociology, 333.76 for agricultural land economics, 338.1 for agricultural economics, 900 (with use of notation 009734 from table under 930–990) for rural conditions and civilization

See Manual at 580–590 vs. 630, 641.3

SUMMARY

630.1–.9 Standard subdivisions
631 Specific techniques; apparatus, equipment, materials
632 Plant injuries, diseases, pests
633 Field and plantation crops
634 Orchards, fruits, forestry
635 Garden crops (Horticulture) Vegetables
636 Animal husbandry
637 Processing dairy and related products
638 Insect culture
639 Hunting, fishing, conservation, related technologies

[.15] Scientific principles

Do not use; class in 630.21–630.29

.2 Miscellany and scientific principles

.201 Special treatment

.201 1–.201 2 Tabulated, illustrative, related materials

Add to base number 630.201 the numbers following —02 in notation 021–022 from Table 1, e.g., agricultural pictures 630.20122

.201 7 Humorous treatment

.201 8 Audiovisual treatment

.202 Synopses and outlines

Use of this number for manuals discontinued; class in 630

.203–.207 Other miscellany

Add to base number 630.20 the numbers following —02 in notation 023–028 from Table 1, e.g., directories 630.205

.208 Auxiliary techniques and procedures [both formerly 631]

Class here auxiliary techniques and procedures for field crops [both formerly 633.0028]

Add to base number 630.208 the numbers following —028 in notation 0285–0289 from Table 1, e.g., safety measures 630.2089

Class apparatus, equipment, materials in 631
.209 Commercial miscellany [formerly also 380.141029, 381.41029, 382.41029]

Add to base number 630.209 the numbers following —029 in notation 0294–0299 from Table 1, e.g., product directories 630.2094

.21–.29 Scientific principles

Add to base number 630.2 the numbers following 5 in 510–590, e.g., agricultural meteorology 630.2515; however, agricultural genetics relocated from 630.2751 to 631.523

Class miscellany in 630.201–630.209

.71 Schools and courses

.717 Extension work for young people

631 Specific techniques; apparatus, equipment, materials

Topics common to plant and animal husbandry or limited to plant culture

Class here apparatus, equipment, materials for field crops [all formerly 633.0028]; cultivation, harvesting, related topics of field and plantation crops [all formerly 633.08]

Use of this number for comprehensive works on crops and their production discontinued; class in 630

Auxiliary techniques and procedures relocated to 630.208

Class techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials of specific plant crops in 633–635; of animal husbandry in 636.01–636.08

For plant injuries, diseases, pests, see 632

SUMMARY

631.2 Use of agricultural structures

.3 Use of agricultural tools, machinery, apparatus, equipment

.4 Soil science

.5 Cultivation and harvesting

.6 Clearing, drainage, revegetation

.7 Water conservation

.8 Use of fertilizers and soil conditioners

.2 Use of agricultural structures

Class construction of agricultural structures with the structure, e.g., barns 690.8922

.21 Farmhouses

.22 General-purpose buildings

Class here barns

Class housing for domestic animals in 636.0831

[.23] Granaries, grain elevators, silos

Use of granaries and grain elevators relocated to 633.10468, of silos to 633.20868
.25 Machine and equipment sheds
.27 Fences, hedges, walls
.28 Roads, bridges, dams
.3 Use of tools, machinery, apparatus, equipment

Class comprehensive works on manufacture of tools, machinery, apparatus, equipment in 681.7631; manufacture of a specific article with the article, e.g., tractors 629.225

See also 631.2 for use of agricultural structures

.304 Workshops

[.31] Soil-working tools and machines
  Relocated to 631.51

[.33] Use of planting and sowing equipment
  Relocated to 631.53

.34 Use of equipment for care and shelter of plants
  Use of equipment for a specific purpose relocated to the purpose, e.g., greenhouses 631.583

[.35] Use of harvesting equipment
  Comprehensive works relocated to 631.55, use of grain harvesting equipment to 633.1045

[.36] Use of equipment in preparation for storage and transport
  Relocated to 631.56

.37 Use of power and power machinery
  Class a specific use of power and power machinery with the use, e.g., combines 633.1045

.371 Kinds of power
  Examples: human, animal, mechanical, electric power

.372 Tractors

.373 Transport equipment
  Examples: trucks, wagons

.4 Soil science

Class here interdisciplinary works on soils [formerly also 553.6]

Class soil formation in 551.305, petrology of soils in 552.5, engineering use of soils in 624.151

For clearing and drainage, see 631.6; use of fertilizers and soil conditioners, 631.8
Classification of soils
Do not use; class in 631.44

Scientific principles
Do not use; class in 631.4

Historical, geographical, persons treatment
Do not use; class in 631.49

Soil chemistry
Class gas content in 631.433

For soil fertility, acidity, alkalinity, see 631.42

Inorganic chemistry
Example: salinity

See also 631.82 for soil conditioners

Organic chemistry
Including humus
Class here soil biochemistry

Soil fertility, acidity, alkalinity

Fertility
Class use of fertilizers in 631.8

Soil physics
Including soil micromorphology

Moisture and hydromechanics

Gas content and mechanics

Thermal phenomena

Soil classification

Soil erosion and its control
Class here soil conservation, comprehensive works on soil and water conservation

For revegetation, see 631.64; water conservation, 631.7

Conservation tillage
Example: mulch tillage

For tillage for water conservation, see 631.586

Crop rotation and cover crops
Class comprehensive works on crop rotation in 631.582

Contouring and terracing
Agriculture and related technologies

.456 Strip cropping

.46 Soil biology

For biochemistry, see 631.417

.47 Soil and land use surveys

Soil types, agricultural utilization of land in specific areas

Add to base number 631.47 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., soil survey of Gonzales County, Texas 631.47764257

See Manual at 631.47 vs. 631.49

.49 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Add to base number 631.49 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., soil science in China 631.4951

For soil and land use surveys, see 631.47

See Manual at 631.47 vs. 631.49

.5 Cultivation and harvesting

.51 Soil working (Tillage)

Before and after planting

Class here use of soil-working tools and machines [formerly also 631.31]

Class soil working in special methods of cultivation in 631.58

For conservation tillage, see 631.451

.52 Production of propagational organisms and new varieties

Example of propagational organism: seedlings

Class here nursery practice

.521 Seeds

.523 Development of new varieties

Including plant introductions

Class here agricultural genetics [formerly also 630.2751], germ plasm, hybrids

.526 Bulbs and tubers

.53 Plant propagation

Class here use of planting and sowing equipment [formerly also 631.33], comprehensive works on plant breeding

For production of propagational organisms and new varieties, see 631.52; grafting, pruning, training, 631.54

.531 Propagation from seeds

.532 Propagation from bulbs and tubers

241
.533 Propagation from suckers, runners, buds
   Class propagation from tubers in 631.532, from cuttings in 631.535

.534 Propagation by layering

.535 Propagation from cuttings and slips

.536 Propagation by transplanting

[.537] Propagation from nursery stock
   Number discontinued; class in 631.53

.54 Grafting, pruning, training
   Most works on grafting and pruning will be classed in 634.044 and cognate numbers in 634.1–634.8

.541 Grafting

.542 Pruning

[.544] Forcing
   Relocated to 631.583

[.545] Retarding
   Relocated to 631.583

.546 Training on poles, trellises, walls

.55 Harvesting
   Examples: mowing, reaping
   Class here use of harvesting equipment [formerly also 631.35]
   Class operations subsequent to harvesting in 631.56

.558 Yields
   See Manual at 631.558 vs. 338.1

.56 Operations subsequent to harvesting
   Examples: cleaning, husking, packing
   Class here use of equipment in preparation for storage and transport [formerly also 631.36]

.567 Grading

.568 Storage
.57  Varieties and kinds of organisms used in agriculture

Use for description of organisms that contain little or no information on how to grow them.

Most works on varieties and kinds of plants will be classed in 633–635, usually using 7 from table under 633–635, e.g., varieties of grain crops 633.1047.

Class physiology and anatomy of agricultural plants in 581, development of new varieties in 631.523.

.58  Special cultivation methods

See also 333.76 for special methods of cultivation as topics in land economics, 338.162 for them as topics in agricultural economics.

.581  Reduced cultivation methods

Class here minimum tillage, surface tillage

.581 2  Fallowing

.581 4  No-tillage

.581 8  Shifting cultivation (Slash-and-burn agriculture)

.582  Crop rotation

Class crop rotation to control erosion in 631.452

.583  Controlled-environment agriculture

Including forcing [formerly 631.544], retarding [formerly 631.545].

Class here use of greenhouses [formerly also 631.34].

Most works on use of greenhouses are classed in 635.0483 (greenhouse gardening) and cognate numbers in 635.1–635.9.

.584  Organic farming

Class a specific aspect with the aspect, e.g., compost 631.875.

.585  Soilless culture (Hydroponics)

.586  Dry farming

Class here tillage for water conservation.

.587  Irrigation [formerly also 631.7]

Use only for works describing what is done on the farm, e.g., installation of center-pivot sprinkler systems.

Class comprehensive works on irrigation, works on obtaining irrigation water from off-farm sources in 627.52; digging wells in 628.114.

For sewage irrigation, see 628.3623.

.6  Clearing, drainage, revegetation

.61  Clearing
.62 Drainage
Class comprehensive works on drainage, on off-farm drainage projects in 627.54

.64 Revegetation
Including inland dune stabilization, surface mine reclamation
Class comprehensive works on reclamation in 627.5, reforestation in 634.956

.7 Water conservation
Irrigation relocated to 631.587
For tillage for water conservation, see 631.586

.8 Use of fertilizers and soil conditioners
Including growth regulators
Class here comprehensive works on agricultural chemicals
Class comprehensive works on soil fertility in 631.422
For pesticides, see 632.95
See also 668.62 for manufacture of fertilizers

.809 Historical, geographical, persons treatment of use of fertilizers
[formerly 631.819] and soil conditioners

.81 Nutritive principles, complete fertilizers, methods of application
Use of this number for comprehensive works on fertilizers discontinued; class in 631.8
Class nutritive principles and methods of application of specific fertilizers in 631.83–631.87

.811 Nutritive principles

.813 Complete fertilizers

.816 Methods of application

[.819] Historical, geographical, persons treatment
Relocated to 631.809

.82 Soil conditioners
Example: for control of salinity

.821 For control of acidity
Example: lime

.825 For control of alkalinity

.826 For texture
Example: peat
> 631.83–631.87 Specific kinds of fertilizers
   Class comprehensive works in 631.8
   .83 Potassium fertilizers
   .84 Nitrogen fertilizers
   .841 Ammonium, urea, cyanamide fertilizers
       For ammonium nitrate, see 631.842
   .842 Nitrate fertilizers
       Example: ammonium nitrate
   .843 Slaughterhouse (Abattoir) residues
       For bone meal, see 631.85
   .847 Biological methods of soil nitrification
       Use of nitrifying bacteria, nitrifying crops
   .85 Phosphorus fertilizers
       Including bone meal
   .86 Organic fertilizers
       Including other organic fertilizers [formerly 631.87]
       Class here utilization of animal wastes for soil improvement [formerly also
       628.7461], animal manures
       For slaughterhouse residues, see 631.843; vegetable manures and
       converted household garbage, 631.87
   .861 Farm manure
   .866 Guano
   .869 Sewage sludge
   .87 Vegetable manures and converted household garbage
       Other organic fertilizers relocated to 631.86
   .874 Green manures
   .875 Compost
   .877 Converted household garbage
632  **Plant injuries, diseases, pests**

Class here injuries, diseases, pests of field and plantation crops [formerly 633.089], pathology of agricultural plants, comprehensive works on plant and animal injuries, diseases, pests.

Class comprehensive works on physiology and pathology of agricultural plants in 581.1; use of agricultural plants in studies of basic pathological processes in 581.2; injuries, diseases, pests of specific crops and groups of crops in 633–635.

*For veterinary medicine, see 636.089*

.1  **Injuries and damages caused by environmental forces**

.11  Low temperatures injury

.12  High temperatures and drought injury

.14  Hail damage

.15  Lightning injury

.16  Wind and rain damage

.17  Flood damage

.18  Fire injury

.19  Air pollution and radiation injury

.2  **Galls and pathological development**

.3  **Diseases**

Class protozoan diseases in 632.631

*For fungus diseases, see 632.4; viral and rickettsial diseases, 632.8*

.32  Bacterial diseases

.4  **Fungus diseases**

Add to base number 632.4 the numbers following 589.2 in 589.22–589.25, e.g., rusts 632.425, smuts 632.427

.5  **Harmful plants**

Class here plant pests

.52  Parasites

.58  Weeds

.6  **Pests  Animal pests**

Add to base number 632.6 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g., snails 632.643; however, class insect pests in 632.7.

Class pest control service and interdisciplinary works on pests in 363.78, comprehensive works on pest control technology, on specific topics of pest control and of animal pest control in 632.95

*For plant pests, see 632.5; pest control materials, 632.9*
.7 Insect pests

Add to base number 632.7 the numbers following 595.7 in 595.71–595.79, e.g.,
locusts 632.726

.8 Viral and rickettsial diseases

.9 General topics of pest, harmful-plant, disease control

Class control of specific pests, of specific animal pests, of harmful plants, of
diseases in 632.2–632.7

.93 Plant quarantine

.94 Spraying, dusting, fumigating

Use of this number for comprehensive works on control methods and
apparatus discontinued; class in 632.9

.95 Pest control materials (Pesticides)

.950 4 Special topics

.950 42 Undesired effects and their control

.951 Insecticides, rodenticides, vermicides

.952 Fungicides and algicides

.953 Bactericides

.954 Herbicides

.96 Biological control

> 633–635 Specific plant crops

Add to notation for each term identified by * as follows:

1–6 Cultivation and harvesting

Add the numbers following 631.5 in 631.51–631.56, e.g.,
harvesting 5

*For special cultivation methods, see 8*

7 Varieties and kinds

Special topics of specific varieties and kinds relocated to the topic,
e.g., irrigation of a variety 87

8 Special cultivation methods, fertilizers, soil conditioners

81–87 Special cultivation methods

Add to 8 the numbers following 631.58 in 631.581–631.587,
e.g., irrigation 87

89 Fertilizers and soil conditioners

Add to 89 the numbers following 631.8 in 631.81–631.87, e.g.,
compost 8975

9 Injuries, diseases, pests

Add to 9 the numbers following 632 in 632.1–632.9, e.g., injuries
from low temperatures 911

Class comprehensive works in 630

See Manual at 633–635
633 Field and plantation crops

Large-scale production of crops intended for agricultural purposes and industrial processing other than preservation

Class truck farming in 635; a specific plantation or field crop not provided for here with the crop, e.g., bananas 634.772

SUMMARY

633.001-.009 [Standard subdivisions]
   .1 Cereal grains (Cereals)
   .2 Forage crops
   .3 Legumes, other forage crops
   .5 Fiber crops
   .6 Sugar, syrup, starch crops
   .7 Alkaloidal crops
   .8 Other crops grown for industrial processing

.001 Philosophy and theory

.002 Miscellany

[.002 8] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

   Auxiliary techniques and procedures for field crops relocated to
   630.208; apparatus, equipment, materials for field crops to 631

.003-.009 Standard subdivisions

[.08] Cultivation, harvesting, related topics of field and plantation crops

   Relocated to 631

[.089] Injuries, diseases, pests of field and plantation crops

   Relocated to 632

.1 Cereal grains (Cereals)

Class cereal crops grown for forage in 633.25

.104 *Cultivation, harvesting, related topics

.104 5 Harvesting

   Class here use of grain harvesting equipment [formerly also 631.35]

.104 68 Storage

   Including use of granaries and grain elevators [formerly also 631.23]

.11 *Wheat

.12 *Buckwheat

.13 *Oats

.14 *Rye

*Add as instructed under 633–635
*Corn

Variant names: Indian corn, maize

*Barley

Millet, grain sorghums, upland and wild rice

*Millet (Panicum and related genera)

Varieties and kinds

Examples: broomcorn millet, panic grass, proso

*Grain sorghums

Class sweet sorghums in 633.62

Varieties and kinds

Examples: broomcorn, durra (Jerusalem corn), kafir corn, shallu

Wild rice

Upland rice [formerly 633.18]

*Rice

Class here paddy rice

Upland rice relocated to 633.179

See also 633.178 for wild rice

.2 Forage crops

Class here forage grasses, Pooidae grasses


Class forage legumes and other forage crops in 633.3

Pasture and its grasses

Class comprehensive works on ranches and farms devoted to livestock in 636.01, pasture use of forests in 634.99, specific pasture grasses in 633.21–633.28

*Cultivation, harvesting, related topics of forage crops

Storage

Including comprehensive works on use of silos [formerly also 631.23]

Class use of silos for grain storage in 633.10468

*Bluegrasses (Poa)

*Orchard grass

Variant name: cocksfoot

*Add as instructed under 633–635
.23  *Bent grasses
   Varieties and kinds
   Example: redtop

.24  *Timothy

.25  Cereal grasses
   Add to base number 633.25 the numbers following 633.1 in 633.11–633.18, e.g., rye grasses 633.254

.26  Sedges
   Former heading: other Cyperaceae

.27  Panicoideae grasses
   *Timothy
   Cereal grasses
   Add to base number 633.25 the numbers following 633.1 in 633.11–633.18, e.g., rye grasses 633.254

.28  Other Pooideae grasses

.3  **Legumes, other forage crops**
   Class here grain legumes, forage legumes
   Class comprehensive works on legumes in 635.65
   *Cultivation, harvesting, related topics

.304  *Alfalfa
   Variant name: lucerne

.31  *Trifolium clovers
   Varieties and kinds
   Examples: alsike, crimson, red, white clover

.32  *Cowpeas
   Variant name: black-eyed peas

.33  *Soybeans
   Variant name: soja

.34  *Vetches

.35  Lespedeza and related legumes

.36  *Lespedeza
   Variant name: bush clover

.364  *Sweet clovers
   Lespedeza and related legumes

.366  *Lupines

.367  *Peanuts
   Variant name: groundnuts

*Add as instructed under 633–635
.369 *Field peas (Pisum arvense)
    Variant name: Austrian winter peas

.37 Other legumes

.372 *Kidney beans
    Variant names: navy, pea beans

.374 *Trefoils (Lotus)

.39 Other forage crops

[.4] Edible roots and tubers
    Edible roots relocated to 635.1

[.49] Edible tubers
    Relocated to 635.2

.5 Fiber crops

> 633.51–633.56 Soft fibers
    Class comprehensive works in 633.5

.51 *Cotton

.52 *Flax

.53 *Hemp (Cannabis sativa)
    See also 633.79 for marijuana

.54 *Jute

.55 *Ramie

.56 Other soft fibers
    Examples: chingma (China jute), kenaf (ambari hemp), sunn

.57 Hard fibers
    For other hard fibers, see 633.58

.571 *Manila hemp
    Variant name: abaca

.576 *Pineapple fibers

.577 *Sisal (Agave fibers)

.58 Other hard fibers
    Examples: coconut (coir), esparto, jipijapa, raffia, reed, rush fibers
    Including bamboo, willow (osier), other basketwork and wickerwork plants

*Add as instructed under 633–635
.6 Sugar, syrup, starch crops

Standard subdivisions are added for sugar, syrup, starch crops; for sugar crops alone; and for syrup crops alone

.61 *Sugar cane

.62 *Sorgo

Variant name: sweet sorghums

.63 *Sugar beets

.64 *Sugar maples

.68 Starch crops

Examples: arrowroot, sago palm, taro

.682 *Cassava (Manioc)

.7 Alkaloidal crops

.71 *Tobacco

.72 *Tea

.73 *Coffee

.74 *Cacao

Representative products: cocoa, chocolate

.75 *Poppies (Papaver somniferum)

.76 *Kola nuts (Cola nuts)

.77 *Maté

Variant name: Paraguay tea

.78 *Chicory

.79 *Marijuana

Class here hashish

See also 633.53 for hemp

.8 Other crops grown for industrial processing

.81 Perfume-producing plants

.82 Flavoring-producing plants

Examples: hops, mints, sassafras, vanilla, wintergreen

For spices, see 633.83; alliaceous plants, 635.26; aromatic and sweet herbs, 635.7

*Add as instructed under 633–635
633  Agriculture and related technologies 633

.83  Spices
    Examples: allspice, cinnamon, clove, ginger, nutmeg
    Class here sweet spices
    *For hot spices, see 633.84

.84  Hot spices
    Examples: black pepper, chili, horseradish, mustard, paprika

.85  For nonvolatile oils
    Class here oilseed plants
    Class coconuts in 634.61, olives in 634.63

.851  *Oil palm

.853  *Rapeseed

.86  For dyes

.87  For tannin
    Example: canaigre

.88  For medicines
    Add to base number 633.88 the numbers following 58 in 583–589, e.g.,
digitalis 633.88381; however, class poppies in 633.75

.89  For other purposes

.895  For rubber and resins

.895 2  *Rubber trees (Hevea brasiliensis)

.895 9  Turpentine
    Use of this number for other resin-producing plants discontinued;
class in 633.895

.898  For insecticides

634  Orchards, fruits, forestry
    Class here comprehensive works on tree crops
    Standard subdivisions are added for orchards, fruits, forestry; for orchards alone;
and for fruits alone
    Class trees grown for plantation crops in 633, ornamental trees in 635.977
    *For pepos, see 635.61; tomatoes, 635.642

*Add as instructed under 633–635
SUMMARY

634.04 Cultivation, harvesting, related topics of orchards, of fruit
   .1 Pomaceous fruits
   .2 Drupaceous fruits
   .3 Citrus and moraceous fruits
   .4 Other fruits
   .5 Nuts
   .6 Tropical and subtropical fruits
   .7 Berries and herbaceous tropical and subtropical fruits
   .8 Grapes
   .9 Forestry

.04 *Cultivation, harvesting, related topics of orchards, of fruit

> 634.1–634.6 Orchards and their fruits

Class comprehensive works in 634

.1 Pomaceous fruits
   .11 *Apples
   .13 *Pears
   .14 *Quinces
   .15 *Medlars (Mespilus germanica)
   .16 *Loquats
       Variant name: Japanese medlars

.2 Drupaceous fruits
   .21 *Apricots
   .22 *Plums
   .227 Varieties and kinds
       Example: damson
   .23 *Cherries
   .25 *Peaches
   .257 Varieties and kinds
       Example: nectarines

.3 Citrus and moraceous fruits
   .304 *Citrus fruits [formerly 634.35]
       Class specific citrus fruits in 634.31–634.34
   .31 *Oranges
   .32 *Grapefruit

*Add as instructed under 633–635
Agriculture and related technologies

.33 Citron group
  *Citrons
.334 *Lemons
.337 *Limes
.34 *Kumquats

[.35] *Citrus fruits
  Relocated to 634.304

.36 *Moraceous fruits
  For figs, see 634.37; mulberries, 634.38; breadfruit, 634.39

.37 *Figs
.38 *Mulberries
.39 *Breadfruit

.4 Other fruits
  Class tropical and subtropical fruits not provided for here in 634.6

.41 Annonaceous fruits
  Examples: cherimoya, custard apples, papaws

.42 Myrtaeous and passifloraceous fruits

.421 *Guavas

.425 *Passion fruit

.43 Sapotaceous fruits
  Examples: sapodilla plums (chicozapote), star apples

.44 Anacardaceous fruits
  Examples: mangoes, Spanish plums
  Class cashew nuts in 634.573

.45 *Persimmons

.46 Leguminous fruits
  Examples: carob (locusts, Saint-John’s-bread), tamarinds
  Class garden legumes in 635.65

.5 Nuts

.51 *Walnuts

.52 *Pecans
  Use of this number for hickory nuts discontinued; class in 634.5

*Add as instructed under 633–635
.53 *Chestnuts
.54 *Filberts
.55 *Almonds
.57 Cashew nuts, pistachios, Brazil nuts
   Use of this number for other nuts discontinued; class in 634.5
   .573 *Cashew nuts
   .574 *Pistachios
   .575 *Brazil nuts
.6 Tropical and subtropical fruits
   Not provided for elsewhere
   For herbaceous tropical and subtropical fruits, see 634.77
   .61 *Coconuts
   .62 *Dates
   .63 *Oliv es
   .64 *Pomegranates
   .65 Papayas, avocados, mangosteens
      Use of this number for other tropical and subtropical tree fruit discontinued; class in 634.6
      .651 *Papayas
      .653 *Avocados
      Variant name: alligator pears
      .655 *Mangosteens
.7 Berries and herbaceous tropical and subtropical fruits
   Class here comprehensive works on small fruits
   Class a specific small fruit not provided for here with the fruit, e.g., mulberries 634.38, grapes, 634.8
   .71 Cane fruits (Rubus)
      .711 *Raspberries
      .713 *Blackberries
      .714 *Loganberries
      .717 *Dewberries
      .718 *Boysenberries

*Add as instructed under 633–635
.72 Ribes
.721 *Currants
.725 *Gooseberries
.73 Huckleberries and blueberries
.732 *Huckleberries
.737 *Blueberries (Vaccinium)
.74 Other bush fruits
   Examples: barberries, buffalo berries, elderberries, juneberries
.75 *Strawberries
.76 *Cranberries
.77 Herbaceous tropical and subtropical fruits
   Class comprehensive works on tropical and subtropical fruit in 634.6
.772 *Bananas
.773 *Plantains
.774 *Pineapples
.775 Cactus fruits

.8 Grapes
   Class here viticulture
.81 Soil working (Tillage)
.82 Injuries, diseases, pests
   Add to base number 634.82 the numbers following 632 in 632.1-632.9, e.g.,
   fungus diseases 634.824
.83 Varieties and kinds
   Specific aspects of specific varieties and kinds relocated to the aspect, e.g.,
   fungus diseases of muscadines 634.824
.88 Cultivation and harvesting
   Add to base number 634.88 the numbers following 631.5 in 631.52-631.58,
   e.g., harvesting grapes 634.885; however, class varieties in 634.83
   For tillage, see 634.81

*Add as instructed under 633-635
.9 Forestry

SUMMARY

634.901-.909 Standard subdivisions
.92 Forest management
.93 Access and safety features
.95 Silviculture
.96 Injuries, diseases, pests
.97 Kinds of trees
.98 Forest exploitation and products Logging and lumber
.99 Agroforestry

[.906 85] Management of production
Do not use; class 634.92

.906 88 Management of distribution (Marketing)
Class here marketing methods [formerly 634.954]

> 634.92–634.96 General topics

Class comprehensive works in 634.9, general topics applied to specific kinds of trees in 634.97

For exploitation and products, see 634.98

.92 Forest management
Class here production management in forestry
Use of this number for forest economy discontinued; class in 634.9
Class comprehensive works on management in forestry in 634.9068, production management of a specific aspect of forestry with the aspect, e.g., of logging 634.98

.928 Production planning and mensuration
Use of this number for comprehensive works on forest management discontinued; class in 634.92

.928 3 Production planning
Former heading: Regulation

.928 5 Mensuration and estimation

.93 Access and safety features
Examples: bridges, lookout towers, roads, trails
Access to power lines relocated to 621.319

.95 Silviculture

[.952] Harvesting methods
Relocated to 634.98

.953 Maintenance cuttings
Examples: improvement cuttings, thinnings, prunings
Marketing methods
Relocated to 634.90688

Brush disposal methods

Forestation
Class here afforestation, reforestation, breeding

Seeds and seeding

Nursery practice

Cultivation at permanent site

Injuries, diseases, pests
Add to base number 634.96 the numbers following 632 in 632.1–632.9, e.g.,
forest fire technology 634.9618

Kinds of trees
Class here general topics of forestry applied to specific kinds of trees
Add to notation for each subdivision identified by † as follows:

2–6 General topics
Add the numbers following 634.9 in 634.92–634.96, e.g.,
reforestation 56
For exploitation and products, see 8

7 Varieties and kinds
General topics of a specific variety or kind relocated to the
topic, e.g., reforestation of a variety 56

8 Exploitation and products Logging and lumber
[82] Logging
Number discontinued; class in 8
[83] Pulpwood
Use of this number for logs discontinued; class in 8
[85–87] Minor products
Relocated to 634.985–634.987

Dicotyledons
Class here hardwoods
Use of this number for comprehensive works on angiosperms, on
deciduous trees discontinued; class in 634.97
Class deciduous gymnosperms in 634.975
For other dicotyledons, see 634.973

†Oak
†Maple
†Poplar
†Chestnut
†Beech
†Birch

†Add as instructed under 634.97
.972 7 †Linden

.972 77 Varieties and kinds

Examples: basswood (American linden), lime (European linden)

.972 8 †Elm

.973 Other dicotyledons

Add to base number 634.973 the numbers following 583 in 583.1–583.9, e.g., locust trees 634.973322

.974 Monocotyledons

Add to base number 634.974 the numbers following 584 in 584.1–584.9, e.g., palm trees 634.9745

.975 Gymnosperms

> 634.975 1–634.975 8 Coniferous trees

Class comprehensive works in 634.975, specific conifers not provided for here in 634.97592

.975 1 †Pine

.975 2 †Spruce

.975 3 †Hemlock

.975 4 †Fir

.975 5 †Cypress

.975 6 †Cedar

.975 7 †Larch

.975 8 †Sequoia

.975 9 Other gymnosperms

Add to base number 634.9759 the numbers following 585 in 585.1–585.9, e.g., tamaracks 634.97592

.98 Forest exploitation and products Logging and lumber

Class here harvesting methods [formerly also 634.952], comprehensive works on lumbering

Class exploitation and utilization of specific kinds of trees in 634.97; trees cultivated for products other than lumber or pulp with the product, e.g., turpentine trees 633.8959, pecan trees 634.52

For sawmill operations, see 674.2

[.982] Logging

Number discontinued; class in 634.98

†Add as instructed under 634.97
.983 Pulpwood
Use of this number for comprehensive works on logs discontinued; class in 634.98

> 634.985–634.987 Exploitation of minor forest products
Use only for products that have not been cultivated
Class here minor products of specific kinds of trees [formerly 634.97, with use of 85–87 from table under 634.97]
Class comprehensive works in 634.987

.985 Barks
.986 Saps
.987 Minor forest products
Examples: fruits, seeds, nuts
For barks, see 634.985; saps 634.986

.99 Agroforestry
Forestry in combination with other farming
Including flood control, grazing, range management
Use of this number for other aspects of forestry discontinued; class in 634.9
Class a specific aspect of agroforestry with the aspect, e.g. logging 634.98

[.999] Farm forestry
Number discontinued; class in 634.99

635 Garden crops (Horticulture) Vegetables
Vegetables: crops grown primarily for human consumption without intermediate processing other than preservation
Class here home gardening, truck farming
Class orchards in 634

SUMMARY
635.04 Cultivation, harvesting, related topics
.1 Edible roots
.2 Edible tubers and bulbs
.3 Edible leaves, flowers, stems
.4 Cooking greens and rhubarb
.5 Salad greens
.6 Edible garden fruits and seeds
.7 Aromatic and sweet herbs
.8 Mushrooms and truffles
.9 Flowers and ornamental plants

.04 *Cultivation, harvesting, related topics
*Add as instructed under 633–635
635.1-635.8 Edible crops

Class comprehensive works in 635

.1 Edible roots [formerly also 633.4]

Class cassava in 633.682

.11 *Beets
.12 Turnips and related crops
.125 *Turnips
.126 *Rutabagas

Variant names: Russian turnips, swedes, Swedish turnips

.128 *Celeriac

Variant names: celery root; knob, root, turnip celery

.13 *Carrots
.14 *Parsnips
.15 *Radishes
.16 *Salsify

.2 Edible tubers [formerly also 633.49] and bulbs

Class taro in 633.68

.21 *Potatoes
.22 *Sweet potatoes
.23 *Yams (Dioscorea)
.24 *Jerusalem artichokes
.25 *Onions
.26 Alliaceous plants

Examples: chives, garlic, leeks, shallots

For onions, see 635.25

.3 Edible leaves, flowers, stems

For cooking greens and rhubarb, see 635.4; salad greens, 635.5

See Manual at 635.3 vs. 635.4, 635.5

.31 *Asparagus
.32 *Artichokes

See also 635.24 for Jerusalem artichokes

*Add as instructed under 633–635
.34 *Cabbages
Class here comprehensive works on cultivation of Brassica oleracea

For cauliflower and broccoli, see see 635.35; Brussels sprouts, 636.36

.347 *Varieties and kinds
Examples: kale (collards), kohlrabi

.35 *Cauliflower and *broccoli

.36 *Brussels sprouts

.4 Cooking greens and rhubarb

See Manual at 635.3 vs. 635.4, 635.5

.41 *Spinach

.42 *Chard

.48 *Rhubarb

.5 Salad greens

See Manual at 635.3 vs. 635.4, 635.5

.51 *Dandelions

.52 *Lettuce

.53 *Celery

See also 635.128 for celeriac

.54 *Chicory

.55 *Endives

.56 Sorrel and cresses

.6 Edible garden fruits and seeds

.61 Pepos
Class here melons

For squashes and pumpkins, see 635.62; cucumbers, 635.63

.611 *Muskmelons

.611 7 *Varieties and kinds
Examples: casaba, honeydew melons; cantaloupes

.615 *Watermelons

.62 *Squashes and *pumpkins

.63 *Cucumbers

*Add as instructed under 633–635
Other fruits

*Tomatoes

*Sweet peppers

Variant name: bell, green peppers

*Eggplants

*Okra

Garden legumes

Class here comprehensive works on legumes in agriculture
Class legumes as field crops in 633.3, leguminous fruit in 634.46

*Broad beans

*Kidney beans

Variant names: snap, string, wax beans

*Lima beans

*Soybeans

Variant name: soja

*Peas (Pisum sativum)

Variant name: English peas, garden peas

*Chick-peas

Variant names: chestnut beans, chich, dwarf peas, garavance, garbanzo

*Lentils

Other garden legumes

*Black-eyed peas

Variant name: cowpeas

*Peanuts

Variant name: groundnuts

Corn

Variant names: Indian corn, maize

*Sweet corn

*Popcorn

Aromatic and sweet herbs

Class here herb gardens

Mushrooms and truffles

*Add as instructed under 633–635
.9 Flowers and ornamental plants

Class here floriculture

See Manual at 582.1 vs. 635.9

SUMMARY

635.902 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures
.91 Specific techniques; apparatus, equipment, materials
.92 Injuries, diseases, pests
.93 General and taxonomic groupings
.94 Groupings by means of propagation
.95 Groupings by environmental factors
.96 Groupings by purpose
.97 Other groupings
.98 Special methods of cultivation

.902 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures [formerly 635.91]

.91 Specific techniques; apparatus, equipment, materials

Add to base number 635.91 the numbers following 631 in 631.2–631.8, e.g., pruning 635.91542; however, class special methods of cultivation in 635.98

Auxiliary techniques and procedures relocated to 635.9028

Class cultivation, harvesting, fertilizers, soil conditioners of specific groupings of ornamental plants in 635.93–635.97

.92 Injuries, diseases, pests

Add to base number 635.92 the numbers following 632 in 632.1–632.9, e.g., fungus diseases 635.924

Class injuries, diseases, pests of specific groupings of plants in 635.93–635.97

> 635.93–635.97 Groupings of plants

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the number coming first in the schedule, e.g., succulent houseplants 635.955 (not 635.965)

Class comprehensive works in 635.9

.93 General and taxonomic groupings

.931 By life duration

Class specific families, genera, species regardless of life duration in 635.933–635.939

For perennials, see 635.932

.931 2 *Annuals

.931 4 *Biennials

.932 *Perennials

*Add as instructed under 633–635
.933-.939 Taxonomic groupings
Add to base number 635.93 the numbers following 58 in 583–589, e.g.,
cactus 635.93347; however, class comprehensive works on dicotyledons
in 635.9, taxonomic groupings of trees in 635.9773–635.9775

.94 Groupings by means of propagation

.942 *From seeds
.944 From *bulbs and *tubers
.946 *From runners and *by layering
.948 From *cuttings and *slips

.95 Groupings by environmental factors

.951 Native habitats
Add to base number 635.951 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
ornamentals native to Scotland 635.951411

.952 By climatic factors
Other than temperate zone
Examples: alpine, arctic, tropical plants
Use of this number for temperate-zone plants discontinued; class in 635.9
Class alpine (rock) gardens in 635.9672

.953 By seasonal and diurnal factors
Examples: winter-flowering plants, morning- and night-blooming plants

.954 By light factors
Examples: plants favoring shade, sunshine

.955 By soil factors
Examples: plants favoring dry, rich, sandy soils
Including succulent plants
Works on succulent plants emphasizing cactus are classed in 635.93347

.96 Groupings by purpose

.962 *For flower beds
.963 For *borders and *edgings
.964 For ground cover
Class here grass
.964 2 *Turf
Class lawns in 635.9647
.964 7 *Lawns

*Add as instructed under 633–635
.965 *For houseplants
  Including window-box gardening
  Class comprehensive works on container gardening in 635.986, bonsai in 635.9772

.966 *For cutting
  Class flower arrangement in 745.92

.967 For special kinds of gardens
  *For window-box gardening, see 635.965

.967 1 Roof, balcony, patio gardening
  Class comprehensive works on container gardening in 635.986

.967 2 *Rock gardens (Alpine gardens)
  Class alpine plants in 635.952

.967 4 *Water gardens

.967 6 *Wild flower gardens
  Class wild flowers of a specific native habitat in 635.951

.968 For fragrance and color

.969 *For nurseries
  Class here nursery practice

.97 Other groupings

.973 *Everlastings

.974 *Vines
  Class here climbing plants

.975 *Foliage plants

.976 *Shrubs and *hedges

.977 Trees
  Class here potted trees
  Class comprehensive works on container gardening in 635.986

.977 2 *Bonsai
  Class bonsai of specific families, genera, species in 635.9773–635.9775

.977 3–.977 5 Taxonomic groupings
  Add to base number 635.977 the numbers following 58 in 583–585, e.g., elms 635.9773962; however, use 635.977 for comprehensive works on dicotyledonous trees

*Add as instructed under 633–635
.98 Special methods of cultivation
   Class special methods of cultivation of specific groupings of plants in 635.93–635.97

.982 Controlled-environment gardening
   For bell-jar gardening, see 635.985

.982 3 *Greenhouse gardening

.982 4 *Terrariums

.985 *Bell-jar gardening

.986 *Container gardening
   Class here pot gardening

.987 Organic gardening
   Class a specific aspect with the aspect, e.g., compost 635.91875

636 Animal husbandry
   Class culture of nondomesticated animals in 639
   See Manual at 800 vs. 591, 636, 398.245

SUMMARY
636.001–.009 Standard subdivisions
   .01–.08 [Ranches and farms, young of animals, production and maintenance, animals for specific purposes, veterinary sciences]
   .1 Equines  Horses
   .2 Ruminants and Tylopoda  Bovines  Cattle
   .3 Smaller ruminants  Sheep
   .4 Swine
   .5 Poultry  Chickens
   .6 Birds other than poultry
   .7 Dogs
   .8 Cats
   .9 Other mammals

.001 Philosophy and theory
   [.001 575 1] Genetics
   Relocated to 636.0821

.002 Miscellany
   [.002 77] Ownership marks
   Do not use; class in 636.0812

.003–.009 Standard subdivisions

*Add as instructed under 633–635
.01 Ranches and farms

Class here soil and water management on ranches and farms devoted to animal husbandry

Class production of forage crops in 633.2, development of pasturage in 633.202, pasture use of forests in 634.99, housing for animals in 636.0831, grazing in 636.084

.07 Young of animals

Class production and maintenance, rearing for specific purposes, veterinary medicine of young animals in 636.08

.08 Production and maintenance, animals for specific purposes, veterinary sciences

SUMMARY

| 636.081 | Selection, judging, ownership marks |
| .082 | Breeding |
| .083 | Care and maintenance |
| .084 | Feeding |
| .085 | Feeds and applied nutrition |
| .086 | Specific field crop feeds |
| .087 | Other specific feeds |
| .088 | Animals for specific purposes |
| .089 | Veterinary sciences  Veterinary medicine |

> 636.081–636.087 Production and maintenance

Class comprehensive works in 636, production and maintenance of animals for specific purposes in 636.088

.081 Selection, judging, ownership marks

.081 1 Judging

.081 2 Ownership marks

Class here branding

.082 Breeding

.082 1 Genetics [formerly also 636.0015751]

Including germ plasm, source species

.082 2 Breeding records

Examples: herdbooks, pedigrees, studbooks

.082 4 Breeding and reproduction methods

.082 41 Inbreeding and line breeding

.082 42 Outbreeding

For crossbreeding, see 636.08243
Crossbreeding

Class here hybrids

Artificial insemination

Care and maintenance

Including predator control, transporting animals

For feeding, see 636.084; veterinary sciences, 636.089

See also 179.3 for ethical aspects of animal care

Housing

Example: cages

Including stockyards

Animal hospitals and auxiliary care of sick and injured animals

Individual tending

Examples: dipping, grooming, shearing

Harnesses and accessories

Feeding

Example: grazing

Class pasture use of forests in 634.99

For feeds and applied nutrition, see 636.085

Feeds and applied nutrition

Applied nutrition

Feeds

For specific feeds, see 636.086–636.087

Green fodder

Silage

Dry fodder

Formula feed

Specific feeds

Class comprehensive works in 636.0855

Specific field crop feeds

Other specific feeds

Fruits

Garden crops

Meat, fish, eggs
Mineral additives

Animals for specific purposes
Class here production, maintenance, training
Class veterinary sciences of animals for specific purposes in 636.089
See Manual at 636.088

Breeding stock

Draft animals (Beasts of burden)
Class comprehensive works on work animals in 636.0886

Food animals
Class animals raised for eggs and milk in 636.08842

Animals raised for special products
For food animals, see 636.0883

For eggs and milk

For hide and fur
For hair, see 636.08845

Hair and feathers
Examples: bristles, wool

Laboratory animals

Work animals
Examples: guarding, herding, hunting
For draft animals, see 636.0882; sport, stunt, exhibition animals, 636.0888

Pets
Class here obedience training
Class reminiscences about and true accounts of a person's pets or favorite animals in 808.883; reminiscences and accounts in a specific literature with the literature using notation 803 from Table 3-B or cognate numbers under the appropriate language; other accounts and stories of pets not intended to illustrate agricultural techniques with the appropriate literary form in 800
See Manual at 800 vs. 591, 636, 398.245

Sport, stunt, exhibition animals
Examples: circus, fighting, racing, show animals
Class comprehensive works on work animals in 636.0886

Zoo animals
Use of this number for animals raised for other purposes discontinued; class in 636.088
For multiple purposes
Number discontinued; class in 636

Zoo animals
Number discontinued; class in 636.0889

Veterinary sciences
Veterinary medicine
Add to base number 636.089 the numbers following 61 in 610–619, e.g., veterinary viral diseases 636.0896925
Class animal hospitals and auxiliary care of sick and injured animals in 636.0832

Equines
Horses
Use 636.1001–636.1009 for standard subdivisions

Ranches and farms, young horses, production and maintenance, horses for specific purposes, veterinary sciences
Add to base number 636.10 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., training horses for sports and exhibition 636.10888; however, class draft horses in 636.15; training of riders and drivers, comprehensive works on training horses and their riders and drivers in 798

636.11–636.17 Specific breeds and kinds of horses
Class comprehensive works in 636.1

Oriental horses
Examples: Barb, Persian, Tartar, Turkish

Arabian horses

Racehorses and trotters
Class a specific breed with the breed, e.g., Thoroughbred 636.132

Saddle (Riding) horses
Examples: American saddle horse, Palomino, Tennessee Walking Horse
For Oriental horses, see 636.11

Thoroughbred

Quarter horse

Carriage horses (Heavy harness horses)
Examples: Cleveland bay, Hackney, Yorkshire coach horse
Class here comprehensive works on harness horses
For draft horses, see 636.15; light harness horses, 636.17
Draft horses
Examples: Belgian, Clydesdale, Percheron, Shire, Suffolk (Suffolk punch)

Ponies
Examples: Hackney, Shetland, Welsh ponies

Ranches and farms, young ponies, production and maintenance, ponies for specific purposes, veterinary sciences
Add to base number 636.161 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., housing 636.161831

Light harness horses
Examples: Morgan, Standardbred

Other equines
Examples: asses, mules; zebras

Ruminants and Tylopoda
Bovines
Cattle
Use 636.2001–636.2009 for standard subdivisions
For smaller ruminants, see 636.3

Ranches and farms, young of animals, production and maintenance, animals for specific purposes, veterinary sciences
Add to base number 636.20 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., heifers 636.207; however, class cattle for specific purposes in 636.21

Cattle for specific purposes
Class here production, maintenance, training
Add to base number 636.21 the numbers following 636.088 in 636.0881–636.0889, e.g., raising cattle for beef 636.213, for milk 636.2142; however, class milking and milk processing in 637.1
Class specific breeds of cattle for specific purposes in 636.22–636.28

636.22–636.28 Specific breeds of cattle
Class comprehensive works in 636.2

British breeds of cattle

English beef breeds
Examples: Hereford, Shorthorn, Sussex

Scottish, Welsh, Irish beef breeds
Examples: Aberdeen Angus, black Welsh, Galloway, Kyloe

Channel Island dairy breeds
Contains Alderney, Guernsey, Jersey
.225 Scottish and Irish dairy breeds
   Examples: Ayrshire, Dexter shorthorn, Kerry

.226 Dual-purpose breeds
   Examples: Devon, English longhorn, Polled Durham

.23 German, Dutch, Danish, Swiss breeds of cattle

.232 Beef breeds

.234 Dairy breeds
   Examples: Brown Swiss, East Friesian, Holstein-Friesian, Oldenburg

.236 Dual-purpose breeds

.24 French and Belgian breeds of cattle

.242 Beef breeds

.244 Dairy breeds

.246 Dual-purpose breeds

.27 Other European breeds of cattle

.28 Non-European breeds of cattle

.29 Other larger ruminants and Tylopoda

.291 Zebus

.292 Bison
   Variant names: American buffalo, buffalo
   See also 636.293 for water buffalo

.293 Other Bovoidea
   Example: water buffalo

.294 Cervoidea and Giraffoidea
   Examples: deer, reindeer

.295 Camels

.296 Tylopoda
   Contains alpacas, llamas, vicuñas
   For camels, see 636.295

.3 Smaller ruminants  Sheep
   Use 636.3001–636.3009 for standard subdivisions
   Class Traguloidea in 636.97355
.301-.308 Ranches and farms, young of animals, production and maintenance, animals for specific purposes, veterinary sciences

Add to base number 636.30 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., sheep ranches 636.301; however, class sheep for specific purposes in 636.31

.31 Sheep for specific purposes

Class here production, maintenance, training

Add to base number 636.31 the numbers following 636.088 in 636.0881–636.0889, e.g., raising sheep for mutton 636.313, for wool 636.3145

Class specific breeds of sheep for specific purposes in 636.32–636.38

> 636.32–636.38 Specific breeds of sheep

Class comprehensive works in 636.3

.32 British breeds of sheep

.33 German, Dutch, Swiss breeds of sheep

.34 French and Belgian breeds of sheep

.35 Italian breeds of sheep

.36 Merino breeds

Class here Spanish breeds of sheep

.366 Spanish Merino breeds

.367 Other European Merino breeds

.368 Non-European Merino breeds

.37 Other European breeds of sheep

.38 Non-European breeds of sheep

For non-European Merino breeds, see 636.368

.381 American breeds

.385 Asian breeds

.386 African breeds

.39 Goats

Use 636.39001–636.39009 for standard subdivisions

.390 1–.390 8 Ranches and farms, young of goats, production and maintenance, goats for specific purposes, veterinary sciences

Add to base number 636.390 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., breeding 636.39082; however, class goats for specific purposes in 636.391
.391  Goats for specific purposes
       Class here production, maintenance, training
       Add to base number 636.391 the numbers following 636.088 in
       636.0881–636.0889, e.g., raising goats for hair 636.39145
       Class specific breeds of goats for specific purposes in 636.392–636.398

.392–.398  Specific breeds of goats
       Add to base number 636.39 the numbers following 636.3 in
       636.32–636.38, e.g., Angora goats 636.3985

.4  Swine
       Use 636.4001–636.4009 for standard subdivisions

.401–.408  Farms, young pigs, production and maintenance, swine for specific
       purposes, veterinary sciences
       Add to base number 636.40 the numbers following 636.0 in
       636.01–636.08, e.g., housing 636.40831; however, class swine for food
       in 636.4, for other specific purposes in 636.41

.41  Swine for specific purposes other than food
       Class here production, maintenance, training
       Add to base number 636.41 the numbers following 636.088 in
       636.0881–636.0889, e.g., swine production for bristles 636.4145; however,
       swine production for food discontinued from 636.413 to 636.4
       Class specific breeds of swine for specific purposes in 636.42–636.48

> 636.42–636.48 Specific breeds of swine
       Class comprehensive works in 636.4

.42–.47  European breeds of swine
       Add to base number 636.4 the numbers following 636.3 in 636.32–636.37,
       e.g., British breeds 636.42

.48  Non-European breeds of swine

.482  Poland China

.483  Duroc
       Variant name: Duroc-Jersey

.484  American breeds
       Examples: Cheshire, Chester White, Hampshire, mule-foot, razorback,
       Victoria
       For Poland China, see 636.482; Duroc, see 636.483

.485  Asian breeds

.486  African breeds

.489  Oceanic breeds
0.5 Poultry Chickens

Class here comprehensive works on raising birds

Use 636.5001–636.5009 for standard subdivisions

For birds other than poultry, see 636.6

0.501–0.508 Farms, young poultry, production and maintenance, poultry for specific purposes, veterinary sciences

Add to base number 636.50 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., chicken breeding 636.5082; however, class poultry for specific purposes in 636.51

0.51 Poultry for specific purposes

Class here production, maintenance, training

Add to base number 636.51 the numbers following 636.08 in 636.0881–636.0889, e.g., raising chickens for meat 636.513, for eggs 636.5142

Class specific breeds of chickens for specific purposes in 636.52–636.58, poultry other than chickens for specific purposes in 636.59

> 636.52–636.58 Specific breeds of chickens

Class comprehensive works in 636.5

0.52–0.57 European breeds of chickens

Add to base number 636.5 the numbers following 636.3 in 636.32–636.37, e.g., Leghorn chickens 636.55

Class diminutive varieties in 636.587

0.58 Non-European breeds and special varieties of chickens

> 636.581–636.584 American breeds

Class comprehensive works in 636.58, diminutive varieties in 636.587

0.581 Bucks County, Dominique, Java, Jersey Blue, Winnebago

0.582 Plymouth Rock

0.583 Wyandotte

0.584 Rhode Island Red

0.585 Asian breeds

Class diminutive varieties in 636.587

0.587 Diminutive varieties

0.587 1 Bantam
.587 2 Cornish
.59 Other poultry
.592 Turkeys

Use 636.592001–636.592009 for standard subdivisions

.592 01–.592 08 Farms, young turkeys, production and maintenance, turkeys for specific purposes, veterinary sciences

Add to base number 636.5920 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., raising turkeys for meat 636.5920883

.593 Guinea fowl
.594 Pheasants
.595 Peafowl
.596 Pigeons
.597 Ducks
.598 Geese

.6 Birds other than poultry

Class comprehensive works on birds in 636.5

.61 Birds raised for feathers
.63 Game birds
.68 Song and ornamental birds

Examples: mynas, toucans

For peafowl, see 636.595

.681 Swans
.686 Finches, parrots, hawks

Use of this number for comprehensive works on cage and aviary birds discontinued; class in 636.68

.686 2 Finches

Example: canaries

.686 4 Budgerigars

Variant names: lovebirds; grass, shell parrakeets

Class comprehensive works on parrakeets in 636.6865

.686 5 Parrots

Examples: cockatoos, lories, macaws

Class here comprehensive works on parrakeets

For budgerigars, see 636.6864
.686 9 Hawks

Use of this number for other cage and aviary birds discontinued; class in 636.68

.7 Dogs

.700 1 Philosophy and theory

.700 2 Miscellany

.700 22 Illustrations, models, miniatures [all formerly 636.77]

.700 3-.700 9 Standard subdivisions

.701-.708 Puppies, production and maintenance, dogs for specific purposes, veterinary sciences

Add to base number 636.70 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01-636.08, e.g., housing 636.70831

.71 Breeds

For specific breeds, see 636.72-636.76

> 636.72-636.76 Specific breeds and groups of dogs

Class comprehensive works in 636.71, the toy of any breed in 636.76

See Manual at 636.72-636.76

.72 Nonsporting dogs

Variant name: utility group

Contains Bichon Frise, Boston terrier, bulldog, Chinese Shar-Pei, chow chow, Dalmatian, French bulldog, Keeshond, Lhasa apso, poodle (miniature and standard), Schipperke, Tibetan spaniel, Tibetan terrier

Class comprehensive works on terriers in 636.755

.73 Working and herding dogs

Contains Akita, Alaskan malamute, Bernese mountain dog, boxer, bull mastiff, Doberman pinscher, Great Dane, Great Pyrenees, Komondor, Kuvasz, mastiff, Newfoundland, Portuguese water dog, Rottweiler, Saint Bernard, Samoyed, schnauzer (standard and giant), Siberian husky

Class miniature schnauzer in 636.755; miniature pinscher in 636.76

.737 Herding dogs

Contains Australian cattle dog, bearded collie, Belgian malinois, Belgian tervuren, bouvier des Flandres, briard, collie, German shepherd (German police dog), puli, Welsh corgi; named breeds of sheepdogs

.75 Sporting dogs, hounds, terriers

.752 Sporting dogs

Contains Brittany vizsla, Weimaraner, wirehaired pointing griffon; named breeds of pointers, retrievers, setters, spaniels

279
.753  Hounds
Contains Basenji, beagle, Borzoi, dachshund, harrier, Rhodesian ridgeback, saluki, whippet; named breeds of hounds

.755  Terriers
Including miniature Schnauzer
Class Boston and Tibetan terriers in 636.72, toy terriers in 636.76

.76  Toy dogs
Contains Affenpinscher, Brussels griffon, Chihuahua, English toy spaniel, Italian greyhound, Japanese chin, Maltese, Mexican Hairless (Xoloitzcuintli), miniature pinscher, Papillon, Pekingese, Pomeranian, pug, Shih Tzu, silky terrier, toy Manchester terrier, toy poodle, Yorkshire terrier
Class miniature poodle in 636.72; miniature schnauzer in 636.755

[.77]  Illustrations, models, miniatures
Relocated to 636.70022

.8  Cats
.800 1  Philosophy and theory
.800 2  Miscellany
.800 22  Illustrations, models, miniatures [all formerly 636.87]
.800 3–.800 9  Standard subdivisions
.801–.808  Kittens, production and maintenance, cats for specific purposes, veterinary sciences
Add to base number 636.80 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., breeding cats 636.8082; however, use 636.8 for pet cats

>  636.82–636.83 Domestic cats
Class comprehensive works in 636.8

.82  Short-haired domestic cats
.822  Common short-haired cats
.823  Manx cat
.825  Asian short-haired cats
Examples: Burmese, Siamese
.826  Other short-haired cats
Examples: Abyssinian, Russian blue
.83  Long-haired domestic cats
Examples: Angora (coon cat), chinchilla, Himalayan, Persian
Illustrations, models, miniatures
Relocated to 636.80022

Nondomestic cats
Examples: cheetahs, ocelots

Other mammals

Monotremes and marsupials

Placental mammals
Add to base number 636.9 the numbers following 599 in 599.3–599.8, e.g., elephants 636.961; however, class Equidae in 636.1, Ruminantia (except Traguloidea) in 636.2, Tylopoda in 636.296, Felidae in 636.8

Processing dairy and related products
Class comprehensive works on dairy farming in 636.2142

SUMMARY

Milking and milk processing
Butter processing
Cheese processing
Manufacture of frozen desserts
Egg processing

Milking and milk processing

Cows’ milk
Class comprehensive works in 637.1
Milking and inspection of cows’ milk
Milking
Auxiliary techniques, procedures; materials
Class milking machinery and equipment in 637.125
Milking machinery and equipment
Testing [formerly also 637.1410287] and inspection
Former heading: Quality and purity determinations
Butterfat tests
Bacterial counts
Processing of cows’ milk
Relocated to 637.14
Processing [formerly 637.13] and forms of cows’ milk
> 637.141–637.146 Whole milk
   Class comprehensive works in 637.14

.141 Fresh whole milk
   Including comprehensive works on pasteurization, homogenization, vitamin D treatment
   Class pasteurization, homogenization, vitamin D treatment of products other than fresh whole milk with the product, e.g., of cream 637.148

.141 028 7 Measurement
   Testing relocated to 637.127

.142 Concentrated liquid forms of whole milk

.142 2 Evaporated milk

[.142 3] Plain condensed milk
   Number discontinued; class in 637.142

.142 4 Sweetened condensed milk

.143 Dried whole milk

.146 Cultured whole milk

.147 Skim milk

[.147 1–.147 2] Fresh and concentrated skim milk
   Numbers discontinued; class in 637.147

.147 3 Dried skim milk

.147 6 Cultured skim milk
   Class here yogurt

.148 Cream

.17 Milk other than cows’ milk

.2 Butter processing

.22 Quality determinations

[.23] Processing
   Number discontinued; class in 637.2

.24 By-products
   Class here buttermilk

.3 Cheese processing
   Including by-products

.32 Quality determinations
[.33] Processing
   Number discontinued; class in 637.3

.35 Varieties
  .352 Cream cheese
  .353 Ripened soft cheeses
      Examples: Brie, Camembert, Gorgonzola, Limburger, Neufchâtel
  .354 Hard cheeses
      Examples: cheddar, Parmesan, Swiss
  .356 Sour milk cheeses
      Example: cottage cheese

.358 Cheese foods

.4 Manufacture of frozen desserts
  Examples: ice cream, frozen custards, sherbets

.5 Egg processing
  Class raising hens for eggs in 636.5142, other poultry for eggs in 636.59
  .54 Chicken eggs
      .541 Fresh eggs
      .543 Dried whole eggs
      .547 Dried egg whites
      .548 Dried egg yolks
  .59 Other kinds of eggs
      Add to base number 637.59 the numbers following 636.59 in 636.592-636.598, e.g., duck eggs 637.597

638 Insect culture

.1 Bee keeping (Apiculture)
  .11 Apiary establishment
  .12 Varieties of bees
      Class a specific aspect of a specific variety of bee with the aspect, e.g., apiary establishment 638.11
  .13 Pasturage for bees
  .14 Hive management
  .140 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures
      Class apparatus, equipment, materials in 638.142
.142 Equipment and supplies
   Examples: hive sections, hives, protective equipment, smokers

.144 Supplementary feeding of bees

.145 Queen rearing

.146 Swarming control

.15 Injuries, diseases, pests

.16 Honey processing
   Class here comprehensive works on hive products
   
   *For wax, see 638.1*

.17 Wax

.2 Silkworms

.3 Resin- and dye-producing insects

.5 Other insects

.57 Specific insects
   Add to base number 638.57 the numbers following 595.7 in 595.71–595.79, e.g., praying mantises 638.5725

639 Hunting, fishing, conservation, related technologies

Class sport hunting and fishing in 799

**SUMMARY**

639.01-.09 Standard subdivisions

.1 Hunting and trapping

.2 Commercial fishing, whaling, sealing

.3 Culture of cold-blooded vertebrates

.4 Culture and harvest of mollusks

.5 Culture and harvest of crustaceans

.7 Culture and harvest of other invertebrates

.8 Aquiculture

.9 Conservation of biological resources

.029 Commercial miscellany [*formerly also* 380.143029, 380.1431029, 381.43029, 381.431.029, 382.43029, 382.431029]

.091 6 Treatment in air and water
   
   *Aquiculture relocated to 639.8*

.091 62 Treatment in oceans and seas
   
   *Mariculture relocated to 639.8*

.1 Hunting and trapping
.11 Fur-bearing and other mammals
Add to base number 639.11 the numbers following 599 in 599.1–599.8, e.g.,
deer hunting and trapping 639.117357
For whaling, see 639.28; sealing, 639.29
See also 636.08844 for fur farming

.12 Birds

> 639.122–639.124 Of specific habitats
Class comprehensive works in 639.12, specific kinds of birds regardless of
habitat in 639.128

.122 Land birds

.123 Shore birds

.124 Waterfowl

.128 Specific kinds
Add to base number 639.128 the numbers following 598 in 598.3–598.9,
e.g., pheasants 639.128617

.13 Amphibians

.14 Reptiles
Add to base number 639.14 the numbers following 597.9 in 597.92–597.98,
e.g., hunting alligators 639.148

.2 Commercial fishing, whaling, sealing
Class here works on fisheries encompassing culture as well as capture, on
fisheries encompassing invertebrates as well as fish
Class culture of fish in 639.3, fisheries for invertebrates in 639.4
See also 639.8 for aquiculture, 799.1 for sport fishing

[.200 1–.200 9] Standard subdivisions of commercial fishing, whaling, sealing
Relocated to 639.201–639.209

.201–.209 Standard subdivisions of commercial fishing, whaling, sealing
[formerly 639.2001–639.2009]; of commercial fishing

> 639.21–639.22 Fishing in specific types of water
Class comprehensive works in 639.2, fishing for specific kinds of fish regardless
of kind of water in 639.27

.21 Fishing in fresh water

.22 Fishing in salt and brackish waters
.27 Fishing for specific kinds of fish

Add to base number 639.27 the numbers following 597 in 597.2–597.5, e.g., salmon fishing 639.2755

.28 Whaling

.29 Sealing

.3 Culture of cold-blooded vertebrates Of fish

[.300 1–.300 9] Standard subdivisions of culture of cold-blooded vertebrates

Relocated to 639.01–639.09

.301–.309 Standard subdivisions of culture of cold-blooded vertebrates [formerly 639.3001–639.3009], of fish

> 639.31–639.34 Fish culture

Class comprehensive works in 639.3

For culture of specific kinds of fish, see 639.372–639.375

.31 Fish culture in fresh water

Class culture in freshwater aquariums in 639.344

.311 In natural and artificial ponds

Including fish hatcheries

.312 In lakes

.313 In rivers and other streams

.32 Fish culture in salt and brackish waters

Class culture in marine aquariums in 639.342

.34 Fish culture in aquariums

.342 Marine aquariums

.344 Freshwater aquariums

.37 Culture of amphibians and specific kinds of fish

.372–.375 Culture of specific kinds of fish

Add to base number 639.37 the numbers following 597 in 597.2–597.5, e.g., trout hatcheries 639.3755

.376–.378 Amphibians

Add to base number 639.37 the numbers following 597 in 597.6–597.8, e.g., frog farming 639.3789

Class comprehensive works in 639.376
Agriculture and related technologies

.39 Reptiles
Add to base number 639.39 the numbers following 597.9 in 597.92–597.98, e.g., snake farming 639.396

.4 Culture and harvest of mollusks
Class here comprehensive works on culture and harvest of invertebrates
For culture and harvest of crustaceans, see 639.5; of other invertebrates, 639.7

.41 Oysters

[.411] Edible oysters
Number discontinued; class in 639.41

.42 Pearl oysters

.44 Clams

.48 Other mollusks
Add to base number 639.48 the numbers following 594 in 594.1–594.5, e.g., squid 639.4858

.5 Culture and harvest of crustaceans

.54 Specific crustaceans
Add to base number 639.54 the numbers following 595.384 in 595.3841–595.3844, e.g., lobsters 639.541
Use of this number for comprehensive works on edible crustaceans discontinued; class in 639.5

.7 Culture and harvest of other invertebrates
For insect culture, see 638

.73 Protozoa, Parazoa, Coelenterata, Echinodermata and related phyla
Add to base number 639.73 the numbers following 593 in 593.1–593.9, e.g., sponges 639.734

.75 Worms
Add to base number 639.75 the numbers following 595.1 in 595.12–595.18, e.g., earthworms 639.7546

.8 Aquiculture [formerly 639.0916]
Class here mariculture [formerly 639.09162]
Class aquiculture of specific animal with the animal, e.g., of oysters 639.41

.89 Of plants
.9 Conservation of biological resources
   Class here game keeping, wildlife conservation
   Class interdisciplinary works on conservation of biological resources in 333.9516

> 639.92–639.96 Conservation of animals
   Class comprehensive works in 639.9, conservation of specific kinds of animals in 639.97
   .92 Habitat improvement for animals
   .93 Animal species population control
   .95 Reserves and refuge areas for animals
   .96 Control of injuries, diseases, predators of animals
   .97 Specific kinds of animals
      Add to base number 639.97 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g.,
      protective measures for birds 639.978
   .99 Plant conservation

640 Home economics and family living
   Class here management of home and personal life, domestic arts and sciences
   Class personal health in 613

SUMMARY

640.1–.9 [Standard subdivisions and specific aspects of household management]
641 Food and drink
642 Meals and table service
643 Housing and household equipment
644 Household utilities
645 Household furnishings
646 Sewing, clothing, management of personal and family living
647 Management of public households (Institutional housekeeping)
648 Housekeeping
649 Child rearing and home care of sick and infirm

.202 Synopses and outlines
   Use of this number for manuals discontinued; class in 640
   Helpful hints and miscellaneous recipes relocated to 640.41

[.288] Maintenance and repair
   Do not use; class in 643.7

[.297] Evaluation and purchasing manuals
   Do not use; class in 640.73
.4 Specific aspects of household management [formerly also 640.68]

Class comprehensive works on household management in 640

.41 Helpful hints and miscellaneous recipes [formerly 640.202]

.42 Management of money

Including records of household expenditures
Class here accounting, budgeting, expenditure control
Class evaluation and purchasing guides in 640.73

See Manual at 332.024 vs. 640.42

.43 Management of time and energy

.46 Household employees

Duties, hours, selection, training
Class management of institutional household employees in 647.2

.49 Survival housekeeping

Housekeeping in presence of unfavorable circumstances and provisioning in anticipation of disaster, e.g., threat of nuclear attack
Class personal survival after accidents, disasters, other unfavorable circumstances in 613.69

[.68] Household management

Use of this number for comprehensive works on household management discontinued; class in 640
Specific aspects of household management relocated to 640.4

.71 Schools and courses

[.714] Adult education

Relocated to 640.715

.715 Adult education [formerly 640.714]

.73 Evaluation and purchasing guides

Class here consumer education for home and personal needs
Class interdisciplinary evaluation and purchasing guides and works on consumer education in 381.33; comprehensive works on managing household money in 640.42; evaluation and purchasing guides for specific products and services with the subject, using notation 0297 from Table 1, e.g., manual on evaluating automobiles 629.2220297
641 Food and drink

For meals and table service, see 642

SUMMARY

641.01 Philosophy and theory
.1 Applied nutrition
.2 Beverages (Drinks)
.3 Food
.4 Food preservation and storage
.5 Cooking
.6 Cooking specific materials
.7 Specific cooking processes and techniques
.8 Cooking specific kinds of composite dishes

.01 Philosophy and theory

.013 Gastronomy and pleasures of eating

.1 Applied nutrition

Class nutrition in the promotion of health in 613.2; nutritive values of beverages 641.2, of specific foods in 641.33–641.39

.104 Special topics

.104 2 Calories

Including calorie counters

.12 Proteins

.13 Carbohydrates

.14 Fats and oils

.16 Water

.17 Minerals

.18 Vitamins

.2 Beverages (Drinks)

Class here interdisciplinary works on production, manufacture, preservation, preparation, use

Class a specific aspect with the subject, e.g., manufacture (commercial preparation) 663

.21 Alcoholic beverages

For wine, see 641.22; brewed and malted beverages, 641.23; distilled liquor, 641.25
.22 Wine

Class here grape wine

See also 641.23 for sake (rice wine)

.222 Specific kinds of grape wine

Add to base number 641.222 the numbers following 663.22 in 663.222–663.224, e.g., champagne 641.2224

Use of this number for comprehensive works on grape wine discontinued; class in 641.22

.229 Nongrape wine

Example: cider

.23 Brewed and malted beverages

Examples: pulque, sake

Class here ale, beer

Class malt whiskey in 641.252

.25 Distilled liquor

Examples: mescal, tequila, potato whiskey, vodka

.252 Whiskey

Use 641.25 for potato whiskey

.253 Brandy

.255 Compound liquors

Examples: absinthe, cordials, gin, liqueurs

.259 Rum

Use of this number for other distilled liquor discontinued; class in 641.25

.26 Nonalcoholic beverages

Class specific nonalcoholic beverages and kinds of beverages in 641.3

.3 Food

Class here interdisciplinary works on food

Use of this number for comprehensive works on food and beverages discontinued; class in 641

Class interdisciplinary works on composite dishes in 641.8; a specific aspect with the subject, e.g., manufacture (commercial preparation) 664

See Manual at 580–590 vs. 630, 641.3; 613.2 vs. 641.3, 363.8

.300 1 Philosophy and theory

.300 2 Miscellany

[.300 297] Evaluation and purchasing manuals

Do not use; class in 641.31
.300 3-.300 9 Standard subdivisions
.302 Health foods
  Including organically grown foods

> 641.303–641.309 Classes of food by origin
  Class comprehensive works in 641.3
  .303 Food from vegetables
  .306 Food from animals
  .309 Mineral food
  .31 Evaluation and purchasing manuals
  Class applied nutrition in 641.1, evaluation and purchasing manuals of
  specific food in 641.33–641.39
  .33–.37 Food derived from plant crops and domesticated animals
  Add to base number 641.3 the numbers following 63 in 633–637, e.g.,
  flavorings 641.3382, legumes 641.3565, meat 641.36, chicken meat 641.365
  Do not use 641.333 for legumes
  For honey, see 641.38
  .38 Honey
  .39 Game and seafood
  Add to base number 641.39 the numbers following 641.69 in
  641.691–641.696, e.g., oysters 641.394
  Use of this number for other foods discontinued; class in 641.3

> 641.4–641.8 Food preservation, storage, cooking
  Class comprehensive works in 641.3
  .4 Food preservation and storage
  Class comprehensive works on food preservation in 664.028

> 641.41–641.47 Preservation techniques for fruit and vegetables, for food
  as a whole
  Class comprehensive works in 641.4, preservation techniques for meat and
  allied foods in 641.49
  .41 Preliminary treatment
  .42 Canning
  .44 Drying and dehydrating
  Including freeze-drying

292
Low-temperature techniques

Cold storage

Deep freezing

*For freeze-drying, see 641.44*

Brining, pickling, smoking

Use of additives

Storage

Meat and allied food

Class storage of meat and allied food in 641.48

Red meat

Add to base number 641.492 the numbers following 641.4 in 641.41–641.47, e.g., canning red meat 641.4922

Poultry

Add to base number 641.493 the numbers following 641.4 in 641.41–641.47, e.g., freezing poultry 641.49353

Seafood

Add to base number 641.494 the numbers following 641.4 in 641.42–641.47, e.g., brining seafood 641.4946

Other animal flesh

Examples: frogs, turtles, snails, insects

Cooking

Preparation of food with and without use of heat

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of precedence, e.g., outdoor cooking for children 641.5622 *(not 641.578)*

- For special situations, reasons, ages 641.56
- Quantity, institutional, travel, outdoor cooking 641.57
- Money-saving and timesaving cooking 641.55
- With specific appliances, utensils, fuels 641.58
- For specific meals 641.52–54
- By specific types of persons 641.51
- Characteristic of specific geographical environments, ethnic cooking 641.59

Class menus and meal planning in 642

*For cooking specific materials, see 641.6; specific cooking processes and techniques, 641.7; cooking of composite dishes, 641.8*
SUMMARY

641.501-.509 Standard subdivisions
   .51 Cooking by specific types of persons
   .52 Breakfast
   .53 Cooking luncheon, brunch, elevenses, tea, supper, snacks
   .54 Dinner
   .55 Money-saving and timesaving cooking
   .56 Cooking for special situations, reasons, ages
   .57 Quantity, institutional, travel, outdoor cooking
   .58 Cooking with specific fuels, appliances, utensils
   .59 Cooking characteristic of specific geographical environments, ethnic cooking

[.502 4] Works for specific types of users
   Do not use; class in 641.51

.508 3-.508 4 Persons of specific ages
   Class cooking for persons of specific ages in 641.562

.508 7 Handicapped and gifted persons
   Class cooking for sick persons in 641.5631

[.508 82] Cooking with respect to religious groups
   Relocated to 641.567

.509 Historical, geographical, persons treatment
   Class here collections of recipes from specific restaurants
   Class cooking characteristic of specific geographical environments in 641.59

.51 Cooking by specific types of persons

.512 Beginner cooking
   Easy dishes

.512 3 Children’s cooking
   Class cooking of food for consumption by children in 641.5622

.514 Gourmet cooking

> 641.52–641.54 Cooking specific meals
   Class comprehensive works in 641.5

   .52 Breakfast

   .53 Cooking luncheon, brunch, elevenses, tea, supper, snacks

   .54 Dinner

   .55 Money-saving and timesaving cooking
Money-saving cooking  
Including leftovers

Timesaving cooking  
Class here make-ahead meals

Cooking for special situations, reasons, ages

For one or two persons

For persons of specific ages  
For infants and children  
Class cooking to be performed by children in 641.5123

For persons in late adulthood

For health, appearance, personal reasons

Including cooking for pregnant women

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the number coming first in the schedule, e.g., low-carbohydrate, low-calorie cooking for persons with diabetes 641.56314 (not 641.5635 or 641.5638)

For sick persons  
Class cooking for overweight persons in 641.5635

For persons with heart disease

For persons with diabetes

Cooking with specified vitamin and mineral content

Example: salt-free cooking

High-calorie cooking

Low-calorie cooking  
Class here cooking for overweight persons

Vegetarian cooking  
See also 641.65 for cooking vegetables

Health-food cooking  
Use 641.563 for comprehensive works on health cooking

Carbohydrate, fat, protein cooking  
Including low-carbohydrate, low-fat

For various specific times of year  
Class here seasonal cooking  
Class cooking for special occasions in 641.568
.566 For Christian church limitations and observances
   Examples: Christmas, Lent
   Class here cooking for Christian groups

.567 For religious limitations and observances
   Class here cooking with respect to religious groups [formerly 641.50882], cooking for days of feast and fast
   Add to base number 641.567 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g.,
   Jewish cooking 641.5676

   *For cooking for Christian church limitations and observances, see 641.566*

.568 For special occasions
   Examples: holidays, birthdays, parties, celebrations
   Class cooking for special religious occasions in 641.567

.57 Quantity, institutional, travel, outdoor cooking
   Example: cooking for armed services
   Class here short-order cooking

.571 For schools

.572 For hotels and restaurants

 [.573] For armed services
   Number discontinued; class in 641.57

.575 For travel
   Including airline, bus, camper (caravan) cooking

   *For cooking for railroad dining cars, see 641.576*

 [.575 2] For motor buses
   Number discontinued; class in 641.575

.575 3 For ships

 [.575 4] For airlines
   Number discontinued; class in 641.575

.576 For railroad dining cars

.577 For canteens
   Temporary or mobile facilities for serving food

.578 Outdoor cooking
   Class here cookouts
   Class cooking in campers (caravans) in 641.575

.578 2 Camp cooking
.578 4 Cooking at an outdoor grill
   Class here cooking at outdoor barbecues
   Class comprehensive works on techniques of barbecuing in 641.76

.579 For hospitals and other medical facilities

.58 Cooking with specific fuels, appliances, utensils
   Examples: convection-oven cooking, wood-stove cooking
   Class outdoor cooking in 641.578

.583 With oil

.584 With gas

.585 With alcohol-based fuels

.586 With electricity
   Cooking with electric ranges and appliances, e.g., skillets, frying pans, roasters, grills, toasters, waffle irons
   Class convection-oven cooking in 641.58, microwave cooking in 641.5882, electric slow cooking in 641.5884

.587 With steam and pressure

.588 Slow and fireless cooking
   .588 2 Microwave cooking
   .588 4 Electric slow cooking

.589 With specific utensils
   Examples: foils, specially coated utensils, blenders
   Class cooking with specific utensils using specific fuels in 641.583–641.588

.59 Cooking characteristic of specific geographical environments, ethnic cooking
   Including international cooking
   Class historical and geographical treatment of general cooking in 641.509
   See also 641.509 for collections of recipes from specific restaurants

.591 Cooking characteristic of areas, regions, places in general
   Add to base number 641.591 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., arctic and cold-weather cooking 641.5911, tropical and hot-weather cooking 641.5913

.592 Ethnic cooking
   Add to base number 641.592 notation 03–9 from Table 5, e.g., Afro-American cooking 641.59296073; however, class Jewish cooking in 641.5676; cooking of ethnic groups dominant in their areas in 641.593–641.599
.593-.599 Cooking characteristic of specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 641.59 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Southern cooking 641.5975

Class ethnic cooking of nondominant aggregates in 641.592

.6 Cooking specific materials

Class specific kinds of composite dishes featuring specific materials in 641.8

.61 Cooking preserved foods

Add to base number 641.61 the numbers following 641.4 in 641.42–641.46, e.g., cooking using frozen foods 641.6153

Class home preservation in 641.4, cooking using specific preserved foods in 641.63–641.69

.62 Cooking with beverages

Class home preparation of beverages in 641.87; cooking with a specific nonalcoholic beverage with the product from which it is derived, e.g., with chocolate 641.6374, with apple juice 641.641

.622 Wine

.623 Beer and ale

.625 Spirits

> 641.63–641.69 Specific food

Class comprehensive works in 641.6

.63-.67 Cooking food derived from plant crops and domesticated animals

Add to base number 641.6 the numbers following 63 in 633–637, e.g., flavorings 641.6382, legumes 641.6565, meat 641.66, chicken meat 641.665; however, class ices and sherbets in 641.863

Do not use 641.633 for legumes

Class comprehensive works on cooking with beverages in 641.62, vegetarian cooking in 641.5636

For cooking with honey, see 641.68

.68 Cooking with honey

.69 Cooking game and seafood

Use of this number for cooking other foods discontinued; class in 641.6

.691 Game

.692 Fish

Class here seafood

For mollusks, see 641.694; crustaceans, 641.695
.694 Mollusks
   Examples: clams, mussels, octopuses, oysters, snails, squid
   Class here shellfish
   *For crustaceans, see 641.695*

.695 Crustaceans
   Examples: crabs, lobsters, shrimp

.696 Reptiles, amphibians, insects
   Examples: frogs, snakes, turtles

.7 **Specific cooking processes and techniques**
   Class specific processes applied to specific materials in 641.6, to specific kinds of composite dishes in 641.8

.71 Baking and roasting

.73 Boiling, simmering, stewing, steaming

.76 Broiling, grilling, barbecuing
   Class here comprehensive works on techniques of barbecuing
   Class cooking at outdoor grills in 641.5784

.77 Frying, sautéing, braising

.79 Preparation of cold dishes
   Including chilled dishes

.8 **Cooking specific kinds of composite dishes**
   Class here interdisciplinary works on composite dishes

.81 Side dishes and sauces
   Other than those listed in 641.83–641.86
   Including fondues, garnishes

.812 Appetizers, hors d’oeuvres, pâtés, relishes, savories

.813 Soups

.814 Sauces and salad dressings

.815 Breads and bread-like foods
   Examples: biscuits (United States), crackers, crepes, hot cakes, pancakes, rolls, waffles
   Class main dishes based on breads and bread-like foods in 641.82, sandwiches in 641.84, pastries in 641.865
641 Dewey Decimal Classification

.82 Main dishes
    Examples: quiche, soufflé

.821 Casserole dishes

.822 Pasta dishes

.823 Stews

.824 Meat and cheese pies
    Including pizza, meat loaf
    Class cooking sausage in 641.66

.83 Salads

.84 Sandwiches
    Example: submarine sandwiches

.85 Preserves and candy

.852 Jam, jelly, marmalade

.853 Candy
    Variant name: sweets (United Kingdom)

.86 Desserts
    Class here comprehensive works on sweets (United States)
    For preserves and candy, see 641.85

.862 Ice cream and ice milk

.863 Ices and sherbet
    Variant name: water ices

.864 Puddings and gelatins

.865 Pastries

.865 2 Pies and tarts

.865 3 Cakes
    Including cake decoration
    See also 641.8659 for coffee cakes

.865 4 Cookies
    Variant name: biscuits (United Kingdom)

.865 9 Danish, French, related pastries
    Examples: coffee cakes, cream puffs, éclairs

.87 Beverages
    Class interdisciplinary works on beverages in 641.2

.872 Wine
.873 Alcoholic brewed beverages
   Class here beer and ale

.874 Alcoholic beverages
   Including bartenders’ manuals
   Class here comprehensive works on mixed drinks
   Class bottled and canned mixed drinks in 663.1
   For wine, see 641.872; alcoholic brewed beverages, 641.873

.875 Nonalcoholic beverages
   Examples: carbonated and malted drinks, juices, punches
   For nonalcoholic brewed beverages, see 641.877

.877 Nonalcoholic brewed beverages
   Examples: cocoa, coffee, teas
   Including concentrates and substitutes

642 **Meals and table service**

> 642.1–642.5 Meals in specific situations
   Class here comprehensive works on meals and table services in specific situations
   Class comprehensive works in 642, table service in 642.6

.1 Meals for home and family
   Including TV dinners

.3 Meals for camp, picnic, travel

.4 Meals for social and public occasions
   Including banquets, box lunches, catered meals
   Class here meals and catering for social and public occasions
   Class picnics in 642.3, catering which includes restaurant operation in 647.95

.5 Meals in public and institutional eating places
   Examples: in cafeterias, hospitals, schools
   Class here meals in restaurants and hotels
   Class meals for social and public occasions in 642.4, operation of public eating places in 647.95
642.6–642.8 Table service
Class here table service in specific situations
Class comprehensive works in 642.6, comprehensive works on meals and table services in specific situations in 641.1–642.5

.6 Serving at table
Examples: place setting, seating guests, carving
Class here comprehensive works on table service

For table furnishings, see 642.7, for table decorations, see 642.8

.7 Table furnishings
Examples: dinnerware, glassware, silverware, table linens

For table decorations, see 642.8

.8 Table decorations

643 Housing and household equipment
Works for owner-occupants or renters covering activities of members of household

[.028 8] Maintenance and repair
Do not use; class in 643.7

.1 Housing

For special kinds of housing, see 643.2
See also 728 for comprehensive works on design and construction of houses, 690.8 for construction of houses

See Manual at 643.1 vs. 363.5

[.102 88] Maintenance and repair
Do not use; class in 643.7

[.102 97] Evaluation and purchasing manuals
Do not use; class in 643.12

.12 Selecting, renting, buying homes
Including site selection, supervision of construction
Class here evaluation and purchasing guides
Class moving in 648.9

See also 333.338 for economics of home acquisition, 346.043 for law of real property

.16 Household security
Example: burglarproofing
.2 Special kinds of housing

Examples: apartments, condominiums, mobile homes, modular and prefabricated houses, vacation homes

Class single-family houses in 643.1; a specific aspect of a special kind of housing with the subject, e.g., renovating vacation homes 643.7

See Manual at 629.226 vs. 643.2, 690.879, 728.79

> 643.3–643.5 Specific areas and their equipment

Class comprehensive works in 643.1; household utilities in 644, household furnishings in 645; home construction of household articles made of fabric in 646.21; home workshops in 684.08; manufacture of household appliances in 683.8, of household furnishings in 684

.3 Kitchens and their equipment

Including kitchen linen

Class use of food storage and preparation equipment in 641.4–641.8, dishwashing equipment in 648.56

.4 Eating and drinking areas and their equipment

Examples: dining rooms, breakfast rooms, bars

Class table furnishings in 642.7

.5 Other areas and their equipment

Examples: attics, basements, other storage areas

.52 Bathrooms

.53 Bedrooms

Including bedclothing, e.g., blankets

.54 Living rooms

.55 Recreation areas

Indoor and outdoor

Examples: patios, porches, swimming pools

.58 Study and work areas

Example: dens

.6 Appliances and laborsaving installations

Class here maintenance and repair by members of household

Class appliances and installations for specific areas in 643.3–643.5, for a specific purpose with the purpose, e.g., sewing machines 646.2044
643

Dewey Decimal Classification

[.604] Special topics

Number discontinued; class in 643.6

Appliances and laborsaving installations for handicapped persons relocated to 643.6087

.608 7 Handicapped [formerly 643.604], ill, gifted persons

.7 Renovation, improvement, remodeling

Class here comprehensive works on maintenance and repair in home economics, on maintenance and repair by members of household

Class renovation, improvement, remodeling of specific areas and their equipment in 643.3–643.5; maintenance and repair of a specific topic in home economics with the topic using notation 0288 from Table 1, e.g., of appliances 643.60288

See Manual at 643.7 vs. 690

644 Household utilities

Works for owner-occupants or renters covering activities by members of household

See Manual at 647.96–647.99 vs. 658.2, TI—0682

.1 Heating

.3 Lighting

Class lighting fixtures as furnishings in 645.5

.5 Ventilation and air conditioning

.6 Water supply

645 Household furnishings

Works for owner-occupants or renters covering activities by members of household

Class here comprehensive works on household furnishings and interior decoration of residential buildings

Interior decoration of residential buildings relocated to 747

Class home construction of fabric furnishings in 646.21, construction in wood and metal in 684

[.029 7] Evaluation and purchasing manuals

Do not use; class in 645.042

.04 Special topics

.042 Evaluation and purchasing manuals

Class selection and purchase of fabrics for furnishings in 645.046, evaluation and purchasing manuals for specific kinds of furnishings with the kind, using notation 0297 from Table 1, e.g., for lighting fixtures 645.50297

304
645 Home economics and family living

.046 Fabrics
Description, selection, purchase, care, use

> 645.1–645.6 Interior furnishings
Class comprehensive works in 645

> 645.1–645.5 Specific kinds of interior furnishings
Class comprehensive works in 645

.1 Floor covering
Examples: carpeting, rugs, linoleum

.2 Covering for walls and ceilings
Examples: hangings, paint, paneling, wallpaper

.3 Curtains and related furnishings
Examples: draperies, shades, blinds, their accessories
Class wall hangings in 645.2

.4 Furniture and accessories
Including upholstery, slipcovers; arrangement for convenience and efficiency
Class artistic aspects of furniture and accessories in 749

.5 Lighting fixtures

.6 Furnishings for specific rooms
Class interior furnishings of specific kinds regardless of room in 645.1–645.5

.8 Outdoor furnishings
Examples: furnishings for gardens, patios, courts, balconies, roofs

646 Sewing, clothing, management of personal and family living

SUMMARY

646.1 Sewing materials and equipment
.2 Sewing and related operations
.3 Clothing and accessories
.4 Clothing and accessories construction
.5 Construction of headgear
.6 Care of clothing and accessories
.7 Management of personal and family living Grooming

305
Sewing materials and equipment

General aspects: description, selection, purchase, care
Including leathers and furs
Materials, equipment used for clothing relocated to 646.3028

Fabrics

Class here comprehensive works on fabrics in the home
Class fabrics for a specific use with the use, e.g., use in furnishings 645.046

Sewing equipment, fasteners

Examples: needles, pins, scissors and shears, thimbles, thread
Class here notions
Class sewing machines in 646.2044

Sewing and related operations

Class here mending, sewing of specific articles for the home
Class clothing construction in 646.4, mending of clothing in 646.6
For knitting, crocheting, tatting, see 746.43; embroidery, 746.44

Auxiliary techniques and procedures

Class sewing apparatus, equipment, materials in 646.1, sewing machines in 646.2044

Basic sewing operations

Class here darning

Sewing by hand

Sewing by machine

Construction of home furnishings

Examples: making hangings, curtains, slipcovers, table linen, towels, bedclothes
Class basic sewing operations in 646.204, artistic and decorative aspects of construction of interior furnishings in 746.9

Reweaving

Clothing and accessories

Description, selection, purchase of clothing and accessories for utility, quality, economy, appearance, style
Class interdisciplinary works on clothing and accessories in 391
For clothing and accessories construction, see 646.4; care of clothing and accessories, 646.6
See Manual at 391 vs. 646.3, 746.92
.302 8 Materials, equipment [both formerly 646.1], apparatus; auxiliary techniques and procedures

[.302 88] Maintenance and repair
Do not use; class in 646.6

[.308 1–.308 2] Clothing for men, and women
Do not use; class in 646.32–646.34

.308 3 Young adult clothing
Class clothing for young adult men aged twenty-one and over in 646.32, for young adult women aged twenty-one and over in 646.34, for children in 646.36

.308 4 Clothing for persons in specific stages of adulthood
Class clothing of adult men regardless of age in 646.32, of adult women regardless of age in 646.34

[.308 7] Clothing for handicapped and ill persons
Do not use; class in 646.31

.309 11 Clothing for cold weather and frigid zones

.309 13 Clothing for hot weather and tropics

.31–.36 Clothing for handicapped and ill persons, men, women, children
Add to base number 646.3 the numbers following 646.40 in 646.401–646.406, e.g., clothing for handicapped persons 646.31

Class clothing for young adult men in 646.308351, for young adult women in 646.308352

.4 Clothing and accessories construction
Class here casual clothes, sports clothes

Class commercial manufacture of clothing in 687

For construction of headgear, see 646.5

.400 1–.400 7 Standard subdivisions

.400 8 Clothing with respect to specific kinds of persons

[.400 81–.400 82] Clothing for men, and women
Do not use; class in 646.402–646.404

.400 83 Young adult clothing
Class clothing for young adult men aged twenty-one and over in 646.402, for young adult women aged twenty-one and over in 646.404, for children in 646.406

.400 84 Clothing of persons in specific stages of adulthood
Class clothing of adult men regardless of age in 646.402, of adult women regardless of age in 646.404
Clothing for handicapped and ill persons
Do not use; class in 646.401

.401 Clothing for handicapped and ill persons

646.402–646.406 Clothing for men, women, children
Class comprehensive works in 646.4, construction of clothing for handicapped persons regardless of age or sex in 646.401, patterns regardless of kind of persons in 646.407, fitting and alterations regardless of kind of persons in 646.408

.402 Men’s clothing
Class clothing for young adult men in 646.4008351

.404 Women’s clothing
Class clothing for young adult women in 646.4008352

.406 Children’s clothing
Class clothing of young men in 646.402, of young women in 646.404

.407 Patterns
General aspects: selection, purchase, use
Use of this number for construction of clothing without patterns discontinued; class in 646.4

.407 2 Patternmaking and pattern design

.408 Fitting and alterations

646.42–646.48 Specific kinds of clothing
Add to notation for each term identified by * the numbers following 646.4 in 646.4001–646.406, e.g., construction of the kind of clothing for handicapped persons 01
Class comprehensive works in 646.4

.42 *Underwear and hosiery

.43 *Specific kinds of garments
Not provided for elsewhere
Use of this number for comprehensive works on outer house garments discontinued; class in 646.4

.432 *Dresses

.433 *Suits, *trousers, *jackets
For outdoor jackets, e.g., windbreakers, see 646.45

*Add as instructed under 646.42–646.48
.435  *Shirts, *blouses, *tops
.437  *Skirts
.45  *Outer coats, sweaters, wraps
    Class here comprehensive works on coats
    Class suit coats in 646.433; outdoor athletic wear in 646.47, e.g., ski clothing

    See also 646.47 for evening wear

.452  *Overcoats
    Example: topcoats
.453  *Raincoats
.454  *Sweaters
.457  *Stoles, *cloaks, *jackets
    Class suit jackets in 641.433
.47  *Garments for special purposes
    Examples: athletic garments, evening and formal dress, maternity garments, wedding clothes
    Class accessories for special purposes in 646.48

    See also 646.4 for casual and sports clothes

.475  *Nightclothes
.478  *Costumes
    Examples: party, period costumes
    Class here theatrical costumes
.48  Accessories
    Examples: aprons, belts, gloves and mittens, handkerchiefs, neckwear, scarves
    Class hosiery in 646.42, headgear in 646.5, boots and shoes in 685.31, handcrafted costume jewelry in 745.5942

.5  Construction of headgear
.500 1–.500 7  Standard subdivisions
.500 8  History and description with respect to kinds of persons
[.500 81–.500 83]  Men, women, children

    Do not use; class in 646.502–646.506

.500 84  Persons in specific stages of adulthood
    Class construction of headgear for men regardless of age in 646.502, for women regardless of age in 646.504

*Add as instructed under 646.42–646.48
646  Dewey Decimal Classification  646

.500 9  Historical, geographical, persons treatment
.502  For men
.504  For women (Millinery)
.506  For children

.6  Care of clothing and accessories

Examples: mending, reweaving, storage, packing
Dyeing, bleaching, spot removal relocated to 648.1

For laundering and related operations, see 648.1

.7  Management of personal and family living  Grooming

Class here interdisciplinary works on success, successful living
Class interdisciplinary works on success in business and other public situations
in 650.1

For parapsychological and occult means for achievement of well-being,
happiness, success, see 131; psychological means for achievement of
personal well-being, happiness, success, 158; etiquette (manners), 395

See also 362.82 for social services to families

.700 1-.700 7  Standard subdivisions of management of personal and family living
.700 8  Management of personal and family living with respect to kinds of
persons

[.700 846]  Management of personal and family living for persons in late
adulthood

  Do not use; class in 646.79

.700 9  Historical, geographical, persons treatment of personal and family living

.701-.703  Standard subdivisions of grooming
.704  Grooming for women, men, children
  .704 2  For women
  .704 4  For men
  .704 6  For children

.705-.707  Standard subdivisions of grooming
.708  Grooming for specific kinds of persons

[.708 1-.708 3]  Grooming for men, women, children

  Do not use; class in 646.704

.708 4  Grooming for persons in specific stages of adulthood

  Class grooming for women regardless of age in 646.7042, for men
  regardless of age in 646.7044

.709  Historical, geographical, persons treatment of grooming
646.71–646.75 Grooming

Class comprehensive works in 646.7, clothing selection and dressing with style in 646.3, training children in grooming 649.63

See also 646.7 for charm

.71 Cleanliness

Examples: bathing, showering

.72 Care of hair, face, skin

Class here cosmetology

Use of this number for personal appearance discontinued; class in 646.7

.724 Care of hair

Example: shaving

Including care of beards

Class here barbering

.724 2 Hairdressing

Including dyeing

Class hairstyling in 646.7245

.724 5 Hairstyling

.724 8 Wigs

General aspects: cleaning, dyeing, selection, styling

.726 Care of face, skin

Including care of eyes, lips

Use of this number for comprehensive works on hair, skin, nails, on cosmetology discontinued; class in 646.72

Class manicuring and pedicuring in 646.727

.727 Manicuring and pedicuring

.75 Physique and form

Reducing, slenderizing, bodybuilding

Including massage, sauna, Turkish baths

See also 613.2 for dieting, 613.7 for physical fitness

See Manual at 613.71 vs. 646.75, 796

.76 Charm

.77 Dating and choice of mate

311
646

Family living

Class here guides to harmonious family relations

For child rearing, see 649.1

Guides for persons in late adulthood

Class here guides to retirement

Class family living in 646.78

See also 362.6 for social services to persons in late adulthood, 646.7008 for guides to management of personal and family living for other age brackets

647 Management of public households (Institutional housekeeping)

.068 Management

See Manual at 647.068

[.068 3] Personnel management

Do not use; class in 647.2

> 647.2–647.6 Employees

Class comprehensive works on household employees in 640.46, comprehensive works on public household employees in 647.2

.2 Indoor employees

Class here personnel management, comprehensive works on public household employees

For outdoor employees, see 647.3; hours and duties, 647.6

.3 Outdoor employees

For hours and duties, see 647.6

.6 Employee hours and duties

.9 Specific kinds of public households and institutions

Class a specific aspect of public households and institutions with the aspect, e.g., laundering 648.1

.92 Multiple dwellings for long-term residents

Examples: apartments, apartment hotels, flats, tenements

Class boarding and rooming houses in 647.94

.94 Multiple dwellings for transients

See Manual at 913–919: Guidebooks
647 Home economics and family living 647

.940 25 Directories
Class directories of specific continents, countries, localities in 647.943–647.949

.940 9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment
Class treatment by specific continents, countries, localities in 647.943–647.949 (not 647.94093–647.94099)

.943–.949 Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities
Class here directories
Add to base number 647.94 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., multiple dwellings for transients in Canada 647.9471; then add further as follows:
01 Hotels and inns
02 Motels
03 Bed and breakfast establishments
Class here boarding and rooming houses
05 Clubs
06 Hostels
  For youth hostels, see 07
07 Youth hostels
08 Trailer camps
09 Campsites

.95 Eating and drinking places
See Manual at 913–919: Guidebooks

.950 25 Directories
Class directories of specific continents, countries, localities in 647.953–647.959

.950 9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment
Class treatment by specific continents, countries, localities in 647.953–647.959 (not 647.95093–647.95099)

.953–.959 Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities
Class here directories, operation of catering establishments
Add to base number 647.95 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., restaurants of Hawaii 647.95969

647.96–647.99 Institutional households not primarily used for residence, eating, drinking
Class comprehensive works in 647
See Manual at 647.96–647.99 vs. 658.2, TI—0682

.96 Miscellaneous institutional households
Not provided for elsewhere
Add to base number 647.96 the numbers following 725 in 725.1–725.9, e.g., office buildings 647.9623
.98 Religious institutions

Add to base number 647.98 the numbers following 726 in 726.1–726.9, e.g., Franciscan monasteries 647.98773

.99 Educational and research institutions

Add to base number 647.99 the numbers following 727 in 727.1–727.9, e.g., public libraries 647.99824

648 Housekeeping

Class here household sanitation

See Manual at 647.96–647.99 vs. 658.2, T1—0682

.1 Laundering and related operations

Examples: dyeing, bleaching, spot removal [all formerly 646.6], drying, pressing

Class dry cleaning in 667.12

.5 Housecleaning

Class here cleaning floors, furnishings

.56 Dishwashing

.7 Control and eradication of pests

.8 Storage and preparation for storage

.9 Moving

649 Child rearing and home care of sick and infirm

SUMMARY

649.1 Child rearing

.3 Feeding

.4 Clothing and health

.5 Activities and recreation

.6 Training

.7 Moral and character training

.8 Home care of sick and infirm

.1 Child rearing

Class here training, supervision

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., infant boys 649.122 (not 649.132)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exceptional children</td>
<td>649.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children of specific classes, types, relationships</td>
<td>649.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children of specific age groups</td>
<td>649.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children of specific sexes</td>
<td>649.13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Class specific elements of home care of children regardless of age, sex, or other characteristics in 649.3–649.7

314
Works for specific types of users

Do not add as instructed in Table 1

Works for expectant parents

Works for single parents

Works for older children in family

Works for baby sitters

Child care with respect to kinds of persons

Class care of specific kinds of children in 649.12–649.15

Children of specific age groups

Infants

From birth to age two

Children three to five

Class here preschool children

Children six to eleven

Class here comprehensive works on school-age children to age fourteen

Class school-age children twelve to fourteen in 649.125

Young adults

Ages twelve to twenty

Children of specific sexes

Boys

Girls

Children of specific classes, types, relationships

Add to base number 649.14 the numbers following 155.44 in 155.442–155.446, e.g., the only child 649.142

Exceptional children

Add to base number 649.15 the numbers following 371.9 in 371.91–371.97, e.g., the gifted child 649.155

> 649.3–649.7 Specific elements of home care of children

Class comprehensive works in 649.1

Feeding

Breast feeding

Class nutritional aspects of breast feeding in 613.26
.4 Clothing and health  
Class feeding in 649.3, home care for sick children in 649.8

.5 Activities and recreation  
.51 Creative activities  
Examples: paper work, painting, modeling, music  

.55 Play with toys  
Examples: dolls, games  
Class sports games in 649.57

[.552-.554] With specific toys  
Numbers discontinued; class in 649.55

.57 Exercise, gymnastics, sports

.58 Reading and related activities  
Examples: storytelling, reading aloud to children, supervision of children’s reading, listening  
Including home teaching of reading

.6 Training  
Class religious training in 291.44, Christian religious training in 248.845

For moral and character training, see 649.7

.62 Toilet training

.63 Training in grooming and self-reliance  
Examples: bathing, dressing, feeding self

.64 Behavior modification, discipline, obedience  
Use of this number for comprehensive works on behavior training discontinued; class in 649.6

Class a specific application with the application, e.g., behavior modification in dressing habits 649.63

.65 Sex education

.68 Home-based education  
Contains developing learning ability, developing readiness for school, teaching of school subjects  
Including techniques of study for parents [formerly 371.302813], works for parents on specific elementary school subjects [formerly in 372.3–372.8 with use of notation 0442 from table at 372.3–372.8]

For home teaching of reading, see 649.58
Moral and character training

Religious training of children in the home relocated to 291.44, Christian religious training of children in the home to 248.845

Home care of sick and infirm

Management and auxiliary services

This division is concerned with the art and science of conducting organized enterprises and with auxiliary skills and operations. The auxiliary skills and operations consist chiefly of communication and record keeping fundamental to management.

Class here business.

See Manual at 158.7 vs. 650; 650 vs. 330

SUMMARY

650.01-.09 Standard subdivisions
.1 Personal success in business
651 Office services
652 Processes of written communication
653 Shorthand
657 Accounting
658 General management
659 Advertising and public relations

.01 Philosophy and theory
.015 13 Business arithmetic [formerly 513.93]
.02-.09 Standard subdivisions

.1 Personal success in business

Including personal efficiency (management of own time and work)

Class here interdisciplinary works on success in business and other public situations.

Class interdisciplinary works on success in general, on management of personal and family living in 646.7, success as an executive in 658.409

.12 Financial success
.13 Personal improvement and success in business relationships
.14 Success in obtaining jobs and promotions

> 651–657 Auxiliary services

Class comprehensive works in 650, advertising and public relations in 659
Office services

Class here problems of security and confidentiality.

*For processes of written communication, see 652; accounting, 657*

**SUMMARY**

| 651.028 | Auxiliary techniques and procedures; materials |
| .2     | Equipment and supplies                         |
| .3     | Office management                              |
| .5     | Records management                             |
| .7     | Communication Creation and transmission of records |
| .8     | Data processing Computer applications          |
| .9     | Office services in specific kinds of enterprises |

.028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; materials

Class apparatus and equipment in 651.2

[.028 5] Data processing Computer applications

Do not use; class in 651.8

.2 Equipment and supplies

Description, use, maintenance

Use 651.2001–651.2009 for standard subdivisions

Class procurement of office equipment and supplies in 658.72

.202 Maintenance of equipment

.23 Furniture

.26 Processing equipment

Class a specific type of equipment with its use, e.g., typewriters 652.3

.29 Supplies and forms

.3 Office management

General aspects: planning, organizing, directing, controlling office services

Including role and function of administrative personnel

.306 83 Management of office personnel (*formerly* 658.3044)

.37 Clerical activities

Class written communication in 652, accounting in 657

.374 Secretarial and related activities

.374 1 Secretarial activities

Activities of secretaries, stenographers, typists

.374 3 Related activities

Examples: work of filers, messengers, receptionists, switchboard operators

Class work of stenographers, typists in 651.3741
.5 Records management
   Class creation and transmission of records in 651.7
   .504 Special topics
   .504 2 Records management in specific types of enterprises
   .504 26 In technical enterprises
   .504 261 Medical
   .51 Retention, maintenance, final disposition of records
   .53 Filing systems and procedures
   For storage, see 651.54–651.59

> 651.54–651.59 Storage
   General aspects: space, equipment, control, protection, preservation
   Class comprehensive works in 651.53
   .54 Storage of original documents
   Examples: storage in filing cabinets, visible and rotary files
   For storage of inactive files, see 651.56
   .56 Storage of inactive files
   Original documents in permanent (dead) storage
   .58 Microreproduction of files
   Active and inactive
   .59 Computerization of files

.7 Communication
   Creation and transmission of records
   Class interdisciplinary works on communication in 302.2, managerial communication in 658.45
   See Manual at 651.7 vs. 808.06665, 658.45
   .73 Oral communication
   Including use of telephone
   .74 Written communication
   Including dictating and use of dictating equipment
   Use 651.74001–651.74009 for standard subdivisions
   For specific types of written communication, see 651.75–651.78; processes of written communication, 652
   [.740 2] Style manuals
   Relocated to 808.06665
651.75–651.78 Specific types of written communication

Class comprehensive works in 651.74

.75 Correspondence
   Including layout of letters
   Style of business letters relocated to 808.066651

.752 Form letters and their use

.755 Memorandums

.759 Mail handling
   Including equipment, e.g., mail openers and sealers, postage meters, addressing machines

.77 Minutes

.78 Reports

.79 Internal communication
   Examples: electronic mail, intercom systems, messenger services, paging systems, pneumatic and mechanical conveyor systems
   Class oral internal communication in 651.73, internal written communication in 651.74

.8 Data processing  Computer applications

Use in carrying out office functions

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 651.8 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital microcomputers 651.8416, but use of digital computers 651.8 (not 651.84)

Class interdisciplinary works on data processing in 004; computer applications for a specific office activity with the activity, e.g., computerization of files 651.59, word processing 652.5

.9 Office services in specific kinds of enterprises

Add to base number 651.9 notation 001–999, e.g., office services in libraries 651.902

Class specific elements of office services in specific kinds of enterprises in 651.2–651.8

652 Processes of written communication

For shorthand, see 653

.1 Penmanship

See also 745.61 for calligraphy
.3 **Typing**

Including description and maintenance of typewriters

Use 652.3001–652.3009 for standard subdivisions

.302 Specific levels of skill

Class speed and accuracy tests and drills in 652.307

.302 4 Basic (Beginning) level

.302 5 Intermediate level

.302 6 Advanced level

.307 Speed and accuracy

Class here tests, drills

.32 Typing for specific purposes

Other than general commercial and professional typing

.325 For personal use

.326 For specific kinds of enterprises

Examples: legal, medical, technical typing

.4 **Duplication of records and duplicating methods**

Office use of stencil, xerography, other methods

Class interdisciplinary works on photoduplication in 686.4

.5 **Word processing**

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 652.5 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., the use of digital microcomputers 652.5416, but the use of digital computers 652.5 (not 652.54)

.8 **Cryptography**

Class here interdisciplinary works on cryptography [formerly 001.5436]

Class cryptographic techniques used for security in computer systems in 005.82

653 **Shorthand**

.1 **Basic shorthand practice**

Class basic practice in a specific system with the system, e.g., Gregg shorthand transcription 653.4270424

[.13] General principles

Number discontinued; class in 653.1

.14 Taking dictation, and transcription

.15 Speed and accuracy

Class speed and accuracy in transcription in 653.14
.18 Specific uses
   Examples: court reporting, medical, personal

> 653.2–653.4 Systems
   Class comprehensive works in 653

.2 Abbreviated longhand systems
   Systems using conventional letters

.3 Machine systems
   Add to base number 653.3 the numbers following 653.1 in 653.14–653.18, e.g.,
   specific uses 653.38

.4 Handwritten systems
   For abbreviated longhand systems, see 653.2

.41 Multilingual

.42 English-language

.421 Early forms
   Systems devised before 1837

.422 Essentially nonphonetic systems
   Class early nonphonetic systems in 653.421

> 653.423–653.428 Essentially phonetic systems
   Class comprehensive works in 653.42, early phonetic systems in 653.421

.423 Geometric disjoined vowel systems
   For Pitman systems, see 653.424

.424 Pitman systems

.424 04 Special topics

.424 042 Basic shorthand practice
   Add to base number 653.424042 the numbers following 653.1
   in 653.14–653.18, e.g., speed and accuracy 653.4240425

.424 2 Isaac Pitman

.424 3 Benn Pitman

.424 4 Graham

.424 5 Munson

.425 Geometric joined vowel systems
   Examples: Dewey (1922), Lindsley, Pernin, Sloan
Management and auxiliary services

.426 Semigeometric, script-geometric, semiscript systems

Example: Malone

*For Gregg systems, see 653.427*

.427 Gregg systems

.427 04 Special topics

.427 042 Basic shorthand practice

Add to base number 653.427042 the numbers following 653.1 in 653.14–653.18, e.g., transcription 653.4270424

.427 2 Conventional systems

.427 3 Simplified systems

.428 Script systems

Example: Dewey (1936)

.43–.49 Systems used in other languages

Add to base number 653.4 notation 3–9 from Table 6, e.g., French-language systems 653.441

[654] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

[655] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 17

[656] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

657 Accounting

*See Manual at 657 vs. 658.1511, 658.1512*

**SUMMARY**

657.04 Levels of accounting

.1 Constructive accounting

.2 Recording (Bookkeeping)

.3 Financial reporting (Financial statements)

.4 Specific fields of accounting

.6 Specific kinds of accounting

.7 Accounting for specific phases of business activity

.8 Accounting for enterprises engaged in specific kinds of activities

.9 Accounting for specific kinds of organizations

.04 Levels of accounting

.042 Elementary level

.044 Intermediate level

Including college-level accounting
657.1–657.9 Elements of accounting

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of precedence, e.g., accounting for cost of inventory in a corporation engaged in manufacturing 657.867072 (not 657.42, 657.72, 657.95)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accounting for enterprises engaged in specific kinds of activities</td>
<td>657.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Financial reporting (Financial statements)</td>
<td>657.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accounting for specific phases of business activity</td>
<td>657.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constructive accounting</td>
<td>657.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recording (Bookkeeping)</td>
<td>657.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific fields of accounting</td>
<td>657.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accounting for specific kinds of organizations</td>
<td>657.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific kinds of accounting</td>
<td>657.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Class comprehensive works in 657

.1 Constructive accounting

Development of accounting systems to fit the needs of individual organizations

.2 Recording (Bookkeeping)

Including secretarial bookkeeping and accounting

Class elementary accounting in 657.042

.3 Financial reporting (Financial statements)

Class here consolidated statements

.32 Preparing financial statements

[.33] Understanding and analyzing financial statements

Number discontinued; class in 657.3

.4 Specific fields of accounting

For constructive accounting, see 657.1; bookkeeping, 657.2

.42 Cost accounting

.45 Auditing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subclass</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.450 Data processing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computer applications</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use in auditing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class auditing of computer-processed accounts</td>
<td>657.453</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

.452 Audit reports and reporting

.453 Auditing of computer-processed accounts

Including program auditing

.458 Internal (Management) auditing
.46 Tax accounting
   Example: accounting for social security taxes

.47 Fiduciary accounting
   Accounting for receiverships, estates, trusts

.48 Analytical (Financial) accounting
   Examples: measurement of flow of funds, of profitability, of financial
   strength, of income, of liquidity; accounting for inflation

.6 Specific kinds of accounting

.61 Public accounting

.63 Private accounting

.7 Accounting for specific phases of business activity

.72 Current assets
   Examples: accounts receivable, cash, inventory

.73 Fixed assets
   Including depreciation, retirement, valuation and revaluation of land,
   buildings, equipment; insurance

.74 Current liabilities
   Examples: accounts payable, notes payable, payroll
   
   For tax accounting, see 657.46

.75 Fixed liabilities
   Examples: bonds payable, leases, mortgages, pension plans, purchase
   contracts

.76 Capital accounting
   Accounting for ownership equity
   Including accounting for stock and dividends
   
   For measurement of profitability, of income, see 657.48

.8 Accounting for enterprises engaged in specific kinds of activities
   Aside from additions, changes, deletions, exceptions shown under specific
   entries, add to notation for each term identified by * as follows:
   001–009   Standard subdivisions
   01–07   Specific aspects of accounting
   Add to 0 the numbers following 657 in 657.1–657.7, e.g., cost
   accounting 042

.83 Service and professional activities

.832 Social services
   Including churches, prisons

.832 2 *Hospitals

*Add as instructed under 657.8
657 Dewey Decimal Classification

.832 7 *Educational institutions
.833 Finance and real estate
.833 3 *Finance

For insurance, see 657.836

.833 5 *Real estate
.834 Professions
.835 *Government

Central and local governments and authorities

Class accounting for government corporations (except municipalities) in 657.95, accounting for specific government services other than military in 657.832–657.834, 657.836–657.839

.835 045 Government auditing

Class here manuals of government audit procedure [formerly also 351.72320202]

.836 *Insurance
.837 *Hotels and restaurants
.838 *Public utilities
.839 *Wholesale and retail trade
.84 Communications and entertainment media

Examples: newspapers, periodicals, publishing houses, television and radio networks and stations, theaters, motion-picture producers and theaters, sports

.86 Other activities
.861 *Labor unions
.862 *Mining
.863 *Agriculture
.867 *Manufacturing

Including printing

.869 *Construction

.9 Accounting for specific kinds of organizations
.904 Special topics
.904 2 Small business
.91 Individual proprietorships
.92 Partnerships

*Add as instructed under 657.8
.95 Corporations
.96 Combinations and mergers
   Class here accounting for multinational organizations
.97 Cooperatives
.98 Nonprofit organizations
.99 Branches
   Including agencies

658 General management

The science and art of conducting organized enterprises, projects, activities
Class here management of technology [formerly also 606.8]; management of services rendered by nonpublic organizations, whether or not for profit; management of public corporations; management of public agencies that themselves provide direct services (in contrast to public agencies that regulate, support, or control services provided by other organizations)
Class sociology of management in 302.35, management of enterprises engaged in specific fields of activity with the subject, using notation 068 from Table 1, e.g., management of commercial banks 332.12068

For public administration, see 350
See also 306.36 for industrial sociology, 330 for economics
See Manual at 350–354 vs. 658, T1—068; 658 and T1—068; 658, T1—068 vs. 302.35

Specific principles of management are classed in 658.401–658.403

SUMMARY

658.001-.009 Standard subdivisions
   .02-.05 [Management of enterprises of specific sizes, scopes, forms; data processing]
   .1 Organization and finance
   .2 Plant management
   .3 Personnel management
   .4 Executive management
   .5 Management of production
   .7 Management of materials
   .8 Management of distribution (Marketing)

   .001 Philosophy and theory
      Including theory of organizations, principles derived from economics and other social and behavioral sciences

[.001 1] Systems
      Do not use; class systems theory and analysis in 658.4032, operations research in 658.4034, models and simulation in 658.40352

   .002 Miscellany
658.041-658.046 Profit organizations

Class comprehensive works in 658, international profit organizations in 658.049

.041 Individual proprietorships

Including home-based, part-time, retirement enterprises

Class management by entrepreneurs in 658.421

.042 Partnerships

General and limited

.044 Unincorporated enterprises

Examples: joint stock companies, joint ventures

For partnerships, see 658.042; individual proprietorships, 658.041

.045 Corporations

Conversion of closely held corporations to corporations whose stocks are publicly traded ("going public") relocated to 658.15224

Class combinations in 658.046

.046 Combinations

Examples: conglomerates, holding companies, interlocking directorates, subsidiaries, trusts

Class mergers in 658.16

.047 Cooperative organizations
.048 Nonprofit organizations
   Class international nonprofit organizations in 658.049
   See also 658.047 for cooperative organizations

.049 International enterprises
   Class organization of international enterprises and activities in 658.18

.05 Data processing      Computer applications
   Class here use of data processing in managerial operations
   Unless it is redundant, add to base number 658.05 the numbers following 00
   in 004–006, e.g., use of digital microcomputers 658.05416, but use of digital
   computers 658.05 (not 658.054); however, class data security in 658.478
   Class use of data processing in clerical operations in 651.8
   See also 658.4032 for systems analysis in decision making

.1 Organization and finance
   For internal organization, see 658.402

SUMMARY

658.11   Initiation of business enterprises
   .12    Legal administration
   .15    Financial management
   .16    Reorganization
   .18    Organization of international enterprises and activities

.11 Initiation of business enterprises
   Including location
   Class capitalization in 658.152; mergers, consolidations, acquisitions,
   take-overs, reorganization of ownership structure in 658.16
   See Manual at 338.09 vs. 338.6042, 332.67309, 346.07, 658.11,
   658.21, T1—068

.114 Forms of ownership organization
   Class management of specific forms of ownership organization in 658.04
   Add to base number 658.114 the numbers following 658.04 in
   658.041–658.049, e.g., initiation of international enterprises 658.1149
   See Manual at 658.402 vs. 658.04, 658.114

.12 Legal administration
   Management of business to insure compliance with law
   Including use of legal counsel
Financial management
Procurement and use of funds to establish and operate enterprises
Class here financial decision making, financial planning
See Manual at 332 vs. 338, 658.15; 658.15 and T1—0681

SUMMARY

658.151 Financial control
658.152 Management of financial operations
658.153 Taxes, insurance, charitable donations
658.154 Budgeting
658.155 Management of income and expense
658.159 Financial administration in enterprises of specific scopes and types

Financial control
Procurement and use of financial information to evaluate performance of organizations and their specific activities and to suggest remedial measures
For budgeting, see 658.154; management of income and expense, 658.155

Management accounting
Design and use of accounting procedures to provide internal reports needed for day-to-day management
Class accounting in 657, management audits in 658.4
See Manual at 657 vs. 658.1511, 658.1512

Use of reports
Examples: balance sheets, income and expense statements, manufacturing cost statements, profit and loss statements
Class here financial reports made to directors, stockholders, top management
See Manual at 657 vs. 658.1511, 658.1512

Management of financial operations
Class here management of investment, comprehensive works on capital and its management
Class wage and salary administration in 658.32, customer credit management in 658.88
For budgeting, see 658.154; management of income and expense, 658.155

> 658.152 2—658.152 4 Capital and its management
Class comprehensive works in 658.152, capital budgets in 658.154
.152 2 Procurement of capital
  Class here costs and valuation of capital
  Class procurement of specific kinds of capital in 658.1524

.152 24 External sources
  Examples: issue and sale of stocks and bonds; loans; gifts, grants
  Including conversion of closely held corporations to corporations
  whose stocks are publicly traded (“going public”) [formerly
  658.045]
  Class debt management in 658.1526

.152 26 Internal sources
  Examples: reserves, savings, proceeds of current operations

.152 4 Procurement and management of specific kinds of capital

.152 42 Long-term (Fixed) capital
  Examples: land, buildings, heavy equipment; stocks and bonds of
  other companies, long-term loans receivable
  Including leasing
  See also 658.72 for procurement of office equipment

.152 44 Short-term (Working) capital
  Examples: accounts receivable, cash, inventory, 30–90 day loans
  receivable

.152 6 Debt management
  Examples: accounts payable, bonds outstanding, notes payable

.153 Taxes, insurance, charitable donations
  Class here ways that management can deal with taxes, what insurance is
  needed for the organization
  Class interdisciplinary works on and economic aspects of business taxes
  in 336.207, on charitable donations in 361.765, on insurance in 368; legal
  aspects of business taxes in 343.068

.154 Budgeting
  Including capital budgets, budgeting for specific objectives

.155 Management of income and expense
  Including distribution of profit, dividend policy
  Class here management of profit and loss, comprehensive works on risk
  management
  Class use of income and expense statements in 658.1512, health and
  safety programs in 658.382, business security in 658.47, determination of
  prices in 658.816
  For taxes, insurance, charitable donations, see 658.153
.155 2 Cost analysis and control

.155 3 Kinds of costs
    Examples: fixed and overhead costs; variable costs; labor, material costs
    For costs of capital, see 658.1522

.155 4 Income (Revenue)
    Return on investment, income from operations
    Including break-even analysis, cost-benefit analysis, cost-volume-profit analysis, profit and its promotion

.159 Financial administration in enterprises of specific types and scopes
    Class specific aspects of financial administration in enterprises of specific types and scopes in 658.151–658.155, e.g., budgeting management in small business 658.154

.159 2 Small business

.159 208 History and description with respect to kinds of persons
    Class here minority enterprises

.159 9 Foreign (International) enterprises

.16 Reorganization
    Examples: acquisitions, consolidations, divestment, mergers, sale, take-overs

.18 Organization of international enterprises and activities
    Including foreign licensing
    Class initiation of international enterprises and activities in 658.1149

.2 Plant management
    Management of buildings, equipment, facilities, grounds
    Class here comprehensive works on energy management
    Class procurement of plants (land, buildings, equipment) in 658.15242; specific aspects of energy management with the aspect, e.g., energy management to promote efficiency in production 658.515
    See Manual at 647.96–647.99 vs. 658.2, T1—0682; 658.2 and T1—0682

.202 Maintenance
.21 Location
Including warehouse location
Class location of businesses in 658.11
See Manual at 338.09 vs. 338.6042, 332.67309, 346.07, 658.11, 658.21, T1—068

.23 Layout
.24 Lighting
.25 Heating, ventilating, air conditioning
.26 Utilities
Examples: electricity, gas, power and power distribution, water
Class lighting in 658.24; heating, ventilating, air conditioning in 658.25

.27 Equipment
Class office equipment in 651.2
For utilities, see 658.26; equipment for safety and comfort, 658.28

.28 Equipment for safety and comfort
Example: equipment for sanitation
Including equipment for noise control

.3 Personnel management
Procedures for hiring, developing, utilizing the capacities of employees
Use 658.3001—658.3009 for standard subdivisions
Class industrial relations in 331
For management of executive personnel, see 658.407
See Manual at 658.3 and T1—0683; 658.3 vs. 331

SUMMARY

658.301—.306 [General topics]
.31 Elements of personnel management
.32 Wage and salary administration
.38 Personnel health, safety, welfare

.301 Personnel planning and policy
Including information and decision making
Class here manpower planning

.302 Supervision
By immediate supervisors
Class employee development in 658.3124, development of supervisors in 658.407124
.303 Personnel management in enterprises of specific sizes

.304 Management of specific kinds of personnel

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., handicapped Black women professional personnel 658.3044 (not 658.3045, 658.3041, or 658.3042)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Occupying specific types of positions</td>
<td>658.3044</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exhibiting specific personal characteristics</td>
<td>658.3045</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belonging to nondominant racial, ethnic, national groups</td>
<td>658.3041</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Of specific ages and sexes</td>
<td>658.3042</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

.304 1 Belonging to nondominant racial, ethnic, national groups

Class selection and hiring of minority employees in 658.3112

.304 2 Of specific ages and sexes

.304 4 Occupying specific types of positions

Examples: blue-collar and professional employees

Management of office personnel relocated to 651.30683

.304 5 Exhibiting specific personal characteristics

Examples: handicapped personnel, high-talent personnel, problem employees

.306 Job analysis and description

Including position classification; specifications of personal, educational, physical, mental qualifications required of personnel in each position; restrictions on what qualifications can be required of personnel

.31 Elements of personnel management

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>658.311</td>
<td>Recruitment and selection of personnel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.312</td>
<td>Conditions of work and utilization of personnel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.313</td>
<td>Separation from service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.314</td>
<td>Motivation, morale, discipline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.315</td>
<td>Employer-employee relationships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.311</td>
<td>Recruitment and selection of personnel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.311 1</td>
<td>Recruitment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

334
Selection
Including checklists and inventories, computerized matching, handwriting analysis, security clearance, personal and background investigations, use of polygraph (lie detector)

Class here comprehensive works on selection and placement

Use of this number for comprehensive works on selection and recruitment discontinued; class in 658.311

See also 658.3128 for placement, 658.383 for payment of moving expenses

Interviewing

Testing
Including aptitude testing

In enterprises engaged in specific types of activity and for specific jobs

Selection of personnel in enterprises engaged in specific types of activity and for specific jobs relocated to the activity or job with use of notation 0683 from Table 1, e.g., selection of personnel in mining enterprises 622.0683

Conditions of work and utilization of personnel

> 658.312 1–658.312 4 Conditions of work

Class comprehensive works in 658.312

For wage and salary administration, see 658.32; personnel health, safety, welfare, 658.38

Days and hours of work
Including lunch periods and breaks

Leaves of absence
Examples: paid vacations, sick leave

Class absenteeism in 658.314

Education and training

Class here employee development

Development and administration of training programs
Including programmed instruction, teaching methods, training devices, evaluation of training programs, selection and training of training personnel

Induction and orientation

In-house work training
For specific tasks
Including retraining, adjustment to automation
.312 44 Other kinds of training
   Examples: attitude training, rehabilitation training, safety training, training in human relations

.312 45 Training of specific classes of employees
   Examples: blue-collar employees, professional employees
   Class induction and orientation of specific classes of employees in 658.31242, training of specific classes of employees for specific tasks in 658.31243, other kinds of training regardless of class of employee in 658.31244, training of supervisors in 658.4071245

.312 5 Performance rating (Evaluation)
   Class promotion in 658.3126, demotion in 658.3127

.312 6 Promotion
   Class promotion as an incentive in 658.3142

.312 7 Demotion
   Class demotion as a penalty in 658.3144

.312 8 Utilization of personnel
   Examples: allocation of staff to specific responsibilities, staffing patterns, work teams
   Including placement, transfer of employees from one position to another
   
   For training, see 658.3124; motivation, 658.314

.313 Separation from service
   Example: dismissal for cause

.313 2 Retirement

.313 4 Layoff for retrenchment (Reduction in force)

.314 Motivation, morale, discipline
   Including absenteeism, performance surveys, prevention of misconduct, bonding of employees, turnover and its prevention
   Class here promotion of creativity, efficiency, productivity

.314 2 Incentives
   Examples: promotion, recognition, status
   
   For incentive payments, see 658.3225

.314 22 Job satisfaction
   Class job enrichment in 658.31423

.314 23 Job enrichment
.314 4 Penalties

Examples: demotion, fines, reprimands

For dismissal for cause, see 658.313

See also 658.3127 for demotion when not a penalty

.314 5 Interpersonal relations

Promotion of effective working relationships between individuals and groups

Including informal, day-to-day relations between superiors and subordinates

.315 Employer-employee relationships

Class informal relations in 658.3145

.315 1 Industrial relations counseling

See also 658.385 for counseling of employees

.315 2 Employee representation in management (Participatory management)

Including worker self-management

Class industrial democracy in 331.012

See also 338.6 for worker control of industry

.315 3 Labor unions and other employee organizations

Class role of employee organizations in grievances and appeals in 658.3155

For collective bargaining, see 658.3154

.315 4 Collective bargaining

Including arbitration, mediation, negotiation of contracts, strikes

.315 5 Grievances and appeals

.32 Wage and salary administration

Class management of labor costs in 658.1553

.321 Payroll administration

Class clerical techniques involved in maintaining payroll records in 651.37, payroll accounting procedures in 657.74

.322 Compensation plans

.322 2 Wage and salary scales

Hourly or other periodic

Including longevity, overtime, severance pay
.322 5  Incentive payments
   Examples: bonuses, piecework rates, profit sharing, stock ownership plans
   Class comprehensive works on incentives in 658.3142
   For merit awards, see 658.3226

.322 6  Merit awards

.325  Employee benefits

.325 3  Pensions

.325 4  Insurance, workers' (workmens') compensation
   Class here other benefits not provided for elsewhere

.38  Personnel health, safety, welfare

.382  Health and safety programs
   Programs by management to enhance the well-being and safety of employees, to provide emergency and other forms of medical care
   Example: mental health programs
   Class here employee assistance programs
   Class interdisciplinary works on industrial safety in 363.11, comprehensive works on safety management in 658.408, safety of plant and equipment in 658.200289, safety training in 658.31244, provision of health and accident insurance in 658.3254

.382 2  Programs for drug abuse and alcoholism

.383  Economic services
   Examples: discounts, food services, housing, moving expenses, transportation

.385  Counseling services
   Class mental health programs and services in 658.382

.4  Executive management

   Limited to those activities named below
   Class here role, function, powers, position of top and middle management; comprehensive works on the activities named below
   Class a specific executive managerial activity not provided for here with the activity in management, e.g., personnel management 658.3; application of a specific activity named below in another branch of management with the branch, e.g., production planning 658.503
   See Manual at 658.42 and 658.43


338
**SUMMARY**

658.400 1-.400 9  Standard subdivisions  
.401-.409  Specific executive management activities  
.42  Top management  
.43  Middle management  
.45  Communication  
.46  Use of consultants  
.47  Business intelligence and security  

658.400 1-.400 9  Standard subdivisions  

>  

658.401–658.409 Specific executive management activities

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of precedence, e.g., planning for change 658.406 (*not* 658.4012)

| Personal aspects of executive management | 658.409 |
| Management of executive personnel | 658.407 |
| Internal organization | 658.402 |
| Managing change | 658.406 |
| Planning, policy making, control | 658.401 |
| Decision making and information management | 658.403 |
| Social responsibility of executive management | 658.408 |
| Project management | 658.404 |

Class comprehensive works in 658.4, communication in 658.45, use of consultants in 658.46, business intelligence and security in 658.47

.401  Planning, policy making, control  
.401 2  Planning and policy making  

Formulation of objectives, goals, courses of action  
Class here management by objectives, strategic management  
Class decision making in 658.403, forecasting in 658.40355  

.401 3  Control  

Formulation of standards, evaluation of conformity of performance to standards, formulation of remedial measures
.402 Internal organization
Examples: line, line and staff, functional; by departments
Including decentralization, distribution and delegation of authority and responsibility
Class sociology of executive institutions in 306.3, allocation of personnel to specific responsibilities in 658.3128
See also 302.3 for social interaction within groups
See Manual at 658.402 vs. 658.04, 658.114

.403 Decision making and information management
Class here problem solving
Use 658.403001–658.403009 for standard subdivisions
.403 01 Philosophy and theory of decision making
[.403 011] Systems in decision making
Do not use; class in 658.4032
[.403 015 1] Mathematical techniques of decision making
Do not use; class in 658.4033
.403 02–.403 09 Standard subdivisions of decision making
.403 2 Systems theory and analysis
Including critical path method (CPM), network analysis, program evaluation review technique (PERT)
Class decision theory in 658.40301, operations research in 658.4034, models (simulation) in 658.40352, decision analysis in 658.40354, forecasting and forecasts in 658.40355
.403 3 Mathematical techniques of decision making
Example: mathematical programming
Class here econometrics as an aid in decision making
Class simulation in 658.40352
.403 4 Operations research
Including probability theory, queuing theory
Models relocated to 658.40352
Class mathematical methods in 658.4033, simulation in 658.40352, games in 658.40353
.403 5 Other techniques of decision making
.403 52 Simulation
Class here models [formerly 658.4034]
.403 53 Games
.403 54 Decision analysis
.403 55 Forecasting

.403 6 Group decision making
   Class specific techniques of group decision making in 658.4032–658.4035

.403 8 Information management
   Collection, processing, storage, retrieval of information
   Class communication in 658.45
      See Manual at 658.455 vs. 658.4038

.403 801 1 Information systems [formerly 658.40388]

[.403 88] Information systems
   Relocated to 658.4038011

.404 Project management

.406 Managing change
   Class here expansion, modernization, simplification, systemization
   Class internal reorganization in 658.402; acquisition, merger, consolidation, take-over, divestment, sale of business organizations in 658.16; changes in a specific branch of management with the branch, e.g., changes in production 658.5

.406 2 Externally induced (Responsive) change
   Examples: changes induced by social factors, technological changes
   Including conversion to metric system

.406 3 Innovation by management

.407 Management of executive personnel
   Add to base number 658.407 the numbers following 658.3 in 658.31–658.38, e.g., training of supervisors 658.4071245

.408 Social responsibility of executive management
   Including protection and preservation of environment
   Class here comprehensive works on safety management
   Class interdisciplinary works on safety in 363.1; social measures for prevention of pollution in 363.73, technology of pollution prevention in 628.5; managing welfare services for employees in 658.38, for other persons in 361.7; specific aspects of safety with the aspect, e.g., product safety 658.56
      See Manual at 363.1

.409 Personal aspects of executive management
   Class here success as an executive
   Class general success in business in 650.1

.409 2 Executive leadership
.409 3 Personal efficiency
   Management by executives of their own time and work

.409 4 Personal characteristics of executives
   Examples: attitudes, life-styles, values

.409 5 The management environment
   Examples: social pressures, work pressures, relations between
   executives in and out of the organization

.42 Top management
   Use of this number for comprehensive works on top and middle
   management discontinued; class in 658.4
   Class initiation of business enterprises in 658.11, specific activities of top
   management with the subject, e.g., decision making by top management
   658.403.

   *See Manual at 658.42 and 658.43*

.421 Entrepreneurial management
   Class management of small business in 658.022

.422 Boards of directors and trustees

.43 Middle management

   *See Manual at 658.42 and 658.43*

.45 Communication
   As a technique of management
   Including credibility
   Class mechanics of communication in 651.7

   *See Manual at 651.7 vs. 808.06665, 658.45*

.452 Oral communication

   *See also 808.51 for techniques of public speaking*

.453 Written communication

.455 Informational programs
   Examples: bulletin boards, house organs

   *See Manual at 658.455 vs. 658.4038*

.456 Conduct of meetings
   Class rules of order in 060.42

*.456 2* Congresses and conferences
   Relocated to 060.68
Meetings
Number discontinued; class in 658.456

.46 Use of consultants
Class here techniques of doing management consulting
Class use of consultants in a specific branch of management with the branch, e.g., use of consultants in marketing research 658.83

.47 Business intelligence and security
Class insurance in 658.153

.472 Security of information and ideas
Including industrial espionage, security of trade secrets
Class security of information stored in computers in 658.478

.473 Physical security
Protection from theft by employees and others, from fraud, from terrorism, from other forms of crime
Class physical security of computers in 658.478
For protection against fires and other disasters, see 658.477

.477 Protection against fires and other disasters

.478 Computer security

.5 Management of production
Planning, organizing, directing, controlling the specific functional activities of the organization
Class here production management in manufacturing enterprises, comprehensive works on logistics
Use 658.5001–658.5009 for standard subdivisions
Management of production in construction enterprises relocated to 624.0685
Class comprehensive works on energy management in 658.2, internal transportation (materials handling) in 658.781, physical distribution in 658.788, marketing in 658.8, factory operations engineering in 670.42; production management in enterprises engaged in a specific kind of activity other than manufacturing with the activity, using notation 0685 from Table 1, e.g., management of agricultural production 630.685
See Manual at 658.5 and T1—0685

SUMMARY

658.503 General production planning
.51 Organization of production
.53 Sequencing
.54 Work, fatigue, monotony studies
.56 Product control and packaging
.57 Research and development (R and D)
.503 General production planning
.503 6 Decision making and use of information
.503 8 Product planning
   Determination of line of products or services, quantity to be produced
   Including diversification
   Class development of new products in 658.575, marketing in 658.8

.51 Organization of production
   For sequencing, see 658.53; work, fatigue, monotony studies, 658.54

.514 Use of technology
   Including automation, man-machine ratios, modernization
   Class development of technology in 658.577

.515 Promotion of efficiency
   For use of technology, see 658.514

.53 Sequencing
   Including dispatching, routing, scheduling

.533 Kinds of sequences
   Examples: assembly-line, continuous, mixed, single-piece sequences

.54 Work, fatigue, monotony studies
   Including work load

.542 Work studies
   For fatigue and monotony studies, see 658.544

.542 1 Time studies

.542 3 Motion studies

.544 Fatigue and monotony studies

.56 Product control and packaging
   Including product liability, recall, safety
   Class comprehensive works on safety management in 658.408, product
   planning in 658.5038, design of products in 658.575

.562 Quality control
   Control of products to ensure conformity to standards and specifications
   For inspection, see 658.568

.562 015 195 Statistical methods [formerly also 658.568]
Packaging

Including labeling
Class here interdisciplinary works on packaging
Class storage containers in 658.785, packing for shipment in 658.7884, use of packaging in sales promotion in 658.823; packaging technology in 688.8

Product analysis

Determination of materials, parts, subassemblies needed; how much of each to make or buy

Waste control and utilization

Inspection

Comprehensive works on statistical methods of quality control relocated to 658.562015195

Research and development (R and D)

Fundamental research

New product development

Class here comprehensive works on product development
Class decisions to develop new products in 658.5038, market research on new products in 658.83

For product improvement research, see 658.576

Product design

Including generation of product ideas

Product improvement research

Equipment and process research

Management of materials

Class here management of supplies
Class management of office supplies in 651.29; comprehensive works on energy management in 658.2, on logistics in 658.5

See Manual at 658.7 and T1—0687

Procurement

Acquisition of equipment, materials, parts, subassemblies, supplies, tools
Class here procurement of office equipment and supplies, comprehensive works on procurement
Comprehensive works on evaluation of commodities to be purchased relocated to 381.33
Class procurement of land, buildings, heavy equipment in 658.15242, management of costs of materials in 658.1553
.722 Vendor selection
.723 Contracts and their negotiation
.728 Receiving
  Documenting, handling, inspecting incoming items
  Including expediting, tracing
.78 Internal control of materials and physical distribution
.781 Internal transportation (Materials handling)
  Transportation of materials and parts within plant from one work station
  to another
.785 Storage (Warehouse management)
  Including storage containers
  Class location of warehouses in 658.21
.787 Inventory control (Stock control)
  Class financial control of inventories in 658.15244
  For receiving, see 658.728; storage, 658.785
.788 Physical distribution
  Class here shipment
  Class internal movement of materials in 658.781
.788 2 Traffic management
  Selection of carrier and routing
.788 4 Packing for shipment
  Class interdisciplinary works on packaging in 658.564
.788 5 Loading and unloading
.788 6 Expediting and tracing

Management of distribution (Marketing)

Goods and services

Class financial aspects of marketing management in 658.15, comprehensive
works on logistics in 658.5

For physical distribution, see 658.788; advertising, 659.1

See Manual at 380.1 vs. 658.8; 658.8 and T1—0688; 658.8, T1—0688 vs.
659
SUMMARY

658.800 1–.800 9  Standard subdivisions
   .802–.804  [General topics of marketing management; marketing to specific kinds of buyers]
   .81  Sales management
   .82  Sales promotion
   .83  Market research and analysis
   .84  Channels of distribution
   .85  Personal selling (Salesmanship)
   .86  Marketing through wholesale channels
   .87  Marketing through retail channels
   .88  Credit management

.800 1  Philosophy and theory

[.800 11]  Systems
   Do not use; class in 658.802

.800 2–.800 9  Standard subdivisions
   .802  General topics of marketing management
      Examples: control, decision making, information, organizing, planning, systems analysis
      Class application of elements of marketing management to marketing to specific kinds of buyers in 658.804
   .804  Marketing to specific kinds of buyers
      Examples: to governments and their agencies, to hospitals
      Class consumer research in 658.834
      For marketing to foreign buyers, see 658.848

[.805]  Marketing to foreign buyers
   Relocated to 658.848

[.809]  Marketing specific kinds of goods and services
   Relocated to specific subject with use of notation 0688 from Table 1, e.g., marketing automobiles 629.2220688

.81  Sales management
   Class management of sales personnel in 658.3044
   For sales promotion, see 658.82

   .810 01  Philosophy and theory
   .810 011 2  Forecasting and forecasts
      Class sales forecasting in 658.818

   .810 02–.810 09  Standard subdivisions
.810 1  Sales planning
   Including use of sales records and sales analysis
   Class here formulation of goals, objectives, standards for evaluation
   of sales performance
   For market research, see 658.83

.810 2  Organization of sales force
   For organization by area, see 658.8103; by product, 658.8104;
   by class and type of customer, 658.8105

.810 3  Organization of sales force by area

.810 4  Organization of sales force by product

.810 5  Organization of sales force by class and type of customer

.810 6  Organization and conduct of sales meetings

.812  Customer relations
   Including claims, complaints, handling of orders, inquiries, returns,
   servicing of products

.816  Price determination

.818  Sales forecasting

.82  Sales promotion
   Auxiliary operations designed to reinforce and supplement advertising,
   direct sales efforts
   Including distribution of instruction and other booklets to consumers; gifts,
   prizes, samples, trading stamps
   Class use of credit to promote sales in 658.88
   For servicing of products, see 658.812

.823  Use of packaging
   Class here packaging as a sales promotion device
   Class interdisciplinary works on packaging in 658.564

.827  Use of brands and trademarks
   Including producer and distributor brands
.83 Market research and analysis

Class here interviewing, use of consultants and research agencies, techniques of consulting in market research and analysis.

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the number coming first in the schedule, e.g., research in Germany on consumer preferences 658.8343 (not 658.83943)

Do not use for the results of market research and analysis; class in 380–382

For sales forecasting, see 658.818

.830 2 Miscellany

.830 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Use of this number for interviewing discontinued; class in 658.83

[.830 9] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 658.839

.834 Consumer research

[.834 019] Consumer psychology

Do not use; class in 658.8342

[.834 08] Consumer research with respect to kinds of persons

Do not use; class in 658.8348

.834 2 Consumer behavior (Consumer psychology)

Including motivation research

For consumer attitudes, preferences, reactions, see 658.8343

.834 3 Consumer attitudes, preferences, reactions

Including brand preferences

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all of the topics named in the heading

.834 8 Specific types of consumers

Examples: Blacks, children, low-income groups, occupational groups, women

.835 Market study

Determination of extent of demand; location, nature, identification of market; extent and nature of competition; types of sales effort needed

[.838] Market research on specific products

Relocated to specific subject with use of notation 0688 from Table 1, e.g., market research on clothing 687.0688
.839 Historical, geographical, persons treatment
   Add to base number 658.839 notation 01-9 from Table 2, e.g., market research in Germany 658.83943

.84 Channels of distribution
   Including auctions, direct-mail marketing, direct marketing, direct selling, fairs, markets, multilevel marketing, pyramid marketing, telemarketing, telephone selling, television selling
   Class personal selling through specific channels in 658.85, e.g. personal selling by telephone; marketing through wholesale channels in 658.86, through retail channels in 658.87; mail-order, telephone-order houses, television selling organizations in 658.872; direct-mail advertising in 659.133

.848 Export marketing (International trade)
   Including marketing to foreign buyers [formerly also 658.805]

.85 Personal selling (Salesmanship)
   Techniques for the individual, regardless of channel
   Including retail salesmanship
   Class comprehensive works on management of telephone selling in 658.84

.86 Marketing through wholesale channels
   Including jobbers, manufacturers’ outlets
   Class personal selling through wholesale channels in 658.85
   See also 658.8705 for manufacturers’ outlets as retail channels

.87 Marketing through retail channels
   Including apartment, garage, yard sales; shopping centers
   Use 658.87001–658.87009 for standard subdivisions
   Class personal selling through retail channels in 658.85

> 658.870 1–658.870 8 Retail channels by type of ownership and control
   Class comprehensive works in 658.87

   .870 1 Independent retail units
      Class independent consumer cooperatives in 658.8707

   .870 2 Corporate retail chains
      Class here comprehensive works on retail chain stores
      Class chain store consumer cooperatives in 658.8707
      For voluntary retail chains, see 658.8703

   .870 3 Voluntary retail chains

   .870 4 Sideline stores and markets

350
Management and auxiliary services

.870 5  Manufacturers' outlets

See also 658.86 for manufacturers' outlets as wholesale channels

.870 6  Branch stores

.870 7  Consumer cooperatives [formerly also 334.5068]

.870 8  Franchise businesses

> 658.871–658.879 Retail channels by merchandising pattern

Class comprehensive works in 658.87

.871  Department stores

.872  Mail-order houses and telephone-order houses

Including television selling organizations

Standard subdivisions are added for mail-order and telephone-order houses, for mail-order houses alone

See also 659.143 for television advertising

.873  Variety stores

.874  General stores

.875  Specialty shops

.876  Single-line outlets

.878  Supermarkets

.879  Discount stores

.88  Credit management

Including account security, collections, credit investigations

.882  Mercantile credit

.883  Consumer (Retail) credit

[.89]  Personal selling and retail marketing of specific goods and services

Relocated to specific subject with use of notation 0688 from Table 1, e.g., personal selling of insurance 368.00688

(.9)  Management of enterprises engaged in specific fields of activity

(Optional number; prefer specific subject with use of notation 068 from Table 1)

(.91)  Enterprises other than those engaged in extraction, manufacturing, construction

(Optional number; prefer specific subject with use of notation 068 from Table 1)

Add to base number 658.91 notation 001–999, e.g., management of banks 658.913321; however, class management of political campaigns in 324.7
658

Dewey Decimal Classification

658

(.92-.99) Enterprises engaged in extraction, manufacturing, construction

(Optional number; prefer specific subject with use of notation 068 from Table 1)

Add to base number 658.9 the numbers following 6 in 620-690, e.g., management of mines 658.922

659 Advertising and public relations

Class here publicity

See Manual at 658.8, T1—0688 vs. 659

SUMMARY

659.1 Advertising

.2 Public relations

.1 Advertising

Nonpersonal presentation and promotion of ideas, goods, services, paid for by an identified sponsor

SUMMARY

659.104 Special topics

.11 General topics

.13 Kinds

.14 Advertising by broadcast media

.15 Display advertising

.17 Advertising by contests and lotteries

.19 Advertising specific kinds of organizations, products, services

.104 Special topics

.104 2 Social aspects of advertising

.11 General topics

Class application of general topics to specific kinds of advertising in 659.13–659.17, to advertising specific kinds of organizations, products, services in 659.19

.111 Planning and control

Including decision making, goals, information

.112 Organization

Managerial organization only

See also 338.7616591 for economics and history of advertising organizations

.112 2 Advertising departments

.112 5 Advertising agencies

.113 Advertising campaigns
Kinds

Including specialty and entertainment advertising

General kinds

Class general kinds of advertising in specific media in 659.132–659.136

National (General) advertising

Retail advertising

Advertising directed to vocational uses

Examples: farm, industrial, professional, trade

See also 659.19 for advertising specific kinds of organizations, products, services

> 659.132–659.136 Advertising in specific media

Class comprehensive works in 659.13

For broadcast media, see 659.14; display advertising, 659.15; contests and lotteries, 659.17

Advertising in printed media

Including directory advertising

For direct advertising, see 659.133

Copywriting, art, layout, typography

Numbers discontinued; class in 659.132

Direct advertising

Printed advertising delivered or handed directly to consumer

Examples: broadsides, circulars, letters, mail-order catalogs

Including direct-mail advertising

Class direct-mail marketing in 658.84

Advertising by location of media

For point-of-sale advertising, see 659.157

Outdoor advertising

Examples: billboards, on-premise signs, painted displays, roadside signs

Class outdoor transportation advertising in 659.1344

For advertising by electric signs, see 659.136

Transportation advertising

Examples: airplane banners, car cards, traveling displays on exteriors of vehicles, station posters
.136 Advertising by electric signs
Use of this number for nonelectric spectacular signs discontinued; class in 659.13

.14 Advertising by broadcast media

.142 Radio

.143 Television
Class television selling as a channel of distribution in 658.84, television selling organizations in 658.872

.15 Display advertising
Including demonstrations

.152 Exhibitions and shows
Examples: fashion modeling, films

.157 Point-of-sale advertising
Examples: counter, showcase, wall, window displays

.17 Advertising by contests and lotteries
Class audience participation in contests in 790.134, in lotteries in 795

.19 Advertising specific kinds of organizations, products, services
Add to base number 659.19 notation 001–999, e.g., library advertising 659.1902
Class specific kinds of advertising regardless of kind of organization, product, service in 659.13–659.17

.2 Public relations
Planned and sustained effort to establish and maintain mutual understanding between an organization and its public
Use of this number for publicity discontinued; class in 659

.28 In specific kinds of organizations
Add to base number 659.28 the numbers following 658.04 in 658.041–658.049, e.g., corporations 659.285
Class public relations in organizations producing specific kinds of products and services regardless of kind of organization in 659.29

.29 In organizations producing specific kinds of products and services
Add to base number 659.29 notation 001–999, e.g., public welfare agencies 659.293616; however, class public relations in libraries in 021.7, in local Christian parish in 254.4
Chemical engineering and related technologies

Class military applications in 623

For pharmaceutical chemistry, see 615.19; pulp and paper technology, 676; elastomers and elastomer products, 678

SUMMARY

660.01-.09  Standard subdivisions
   .2-.7  [General topics in chemical engineering, biotechnology, industrial stoichiometry]
   661  Technology of industrial chemicals
   662  Technology of explosives, fuels, related products
   663  Beverage technology
   664  Food technology
   665  Technology of industrial oils, fats, waxes, gases
   666  Ceramic and allied technologies
   667  Cleaning, color, related technologies
   668  Technology of other organic products
   669  Metallurgy

.01  Philosophy and theory
   .011 5  Theory of communication and control
         Class process control in 660.2815

.02  Miscellany
   .028  Auxiliary techniques and procedures
         Class materials in 660.282, apparatus and equipment in 660.283

[.028 9]  Safety measures
         Do not use; class in 660.2804

.03  Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances

.04  Chemical technologies of specific states of matter
       Add to base number 660.04 the numbers following 530.4 in 530.41–530.44,
       e.g., plasma technology 660.044
       Class industrial gases in 665.7

.05-.09  Standard subdivisions

.2  General topics in chemical engineering
       Use of this number for comprehensive works on chemical engineering discontinued; class in 660
       For biochemical engineering, see 660.63; industrial stoichiometry, 660.7

.28  Specific types of chemical plant and specific activities in chemical plants
       Use of this number for comprehensive works on the chemical plant and its work discontinued; class in 660
.280 4 Safety measures

See Manual at 660.2804 vs. 604.7

.280 7 Specific types of chemical plant
.280 71 Bench-scale plants
.280 72 Pilot plants
.280 73 Full-scale plants

> 660.281–660.283 Process and materials

Class comprehensive works in 660.28; specific applications in unit operations in 660.2842, in unit processes in 660.2844

.281 Process design, assembly, control
.281 2 Process design
.281 5 Process control Computerized process control

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 660.2815 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital microcomputers 660.2815416, but use of digital computers 660.2815 (not 660.28154)

Class interdisciplinary works on computerized process control in 629.895

.282 Materials

.283 Process equipment

Examples: instruments, reactors

Including corrosion of equipment and its control

.284 Unit operations and unit processes

.284 2 Unit operations Transport phenomena engineering

Unit operations: operations basically physical

Class here separation processes

.284 22 Crushing, grinding, screening
.284 23 Mass transfer

Including absorption, adsorption, gas chromatography

For precipitation, filtration, solvent extraction, see 660.28424; fractional distillation, 660.28425

.284 24 Precipitation, filtration, solvent extraction
.284 245 Filtration
.284 248 Solvent extraction
.284 25 Fractional distillation
Evaporative and drying processes

For dehumidification of air and gas, see 660.28429

Heat transfer

Class a specific heat transfer process with the process, e.g., melting 660.284296

Other unit operations

Example: dehumidification of air and gas

Momentum transfer and fluidization

Including mixing

Humidification

Melting

Crystallization

Unit processes

Operations basically chemical

Add to base number 660.2844 the numbers following 547.2 in 547.21–547.29, e.g., fermentation 660.28449

Applied physical chemistry

Add to base number 660.29 the numbers following 541.3 in 541.33–541.39, e.g., catalytic reactions 660.2995; however, class absorption and adsorption in 660.28423; synthesis (e.g., addition, condensation, hydrolysis, oxidation, polymerization, reduction) and name reactions in 660.2844

Biotechnology

Application of living organisms or their biological systems or processes to the manufacture of useful products

Former heading: Industrial biology

See also 620.82 for human-factors engineering

Industrial microbiology

Use of microorganisms in genetic engineering relocated to 660.65

Class a specific aspect of industrial microbiology with the aspect, e.g., fermentation 660.28449, use of microorganisms in biochemical engineering 660.63

Biochemical engineering

Former heading: Industrial biochemistry

Enzyme technology

Genetic engineering

Including use of microorganisms in genetic engineering [formerly 660.62]

Industrial stoichiometry
661 Technology of industrial chemicals

Production of chemicals used as raw materials or reagents in manufacture of other products

Use 661.001–661.009 for standard subdivisions

Class industrial gases in 665.7

SUMMARY

661.03–.08 Compounds

.1 Nonmetallic elements

.2 Acids

.3 Bases

.4 Salts

.5 Ammonium salts

.6 Sulfur and nitrogen salts

.8 Organic chemicals

> 661.03–661.08 Compounds

Class comprehensive works in 661; acids, bases, salts in 661.2–661.6; organic compounds in 661.8

.03 Metallic compounds

Class metallic compounds other than those of alkali and alkaline-earth metals in 661.04–661.07

.038–.039 Alkali and alkaline-earth compounds

Add to base number 661.03 the numbers following 546.3 in 546.38–546.39, e.g., sodium compounds 661.0382

.04–.07 Other compounds

Add to base number 661.0 the numbers following 546 in 546.4–546.7, e.g., sulfur compounds 661.0723

For hydrogen compounds, see 661.08

.08 Hydrogen compounds

Examples: heavy water (deuterium oxide), hydrides

.1 Nonmetallic elements

Class gaseous elements in 665.8, carbon in 662.9

> 661.2–661.6 Acids, bases, salts

Class comprehensive works in 661; organic acids, bases, salts in 661.8

.2 Acids

.22 Sulfuric acid

.23 Hydrochloric acid
.24 Nitric acid
.25 Phosphoric acid

.3 Bases

Class here alkalis

.32 Sodas
.322 Caustic soda (Sodium hydroxide)
.323 Sodium bicarbonate
.324 Sodium carbonate

.33 Potash and other potassium alkalis
.332 Caustic potash (Potassium hydroxide)
.333 Potassium bicarbonate
.334 Potassium carbonate

.34 Ammonia and ammonium hydroxide

.35 Other alkalis

Examples: hydroxides and carbonates of cesium, francium, lithium, rubidium, alkaline-earth metals

.4 Salts

For ammonium salts, see 661.5; sulfur and nitrogen salts, 661.6

.42 Halogen salts
Contains chlorides, chlorites, chlorates, corresponding salts of other halogens

.43 Phosphorus and silicon salts
Contains phosphides, phosphites, phosphates, corresponding salts of silicon

.5 Ammonium salts

.6 Sulfur and nitrogen salts

For ammonium salts, see 661.5

.63 Sulfur salts
Contains sulfides, sulfites, sulfates

For plaster of paris, see 666.92

.65 Nitrogen salts
Contains nitrides, nitrites, nitrates

.8 Organic chemicals

Use 661.8001–661.8009 for standard subdivisions
> 661.802–661.804 Derived chemicals
   Class comprehensive works in 661.8
   .802 Cellulose derivatives
   .803 Coal tar chemicals
   .804 Petrochemicals
      Industrial chemicals produced from petroleum or natural gas, excluding fuels, lubricants, refinery residues (bottoms)
      Class petrochemicals in the sense of all refinery products and by-products of petroleum in 665.538
   .805 Synthetic chemicals

> 661.806–661.808 Special-purpose chemicals
   Class comprehensive works in 661.8
   .806 Essential oils
      Class essential oils used for manufacture of perfumes in 668.54
   .807 Solvents, diluents, extenders
   .808 Photographic chemicals and photosensitive surfaces
      Including sensitometry
      Class here comprehensive works on organic and inorganic photographic chemicals
      Class inorganic photographic chemicals in 661.1–661.6
   .81 Hydrocarbons
   .814 Aliphatic hydrocarbons
   .815 Alicyclic hydrocarbons
      Heterocyclic hydrocarbons discontinued because without meaning
   .816 Aromatic hydrocarbons
661.82–661.89 Compounds based on specific elements other than carbon

Add to each subdivision identified by * the numbers following 661.81 in 661.814–661.816, e.g., aliphatic esters 661.834

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of precedence, e.g., phosphoric acids 661.87 (not 661.86)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound Type</th>
<th>Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sulfur compounds</td>
<td>661.896</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphorus compounds</td>
<td>661.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silicon compounds</td>
<td>661.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organometallic compounds</td>
<td>661.895</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrogen compounds</td>
<td>661.894</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxy and hydroxy compounds</td>
<td>661.82–.86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halogenated compounds</td>
<td>661.891</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Class comprehensive works in 661.8

661.82–661.86 Oxy and hydroxy compounds

Class comprehensive works in 661.8

.82 *Alcohols and phenols

For glycerin, see 668.2

.83 *Esters

.84 *Ethers

.85 *Aldehydes and ketones

.86 *Acids

.87 *Phosphorus compounds

.88 *Silicon compounds

.89 Other compounds

.891 *Halogenated compounds

.894 *Nitrogen compounds

.895 *Organometallic compounds

.896 *Sulfur compounds

662 Technology of explosives, fuels, related products

.1 Fireworks (Pyrotechnics)

*Add as instructed under 661.82–661.89
.2 Explosives

Class nuclear explosives in 621.48

For fireworks, see 662.1

.26 Propellants

Examples: black powder (gunpowder), cordite, flashless and coated powders, nitrocellulose (guncotton), smokeless powder

Class here low (deflagrating) explosives

For rocket propellants, see 662.666

.27 High explosives

Examples: ammonium picrate and chlorate, dynamite, HMTD (hexamethylenetriperoxidediamine), nitroglycerin, nitroguanidine, PETN (pentaerythrite tetrinitrate), RDX (cyclonite), tetryl, TNT (trinitrotoluene)

Including primary explosives, e.g., diazonitrophenol, lead azide and picate, mercury fulminate

.4 Detonators

Examples: boosters, firing mechanisms, fuses, percussion caps, primers

Class explosives used in detonators in 662.27

.5 Matches

.6 Fuels

Class industrial oils, fats, waxes, gases as fuels in 665; other fuels not provided for here in 662.8

See also 621.4023 for combustion of fuels

See Manual at 622.7, 622.22 vs. 669, 662.6

.62 Coal

For coke, see 662.72

[.620 287] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 662.622

.622 Properties, tests, analysis

.622 09 Historical and persons treatment

Class properties, tests, analysis of coal from specific places in 662.6229

.622 1-.622 5 Properties, tests, analysis of specific types of coal

Add to base number 662.622 the numbers following 553.2 in 553.21–553.25, e.g., analysis of bituminous coal 662.6224

.622 9 Properties, tests, analysis of coal from specific places

Add to base number 662.6229 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., properties of Virginia coal 662.6229755

Class specific types of coal regardless of place in 662.6221–662.6225
.623 Treatment
   Examples: desulfuration, sizing, washing; conversion to slurry, slurry dewatering

.624 Storage, transportation, distribution

.625 Uses
   Examples: as a fuel, as a raw material
   Class a specific use with the use, e.g., metallurgical use 669.81

.65 Wood and wood derivatives
   Examples: sawdust, wood briquettes, wood scraps
   Use of this number for nonwood briquettes discontinued; class in 662.6
   Bagasse relocated to 662.88
   For charcoal, see 662.74

.66 Synthetic fuels
   Class synthetic fuel gases in 665.77

.662 Synthetic petroleum
   .662.2 Production through hydrogenation and liquefaction of coal
      Including Bergius process
      Class production from coal gas in 662.6623
   .662.3 Production through hydrogenation of carbonaceous gases
      Example: Fischer-Tropsch processes

.666 Rocket fuels (Rocket propellants)
   Liquid and solid

.669 Other liquid fuels
   Examples: benzene from waste products, gasohol, other fuel alcohols

.7 Coke and charcoal
   .72 Coke
   .74 Charcoal

.8 Other fuels
   .82 Colloidal and mud fuels
   .86 High-energy boron fuels
Wastes as fuels

Class here comprehensive works on the chemical technology of energy from waste materials

Class interdisciplinary works on energy from waste materials in 333.7938; waste biomass as fuel in 662.88; a specific form of energy from waste materials with the form, e.g., benzene made from waste products 662.669

Biomass as fuel

Example: bagasse [formerly 662.65]

Class here plant biomass as fuel, comprehensive works on the chemical technology of biomass as fuel

Class interdisciplinary works on biomass as fuel in 333.9539

For wood and wood derivatives, see 662.65

See also 665.776 for industrial gases manufactured from biological wastes

Nonfuel carbons

Graphite and graphite products

Adsorbent carbons

Examples: activated carbons, adsorbent charcoals, animal black, bone char, carbon black, decolorizing carbons, lampblack

Beverage technology

Commercial preparation, preservation, packaging

Class interdisciplinary works on beverages in 641.2, household preparation of beverages in 641.87

SUMMARY

663.1 Alcoholic beverages
    .2 Wine and wine making
    .3 Brewed and malted beverages
    .4 Specific kinds of brewed and malted beverages
    .5 Distilled liquors
    .6 Nonalcoholic beverages
    .9 Nonalcoholic brewed beverages

Alcoholic beverages

For wine and wine making, see 663.2; brewed and malted beverages, 663.3; distilled liquors, 663.5

.102 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Class materials in 663.11

Materials

Preliminary preparations

Fermentation
.2 Wine and wine making
Including fermented cider
Class here grape wine
Class mead (honey wine) in 663.4, sake (rice wine) in 663.49

.200.1 Philosophy and theory
.200.2 Miscellany
.200.28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment
Class materials in 663.201

.200.3-.200.9 Standard subdivisions

.201-.209 Materials, processes, operations
Class here materials, processes, operations for grape wine [formerly 663.2204]
Add to base number 663.20 the numbers following 663.1 in 663.11–663.19, e.g., fermentation 663.203

.22 Specific kinds of grape wine
Use of this number for comprehensive works on grape wine discontinued; class in 663.2

[.220.4] Materials, processes, operations for grape wine
Relocated to 663.201–663.209

.222 White wine
Class sparkling white wine in 663.224

.223 Red wine
Including rosé
Class sparkling red wine in 663.224

.224 Sparkling wine
White and red

.3 Brewed and malted beverages
For specific kinds of brewed and malted beverages, see 663.4

.302.8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment
Class materials in 663.31
.31-.39  Materials, processes, operations  
Add to base number 663.3 the numbers following 663.1 in 663.11–663.19, e.g., fermentation 663.33

.4  Specific kinds of brewed and malted beverages  
Class malt whiskey in 663.52

.42  Beer and ale

.49  Sake and pulque

.5  Distilled liquors  
Examples: mescal, tequila, potato whiskey, vodka

.500 1  Philosophy and theory

.500 2  Miscellany

.500 28  Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment  
Class materials in 663.501

.500 3-.500 9  Standard subdivisions

.501-.509  Materials, processes, operations  
Add to base number 663.50 the numbers following 663.1 in 663.11–663.19, e.g., distillation 663.506

.52  Grain whiskey  
Example: bourbon

.53  Brandy

.55  Compound liquors  
Distilled spirits flavored with various seeds, roots, leaves, flowers, fruits  
Examples: cordials (liqueurs), gin

.59  Rum  
Use of this number for other distilled liquors discontinued; class in 663.5

.6  N onalcoholic beverages  
For nonalcoholic brewed beverages, see 663.9; milk, 637.1

.61  Bottled drinking water  
Including carbonated water  
Class here potable mineral water

.62  Mineralized and carbonated beverages  
Class mineralized and carbonated water in 663.61

.63  Fruit and vegetable juices  
Class fermented cider in 663.2, carbonated juices in 663.62
.64 Milk substitutes
   Examples: coconut milk, nondairy coffee whiteners, soybean milk

.9 Nonalcoholic brewed beverages
   Aside from additions, changes, deletions, exceptions shown under specific entries, add to notation for each term identified by * as follows:
   028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment
   Class materials in 1
   1 Materials
   2 Preliminary preparations
   3 Fermentation and oxidation
   4 Firing, roasting, curing
   5 Blending
   7 Specific varieties
   8 Concentrates
   9 Packaging

.92 *Cocoa and *chocolate

.93 *Coffee

.94 *Tea

.96 Herb teas
   Examples: catnip, maté, sassafras, other aromatic and medicinal teas

.97 Coffee substitutes
   Examples: acorns, cereal preparations, chicory

664 Food technology
   Commercial preparation, preservation, packaging
   Class here comprehensive works on commercial food and beverage technology
   Class interdisciplinary works on food in 641.3; household preservation, storage, cooking in 641.4–641.8
   For processing dairy and related products, see 637; beverage technology, 663

SUMMARY

664.001–.009 Standard subdivisions
   .01–.09 [Materials, processes, operations, by-products]
   .1 Sugars, syrups, their derived products
   .2 Starches and jellying agents
   .3 Fats and oils
   .4 Food salts
   .5 Flavoring aids
   .6 Special-purpose food and aids
   .7 Grains, other seeds, their derived products
   .8 Fruits and vegetables
   .9 Meats and allied foods

*Add as instructed under 663.9
.001 Philosophy and theory
   Theory of communication and control
   Class process control in 664.02

.002 Miscellany
   Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment
   Class materials in 664.01
   Testing and measurement
   Do not use; class in 664.07

.003-.009 Standard subdivisions

.01 Materials
   \textit{For additives, see} 664.06

.02 Processes
   Class here process design, control, equipment

   .022 Extraction
   .023 Refining
   .024 Manufacturing processes
      Not provided for elsewhere
      Including fermentation
      Class here food biotechnology, food processing with microorganisms

   .028 Preservation techniques
      Class here interdisciplinary works on food preservation
      Class home preservation of foods in 641.4

   .028 1 Preliminary treatment
      Example: peeling
   .028 2 Canning
   .028 4 Drying and dehydrating
      By slow, thermal processes
      Through pulverizing and flaking
      By freeze-drying
   .028 5 Low-temperature techniques
      \textit{For freeze-drying, see} 664.02845
   .028 52 Cold storage
   .028 53 Deep freezing
664 Chemical engineering and related technologies 664

.028 6 Chemical preservation
  Examples: brining, pickling, smoking
  For chemical preservation by use of additives, see 664.0287

.028 7 Chemical preservation by use of additives

.028 8 Irradiation

.06 Additives
  Production, properties, use
  Example: food colors
  Class flavoring aids in 664.5
  For chemical preservation by use of additives, see 664.0287

.07 Tests, analyses, quality controls
  For color, contaminants, flavor, odor, texture
  Example: grading
  Class tests, analyses, quality controls of additives in 664.06

.08 By-products

.09 Packaging and waste control

.092 Packaging

.096 Waste control
  Class here pollution control

.1 Sugars, syrups, their derived products
  See also 664.5 for sugar substitutes

[.102 8] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment
  Do not use; class in 664.11

> 664.11–664.13 Sugars and syrups
  Class comprehensive works in 664.1

.11 Materials, techniques, processes, operations, equipment, by-products of
  sugars and syrups
  Class materials, techniques, processes, operations, equipment, by-products
  of specific sugars and syrups in 664.12–664.13

.111 Materials

.112 Preliminary preparations

.113 Extraction and purification

369
.114 Concentration
Production of syrup

.115 Crystallization
Production of sugar

.116 Additives

.117 Tests, analyses, quality controls
For color, contaminants, flavor, texture
Class tests, analyses, quality controls of additives in 664.116

.118 By-products
Example: molasses
Class utilization in 664.19

.119 Packaging and waste control
Class here pollution control

> 664.12–664.13 Specific sugars and syrups
Class comprehensive works in 664.1

.12 Cane and beet sugar and syrup

.122 Cane sugar and syrup

.122 028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment
Class materials in 664.1221

[.122 028 7] Testing and measurement
Do not use; class in 664.1227

.122 1–.122 9 Materials, processes, operations, by-products
Add to base number 664.122 the numbers following 664.11 in 664.111–664.119, e.g., cane molasses 664.1228; however, class auxiliary techniques and procedures, apparatus, equipment in 664.122028

.123 Beet sugar and syrup

.13 Other sugars and syrups
For honey, see 638.16

.132 Maple sugar and syrup

.133 Corn and sorghum sugars and syrups

.139 Jerusalem artichoke sugar and syrup
Sugar products

Jam, jelly, marmalade

Candy

Variant name: sweets

See also 664.6 for chewing gum

By-product utilization

Class a specific use with the use, e.g., molasses for rum 663.59

2 Starches and jellying agents

664.22–664.23 Starches

Class comprehensive works in 664.2

.22 Cornstarch and potato starch

.23 Cassava and arrowroot starches

.25 Jellying agents

Class here pectin

For gelatin, see 664.26

.26 Gelatin

3 Fats and oils

Class interdisciplinary works on animal fats and oils in 665.2, on vegetable fats and oils in 665.3

.32 Margarine

.34 Lard

.36 Salad and cooking oils

.362 Olive oil

.363 Cottonseed oil

.369 Other fats and oils

Examples: corn, peanut, safflower, sesame, soybean oils

Class peanut butter in 664.8056596

.37 Salad dressings

Examples: French dressing, mayonnaise

4 Food salts

Examples: monosodium glutamate, table salt, tenderizers, sodium-free and other dietetic salts

Class comprehensive works on food flavoring aids in 664.5
.5  **Flavoring aids**

Examples: chocolate, sugar substitutes

Class here condiments

Class a specific flavoring aid not provided for here with the aid, e.g., sugar 664.1; flavoring aids in a specific kind of food with the kind of food, e.g., chocolate candies 664.153

*For food salts, see 664.4*

.52–.54  **Essences and spices**

Add to base number 664.5 the numbers following 633.8 in 633.82–633.84, e.g., vanilla extract 664.52

.55  **Vinegar**

.58  **Composites**

Examples: catsup, chutney, sauces

Class salad dressings in 664.37

.6  **Special-purpose food and aids**

Examples: chewing gum, snack food

Class food salts in 664.4, other special-purpose flavoring aids in 664.5

> 664.62–664.66  **Special-purpose food**

Class comprehensive works in 664.6; a specific food with the food, e.g., vegetables 664.8

.62  **Baby food**

.63  **Low-calorie food**

.64  **Meatless high-protein food**

Including synthetic meat

.65  **Composites**

Examples: complete meals, packaged ingredients for complete recipes

Class packaged ingredients for recipes based on a specific kind of food with the kind, e.g., mixes and prepared doughs for bakery goods 664.753

.66  **Food for animals**

Class here pet food

Class animal feed made from grains and other seeds in 664.76

.68  **Leavening agents and baking aids**

Examples: baking powder, baking soda, cream of tartar, yeast
.7 Grains, other seeds, their derived products

Class sugars and syrups from grain and other seeds in 664.1, starches and jellying agents from grain and other seeds in 664.2, fats and oils from grains and other seeds in 664.3

.72 Milling and milling products

For animal feeds, see 664.76

.720 01 Philosophy and theory
.720 02 Miscellany

[.720 028 7] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 664.7204

.720 03-.720 09 Standard subdivisions
.720 1 Preliminary treatment
.720 3 Grinding and deflaking
.720 4 Sifting, grading, quality controls
.720 7 Products

Examples: flour, meal, refined grain

See also 664.7208 for by-products

.720 8 By-products

Examples: bran, siftings

.720 9 Packaging and waste control

Class here pollution control

.722 Wheat

.722 7 Products

See also 664.7228 for by-products

.722 72 Flour
.722 73 Meal
.722 8 By-products

Examples: bran, siftings

.725 Other cereal grains and their flours, meals, by-products

Examples: buckwheat, corn, millet, oats, rice, rye

.726 Other seeds and their flours and meals

Examples: cottonseeds, sunflowers; flours and meals of nuts, peanuts, soybeans

Class comprehensive works on commercial processing of nuts in 664.8045, of legumes in 664.80565
.75 Secondary products
.752 Bakery goods
  Examples: biscuits (United States), crackers
  Class mixes and prepared doughs for bakery goods in 664.753
.752 3 Breads
.752 5 Pastries
  Examples: cakes, cookies (biscuits [United Kingdom]), pies
.753 Mixes and prepared doughs
  Examples: biscuit, cake, pancake mixes
.755 Pastas
  Examples: macaroni, noodles, spaghetti, vermicelli
.756 Ready-to-eat cereals
.76 Animal feeds
  Class comprehensive works on foods for animals in 664.66
.762 Cereal grains
  Individual grains and mixtures
  Class formula feeds in 664.768
.763 Other seeds
  Individual seeds and mixtures
  Class formula feeds in 664.768
.764 Cereal grain and seed mixtures
.768 Formula feeds
  Cakes, flakes, granules, pellets, powders basically of cereal grains and
  other seeds and fortified with vitamins and minerals

.8 Fruits and vegetables
  Class a specific product derived from fruits and vegetables with the product,
  e.g., jams 664.152, fats and oils 664.3
.800 1 Philosophy and theory
.800 2 Miscellany
[.800 287]  Testing and measurement
  Do not use; class in 664.807
.800 3-.800 9 Standard subdivisions
.804 Specific fruits and groups of fruits
  Add to base number 664.804 the numbers following 634 in 634.1–634.8,
  e.g., citrus fruit 664.804304, nuts 664.8045
.805 Specific vegetables and groups of vegetables

Add to base number 664.805 the numbers following 635 in 635.1–635.8, e.g., salad greens 664.8055

.806–.809 Additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging, waste control

Add to base number 664.80 the numbers following 664.0 in 664.06–664.09, e.g., packaging vegetables 664.8092

Class additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging, waste control applied to specific fruits and groups of fruits in 664.804, to specific vegetables and groups of vegetables in 664.805

See also 664.81–664.88 for preservation techniques

.81–.88 Preservation techniques

Add to base number 664.8 the numbers following 664.028 in 664.0281–664.0288, e.g., deep freezing fruits 664.853

Class preservation techniques applied to specific fruits and groups of fruits in 664.804, to specific vegetables and groups of vegetables in 664.805

.9 Meats and allied foods

.900 1 Philosophy and theory

.900 2 Miscellany

[.900 287] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 664.907

.900 3–.900 9 Standard subdivisions

.902 Preservation techniques, slaughtering, meat cutting

.902 8 Preservation techniques

Add to base number 664.9028 the numbers following 664.028 in 664.0281–664.0288, e.g., canning 664.90282

.902 9 Slaughtering and meat cutting

Standard subdivisions are used for either or both of the topics named in the heading

.906–.909 Additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging, waste control

Add to base number 664.90 the numbers following 664.0 in 664.06–664.09, e.g., packaging meats and allied foods 664.9092

Class additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging, waste control applied to specific meats or allied foods with the meat or food, e.g., packaging red meats 664.92992

See also 664.9028 for preservation techniques
.92  Red meat

[.920 287]  Testing and measurement

  Do not use; class in 664.9297

.921-.928  Preservation techniques

  Add to base number 664.92 the numbers following 664.028 in
  664.0281–664.0288, e.g., canning red meat 664.922

  Subdivisions are added for specific red meats, e.g., canning beef 664.922

.929  Additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging, waste control

  Add to base number 664.929 the numbers following 664.0 in
  664.06–664.09, e.g., packaging red meat 664.92992

  Subdivisions are added for specific red meats, e.g., packaging beef
  664.92992

  See also 664.921–664.928 for preservation techniques

.93  Poultry

[.930 287]  Testing and measurement

  Do not use; class in 664.9397

.931-.938  Preservation techniques

  Add to base number 664.93 the numbers following 664.028 in
  664.0281–664.0288, e.g., deep freezing 664.9353

  Subdivisions are added for specific kinds of poultry, e.g., deep freezing
  turkeys 664.9353

.939  Additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging, waste control

  Add to base number 664.939 the numbers following 664.0 in
  664.06–664.09, e.g., poultry by-products 664.9398

  Subdivisions are added for specific kinds of poultry, e.g., turkey
  by-products 664.9398

  See also 664.931–664.938 for preservation techniques

.94  Fish and shellfish

  Class here seafood

[.940 287]  Testing and measurement

  Do not use; class in 664.9497

.941-.948  Preservation techniques

  Add to base number 664.94 the numbers following 664.028 in
  664.0281–664.0288, e.g., canning seafood 664.942

  Subdivisions are not added for specific kinds of fish and shellfish, e.g.,
  canning oysters 664.94 (not 664.942)
.949 Additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging, waste control

Add to base number 664.949 the numbers following 664.0 in 664.06–664.09, e.g., quality controls for seafood 664.9497

Subdivisions are not added for specific kinds of fish and shellfish, e.g., quality controls for catfish 664.94 (not 664.9497)

See also 664.941–664.948 for preservation techniques

.95 Other meats and allied foods
Examples: frogs, turtles, snails, insects

665 Technology of industrial oils, fats, waxes, gases
Class here nonvolatile, lubricating, saponifying oils, fats, waxes

SUMMARY

665.028 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
.1 Waxes
.2 Animal fats and oils
.3 Vegetable fats and oils
.4 Mineral oils and waxes
.5 Petroleum
.7 Natural gas and manufactured industrial gases
.8 Other industrial gases

.028 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

.028 2 Extraction
Examples: pressurizing, rendering, steam distilling

.028 3 Refining
Examples: bleaching, blending, coloring, fractionating, purifying

.028 7 Maintenance and repair
Do not use for testing and measurement; class in 665.0288

.028 8 Tests, analyses, quality controls
Do not use for maintenance and repair; class in 665.0287

.1 Waxes
Class polishing waxes in 667.72

For mineral waxes, see 665.4

.12 Vegetable waxes
Examples: bayberry, candleberry, carnauba, laurel, myrtle waxes

.13 Animal waxes
Examples: lanolin (wool wax), spermaceti

For beeswax, see 638.17
.19 Blended waxes

.2 Animal fats and oils
   Examples: fish, neat's-foot, whale oils; tallow
   Class here interdisciplinary works on animal fats and oils
   Class animal fats and oils used in food or food preparation in 664.3
   See also 665.13 for spermaceti

.3 Vegetable fats and oils
   Class here comprehensive works on vegetable fats and oils
   Class vegetable fats and oils used in food and food preparation in 664.3

.33 Wood oil

.332 Crude turpentine
   Class turpentine oils in 661.806

.333 Tung oil (Chinese wood oil)

.35 Seed oils
   For tung oil, see 665.333

.352 Linseed oil (Flaxseed oil)

.353 Castor oil

.354 Cocoa butter (Cacao butter)

.355 Coconut oil

.4 Mineral oils and waxes
   Examples: natural asphalt, shale oil, tar sand
   For petroleum, see 665.5

.5 Petroleum
   Class here comprehensive works on petroleum and natural gas
   Class synthetic petroleum in 662.662
   For natural gas, see 665.7

.502 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
   Class refinery techniques in 665.53

.53 Refinery treatment and products
   Class preliminary refining of oil sands and oil shale to obtain distillable fluids in 665.4

.532 Fractional distillation
665  Chemical engineering and related technologies  665

.533  Cracking processes
   Examples: thermal and catalytic cracking, hydrogenation of residual petroleum distillates

.534  Purification and blending of distillates

.538  Refinery products and by-products
   Including waste products
   For petrochemicals, see 661.804

.538 2  Highly volatile products

.538 24  Low-boiling naphthas

.538 25  Aviation fuel
   Examples: high-octane-rating gasoline, jet and turbojet fuel
   Class comprehensive works on gasoline in 665.53827

.538 27  Gasoline
   For high-octane-rating gasoline, see 665.53825

.538 3  Kerosene
   For jet and turbojet fuel, see 665.53825

.538 4  Heavy fuel oil
   Examples: absorber oil, diesel fuel, gas oil, heating oil

.538 5  Lubricating oil and grease
   Examples: paraffin wax and petrolatum

.538 8  Residues (Bottoms)
   Examples: asphalt, bunker and road oils, petroleum coke, pitch
   Class asphalt concrete in 666.893
   Unusable residues (wastes) are classed in 665.538

.538 9  Waste control
   Class here pollution control

.54  Storage, transportation, distribution

.542  Storage

.543  Transportation
   Example: by tankers
   For pipeline transportation, see 665.544

.544  Pipeline transportation

.55  Uses
   Class a specific use with the use, e.g., automobile engine lubricants 629.255
.7 Natural gas and manufactured industrial gases
   Class here comprehensive works on industrial gases
   Class industrial gases not provided for here in 665.8

.73 Processing natural gas
   Including extraction of helium

.74 Storage, transportation, distribution
   Storage
   Transportation
   
   For pipeline transportation, see 665.744

.744 Pipeline transportation

.75 Uses
   Class a specific use with the use, e.g., heating buildings 697.043

.77 Production of manufactured gases

.772 From coal and coke
   Examples: blast-furnace, carbureted-blue, city, coal, coke-oven, producer, water gases

.773 From petroleum and natural gas
   Examples: oil, refinery, reformed natural, reformed refinery, liquefied-hydrocarbon gases, e.g., butane, butene, pentane, propane, and their mixtures

.776 From biological wastes

.779 By mixing fuel gases from several sources

.78 Waste control
   Class here pollution control

.8 Other industrial gases
   For ammonia, see 661.34

.81 Hydrogen

.82 Gases derived from liquefaction and fractionation of air

.822 Noble gases
   Variant names: inert gases, rare gases
   Contains argon, helium, krypton, neon, radon, xenon
   Class extraction of helium from natural gases in 665.73

.823 Oxygen

.824 Nitrogen
665 Chemical engineering and related technologies

.83 Halogen gases
.84 Sulfur dioxide
.85 Acetylene
.89 Carbon dioxide, ozone, hydrogen sulfide

Use of this number for other gases discontinued; class in 665.8

666 Ceramic and allied technologies

Class here ceramic-to-metal bonding

SUMMARY

666.1 Glass
.2 Enamels
.3 Pottery
.4 Pottery processes and equipment
.5 Porcelain (China)
.6 Earthenware and stoneware
.7 Refractories and structural clay products
.8 Synthetic and artificial minerals and building materials
.9 Masonry adhesives

.1 Glass

[.102 8] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class apparatus, equipment, materials in 666.12, auxiliary techniques and procedures in 666.13

.104 Special topics

.104 2 Physicochemical phenomena occurring during glassmaking processes

Examples: phase and structural transformations

> 666.12–666.14 General topics

Class comprehensive works in 666.1, general topics of specific types of glass in 666.15, general topics of products in 666.19

.12 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

For auxiliary techniques and procedures, see 666.13

.121 Materials

> 666.122–666.129 Specific operations in glassmaking

Class comprehensive works in 666.12; tests, analyses, quality controls in 666.137

.122 Blowing

.123 Pressing

381
.124 Drawing
.125 Molding and casting
.126 Multiform processes
  Cold-molding glass powder under pressure, and firing at high
temperatures
.129 Annealing and tempering
.13 Auxiliary techniques and procedures
  Add to base number 666.13 the numbers following —028 in —0285–0289
  from Table 1, e.g., quality control in glassmaking 666.137
.14 Waste control
  Class here pollution control
.15 Specific types of glass
    See also 669.94 for metallic glass
.152 Window glass
  Sheet glass that differs from plate glass primarily in being annealed more
  quickly and in not being ground and polished
.153 Plate glass
  Class laminated plate glass in 666.154
.154 Laminated glass
.155 Heat-resistant glass
.156 Optical glass
.157 Fiber glass and foam glass
.19 Products
.192 Bottles

.2 Enamels

.3 Pottery
  Class here comprehensive works on clay technology
  Pottery in the narrow sense of earthenware is classed in 666.6
    For specific types of pottery, see 666.5–666.6; structural clay products,
    666.73

[.301–.309] Standard subdivisions
  Do not use; class in 666.31–666.39

382
.31-.39 Standard subdivisions

Add to base number 666.3 the numbers following —0 in notation 01—09 from Table 1, e.g., pottery dictionaries 666.33; however, class auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials in 666.4

.4 Pottery processes and equipment

Add to base number 666.4 the numbers following 738.1 in 738.12–738.15, e.g.,
kilns 666.43

> 666.5–666.6 Specific types of pottery

Class comprehensive works in 666.3

.5 Porcelain

.58 Specific products

Examples: figurines, tableware, vases

.6 Earthenware and stoneware

.68 Specific products

Examples: containers, figurines, industrial products, tableware

.7 Refractories and structural clay products

.72 Refractory materials

Examples: alumina, asbestos, chrome, fireclays, mica, talc, zirconia

.73 Structural clay products

.732 Roofing tiles

.733 Tile drains and piping

.737 Bricks

For hollow and perforated bricks, see 666.738

.738 Hollow and perforated bricks

.8 Synthetic and artificial minerals and building materials

.86 Synthetic and artificial minerals

Examples: cryolite, feldspar, graphite, mica

For synthetic and artificial gems and gem minerals, see 666.88

.88 Synthetic and artificial gems and gem minerals

Examples: diamonds, garnets, rubies, sapphires
666 Dewey Decimal Classification 666

.89 Synthetic building materials
   For structural clay products, see 666.73

.893 Concrete
   Examples: asphalt concrete, ready-mix concrete
   Class concrete blocks in 666.894

.894 Hollow concrete and cinder blocks
   Class here comprehensive works on concrete blocks
   For solid concrete blocks, see 666.895

.895 Solid concrete blocks

.9 Masonry adhesives
   Class concrete in 666.893

.92 Gypsum plasters
   Examples: Keene’s cement, plaster of paris

.93 Lime mortars

.94 Portland cement

.95 Other cements
   Examples: high-alumina cement, magnesia

667 Cleaning, color, related technologies

.1 Cleaning and bleaching
   Of textiles, leathers, furs, feathers

.12 Dry cleaning
   Including manufacture of dry-cleaning materials

.13 Laundering and finishing operations
   See also 668.12 for soaps, 668.14 for detergents

.14 Bleaching
   Including manufacture of bleaching materials

.2 Dyes and pigments

> 667.25–667.26 Dyes
   Class comprehensive works in 667.2

.25 Synthetic dyes

.252 Nitro and nitroso dyes

.253 Azo-oxy and azo-tetrazo dyes

.254 Di- and triphenylmethane dyes
Hydroxyketone dyes  
Examples: alizarines, quinoidals

Indigoid dyes  
See also 667.26 for indigo

Natural dyes  
Example: indigo

Pigments

Dyeing and printing  
For dyes, see 667.25–667.26

Dyeing specific textiles  
Add to base number 667.3 the numbers following 677 in 677.1–677.5, e.g.,  
dyeing nylon 667.3473

Control of waste from dyeing processes  
Class here pollution control

Textile printing

Inks  
For printing ink, see 667.5

Printing ink

Paints  
Class here paint removers

Oil-soluble paint

Oils, driers, plasticizers

Pigments and extenders  
For carbon black, see 662.93

Diluents (Thinners)

Water-soluble paint  
Examples: latex paint, whitewash

Special-purpose paints  
Examples: fire-resistant, luminous, rust-resistant paints

Polishes, lacquers, varnishes

Polishes

Lacquers
.79 Varnishes

Examples: shellac, spar varnish

Class here spirit varnishes

*For japans, see 667.8*

.8 Japans

.9 Coating and coatings

Methods and materials for producing protective and decorative coatings

Examples: dipping, metalling, painting, spraying, varnishing

Including sign painting

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both of the topics named in the heading

Class a specific application with the application, e.g., painting automobiles 629.26, buildings 698.1; a specific coating with the coating, e.g., varnishes 667.79

668 Technology of other organic products

**SUMMARY**

668.1 Surface-active materials (Surfactants)

.2 Glycerin

.3 Adhesives and related products

.4 Plastics

.5 Perfumes and cosmetics

.6 Agricultural chemicals and related products

.9 Polymers

.1 Surface-active materials (Surfactants)

.12 Soaps

.124 Soluble soaps

Examples: liquid concentrates, powders

.125 Insoluble soaps (Metallic soaps)

Examples: oleates and stearates of aluminum

.127 Scouring compounds

.14 Detergents and wetting agents

Nonsoap materials that manifest surface activity

Examples: fatty-alcohol sulfates, sulfated oils and hydrocarbons

.2 Glycerin

.3 Adhesives and related products

*For masonry adhesives, see 666.9*
Specific kinds of adhesives

Class comprehensive works in 668.3, products made from specific kinds of adhesives in 668.38

Synthetic glue

Animal glue

Example: casein glue

Vegetable glue

Example: mucilage

See also 668.37 for gum

Crude gelatin

Gum and resin

Natural gum and resin

See also 668.33 for mucilage

Synthetic gum and resin

Example: epoxy resin

Products made from adhesives

Example: tape

Class here sealants

Plastics [formerly also 547.8432]

SUMMARY

Special topics

Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Polymerization plastics

Protein plastics

Cellulosics

Plastics from natural resins

Forms and products

Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 668.41

Special topics

Physicochemical phenomena of plastics manufacture

Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class application to specific kinds of plastics in 668.42–668.45, application to forms and products in 668.49

Materials

Examples: fillers, plasticizers
> 668.412–668.419 Specific operations
   Class comprehensive works in 668.41
      .412 Molding and casting
      .413 Extrusion
      .414 Laminating
      .415 Welding
      .416 Reinforcing
      .419 Auxiliary techniques and procedures
         .419 2 Waste control
            Class here pollution control
      .419 5–.419 9 Miscellaneous auxiliary techniques and procedures
         Add to base number 668.419 the numbers following —028 in —0285–0289 from Table 1, e.g., quality control in plastics manufacture 668.4197

> 668.42–668.45 Specific kinds of plastics
   Class comprehensive works in 668.4, forms and products of specific kinds of plastics in 668.49
      .42 Polymerization plastics
         .422 Thermosetting plastics
            .422 2 Phenolics
            .422 3 Ureas
            .422 4 Melamines
            .422 5 Polyesters
               Example: polyurethanes
            Class comprehensive works on polyurethanes in 668.4239
            .422 6 Epoxies
            .422 7 Silicones
      .423 Thermoplastic plastics
         Examples: acetics, acetates, butyrates, polycarbonates, polyethers
            .423 2 Acrylics (Polyacrylics)
            .423 3 Styrenes (Polystyrenes)
Chemical engineering and related technologies

- Polyolefins
  Examples: polyethylenes, polyisobutylens, polypropylenes

- Polyamides (Nylons)

- Vinyls (Polyvinyls)

- Vinylidene chlorides

- Polyfluoro hydrocarbons

- Polyurethanes
  Class here comprehensive works on polyurethanes
  Class polyurethane rubber in 678.72

  For thermosetting polyurethanes, see 668.4225

- Protein plastics
  Example: plastics derived from casein

- Cellulosics
  Example: celluloid

- Plastics from natural resins
  Example: lignin-derived plastics
  For protein plastics, see 668.43

- Forms and products
  Class plastic fibers and fabrics in 677.46–677.47

> 668.492–668.495 Specific forms
  Class comprehensive works in 668.49

- Laminated plastic

- Foamed plastics
  Example: structural foam

- Reinforced plastic

- Plastic films

- Containers

.5 Perfumes and cosmetics

- Perfumes

- Natural perfumes
  Examples: floral oils and waters

- Synthetic perfumes
668

Dewey Decimal Classification

668

.55 Cosmetics

.6 Agricultural chemicals and related products

.62 Fertilizers

Add to base number 668.62 the numbers following 631.8 in 631.83–631.85, e.g., superphosphates 668.625

For organic fertilizers, see 668.63

.63 Organic fertilizers

Add to base number 668.63 the numbers following 631.8 in 631.86–631.87, e.g., manufacture of fertilizers from animal wastes 668.636 [formerly 628.7461], converting household garbage 668.637

.64 Soil conditioners

Manufactured and organic

.65 Pesticides

.651 Insecticides, rodenticides, vermicides

.652 Fungicides and algicides

.653 Bactericides

.654 Herbicides (Weed killers)

.9 Polymers

Class here synthetic polymers [formerly also 547.8427]

Class a specific application with the application, e.g., manufacture of nylon hosiery 687.3; a specific polymer with the polymer, e.g., plastics 668.4

669 Metallurgy

Class here alloys, extractive metallurgy, process metallurgy, interdisciplinary works on metals

Class a specific aspect of metals with the aspect, e.g., chemistry 546.3, metalworking and primary metal products 671

See Manual at 622.7, 622.22 vs. 669, 662.6: 669

SUMMARY

669.01–.09 Standard subdivisions

.1 Ferrous metals

.2 Precious, rare-earth, actinide-series metals

.3 Copper

.4 Lead

.5 Zinc and cadmium

.6 Tin

.7 Other nonferrous metals

.8 Metallurgical furnace technology

.9 Physical and chemical metallurgy

390
[.001] Philosophy and theory of metallurgy
   Relocated to 669.01

[.002] Miscellany of metallurgy
   Relocated to 669.02

[.003] Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of metallurgy
   Relocated to 669.03

[.005-.009] Standard subdivisions of metallurgy
   Relocated to 669.05-669.09

  .01 Philosophy and theory of metallurgy [formerly 669.001], of extractive metallurgy

  .02 Miscellany of metallurgy [formerly 669.002], of extractive metallurgy

  .028 Specific kinds of techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment
    Class materials in 669.042

  .028 2 Pyrometallurgy
    Extraction by smelting, roasting, other furnace methods
    Class electrical zone melting in 669.0284

  .028 3 Hydrometallurgy
    Extraction by leaching methods

  .028 4 Electrometallurgy
    Including electrical zone melting, vacuum metallurgy
    Class here electrorefining, electrowinning

  .03 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of metallurgy [formerly 669.003], of extractive metallurgy

  .04 Special topics of metallurgy, of extractive metallurgy

  .042 Materials
    Class here prepared ores and scrap metals
    Class furnace materials in 669.8

  .05-.09 Standard subdivisions of metallurgy [formerly 669.005-669.009], of extractive metallurgy

> 669.1-669.7 Metallurgy of specific metals and their alloys

Class comprehensive works in 669

For physical and chemical metallurgy of specific metals and their alloys, see 669.96
669

Dewey Decimal Classification

.1 Ferrous metals

.14 Reduction and refining of ferrous ores

Do not use standard subdivisions

Comprehensive works on production of iron and steel are classed in 669.1

.141 Production of iron

For production of ingot iron, see 669.1423

.141 3 Blast-furnace practice

Class here casting as a part of the refining process, production of pig iron and crude cast iron

Class iron casting as a metalworking process in 672.25, cast iron products in 672.8

.141 4 Puddling furnace practice

Class here production of wrought iron

.141 9 Other iron alloy practices

Including production of iron powder and sponge iron

.142 Production of steel

.142 2 Open-hearth furnace practice (Siemens process)

.142 3 Bessemer converter practice

Including production of duplex-process steel, ingot iron

.142 4 Electric furnace practice

Example: arc furnace practice

.142 9 Production of crucible steel

669.2–669.7 Nonferrous metals

Class comprehensive works in 669

.2 Precious, rare-earth, actinide-series metals

669.22–669.24 Precious metals

Class comprehensive works in 669.2

.22 Gold

.23 Silver

.24 Platinum

.29 Rare-earth and actinide-series metals

.290 01–.290 09 Standard subdivisions
Specific metals and groups of metals

Add to base number 669.29 the numbers following 546.4 in 546.401–546.44, e.g., uranium 669.2931

.3 Copper

Class here brass, Muntz metal; bronze, gunmetal; copper-aluminum alloys; copper-beryllium alloys

.4 Lead

.5 Zinc and cadmium

.52 Zinc

For brass, Muntz metal, see 669.3

.56 Cadmium

.6 Tin

For bronze, gunmetal, see 669.3

.7 Other nonferrous metals

Examples: iridium, osmium, palladium, rhodium, ruthenium; rhenium

See also 669.24 for platinum

.71 Mercury

.72 Light, alkali, alkaline-earth metals

Standard subdivisions are added for light, alkali, alkaline-earth metals; for light metals alone

For titanium, see 669.7322; for zirconium, 669.735

.722 Aluminum

For copper-aluminum alloys, see 669.3

.723 Magnesium

.724 Beryllium

For copper-beryllium alloys, see 669.3

.725 Alkali and alkaline-earth metals

Contains barium, calcium, cesium, francium, lithium, potassium, radium, rubidium, sodium, strontium

For magnesium, see 669.723; beryllium, 669.724

.73 Metals used in ferroalloys

.732 Titanium, vanadium, manganese

.7322 Titanium

.733 Nickel and cobalt

.7332 Nickel
.734 Chromium, molybdenum, tungsten
.735 Zirconium and tantalum
.75 Antimony, arsenic, bismuth
.79 Miscellaneous rare metals and metalloids
   Limited to gallium, hafnium, indium, niobium, polonium, thallium;
germanium, selenium, tellurium

.8 Metallurgical furnace technology
Class metallurgical furnace technology used for a specific metal with the metal,
e.g., nickel 669.7332
.802 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
   Class refractory material in 669.82
.81 Fuel
.82 Refractory material
   Class comprehensive works on refractory materials in 666.72
.83 Firing and heat control
.84 Fluxes and slag
.85 Physical processes
   Example: heat exchange

.9 Physical and chemical metallurgy
Physical and chemical phenomena occurring during metallurgical processes;
physical and chemical analyses of metals; formation of alloys
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both of the topics named in the
heading
Class metalworking and manufacture of primary metal products in 671–673
.92 Chemical analysis
   Including assaying
   Class chemical analysis of specific metals and their alloys in 669.96
.94 Physicochemical metallurgical phenomena
   Examples: alloy binary systems, intermetallic compounds, metallic glass,
solid solutions, solidification
   Including phase diagrams
   Class physicochemical metallurgical phenomena of specific metals and their
alloys in 669.96
### Chemical engineering and related technologies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.95</th>
<th>Metallography</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.950 28</td>
<td>Specific kinds of techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.950 282</td>
<td>Microscopical metallography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Optical and electron metallography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.950 283</td>
<td>X-ray metallography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.951–.957</td>
<td>Of specific metals and their alloys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Add to base number 669.95 the numbers following 669 in 669.1–669.7, e.g., aluminum 669.95722</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.96</td>
<td>Physical and chemical metallurgy of specific metals and their alloys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Add to base number 669.96 the numbers following 669 in 669.1–669.7, e.g., titanium 669.967322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For metallography of specific metals and their alloys, see 669.951–669.957</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Manufacturing

**General aspects: planning, design, fabrication**

Class here manufactured products

Class manufacture of products based on specific branches of engineering in 620, on chemical technologies in 660; military applications in 623; the arts in 700; manufacture of final products for specific uses not provided for elsewhere, in 680

Unless separate provision is made, class comprehensive works on products made by a specific process with the process, e.g., seasoned wood 674.38; but coated papers 676.283 (not 676.235)

**SUMMARY**

#### Standard subdivisions

| 670.1–.9 | Metalworking processes and primary metal products |
| 671 | Iron, steel, other iron alloys |
| 672 | Nonferrous metals |
| 673 | Lumber processing, wood products, cork |
| 674 | Leather and fur processing |
| 675 | Pulp and paper technology |
| 676 | Textiles |
| 677 | Elastomers and elastomer products |
| 678 | Other products of specific kinds of materials |

#### Data processing

**Computer applications**

Class here computer-aided design/computer-aided manufacture (CAD/CAM), comprehensive works on computer use in the management of manufacturing and computer-aided design or computer-aided manufacture

Class computer-aided design (CAD) in 620.00420285, computer use in the management of manufacturing in 658.05, computer-aided manufacture (CAM) in 670.427

See Manual at 670.285 vs. 670.427

395
.4 Special topics

.42 Factory operations engineering

Class here shop and assembly-line technology

*For tools and fabricating equipment, see 621.9; packaging technology, 688.8*

 [.420 685] Management of factory operations

Do not use; class in 658.5

.423 Machine-shop practice

.425 Inspection technology

.427 Mechanization and automation of factory operations

Class here assembling machines, computer-aided manufacture (CAM), computer control of factory operations

Class computer-aided design (CAD) in 620.00420285; comprehensive works on computer control in 629.89; computer-aided design/computer-aided manufacture (CAD/CAM), computer integrated manufacturing systems (CIM) in 670.285; automated machine-shop practice in 670.423; automated inspection technology in 670.425

*See Manual at 670.285 vs. 670.427*

.427 2 Robots

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 670.4272 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital microcomputers 670.4272416, but use of digital computers 670.4272 (not 670.42724)

.427 5 Computerized process control

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 670.4275 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital microcomputers 670.4275416, but use of digital computers 670.4275 (not 670.42754)

Class comprehensive works on computerized process control in 629.895

 [.685] Management of production

Do not use; class in 658.5

> 671–679 Manufacture of products from specific materials

Class here manufacture of primary products

Class comprehensive works in 670; manufacture of ceramic products in 666, of plastic products in 668.49

*See Manual at 671–679 vs. 680*

671 Metalworking processes and primary metal products

Class metallurgy and interdisciplinary works on metals in 669

*For iron, steel, other iron alloys, see 672; nonferrous metals, 673*
SUMMARY
671.2 Foundry practice (Casting)
.3 Mechanical working and related processes
.4 Electroforming of metals
.5 Joining and cutting of metals
.7 Finishing and surface treatment of metals
.8 Primary products

> 671.2–671.7 Specific metalworking processes

Class comprehensive works in 671, specific processes applied to specific primary products in 671.8

.2 Foundry practice (Casting)

See also 671.32–671.34 for hot-working operations

.202 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; materials

Class apparatus and equipment in 671.22

.22 Foundry equipment

.23 Patternmaking and moldmaking

.24 Melting

.25 Specific methods of casting

.252 Sand casting

.253 Permanent-mold casting

Example: die casting

.254 Centrifugal casting

.255 Investment casting

Variant names: cire perdue, lost-wax, precision casting

.256 Continuous casting

.3 Mechanical working and related processes

> 671.32–671.34 Mechanical working

Class here hot-working operations, cold-working operations, high-energy forming

Class comprehensive works in 671.3

For shot peening, see 671.36

.32 Rolling

.33 Pressing, stamping, forging

.332 Forging
Extruding and drawing

Machining

Including grinding

Class here cutting as a machining process, milling

Class comprehensive works on cutting metal in 671.35

Heat treatment and hardening

Age-hardening, annealing, shot peening, tempering

Powder metallurgical processes (Powder metallurgy)

Sintering

Electroforming of metals

Joining and cutting of metals

Welding

Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 671.520423

Special topics

Welds (Welded joints)

Weldability, weld stability, weld defects

Inspection and testing

Electric welding

Arc welding

Resistance welding

Examples: flash, projection, seam, spot welding

Induction welding

Gas welding

Forge, thermit, flow welding

Cutting

Class cutting as a machining process in 671.35

Soldering and brazing

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both of the topics named in the heading

Bonding

Riveting
.7 Finishing and surface treatment of metals
   Examples: cleaning, deburring
   .72 Buffing and polishing
   .73 Coating
      Example: cladding
      Class enameling in 666.2
   .732 Electroplating
   .733 Hot-metal dipping
   .734 Metal spraying
   .735 Vapor plating (Vacuum deposition)
      Examples: vacuum metalizing, vapor-phase deposition
   .736 Diffusion coating

.8 Primary products
   Class here comprehensive works on metal products
   Class a specific metal product not provided for here with the product, e.g.,
   metal furniture 684.105
   .82 Rolled products
   .821 Patternmaking
   .823 Strips and sheets
   .83 Forged, pressed, stamped products
   .832 Pipes
   .84 Extruded and drawn products
      Example: cables
   .842 Wires
   .87 Powder metal products

672 Iron, steel, other iron alloys
   Metalworking processes and primary products
   Add to base number 672 the numbers following 671 in 671.2–671.8, e.g., heat
   treatment 672.36, galvanizing 672.732
   Subdivisions are used for any or all of the topics named in the heading
   For small forge work, see 682
673 Nonferrous metals

Metalworking processes and primary products

Class here alloys of nonferrous metals

Add to each subdivision identified by * the numbers following the numbers following 671 in 671.2–671.8, e.g., welding aluminum 673.72252

.2 Precious, rare-earth, actinide-series metals

.22 *Gold

.23 *Silver

.24 *Platinum

.29 Rare-earth and actinide-series metals

.290 01–.290 09 Standard subdivisions

.290 1–.294 9 Specific metals and groups of metals

Add to base number 673.29 the numbers following 546.4 in 546.401–546.44, e.g., uranium 673.2931

.3 *Copper

Class here brass, Muntz metal; bronze, gunmetal; copper-aluminum alloys; copper-beryllium alloys

.4 *Lead

.5 Zinc and cadmium

.52 *Zinc

For brass, Muntz metal, see 673.3

.56 *Cadmium

.6 *Tin

For bronze, gunmetal, see 673.3

.7 Other nonferrous metals

Examples: iridium, palladium, rhodium

See also 673.24 for platinum

.71 *Mercury

.72 Light, alkali, alkaline-earth metals

Standard subdivisions are added for light, alkali, alkaline-earth metals; for light metals alone

For titanium, see 673.7322; for zirconium, 673.735

.722 *Aluminum

For copper-aluminum alloys, see 673.3

*Add as instructed under 673
Manufacturing

.723  *Magnesium
.724  *Beryllium

For copper-beryllium alloys, see 673.3

.725  Alkali and alkaline-earth metals
Contains barium, calcium, cesium, francium, lithium, potassium, radium, rubidium, sodium, strontium

For magnesium, see 673.723; beryllium, 673.724

.73  Metals used in ferroalloys
.732  Titanium, vanadium, manganese
.732  *Titanium
.733  Nickel and cobalt
.733  *Nickel
.734  Chromium, molybdenum, tungsten
.735  Zirconium and tantalum
.75  Antimony, arsenic, bismuth
.79  Miscellaneous rare metals and metalloids
Limited to gallium, hafnium, indium, niobium, polonium, thallium; germanium, selenium, tellurium

674  Lumber processing, wood products, cork
Use 674.001–674.009 for standard subdivisions

SUMMARY
674.01–.09  Standard subdivisions of lumber technology
.1  Structure, chemical properties, types of lumber
.2  Sawmill operations
.3  Storage and seasoning of lumber
.4  Production of finished lumber
.5  Grading lumber
.8  Wood products
.9  Cork

.01  Philosophy and theory of lumber technology
.02  Miscellany of lumber technology
.021  Tables and formulas
Class specifications in 674.5
.028  Testing and measurement
Class grading lumber in 674.5
.03–.09  Standard subdivisions of lumber technology

*Add as instructed under 673
674.1–674.5 Lumber technology

Class comprehensive works in 674

.1 Structure, chemical properties, types of lumber

.12 Structure

Gross and microscopic

.13 Chemical properties

Including chemical properties of wood extracts

[.132] Physical properties

Relocated to 620.12

[.134] Chemical properties

Number discontinued; class in 674.13

.14 Specific types

Class structure of specific types in 674.12, chemical properties of specific types in 674.13

.142 Hardwoods

Examples: basswood, beech, cherry, chestnut, elm, maple, oak, poplar

.144 Softwoods

Examples: cedar, cypress, fir, hemlock, larch, pine, redwood, spruce

.2 Sawmill operations

Class wood waste and residues in 674.84

.202 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

[formerly 674.22]

[.22] Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Use of this number for basic techniques and procedures discontinued; class in 674.2

Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials relocated to 674.2028

.28 Rough lumber

Class here dimension stock (cut stock)

Use of this number for comprehensive works on rough lumber, wood waste and residues discontinued; class in 674.2

.3 Storage and seasoning of lumber

.32 Storage in lumberyards
.38 Seasoning and drying
.382 By air
.384 In kiln
.386 By chemical treatment

.4 Production of finished lumber
.42 Production of surfaced lumber
By planing mills
.43 Production of pattern lumber
Examples: shiplap, sidings, tongue-and-groove products

.5 Grading lumber
Including inspection and specifications

.8 Wood products
Class here comprehensive works on wood-using technologies
Class a specific product or wood-using technology not provided for here with the product or technology, e.g., wood as a fuel 662.65, finished lumber 674.4, pulp and paper technology 676, wooden furniture 684.104, carpentry 694

.82 Containers and pallets
Examples: barrels, boxes, casks, crates

.83 Veneers and composite woods

.833 Veneers

> 674.834–674.836 Composites
Class comprehensive works in 674.83

.834 Plywood
See also 674.835 for specialty plywoods

.835 Laminated wood (Specialty plywoods, Sandwich panels)

.836 Particle board

.84 Wood waste and residues
Examples: excelsior, sawdust, wood flour and shavings
Class here pollution control
Class utilization of wood waste and residues in making a specific product with the product, e.g., particle board 674.836

.88 Other products
Examples: picture frames, signs, spools, toothpicks, wood-cased pencils, woodenware
.9   Cork

675  Leather and fur processing
     For leather and fur goods, see 685

.2   Processing of natural leather

 [.202 87]  Testing and measurement
          Do not use; class in 675.29

.22  Preliminary operations

          Examples: fleshing, unhairing (liming), bating hides and skins

.23  Tanning

.24  Dressing

.25  Finishing

          Examples: dyeing, embossing, glazing, production of patent leather

.29  Properties, tests, quality controls

.3   Fur processing

          Including manufacture of imitation furs

.4   Manufacture of imitation leathers

676  Pulp and paper technology

     Class here comprehensive works on paper and paper products

          See Manual at 676 vs. 676.1, 676.2

SUMMARY

676.04  Special topics

 .1   Pulp

 .2   Conversion of pulp into paper, and specific types of paper and paper
      products

 .3   Paper and paperboard containers

 .4   Purified pulp

 .5   Pulp by-products

 .7   Paper from man-made and noncellulosic fibers

 .04  Special topics

 .042  Waste control

          Class here comprehensive works on waste control for paper and paper
          products [formerly 676.26], pollution control

 .1   Pulp

          Class by-products in 676.5

          See Manual at 676 vs. 676.1, 676.2

 [.102 87]  Testing and measurement
          Do not use; class in 676.17
676.12–676.14 Specific pulps
Class comprehensive works in 676.1

*For purified pulp, see 676.4*

.12 Wood pulp

[.120 287] Testing and measurement
Do not use; class in 676.121

.121 Properties, tests, quality controls

676.122–676.127 Specific processes
Class comprehensive works in 676.12

*See Manual at 676 vs. 676.1, 676.2*

.122 Mechanical (Ground wood) process

.124 Soda process

.125 Sulfite process

.126 Sulfate (Kraft) process

.127 Semichemical process

.13 Rag pulp

.14 Other pulps
Examples: bagasse, bamboo, cornstalks, hemp, jute, straw

.142 Wastepaper
Class here paper recycling

.17 Properties, tests, quality controls
Class properties, tests, quality controls of specific pulps in 676.12–676.14

.18 Molded products and pulpboards

.182 Molded products

.183 Pulpboards
Examples: chip boards, fiberboards, wallboards

676.2–676.5 Pulp products
Class comprehensive works in 676

*For molded products and pulpboards, see 676.18*
.2 Conversion of pulp into paper, and specific types of paper and paper products

Use of this number for comprehensive works on paper and paper products discontinued; class in 676

Class paper recycling in 676.142

See Manual at 676 vs. 676.1, 676.2

 [.202 87] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 676.27

> 676.22–676.27 General topics

Class comprehensive works in 676.2, general topics of specific types of paper and paper products in 676.28

.22 Production by hand

.23 Specific processes of machine production

Materials and processes

Use of this number for comprehensive works on manufacture with machines discontinued; class in 676.2

See Manual at 676 vs. 676.1, 676.2

.232 Basic processes

.234 Finishing

Examples: calendering, coloring, creping, sizing

For coating, see 676.235

.235 Coating

 [.26] Waste control

Use of this number for waste control in conversion of pulp to paper discontinued; class in 676.2

Comprehensive works on waste control for paper and paper products relocated to 676.042

.27 Properties, tests, quality controls

.28 Specific types of paper and paper products

.280 27 Patents and identification marks

Example: watermarks

.282 Graphic arts paper

.282 3 Stationery

Including onionskin paper
.282 4 Book paper
   Class coated book paper in 676.283
.282 5 Drawing and art paper
.282 6 Currency paper
   Papers for printing money, bonds, securities
.283  Coated paper
.284  Specialty paper
   Tissue paper
      Examples: cleansing tissues, toilet paper
      Class onionskin paper in 676.2823
.284 4 Blotting and saturating paper
.284 5 Vulcanized and parchment papers
   See also 685 for parchment prepared from the skin of an animal
.284 8 Wallpaper
.286  Unsized paper
   Example: newsprint
.287  Wrapping and bag papers
   Examples: bogus wrapping, butcher paper, kraft wrapping, Manila paper
.288  Paperboard
   Examples: bristol board, cardboard, food board, pasteboard
.289  Roofing and building papers
   Paper and paperboard containers
.32  Boxes and cartons
      Examples: corrugated and solid paperboard boxes, folding boxes
         For food board containers, see 676.34
.33  Bags
.34  Food board containers
      Examples: food cartons, paper plates and cups
   Purified pulp
      Production of alpha cellulose from wood pulp and cotton linters
.5  Pulp by-products
      Examples: fatty acids, lignin, resins, tall oil, turpentine
.7  Paper from man-made and noncellulosic fibers
677 Textiles

Production of fibers, fabrics, cordage

Class here comprehensive works on manufacture of textiles and clothing

Class manufacture of clothing in 687

SUMMARY

677.001-.009 Standard subdivisions

.02 General topics
  .1 Textiles of bast fibers
  .2 Textiles of seed-hair fibers
  .3 Textiles of animal fibers
  .4 Textiles of man-made fibers
  .5 Other textiles of specific fibers
  .6 Special-process fabrics regardless of composition
  .7 Cordage, trimmings and allied products
  .8 Surgical gauze and cotton

.001 Philosophy and theory

.002 Miscellany

.002 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Do not use; class in 677.028

.003-.009 Standard subdivisions

.02 General topics

.022 Designs (Working patterns)

.028 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, products
  .028 2 Operations
    .028 21 Preliminary operations
      Examples: carding, combing
    .028 22 Spinning, twisting, reeling
    .028 24 Weaving, knitting, felting
    .028 242 Weaving
    .028 245 Knitting
    .028 25 Basic finishing
      Physical and chemical processes
      Examples: beetling, calendering, creping, mercerizing, pressing, shearing, singeing, tentering

      For dyeing and printing, see 667.3

.028 3 Materials
  .028 32 Fibers
  .028 35 Textile chemicals
.028 5 Power equipment
.028 52 Spinning machines
.028 54 Looms and loom equipment
.028 55 Basic finishing machines
.028 6 Products

For tests and quality controls of products, see 677.0287

.028 62 Yarns and threads
.028 64 Fabrics
.028 7 Testing and measurement

Including tests and quality controls of products

.029 Waste control

Class here pollution control

> 677.1–677.5 Textiles of specific composition

Class here specific kinds of textile fibers
Class comprehensive works in 677, special-process fabrics regardless of composition in 677.6

.1 Textiles of bast fibers

.11 Flax

[.110 28] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Do not use; class in 677.112–677.117

.112–.117 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, products

Add to base number 677.11 the numbers following 677.028 in 677.0282–677.0287, e.g., linen fabrics 677.1164

.12 Hemp
.13 Jute
.15 Ramie
.18 Coir

.2 Textiles of seed-hair fibers

.21 Cotton

[.210 28] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Do not use; class in 677.212–677.217

.212–.217 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, products

Add to base number 677.21 the numbers following 677.028 in 677.0282–677.0287, e.g., cotton ginning, carding, combing 677.2121
.23 Kapok

.3 **Textiles of animal fibers**

.31 Sheep wool

  Class here comprehensive works on wool

  *For llama, alpaca, vicuña, guanaco wools, see 677.32*

  [.310 28] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

  Do not use; class in 677.312–677.317

  .312–.317 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, products

  Add to base number 677.31 the numbers following 677.028 in 677.0282–677.0287, e.g., sheep wool fibers 677.3132

.32 Llama, alpaca, vicuña, guanaco wools

.33 Goat hair

.34 Camel’s hair

.35 Rabbit hair

.36 Waste and reused wool and hair

.39 Silk

.391 Cultivated silk

  [.391 028] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

  Do not use; class in 677.3912–677.3917

  .391 2–.391 7 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, products

  Add to base number 677.391 the numbers following 677.028 in 677.0282–677.0287, e.g., beetling cultivated silk 677.39125

.392 Wild silk (Tussah silk)

.394 Waste and reused silk

.4 **Textiles of man-made fibers**

  Class here chemistry of man-made fibers [*formerly also* 547.85]

.46 Cellulosics (Rayon and acetates)

  Use 677.46001–677.46009 for standard subdivisions

  *For textiles of paper fibers, see 677.5*

.460 1–.460 9 Standard subdivisions of rayon

> 677.461–677.463 Rayon

  Class comprehensive works in 677.46

.461 Nitrocellulose
677  Manufacturing  677

.462  Cuprammonium rayon
.463  Viscose rayon
.464  Cellulose acetate
.47  Noncellulosics
   *For fiber glass, see 677.52*

.472  Azlon
.473  Polyamides (Nylons)
.474  Other polymerization textiles
   .474.2  Acrylics
           Class here polyacrylics
   .474.3  Polyesters
   .474.4  Vinlys
           Examples: nyltrils, sarans, vinyons
           Class here polyvinyls
   .474.5  Olefins
           Examples: polyethylene, polypropylene
   .474.8  Polyfluoro hydrocarbons

.5  Other textiles of specific fibers

.51  Of asbestos fibers
.52  Of fiber glass
.53  Of metal fibers
.54  Of unaltered vegetable fibers
           Examples: bamboo, cane, raffia, rattan, rush
.55  Of elastic fibers
[.57]  Of paper fibers
           Number discontinued; class in 677.5

.6  Special-process fabrics regardless of composition
   Class here nonwoven fabrics

.61  Fancy-weave fabrics
   *For tapestries, carpets, rugs, see 677.64; openwork fabrics, 677.65*

.615  In dobbly weave
           Examples: bird’s-eye, figured madras, huckaback, sharkskin
.616 In Jacquard weave
   Examples: brocade, brocatelle, damask, lamé, upholstery fabrics

.617 In pile weave
   Examples: chenille, corduroy, frieze, plush, terry cloth, velour, velvet, velveteen

.62 Woven felt
   Class comprehensive works on felt in 677.63

.624 Flannel and swanskin yard goods

.626 Blankets, lap robes, coverlets

.63 Nonwoven felt
   Class here comprehensive works on felt
   For woven felt, see 677.62

.632 Yard goods and carpets

.64 Tapestries, carpets, rugs

.642 Tapestry yard goods

.643 Carpets and rugs
   For nonwoven felt carpets, see 677.632

.65 Openwork fabrics
   For chain-stitch and knotted fabrics, see 677.66

.652 In leno weave
   Examples: marquisettes and grenadines

.653 Laces
   Contains bobbin, needle, machine laces

.654 Tulles

.66 Chain-stitch and knotted fabrics

.661 Knitted fabrics

.662 Crocheted fabrics

.663 Tatted fabrics

.664 Netted fabrics

.68 Fabrics with functional finishes
   Examples: drip-dry, durable press fabrics
   Class specific types of special-process fabrics regardless of finish in 677.61–677.66

.681 Crease- and wrinkle-resistant fabrics
.682 Waterproof and water-repellent fabrics
.688 Shrinkage-controlled fabrics
.689 Flameproof and flame-resistant fabrics
.69 Bonded and laminated fabrics
.7 Cordage, trimmings and allied products
.71 Ropes, twines, strings
For passementerie, see 677.76
.76 Passementerie
Examples: decorative bias bindings, braids, cords, gimps, lacings, ribbons, tapes, tinsel; upholstery trimmings
.77 Machine embroidery
Examples: clip spot, lappet, Schiffli, swivel (dotted swiss) embroidery
Class laces in 677.653
.8 Surgical gauze and cotton
Examples: bandages, sanitary napkins

678 Elastomers and elastomer products

SUMMARY

678.2 Rubber
.3 Rubber products
.4 Properties of rubber
.5 Latexes
.6 Natural elastomers
.7 Synthetic elastomers

.2 Rubber

For rubber products, see 678.3; properties of rubber, 678.4; natural rubber, 678.62; synthetic rubber, 678.72
.202 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment
Class materials in 678.21
.21 Materials
For reclaimed rubber, see 678.29
.22 Mastication
.23 Compounding
Examples: use of accelerators, antioxidants, pigments, solvents
.24 Vulcanization
.27 Molding, extruding, calendering
.29 Reclaimed rubber and waste control
   Including devulcanizing
   Class here pollution control

.3 Rubber products
   Class elastic fiber textiles in 677.55
   For natural rubber products, see 678.63; synthetic rubber products, 678.723

.32 Tires

.33 Overshoes

.34 Articles molded and vulcanized in presses
   Examples: doorstops, hollow ware, hot-water bottles, tiles

.35 Extruded articles
   Examples: inner tubes, rubber bands, weather stripping, windshield wipers

.36 Articles made by dipping, spreading, electrodeposition
   Examples: conveyor and driving belts, hose, sheeting

.4 Properties of rubber

.5 Latexes
   For natural latexes, see 678.61; synthetic latexes, 678.71

.502 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment
   Class materials in 678.521

.52 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

.521 Materials

.522 Preliminary treatment
   Examples: preservation, concentration, creaming, centrifuging, preparation of latex biscuits

.524 Vulcanization

.527 Other operations
   Examples: casting, coating, dipping, electrodepositing, molding, spreading

.53 Products

.532 Foam articles

.533 Articles made by dipping and casting
   Example: feeding-bottle nipples
   Surgeons’ gloves relocated to 685.43
.538 Articles made by extruding, spreading, spraying, electrodeposition
Use of this number for other products discontinued; class in 678.53

.54 Properties

.6 Natural elastomers

.61 Natural latexes

.62 Natural rubber

For natural rubber products, see 678.63; properties of natural rubber, 678.64

.63 Natural rubber products

.64 Properties of natural rubber

.68 Chemical derivatives of natural rubber

Examples: cyclo and halogenated rubber, rubber hydrochloride

.7 Synthetic elastomers

.71 Synthetic latexes [formerly also 547.8425]

.72 Synthetic rubber and derivatives

Examples: acrylonitrile rubber (GR-A), butadiene-styrene rubber (GR-S), chloroprene rubber (GR-M), isobutylene rubber (GR-I), polybutadiene rubber, polyurethane rubber

Standard subdivisions are added for synthetic rubber and derivatives, for synthetic rubber

Class comprehensive works on polyurethanes in 668.4239

.720 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Class auxiliary techniques and procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials for synthetic rubber in 678.722

.722 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials for synthetic rubber

.723 Synthetic rubber products

.724 Properties of synthetic rubber

.728 Chemical derivatives of synthetic rubber

.73 High-styrene resins (Elastoplastics)

679 Other products of specific kinds of materials

.4 Products of keratinous and dentinal materials

.43 Ivory products

.47 Feather products
.6 Products of fibers and bristles
   Examples: brooms, brushes, mops

.7 Products of tobacco
   See also 688.4 for tobacco substitutes

.72 Cigars

.73 Cigarettes

680 Manufacture of products for specific uses
   Not provided for elsewhere
   General aspects: planning, design, fabrication
   Class here interdisciplinary works on handicrafts
   Class repairs of household equipment by members of household in 643.7; artistic
   handicraft work in 745.5; manufacture of products based on specific branches of
   engineering with engineering in 620, e.g., military engineering 623, automobile
   manufacture 629.2; and, except as provided for below, class manufacture of
   products of specific materials for specific uses in 671–679, e.g., manufacture of
   steel products 672, but manufacture of steel furniture 684.105

   See Manual at 671–679 vs. 680; 680; 745.5 vs. 680

SUMMARY

681 Precision instruments and other devices
682 Small forge work (Blacksmithing)
683 Hardware and household appliances
684 Furnishings and home workshops
685 Leather and fur goods, and related products
686 Printing and related activities
687 Clothing and accessories
688 Other final products, and packaging technology

681 Precision instruments and other devices

SUMMARY

681.1 Instruments for measuring time, counting and calculating machines and
   instruments
   .2 Testing and measuring instruments
   .4 Optical instruments
   .6 Printing, writing, duplicating machines and equipment
   .7 Other scientific and technological instruments, machinery, equipment
   .8 Musical instruments

   .1 Instruments for measuring time, counting and calculating machines
   and instruments

   For testing and measuring instruments, see 681.2
.11 Instruments for measuring time [formerly also 529.78]
.111 Ancient and primitive instruments
   Examples: hourglasses, sundials, water clocks
.112 Constituent parts (Clockwork)
   Examples: gears, escapements, bearings, regulating devices
.113 Clocks
   Class here interdisciplinary works on clocks
   Class clocks considered as works of art in 739.3
   For constituent parts, see 681.112; pneumatic clocks, 681.115; electric clocks, 681.116; chronographs, chronoscopes, chronometers, 681.118
.114 Watches
   Class here interdisciplinary works on watches
   Class watches considered as works of art in 739.3
   For constituent parts, see 681.112; chronographs, chronoscopes, chronometers, 681.118
.115 Pneumatic clocks
.116 Electric clocks
.118 Chronographs, chronoscopes, chronometers
   Examples: metronomes, stopwatches, tachometers, time clocks, time and date recorders, timers
.14 Counting and calculating machines and instruments
   Examples: calculators, cash registers, slide rules, sorting machines, voting machines
   For computers, see 621.39

.2 Testing and measuring instruments
   Examples: calorimeters [formerly also 536.62]; electrical instruments for measuring nonelectrical quantities [formerly also 621.379]; electronic gauges, indicators, meters, probes of general utility [all formerly also 621.381548]; measuring tools [formerly 621.994]; flowmeters
   Class here testing and measuring instruments of general application in science or technology, testing and measuring instruments for nontechnological application, instruments for measuring physical quantities
   Class testing and measuring instruments for a specific branch of science (other than instruments for measuring physical quantities) in 681.75; for a specific technological application with the manufacturing number, e.g., aircraft instrumentation 629.135, medical diagnostic equipment 681.761
   For instruments for measuring electrical quantities, see 621.37; for testing and measuring electronic signals, 621.381548; for measuring time, 681.11
.4 Optical instruments [formerly also 535.33]
  .41 Specific instruments
      Class component parts of specific instruments in 681.42–681.43
  .411 Eyeglasses
  .412 Telescopes, opera and field glasses
  .413 Microscopes
  .414 Spectroscopes
  .414 2–.414 6 Optical and paraphotic spectroscopes
      Add to base number 681.414 the numbers following 535.84 in
      535.842–535.846, e.g., infrared spectroscopes 681.4142
  .414 8 Other spectroscopes
      Examples: magnetic resonance, microwave, radiofrequency, X- and
      gamma-ray spectroscopes
  .415 Photometers
  .416 Polarimeters
  .418 Photographic equipment
      Examples: cameras, projectors, accessories
      Class film and other chemical photographic supplies in 661.808
      For photometers, see 681.415; photocopying equipment, 681.65

> 681.42–681.43 Component parts
      Class comprehensive works in 681.4
  .42 Lenses, prisms, mirrors
  .423 Lenses
  .428 Mirrors
  .43 Frames and other housings

.6 Printing, writing, duplicating machines and equipment
      Examples: computer output microform (COM) devices [formerly 621.3987],
      pens, mechanical pencils, rubber stamps
      Class facsimile recorders in 621.38235, wood-cased pencils in 674.88
  .61 Stenographic and composing machines, typewriters
  .62 Printers and printing presses
      Class here computer output printers [formerly 621.3987]
  .65 Photocopying equipment
.7 Other scientific and technological instruments, machinery, equipment

Not provided for elsewhere

.75 Scientific instruments and equipment

Class here testing and measuring equipment for specific branches of science

Class comprehensive works on scientific testing and measuring instruments in 681.2

.753 Physical instruments and equipment

Including instruments with multiple applications based on physical principles, e.g., gyroscopes

Class instruments for measuring physical quantities in 681.2

.754 Chemical instruments and equipment

.755 Geological instruments and equipment

.757 Biological instruments and equipment

.76 Technological instruments, machinery, equipment

Examples: construction, pollution-control, mining, surveying equipment

Class here testing and measuring instruments in specific branches of technology not provided for elsewhere

Class comprehensive works on technological testing and measuring instruments in 681.2

.760 4 Special topics

.760 41 Pressure vessels

.761 Medical instruments, machinery, equipment

Examples: condoms, diagnostic equipment, prosthetic devices

For artificial legs, see 685.38

.763 Agricultural instruments, machinery, equipment

.763 1 For plant culture

.763 6 For animal culture

.766 For chemical and related technologies

.766 4 For food and beverage technology

.766 5 For petroleum and industrial gas technologies

.766 6 For ceramic technology

.766 8 For plastic and elastomer technologies

.766 9 For metallurgy

.767 For nonchemical manufactures

.767 1 For metal manufactures
.767 6 For wood and paper technologies
.767 7 For textile and clothing technologies

.8 Musical instruments
   Class hand construction in 784.1923

[.81–.83] Specific types of instruments
   Relocated to 681.86–681.88

.86–.88 Specific types of instruments [formerly 681.81–681.83]
   Add to base number 681.8 the numbers following 78 in 786–788, e.g.,
   manufacture of pianos 681.862
   Class hand construction in 786–788

682 Small forge work (Blacksmithing)
   .1 Horseshoeing
   .4 Hand-forged tools and ironwork

683 Hardware and household appliances
   Class here comprehensive works on manufacture of hardware and building supplies
   Class a specific hardware or building supply product not provided for here with the product, e.g., tools 621.9, paints 667.6

   .3 Locksmithing
   .31 Bolts and latches
   .32 Locks and keys
   .34 Safes and strongboxes

   .4 Small firearms
   Class here interdisciplinary works on small firearms, on gunsmithing
   Class military small arms in 623.44

   .400 1 Philosophy and theory
   .400 2 Miscellany

   [.400 288] Maintenance and repair
   Do not use; class in 683.403

   .400 3–.400 9 Standard subdivisions

> 683.401–683.406 General topics
   Class comprehensive works in 683.4

   .401 Design
Manufacture of products for specific uses

[.402] Manufacture
Number discontinued; class in 683.4

.403 Maintenance and repair

.406 Ammunition

.42 Rifles and shotguns

.422 Rifles

.426 Shotguns

.43 Handguns

.432 Pistols (Single-shot and automatic)

.436 Revolvers

.8 Household utensils and appliances
Class nonmetallic household utensils and appliances with the material, e.g., woodenware 674.88

.802 88 Maintenance and repair
Class maintenance and repair by members of household in 643.6

.82 Kitchen utensils
Examples: cutlery, pots, pans, pails

.83 Electrical appliances
Class comprehensive works on electrical equipment in 621.31042
For electrical equipment requiring special installation, see 683.88

.88 Heavy equipment
Electrical, gas, other equipment requiring special installation
Examples: dishwashers, dryers, garbage disposal units, ranges, stoves, washing machines, water heaters
Class heating, ventilating, air-conditioning equipment in 697
For refrigerators and freezers, see 621.57

684 Furnishings and home workshops
Use 684.001–684.009 for standard subdivisions for furnishings and home workshops, for furnishing alone

.08 Woodworking
Class here comprehensive works on home (amateur) workshops
For metalworking, see 684.09

.082 With hand tools

.083 With power tools
.084 Surface finishing
.09 Metalworking
.1 Furniture
   Use 684.1001–684.1009 for standard subdivisions

> 684.104–684.106 General topics
   Class comprehensive works in 684.1
   .104 Wooden furniture
      [.104 028 8] Maintenance and repair
         Do not use; class in 684.1044
         .104 2 Basic construction
         .104 3 Surface finishing
         .104 4 Maintenance and repair
         .104 42 Body restoration
         .104 43 Surface refinishing
   .105 Metal furniture
   .106 Furniture in other materials
      Examples: composite materials, plastics, rattan, tiles

> 684.12–684.16 Specific kinds of furniture
   Class comprehensive works in 684.1, outdoor furniture in 684.18
   .12 Upholstered furniture
      Examples: couches, sofas, upholstered chairs
   .13 Chairs and tables
      For upholstered chairs, see 684.12
   .14 Desks
   .15 Beds
      Including frames, springs, mattresses
   .16 Cabinets and built-in furniture
      Examples: bookcases, chests, china and linen cabinets, dressers, file
      cabinets, shelving
      Class built-in wooden shelves in 694.6
.18 Outdoor furniture
   Examples: garden, patio, porch furniture
   Class camping furniture in 685.53

.3 Fabric furnishings
   Examples: curtains, draperies, hangings, slipcovers
   *For carpets and rugs, see 677.643*

685 Leather and fur goods, and related products
   Including parchment prepared from the skin of an animal
   *See also 676.2845 for parchment paper made from pulp*

.1 Saddlery and harness making

.2 Leather and fur clothing and accessories
   Class leather and fur footwear in 685.3, leather and fur gloves and mittens in 685.4

.22 Leather
   Examples: aprons, belts, jackets, skirts, trousers

.24 Fur
   Examples: coats, hats, jackets, muffjs, neckpieces, stoles

.3 Footwear and related products
   *For overshoes, see 678.33; hosiery, 687.3*

.31 Boots and shoes
   Class wooden shoes and clogs in 685.32, shoes for specific activities in 685.36, for the disabled in 685.38

.310 01 Philosophy and theory

.310 02 Miscellany

[..310 028 8] Maintenance and repair
   Do not use; class in 685.3104

.310 03-.310 09 Standard subdivisions

.310 2 Design

.310 3 Construction

.310 4 Maintenance and repair

.32 Wooden shoes and clogs

.36 Footwear and related products for specific activities

.361 Ice skates

.362 Roller skates and skateboards
.363 Snowshoes
.364 Skis

Class manufacture of equipment connected with snow skiing in 688.7693

.367 Stilts
.38 Footwear and related products for the disabled

Examples: artificial legs, crutches, special shoes

.4 Gloves and mittens

Regardless of material

.41 Conventional gloves
.43 Specialized gloves and mittens, gauntlets

Examples: surgeons' gloves [formerly also 678.533], athletic gloves and mitts, protective gloves for industry

.47 Conventional mittens

.5 Luggage, handbags, camping equipment

.51 Luggage and handbags

Including briefcases, attache cases

.53 Camping equipment

Examples: camp beds, campstools, sleeping bags, tents

686 Printing and related activities

Class here design and manufacture of publications, book arts

Class interdisciplinary works on the book in 002, book illustration in 741.64

See also 681.6 for manufacture of printing equipment

SUMMARY

686.1 Invention of printing
.2 Printing
.3 Bookbinding
.4 Photocopying (Photoduplication)

.1 Invention of printing
.2 Printing

Including printing by museums [formerly 069.7]

Class here printing in the Latin alphabet

Class interdisciplinary works on print media in 302.232, comprehensive works on printing and publishing in 070.5

Works on "desktop publishing" that emphasize typography are classed in 686.22, e.g., microcomputer software for typesetting 686.2254436

See also 070.593 for self publishing

.209 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class invention of printing in 686.1

.21 Printing in specific non-Latin alphabets and characters

Class here typefounding, typecasting, typefaces for specific non-Latin alphabets and characters

Class other specific aspects of printing in non-Latin alphabets and characters with the aspect, e.g., letterpress printing 686.2312

[.212] Braille and other raised characters

Relocated to 686.282

[.217] Latin alphabet

Use of this number for comprehensive works on printing in the Latin alphabet discontinued; class in 686.2

Typefaces for the Latin alphabet relocated to 686.224

.218 Greek alphabet

.219 Other alphabets and characters

Add to base number 686.21 notation 91–99 from Table 6, e.g., Cyrillic alphabet 686.21918

.22 Typography

.221 Typefounding and typecasting

.224 Typefaces

Design, style, specimens of letters, ornaments, other characters and devices

Class here typefaces for the Latin alphabet [formerly 686.217]

Class typefaces for specific non-Latin alphabets and characters in 686.21, for braille and other raised characters in 686.282

.224 7 Specific typefaces and kinds of typefaces for the Latin alphabet

Examples: Gothic, italic, roman type; Bodoni, Garamond, Times Roman type
.225 Composition (Typesetting)

[.225 028 5] Data processing Computer applications
Do not use; class in 686.22544

.225 2 Page design
Including layout, paste-up

.225 3 Hand composition

.225 4 Machine composition

.225 42 By use of linotype and other human-operated equipment

.225 44 By use of computer-operated and other automatic equipment
Example: phototypesetting (photocomposition)
Class here computerized typesetting
Unless it is redundant, add to base number 686.22544 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., microcomputer programs for typesetting 686.22544536, the use of digital microcomputers 686.22544416, but the use of digital computers 686.22544 (not 686.22544)

.225 5 Proofreading

.225 6 Imposition and lockup

.23 Presswork (Impression)
Class interdisciplinary works on use of computer printers as low-volume output devices in 004.77; a specific use with the use, e.g., use in typesetting 686.2254477

For printing special graphic materials, see 686.28
See also 621.38235 for facsimile transmission, 681.6 for manufacture of printing equipment

.230 4 Special topics

.230 42 Color printing

.231 Mechanical techniques
Class photomechanical techniques in 686.232

.231 2 Printing from type
Class here comprehensive works on letterpress techniques
Class printing from plates in 686.2314

.231 4 Printing from plates
Printing from stereotypes, electrotypes, autotypes, engraved plates, paper mats
See also 686.2315 for printing from planographic plates
Planographic (Flat-surface)
Class here lithography and offset (offset lithography)
For photolithography, photo-offset, collotype, see 686.2325

Stencil techniques
Example: silk-screen

Photomechanical techniques
Photolithography, photo-offset, collotype (gelatin process)
See also 621.381531 for photolithography in manufacture of printed circuits (microlithography)

Photometallography
Number discontinued; class in 686.232

Photoengraving (Photointaglio)
Examples: photogravure, photoetching, line and halftone cuts

Nonimpact techniques
Examples: electrographic, electrophotographic, ink jet, laser processes
See also 686.44 for electrophotographic processes in photocopying

Printing special graphic materials

Braille and other raised characters [formerly also 686.212]
Class comprehensive works on braille and other raised character alphabets in 411

Maps

Music

Materials of direct monetary value
Examples: bank notes, postage stamps, securities

Bookbinding
Processes and materials
Use 686.3001–686.3009 for standard subdivisions

Hand and fine binding

Specific kinds of commercial binding
Use of this number for comprehensive works on commercial binding discontinued; class in 686.3

Individual-copy (Library) binding

Edition binding

Types of covers

Leather
.343  Cloth and imitation leather
.344  Paper
.35   Methods of fastening
      Examples: hand sewing, oversewing, side-sewing, wire-stitching; perfect
      binding and other kinds of gluing
.36   Ornamentation
      Examples: gilding, lettering, marbling, tooling
.4    Photocopying (Photoduplication)
      Class here interdisciplinary works on photocopying
      Class telefax in 621.38235
      See also 681.65 for manufacture of photocopying equipment
.42   Blueprinting
.43   Microphotography
      Production of microfilm and other microreproductions
.44   Electrostatic and electrophotographic processes
      Including xerography
.45   Production of photostats

687   Clothing and accessories
      Class here casual clothes, sports clothes
      Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or
      more subdivisions of this schedule in the one coming last, e.g., military headgear
      687.4 (not 687.15)
      Class interdisciplinary works on clothing in 391; interdisciplinary works on
      clothing construction in 646.4
      For leather and fur clothing, see 685.2

SUMMARY

687.01-.09   Standard subdivisions
   .1   Specific kinds of garments
   .2   Underwear
   .3   Hosiery
   .4   Headgear
   .8   Items auxiliary to clothing construction (Notions)
   .04  General topics
   .042  Patternmaking and grading
   .043  Cutting
   .044  Tailoring
Manufacture of products for specific uses

[.045] Dressmaking
   Relocated to 687.112

.081 Men’s clothing
   Class here men’s house garments [formerly 687.11042]

.082 Women’s clothing
   Class here women’s house garments [formerly 687.12]

.083 Young people’s clothing
   Class here children’s house garments [formerly 687.13]

.1 Specific kinds of garments
   Use of this number for outer garments discontinued; class in 687
   *For footwear, see 685.3; gloves and mittens, 685.4; underwear, 687.2; hosiery, 687.3; headgear, 687.4*

.11 Miscellaneous kinds of garments
   Limited to those provided for below
   Use of this number for comprehensive works on house garments discontinued; class in 687

[.110 4] Special topics
   Use of this number discontinued; class in 687.11

[.110 42] Men’s house garments
   Relocated to 687.081

.112 Dresses
   Class here dressmaking [formerly 687.045]

.113 Suits, trousers, jackets

.115 Shirts, blouses, tops

.117 Skirts

[.12] Women’s house garments
   Relocated to 687.082

[.13] Children’s house garments
   Relocated to 687.083

.14 Outer coats and related garments
   Class here comprehensive works on coats
   Class suit coats, suit jackets in 687.113

[.140 81-.140 82] For men and women
   Do not use; class in 687.141–687.142
For young adults

Class outer coats and related garments for children in 687.143, for young adult men aged twenty-one and over in 687.141, for young adult women twenty-one and over in 687.142

For persons in specific stages of adulthood

Class outer coats and related garments for adult men regardless of age in 687.141, for adult women regardless of age in 687.142

For men

Class outer coats and related garments for young adult men in 687.1408351

For women

Class outer coats and related garments for young adult women in 687.1408352

For children

687.144–687.147 Sweaters, wraps, specific types of outer coats

Class comprehensive works in 687.14

Overcoats

Example: topcoats

Raincoats

Sweaters

Examples: pullovers and cardigans

Stoles, cloaks, jackets

Uniforms and symbolic garments

Examples: civil and military uniforms, ceremonial and academic robes, ecclesiastical vestments

Garments for special purposes

Examples: athletic garments, costumes, evening and formal dress, fire-resistant and other protective clothing, maternity garments, wedding clothes

Use 687 for casual and sports clothes

For uniforms and symbolic garments, see 687.15

Nightclothes
Manufacture of products for specific uses

19 Accessories

Examples: aprons, belts, cuffs, handkerchiefs, muffa, neckwear, scarves

Class interdisciplinary works on accessories in 391.44, on making jewelry in 739.27, on making costume jewelry in 688.2

For gloves and mittens, see 685.4; headgear 687.4

2 Underwear

For hosiery, see 687.3

1-.208 Underwear for men, women, children

Do not use; class in 687.21–687.23

.208 4 Underwear for persons in specific stages of adulthood

Class underwear for adult men regardless of age in 687.21, for adult women regardless of age in 687.22

.208 7 Underwear for handicapped and ill persons

Class supporting undergarments worn for medical or health reasons in 687.25

.21 Men’s underwear

.22 Women’s underwear

Class here comprehensive works on lingerie

Class women’s nightclothes in 687.165082

.23 Children’s underwear

Class young men’s underwear in 687.21, young women’s underwear in 687.22

.25 Supporting undergarments worn for medical or health reasons

Examples: surgical corsets and belts

Use of this number for supporting undergarments not worn for medical or health reasons discontinued; class in 687.2

3 Hosiery

4 Headgear

Class here nonwoven felt hats

Class headscarves in 687.19

1-.408 Men’s, women’s, children’s headgear

Do not use; class in 687.41–687.43

.408 4 Headgear for persons in specific stages of adulthood

Class headgear for adult men regardless of age in 687.41, for adult women regardless of age in 687.42

.41 Men’s headgear
687 Dewey Decimal Classification 687

.42 Women’s headgear

.43 Children’s headgear

Class headgear for young men in 687.41, for young women in 687.42

.8 Items auxiliary to clothing construction (Notions)

Examples: buttons, hooks and eyes, needles, padding, pins, shields, slide fasteners, snaps, thread and yarn

688 Other final products, and packaging technology

.1 Models and miniatures

Class here interdisciplinary works on models and miniatures

Class interdisciplinary works on handcrafted models and miniatures in 745.5928; models and miniatures of a specific object with the object, using notation 0228 from Table 1, e.g., scale models of space stations 629.4420228

See Manual at 745.5928

.2 Costume jewelry

Class here interdisciplinary works on making costume jewelry

Class interdisciplinary works on costume jewelry in 391.7, on making jewelry in 739.27; handcrafted costume jewelry in 745.5942

.4 Smokers’ supplies

Examples: ash trays, cigarette holders and cases, hookahs, lighters, tobacco pouches, tobacco substitutes

.42 Pipes

.5 Accessories for personal grooming

Examples: combs, electric shavers, nail-care tools, razors, razor blades, tweezers

For cosmetics, see 668.55; brushes, 679.6

.6 Nonmotor land vehicles

Examples: carriages, carts, wagons, wheelbarrows

For cycles, see 629.227

See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388

.7 Recreational equipment

.72 Toys

Class here interdisciplinary works on mass-produced and handcrafted toys

Class handcrafted toys in 745.592

.722 Dolls, puppets, marionettes

.722 1 Dolls

.722 4 Puppets and marionettes

432
Manufacture of products for specific uses

.723 Doll houses and furniture

.724 Soft toys
   Example: stuffed animals
   Class stuffed dolls in 688.7221

.725 Educational toys
   Examples: construction toys, science sets

.726 Novelties, ornaments, puzzles, tricks
   Not provided for elsewhere

.728 Action toys
   Mechanical, electrical, electronic, others
   Class scale-model action toys in 688.1

> 688.74–688.79 Equipment for sports and games
   Not provided for elsewhere
   Class comprehensive works in 688.7

.74 Equipment for indoor games of skill
   Add to base number 688.74 the numbers following 794 in 794.1–794.8, e.g.,
   chessmen 688.741

.75 Equipment for games of chance
   Add to base number 688.75 the numbers following 795 in 795.1–795.4, e.g.,
   playing cards 688.754

.76 Equipment for outdoor sports and games
   Add to base number 688.76 the numbers following 796 in 796.1–796.9, e.g.,
   tennis rackets 688.76342; however, class skates, skateboards, skis in 685.36;
   camping equipment in 685.53

   For equipment for equestrian sports and animal racing, see 688.78;
   equipment for fishing, hunting, shooting, 688.79

.78 Equipment for equestrian sports and animal racing
   Example: hurdles

.79 Equipment for fishing, hunting, shooting
   Add to base number 688.79 the numbers following 799 in 799.1–799.3, e.g.,
   artificial flies 688.7912

   For small firearms, see 683.4
.8 Packaging technology

Materials, equipment, techniques

Class interdisciplinary works on packaging in 658.564; artistic aspects of containers in 700, e.g., vases 738.38; manufacture and use of containers made of a specific material with the material, e.g., paper containers 676.3

[689] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

690 Buildings

General aspects: planning, analysis, engineering design, construction, destruction of habitable structures and their utilities

Class interdisciplinary works on design and construction of buildings in 721

See Manual at 643.7 vs. 690; 690 vs. 624; 721 vs. 690

SUMMARY

690.01-.09 Standard subdivisions
     .1-.8 [Specific structural elements, general activities, specific types of buildings]
     691 Building materials
     692 Auxiliary construction practices
     693 Construction in specific types of materials and for specific purposes
     694 Wood construction  Carpentry
     695 Roof covering
     696 Utilities
     697 Heating, ventilation, air-conditioning engineering
     698 Detail finishing

.01 Philosophy and theory

.02 Miscellany

.021 2 Tables and formulas
     Class specifications in 692.3

 [.022 3] Maps and related forms, plans, diagrams
     Do not use; class in 692.1

.028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment
     Class materials in 691

 [.028 8] Maintenance and repair
     Do not use; class in 690.24

 [.028 9] Safety measures
     Do not use; class in 690.22

 [.029 9] Estimates of labor, time, materials
     Do not use; class in 692.5

.03-.09 Standard subdivisions
.1 Specific structural elements

Add to base number 690.1 the numbers following 721 in 721.1–721.8, e.g., auxiliary roof structures 690.15; however, class chimneys in 697.8, fireplaces in 697.1

Class structural elements of specific types of buildings in 690.5–690.8, construction of structural elements in wood in 694

.2 General activities

Including architectural acoustics

Class application to specific structural elements in 690.1, to specific types of buildings in 690.5–690.8, interdisciplinary works on architectural acoustics in 729.29

.21 Structural analysis

Statics, dynamics, stability, strength of buildings

.22 Provision for safety

Engineering for safe buildings, safety during construction

.24 Maintenance and repair

Class home repairs by members of household in 643.7

.26 Wrecking and razing

.5–.8 Specific types of buildings

Add to base number 690 the numbers following 72 in 725–728, e.g., airport terminal buildings 690.539 [formerly also 629.1364]; however, class construction of buildings for defense against military action in 623.1, naval facilities in 623.64, military air facilities in 623.66, docks and port buildings in 627.3

See Manual at 629.226 vs. 643.2, 690.879, 728.79

691 Building materials

General aspects: selection, preservation, construction properties

Class construction in a specific type of material in 693

.1 Timber

.12 Prevention of decay

Examples: spraying, painting, impregnating with fungicides

.14 Prevention of termite damage

.15 Treatment for fire resistance

Impregnation with monomagnesium, monoammonium, diammonium phosphates

.2 Natural stones

Examples: granite, limestone, marble, sandstone, serpentine, slate, soapstone
.3 Concretes and artificial stones
   Examples: concrete blocks, cinder blocks

.4 Ceramic and clay materials
   Examples: brick, tile, terra cotta, sun-dried blocks

.5 Masonry adhesives

.6 Glass

.7 Iron and steel (Ferrous metals)

.8 Metals
   Add to base number 691.8 the numbers following 669 in 669.2-669.7, e.g.,
   aluminum 691.8722

   *For iron and steel, see 691.7*

.9 Other building materials

.92 Plastics and their laminates

.95 Insulating materials
   Examples: asbestos, corkboard, diatomaceous earth, kapok, rock wool

.96 Bituminous materials
   Examples: asphalts, tar

.97 Prefabricated materials

.99 Adhesives and sealants

   *For masonry adhesives, see 691.5; plastics and their laminates, 691.92*

692 Auxiliary construction practices

Class application of a specific auxiliary practice to a specific subject with the
subject, e.g., construction specifications for air conditioning 697.93

.1 Plans and drawings
   Interpretation and use of rough sketches, working drawings, blueprints

   *For detail drawings, see 692.2*

.2 Detail drawings
   Interpretation and use of large-scale drawings of trims, moldings, other details

.3 Construction specifications

.5 Estimates of labor, time, materials
   Class here interdisciplinary works on quantity surveying
   Class estimates for a specific subject in building with the subject, using notation
   0299 from Table 1, e.g., estimates for air conditioning 697.930299
.8 Contracting
Provision of construction materials and services in accordance with specifications

693 Construction in specific types of materials and for specific purposes

Comprehensive works on construction in all types of materials is classed in 690

For selection, preservation, construction properties of building materials, see 691; wood construction, 694; roofing materials, 695

SUMMARY

693.1 Masonry
.2 Stabilized earth materials
.3 Tiles and terra cotta
.4 Artificial stones and hollow bricks
.5 Concrete
.6 Plaster-, stucco-, lathwork
.7 Metals
.8 Construction for specific purposes
.9 Construction in other materials

> 693.1–693.7 Construction in specific materials
Class comprehensive works in 690, construction in specific materials for specific purposes in 693.8

For construction in other materials, see 693.9

.1 Masonry
Including construction in natural stone

For masonry using materials other than natural stone, see 693.2–693.5

> 693.2–693.5 Masonry using materials other than natural stone
Class comprehensive works in 693.1

.2 Stabilized earth materials
.21 Bricks

For hollow bricks, see 693.4

.22 Sun-dried blocks
Examples: adobe, cob, pisé, tabby, tapia

.3 Tiles and terra cotta

For hollow tiles, see 693.4

.4 Artificial stones and hollow bricks
Examples: concrete blocks, cinder blocks, hollow tiles
.5  Concrete

For concrete blocks, see 693.4

.52  Without reinforcement
  .521  Poured concrete
  .522  Precast concrete

.54  With reinforcement (Ferroconcrete)
  .541  Poured concrete
  .542  Prestressed concrete
  .544  Precast concrete

.6  Plaster-, stucco-, lathwork

.7  Metals
  .71  Iron and steel (Ferrous metals)
  .72-.77  Nonferrous metals

  Add to base number 693.7 the numbers following 669 in 669.2-669.7, e.g.,
  tin 693.76

.8  Construction for specific purposes

  .82  Fireproof construction
  .83  Insulated construction
  .832  Thermal insulation
  .834  Acoustical insulation (Soundproofing)
  .84  Pest-resistant construction
  .842  Termite-resistant construction
  .844  Rodent-resistant construction
  .85  Shock-resistant construction
  .852  Earthquake-resistant construction
  .854  Blast-resistant construction
  .89  Waterproof, moistureproof, lightning-resistant construction

  Use of this number for construction for other specific purposes discontinued;
  class in 693.8
  .892  Waterproof construction
  Class moistureproof construction in 693.893
  .893  Moistureproof construction
  .898  Lightning-resistant construction
.9 Construction in other materials
.91 Ice and snow
.92 Sandwich panels
  Class sandwich panels in a specific substance with the substance, e.g., wood
  694
.96 Glass
.97 Prefabricated materials
  Class materials prefabricated in a specific substance with the substance, e.g.,
  precast concrete 693.522
.98 Nonrigid materials
  Example: pneumatic construction
.99 Miscellaneous materials
  Add to base number 693.99 the numbers following 620.19 in
  620.191–620.199, e.g., plastics 693.9923; however, class nonrigid materials
  in 693.98

694 Wood construction    Carpentry
.1 Planning, analysis, engineering design

> 694.2–694.6 Carpentry
  Class comprehensive works in 694

.2 Rough carpentry (Framing)
  Construction of ceilings, floors, foundations, frames, openings, partition frames,
  posts, roofs, sidings, walls

.6 Finish carpentry (Joinery)
  On-site construction of doors, doorways; blinds, shutters, windows; balconies,
  porches, verandas; balustrades, rails, ramps, stairs; trims, e.g., inlays, moldings,
  paneling; built-in cases and shelves
  Class off-site manufacture of finishing items in 680

695 Roof covering
  Class comprehensive works on roofs as structural elements in 690.15, wooden
  roofs in 694.2

696 Utilities
  Class here comprehensive works on energy and environmental engineering of
  buildings
  Class interior electric wiring in 621.31924; a specific aspect of energy and
  environmental engineering with the aspect, e.g., thermal insulation in 693.832

  For heating, ventilating, air-conditioning engineering, see 697
.1  **Plumbing**
    Design and installation of water fixtures and pipes

    .12  **Water supply**
        Including intake pipes, water receiving fixtures, water-softening equipment
        
        *For water supply in specific parts of buildings, see 696.18; hot-water supply, 696.6*

    .13  **Water drainage**
        
        *For water drainage in specific parts of buildings, see 696.18*

    .18  **Water supply and drainage in specific parts of buildings**

    .182  **Lavatories and bathrooms**

    .183  **Laundries**

    .184  **Kitchens**
        Including installation of garbage disposal units and dishwashers

.2  **Pipe fitting**
    General aspects: design, installation

    Example: gas pipes (gas fitting)
        
        *For water pipes, see 696.1; steam fitting, 696.3*

.3  **Steam pipes (Steam fitting)**
    General aspects: design, installation

.6  **Hot-water supply**
    Design and installation of pipes, water heaters, water-softening equipment

697  **Heating, ventilating, air-conditioning engineering**
    General aspects: design, manufacture, installation of systems and components
    Use 697.0001–697.0009 for standard subdivisions

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>697.001–.009</th>
<th>Standard subdivisions of heating</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.02–.07</td>
<td>[Local and central heating, heating with specific sources of energy, heating equipment]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.1</td>
<td>Heating with open fires (Radiative heating)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>Heating with space heaters (Convective heating)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>Hot-air heating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>Hot-water heating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>Steam heating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.7</td>
<td>Other heating methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.8</td>
<td>Chimneys and flues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.9</td>
<td>Ventilation and air conditioning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

.001  Philosophy and theory of heating

.002  Miscellany of heating
.002 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, materials of heating
Class heating equipment in 697.07

.003–.009 Standard subdivisions of heating

.02 Local heating
Class local heating by source of heat in 697.1–697.2

.03 Central heating
Class here comprehensive works on district heating
Class a specific type of central heating in 697.3–697.7, e.g., solar heating 697.78; district heating by hot water in 697.4, by steam in 697.54

.04 Heating with specific sources of energy
Class here specific fuels
Class a specific fuel used in local heating in 697.02, in central heating in 697.03

For solar heating, see 697.78; nuclear heating, 697.79

.042 Coal and coke heating

.043 Gas heating

.044 Oil heating

.045 Electric heating

.07 Heating equipment
Examples: boilers, furnaces, radiators, thermostats

> 697.1–697.8 Heating
Class comprehensive works in 697

> 697.1–697.2 Local heating
Class comprehensive works in 697.02, chimneys and flues for local heating in 697.8

.1 Heating with open fires (Radiative heating)
Including braziers, fireplaces
Class fireplace-like stoves that have visible fires but which are convective heaters in 697.2

.2 Heating with space heaters (Convective heating)

.22 Stationary stoves
Class cooking stoves in 683.88

.24 Portable heaters
697.3–697.7 Central heating

Class comprehensive works in 697.03, chimneys and flues for central heating in 697.8

.3 Hot-air heating

Class radiant panel hot-air heating in 697.72

.4 Hot-water heating

Class hot-water supply in 696.6, radiant panel hot-water heating in 697.72, comprehensive works on district heating in 697.03

.5 Steam heating

Class steam fitting in 696.3, radiant panel steam heating in 697.72

.500 1 Philosophy and theory

.500 2 Miscellany

.500 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, materials

Class equipment in 697.507

.500 3–.500 9 Standard subdivisions

.507 Equipment

Examples: boilers, furnaces, radiators

[.52] Heating single buildings

Number discontinued; class in 697.5

.54 District heating

Heating a group of buildings from a central station

Class comprehensive works on steam and hot-water district heating in 697.03

See also 697.4 for hot-water district heating

.7 Other heating methods

.72 Radiant panel heating

.78 Solar heating

Class building of solar houses in 690.8370472

.79 Nuclear heating

.8 Chimneys and flues

.9 Ventilation and air conditioning

.92 Ventilation
.93 Air conditioning
Class heating in 697.1–697.8

.931 General topics
Class general topics applied to specific components in 697.932, to specific systems in 697.933–697.934, to specific types of buildings in 697.935–697.938

.931 2 Design principles

.931 5 Psychrometrics
Determination and control of enclosed atmospheric environments for optimum comfort

.931 6 Industrial and commercial applications
Determination and control of enclosed atmospheric environment for effective operations

.932 Components
Class here manufacturing

.932 2 Heating and cooling components
Examples: cooling and heating coils, thermostats

.932 3 Humidifying and dehumidifying components
Example: humidistats

.932 4 Air quality components
Devices for removing dust, pollen, other particulates
Class here filters

.932 5 Air circulation components
Example: blowers

.933 Air-conditioning systems
Class systems in specific types of buildings in 697.935–697.938, system components in 697.932

For unitary and combination systems, see 697.934

.933 2 Winter systems

.933 3 Summer systems

.933 4 Year-round systems

.934 Unitary and combination systems

.934 2 Unitary systems

.934 4 Combination systems
In specific types of buildings

Add to base number 697.93 the numbers following 72 in 725–728, e.g., air conditioning in hotels 697.9385

Class components for specific types of buildings in 697.932

698 Detail finishing

Examples: cladding, siding, suspended ceilings

Class plaster-, stucco-, lathwork in 693.6; wooden moldings, paneling, inlays in 694.6; roof covering in 695

.1 Painting

.102 Miscellany

.102 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

.102 82 Equipment

Examples: brushes, rollers, paints, diluents

.102 83 Paint mixing

.102 88 Application methods

Do not use for maintenance and repair; class in 698.1028

.12 Exteriors

.14 Interiors

Class painting woodwork in 698.35

.142 Walls

.146 Floors

.147 Ceilings

.2 Calcimining and whitewashing

.3 Finishing woodwork

.32 By staining

Including graining and marbling

.33 By polishing with wax and oil

.34 By varnishing and lacquering

.35 By painting

.5 Glazing and leading windows

.6 Paperhanging
.9 Floor coverings

General aspects: measuring, cutting, laying
Examples: carpets, rugs; linoleum, tiles
Class comprehensive works on floors in 690.16

[Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14
700 The arts  Fine and decorative arts

Description, critical appraisal, techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials of the fine, decorative, literary, performing, recreational arts

Class here conceptual art

Use 700 and standard subdivisions 700.1–700.9 for artists’ books, performance and video art covering the arts in general; use 702.81 and 709 for artists’ books, performance and video art limited to fine and decorative arts

For book arts, see 686; literature, 800

See Manual at 700

700.1–700.9 Standard subdivisions of the arts

Use this standard subdivision span for material that includes two or more of the fine and decorative arts and one or more of the other arts, e.g., a work about a painter who is also a sculptor and a poet 700.92. If only one fine or decorative art and one of the other arts is involved, class in the number coming first in the schedule, e.g., a United States painter and poet 759.13

Class comprehensive works in 700

See Manual at 700

.1 Philosophy and theory of the arts

.103 Effects of social conditions and factors on the arts

.104 Effects of humanities on the arts

.105 Effects of science and technology on the arts

.108 Effects of other concepts on the arts

Examples: humor, mythology, nature, parapsychology

.2–.6 Standard subdivisions of the arts

.7 Education, research, related topics of the arts

.74 Museums, collections, exhibits

Notation 074 from Table 1 is never added to the work of an individual artist whether the work falls in notation 092 from Table 1 (e.g., an exhibition of the work of a French sculptor 730.92) or in the number for the individual artist’s country (e.g., an exhibition of the work of a Canadian painter 759.11)

See Manual at 700.74
.75 Museum activities and services
Collecting objects
Notation 075 from Table 1 is never added to the work of an individual artist
whether the work falls in notation 092 from Table 1 (e.g., collecting the
work of a French sculptor 730.92) or in the number for the individual artist's
country (e.g., collecting the work of a Canadian painter 759.11)

.8 The arts with respect to kinds of persons

.9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

.92 Persons
Class here the works themselves and critical appraisal and description of
works of an artist or artists
See Manual at 700.92

701 Philosophy and theory of fine and decorative arts

.03-.08 Special topics
Add to base number 701.0 the numbers following 700.10 in
700.103-700.108, e.g., effects of social conditions and factors on fine and
decorative arts 701.03

.1 Appreciative aspects
Including use of audiovisual aids
Class here works on art appreciation, including theory, history, and techniques
Do not use for systems; class in 701
See also 709 for history of the fine arts

.15 Psychological principles
Fine arts as products of creative imagination

.17 Aesthetics
Class interdisciplinary works in 111.85

.18 Criticism and appreciation
Class here theory, technique, history
Class works of critical appraisal in 709

.8 Inherent features
Examples: composition, form, style, decorative values, light, vision, space,
time, movement, symmetry

.82 Perspective
See also 742 for the drawing aspects of perspective

.85 Color
See also 752 for the painting aspects of color
01 Dewey Decimal Classification

.9 Methodology

Do not use for psychological principles; class in 701.15

702 Miscellany of fine and decorative arts

.8 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Including testing and measurement, use of artists’ models

.81 Mixed-media and composites

Including artists’ books; performance, video art

Class finished works of mixed-media and composite art in 709,
two-dimensional mixed-media art or composites in 760

See Manual at 700

.812 Collage

Class decoupage in 745.546

.813 Montage

.814 Assemblage

.87 Techniques of reproduction, execution, identification

Do not use for testing and measurement; class in 702.8

.872 Reproductions and copies

.874 Forgeries and alterations

.88 Conservation, preservation, restoration

Including expertizing

Do not use for routine maintenance and repair; class in 702.89

Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 702.87

.89 Safety measures and routine maintenance and repair

.9 Commercial miscellany

Class auction and sales catalogs in which an exhibition is involved in 707.4

703 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of fine and decorative arts

704 Special topics in fine and decorative arts History and description with respect to kinds of persons
.03 History and description with respect to racial, ethnic, national groups

Add to base number 704.03 notation 01–99 from Table 5, e.g., art of North American native races 704.0397

Class the fine and decorative arts of nonliterate peoples in 709.011; history and description with respect to racial, ethnic, national groups in places where they predominate in 709.1, 709.3–709.9; history and description with respect to groups of specific kinds of persons of a specific racial, ethnic, national group in 704.04–704.87

.04–.87 History and description with respect to kinds of persons

Add to base number 704 notation 04–87 from Table 7, e.g., lawyers as artists 704.344; however, class art dealers in 380.1457; description, critical appraisal, works, biography of individual artists in 709.2

Class history and description with respect to racial, ethnic, national groups in 704.03, the fine and decorative arts of nonliterate peoples in 709.011

See Manual at 709.2 vs. 380.1457092

.9 Iconography

See Manual at 704.9

.94 Subjects

Development, description, critical appraisal, works

Do not use standard subdivisions

SUMMARY

704.942 Human figures and their parts
.943 Nature and still life
.944 Architectural subjects and cityscapes
.946 Symbolism and allegory
.947 Mythology and legend
.948 Religion and religious symbolism
.949 Other specific subjects

.942 Human figures and their parts

Not provided for in 704.946–704.948

Class here portraits

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., groups of children 704.9425 (not 704.9426)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specific kinds of persons</th>
<th>704.9425</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Erotica</td>
<td>704.9428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groups of figures</td>
<td>704.9426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>According to attire</td>
<td>704.9421–.9422</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Class works in which the human figure is not the center of interest with the subject, e.g., cityscapes 704.944

.942 092 Persons

Artists and critics

Works about the person portrayed are classed in 704.942
> 704.942 1–704.942 2 According to attire
  Class comprehensive works in 704.942
  .942 1 Nudes
  .942 2 Draped figures

> 704.942 3–704.942 5 Specific kinds of persons
  Class comprehensive works in 704.942
  .942 3 Men
  .942 4 Women
  .942 5 Children
  .942 6 Groups of figures
  .942 8 Erotica
    Including pornography
  .943 Nature and still life
    Not provided for in 704.946–704.948
    Standard subdivisions are added for nature and still life or for nature alone
  .943 2 Animals
    Including hunting scenes
    Class symbolism of animals in 704.946; hunting scenes in which animals are not the center of interest with the subject, e.g., hunters 704.9426
    See Manual at 704.9
  .943 4 Plants
    Class symbolism of plants in 704.946
    See Manual at 704.9
  .943 5 Still life
  .943 6 Landscapes
    Add to base number 704.9436 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., landscapes of Utah 704.9436792
  .943 7 Marine scenes and seascapes
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.944</th>
<th>Architectural subjects and cityscapes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Add to base number 704.944 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., cityscapes of England 704.94442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[.945]</td>
<td>Abstractionism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Relocated to 709.04052</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.946</td>
<td>Symbolism and allegory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>For religious symbolism, see 704.948</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.947</td>
<td>Mythology and legend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class religious mythology in 704.948</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.948</td>
<td>Religion and religious symbolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class here religious mythology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class significance and purpose of art in religion in 291.37, in Christianity in 246, in other religions in 292–299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(.948 1)</td>
<td>(Permanently unassigned)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to iconography of a specific religion, class it in this number)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.948 2</td>
<td>Christianity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including icons, santos, votive offerings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>For specific Christian subjects, see 704.9484–704.9487</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

> 704.948 4–704.948 7 Specific Christian subjects

Class here icons, santos, votive offerings

Class comprehensive works in 704.9482

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.948 4</th>
<th>Biblical characters and events</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>For Trinity and Holy Family and its members, see 704.9485; apostles, saints, angels, 704.9486; devils, 704.9487</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.948 5</td>
<td>Trinity and Holy Family and its members</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.948 52</td>
<td>Trinity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.948 53</td>
<td>Jesus Christ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.948 55</td>
<td>Madonna and Child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including Mary without Child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.948 56</td>
<td>Holy Family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Presented as a group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class Jesus Christ in 704.94853, Mary with or without Child in 704.94855, Saint Joseph in 704.94863</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
.948 6 Apostles, saints, angels
.948 62 Apostles
.948 63 Saints

*For Apostles, see 704.94862*

.948 64 Angels
.948 7 Devils
.948 9 Other religions

Add to base number 704.9489 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g., Buddhism in art 704.948943

Class Old Testament characters and events in 704.9484

.949 Other specific subjects

Add to base number 704.949 notation 001–999, e.g., industrial subjects 704.9496

705 Serial publications of fine and decorative arts

706 Organizations and management of fine and decorative arts

707 Education, research, related topics of fine and decorative arts

.4 Temporary and traveling collections and exhibits

Class here permanent collections on tour, temporary exhibits of a private collection, auction and sales catalogs in which an exhibition is involved

Do not use for museums and permanent collections and exhibits; class in 708

Class a temporary in-house exhibit selected from a museum’s or gallery’s permanent collection with the museum or gallery in 708

708 Galleries, museums, private collections of fine and decorative arts

General art collections

Class here annual reports dealing with acquisitions, activities, programs, projects

Do not use for history and description of fine and decorative arts with respect to kinds of persons; class in 704.03–704.87

*For temporary and traveling collections and exhibits, see 707.4*

.001–.008 Standard subdivisions

.009 Historical and persons treatment

Class geographical treatment in 708.1–708.9
> 708.1–708.9 Geographical treatment

Class here guidebooks and catalogs of specific galleries, museums, private collections

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to galleries, museums, private collections of a specific country, use one of the following:

(Option A: Place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in Japan 708.J [preceding 708.1]

(Option B: Class them in 708.1; in that case class galleries, museums, private collections in North America in 708.97)

Class comprehensive works in 708

.1 In North America

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to galleries, museums, private collections of a specific country other than United States and Canada, class them in this number; in that case class galleries, museums, private collections in North America in 708.97)

Class galleries, museums, private collections in Middle America in 708.972

.11 Canada

Add to base number 708.11 the numbers following —71 in notation 711–719 from Table 2, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in British Columbia 708.111

.13–.19 United States

Add to base number 708.1 the numbers following —7 in notation 73–79 from Table 2, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in Pennsylvania 708.148

Class galleries, museums, private collections in Hawaii in 708.9969

.2 In British Isles In England

.21–.28 In England

Add to base number 708.2 the numbers following —42 in notation 421–428 from Table 2, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in Manchester 708.2733

.29 In Scotland, Ireland, Wales

Add to base number 708.29 the numbers following —4 in notation 41–42 from Table 2, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in Wales 708.2929

.3–.8 In other European countries

Add to base number 708 the numbers following —4 in notation 43–48 from Table 2, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in France 708.4

Class comprehensive works, and galleries, museums, private collections in other European countries not provided for in notation 43–48 from Table 2 in 708.94, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in Belgium 708.9493
.9 In other geographical areas

Add to base number 708.9 notation 1, 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., comprehensive works on galleries, museums, private collections in Islamic areas 708.917671, in European countries 708.94

709 Historical, geographical, persons treatment of fine and decorative arts

Development, description, critical appraisal, works

Class here finished works of experimental and mixed-media art that do not fit easily into a recognized medium

Class looting, plundering, theft, destruction of art as a crime in 364.162, two-dimensional experimental and mixed-media art in 760

See Manual at 700

SUMMARY

709.01 Arts of nonliterate peoples, and earliest times to 499
      .02 500–1499
      .03 1500–
      .04 1900–1999
      .05 2000–2099

.01 Arts of nonliterate peoples, and earliest times to 499

.011 Nonliterate peoples

Regardless of time or place, but limited to nonliterate peoples of the past and nonliterate peoples clearly not a part of contemporary society

.011 2 Paleolithic art

.011 3 Rock art

> 709.012–709.05 Periods of development

Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality, European art limited by period, school, or style

Class comprehensive works in 709

See Manual at 709.012–709.05 vs. 709.3–709.9

.012 To 4000 B.C.

.013 3999–1000 B.C.

.014 999–1 B.C.

.015 1–499 A.D.

.02 500–1499

Class here medieval art
The arts  Fine and decorative arts

.021  500–1199
.021 2 Early Christian art
Class early Christian art before 500 in 709.015
.021 4 Byzantine art
Class Byzantine art before 500 in 709.015
.021 6 Romanesque art
.022  1200–1299
Class here Gothic art
Class Gothic art of an earlier or later period with the specific period, e.g.,
500–1199 709.021
.023  1300–1399
.024  1400–1499
Class here Renaissance art
Class Renaissance art of an earlier or later period with the period, e.g.,
1500–1599 709.031
.03  1500–
For 1900–1999, see 709.04; 2000–2099, 709.05
.031  1500–1599
.032  1600–1699
Class here baroque art
Class baroque art of 1700–1799 in 709.033
.033  1700–1799
Including rococo art
.034  1800–1899
.034 1 Classical revival (Neoclassicism)
Class classical revival of 1700–1799 in 709.033
.034 2 Romanticism
Class romanticism of 1700–1799 in 709.033
.034 3 Naturalism and realism
Class naturalism and realism of an earlier or later period with the
specific period, e.g., 1700–1799 709.033
.034 4 Impressionism
Including luminism, pleinairism
.034 5 Neo-impressionism
Including divisionism, pointillism
.034 6 Postimpressionism

455
.034 7 Symbolism and synthetism
.034 8 Kitsch (Trash)
  Comprehensive works
  Class kitsch of 1900–1999 in 709.04013
.034 9 Art nouveau
  Comprehensive works
  Class art nouveau of 1900–1999 in 709.04014

.04 1900–1999
  Including artists’ books; computer, mail, performance, video art
  Class here modern art
  For 1800–1899, see 709.034

.040 01–.040 07 Special topics
  Add to base number 709.0400 the numbers following 0 in notation
  01–07 in table under —0901–0905 in Table 1, e.g., collecting
  modern art 709.040075

.040 1 Art deco, kitsch, art nouveau
.040 12 Art deco
.040 13 Kitsch (Trash)
  Class comprehensive works on kitsch in 709.0348

.040 14 Art nouveau
  Class comprehensive works on art nouveau in 709.0349

.040 2 Functionalism
.040 3 Cubism and futurism
  Including geometric design

.040 32 Cubism
.040 33 Futurism

.040 4 Expressionism and fauvism
.040 42 Expressionism
  Class abstract expressionism in 709.04052

.040 43 Fauvism
.040 5 Abstractionism, nonobjectivity, constructivism

.040 52 Abstractionism [formerly also 704.945]
  Including abstract expressionism, geometric abstractionism,
  neoplasticism

.040 56 Nonobjectivity
.040 57 Constructivism
.040 6 Dadaism and surrealism
.040 62 Dadaism
.040 63 Surrealism
.040 7 Composite media and sensations
.040 71 Pop art
.040 72 Optical art (Op art)
.040 73 Kinetic art
.040 74 Happenings, environments, events
.040 75 Conceptual art
.040 76 Land art (Earthworks)
.040 77 Structuralism
.040 78 Multiple art
.040 79 Space art

.041-.049 Periods

Add to base number 709.04 the numbers following —0904 in notation
09041—09049 from Table 1, e.g., arts of 1960–1969 709.046

Class a specific school or style in a specific period in 709.0401—709.0407

.05 2000–2099

.1 Treatment by areas, regions, places in general

Class history and description of fine and decorative arts with respect to kinds of
persons in 704.03–704.87, art of nonliterate peoples regardless of place in
709.011

.2 Persons

Class here description, critical appraisal, biography, works of artists not limited
to or chiefly identified with a specific form, e.g., painting, or group of forms,
e.g., graphic arts

See Manual at 709.2 vs. 380.1457092

.22 Collected treatment

Class works of more than one artist in the same geographical area in 709.1,
709.3–709.9
.3-.9  Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities

Class here art of specific periods, e.g., art of 1800–1899 in South America 709.809034

Class history and description of fine and decorative arts with respect to kinds of persons in 704.03–704.87; art of nonliterate peoples regardless of place in 709.01–709.05 (not 709.4), e.g., art of 1800–1899 in Europe 709.034 (not 709.409034)

See Manual at 709.012–709.05 vs. 709.3–709.9

710  Civic and landscape art

SUMMARY

711  Area planning (Civic art)
712  Landscape architecture (Landscape design)
713  Landscape architecture of trafficways
714  Water features in landscape architecture
715  Woody plants in landscape architecture
716  Herbaceous plants in landscape architecture
717  Structures in landscape architecture
718  Landscape design of cemeteries
719  Natural landscapes

711  Area planning (Civic art)

Design of physical environment for public welfare, convenience, pleasure

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of precedence, e.g., plans and planning of pedestrian malls in business districts 711.5522 (not 711.74)

Plans and planning for specific specific kinds of areas 711.5
Plans and planning of specific elements 711.6–.8
Plans and planning at specific levels 711.2–.4
Procedural and social aspects 711.1

Class interdisciplinary works on area planning in 307.12, comprehensive works on area planning and architecture in 720

For landscape architecture, see 712

See Manual at 711 vs. 307.12

SUMMARY

711.028  Apparatus, equipment, materials
.1  Procedural and social aspects
.2  International and national plans and planning
.3  Interstate, state, provincial, county plans and planning
.4  Local community (City) plans and planning
.5  Plans and planning for specific kinds of areas
.6  Plans and planning of structural elements
.7  Plans and planning of transportation facilities
.8  Plans and planning of nontransportation utilities
Procedural and social aspects

.12 Professional practice and technical procedures
   Examples: collection of data, preparation and presentation of plans and models

.13 Social factors affecting planning

.14 Economic factors affecting planning

> 711.2–711.4 Plans and planning at specific levels
   Class comprehensive works in 711

.2 International and national plans and planning

.3 Interstate, state, provincial, county plans and planning
   For metropolitan areas, see 711.43

.4 Local community (City) plans and planning
   Class here urban renewal (conservation, rehabilitation, redevelopment)
   For urban renewal of specific kinds of areas, see 711.5

.409 Historical, geographical, persons treatment
   Class here specific cities

> 711.41–711.45 Specific types of plans
   Class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the number coming last in the schedule, e.g., plans for small cities in cold climates 711.43 (not 711.42)
   Class comprehensive works in 711.4, specific types of plans and planning for specific cities in 711.409

.41 Plans based on street patterns
   Examples: gridiron, radial, studied irregularity plans

.42 Plans based on environment
   Examples: plans based on topography and climate

.43 Plans based on size
   Examples: villages, small and large cities, metropolitan areas
.45 Plans based on function

Examples: cities serving primarily as governmental, industrial, residential centers

Including new towns

.5 Plans and planning for specific kinds of areas

Class here plans and planning for urban renewal (conservation, rehabilitation, redevelopment) of specific kinds of areas

Class interdisciplinary works on urban renewal in 307.3416

.55 Functional areas

Class here plazas, squares

For religious centers, see 711.56; cultural and educational areas, 711.57; residential areas, 711.58; parking areas, 711.73

.551 Civic, administrative, governmental areas

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all of the topics named in the heading

.552 Commercial and industrial areas

Class plans and planning of transportation facilities in 711.7

.5522 Commercial areas

Class here business districts, shopping centers

.5524 Industrial areas

Class here industrial parks

.554 Agricultural areas

.555 Medical centers

.556 Prison and reformatory areas

.557 Hotel and restaurant areas

Including trailer camps for transients

.558 Recreational areas

Examples: parks, playgrounds, theatrical and performing arts centers

.56 Religious centers

.57 Cultural and educational areas

Examples: areas for libraries, museums, colleges and universities

Class theatrical and performing arts centers in 711.558
.58 Residential areas
   Urban, suburban, rural areas
   Examples: apartment-house districts, trailer parks for long-term residents
   *For housing renewal, see 711.59; hotel areas, 711.557*

.59 Housing renewal
   Class interdisciplinary works on housing renewal in 307.34

> 711.6–711.8 Plans and planning of specific elements
   Class comprehensive works in 711.6

.6 Plans and planning of structural elements
   Adaptation to site and use
   Class here comprehensive works on plans and planning of specific elements
   *For utilities, see 711.7*

.7 Plans and planning of transportation facilities
   Class here comprehensive works on plans and planning of utilities
   *For plans and planning of nontransportation utilities, see 711.8*

.72 Bicycle transportation facilities

.73 Motor vehicle transportation facilities
   Including parking areas, motorcycle transportation facilities

.74 Pedestrian transportation facilities
   Including pedestrian malls

.75 Railroad transportation facilities
   Including rapid transit facilities

.76 Marine transportation facilities

.78 Air transportation facilities

.8 Plans and planning of nontransportation utilities
   Examples: water, gas, electricity transmission and supply; communication lines; sanitation and flood control facilities

712 Landscape architecture (Landscape design)
   Class engineering aspects of landscape architecture in 624
   *For specific elements in landscape architecture, see 714–717*

.01 Philosophy and theory
   Class aesthetics, composition, style in 712.2
.028 Apparatus, equipment, materials
Class auxiliary techniques and procedures in 712.3

> 712.2–712.3 General considerations
Class comprehensive works in 712, general considerations of design of specific kinds of land tracts in 712.5–712.7

.2 Principles
Examples: aesthetics, composition, effect, style

.3 Professional practice and technical procedures
Examples: collection of data, preparation and presentation of plans and models, supervision of operations

> 712.5–712.7 Specific kinds of land tracts
Class comprehensive works in 712

For trafficways, see 713; cemeteries, 718; natural landscapes, 719

.5 Public parks and grounds
Class here amusement parks, commons, fairgrounds, zoological and botanical gardens; comprehensive works on parks
Class parks of public reserved lands in 719.3

For private parks, see 712.6

.6 Private parks and grounds
Class here front yards and backyards, home gardens, penthouse gardens, estates

.7 Semiprivate and institutional grounds
Class here grounds of churches, country clubs, hospitals, hotels, industrial plants, schools

713 Landscape architecture of trafficways

> 714–717 Specific elements in landscape architecture
Class comprehensive works in 712

714 Water features in landscape architecture
Examples: cascades, fountains, natural and artificial pools
Class comprehensive works on fountains in 731.72
715 Woody plants in landscape architecture
   Nonflowering and flowering
   Class comprehensive works on woody and herbaceous plants in landscape architecture in 712

   .1 Topiary work

> 715.2–715.4 Specific kinds of plants
   Class comprehensive works in 715, topiary work on specific kinds of plants in 715.1

   .2 Trees
   .3 Shrubs
   .4 Vines

716 Herbaceous plants in landscape architecture
   Nonflowering and flowering
   Including ground cover
   Class here comprehensive works on flowering plants in landscape architecture

   For flowering woody plants, see 715

717 Structures in landscape architecture
   Relationship of buildings, terraces, fences, gates, steps, ornamental accessories to other elements of landscape architecture
   Including pedestrian facilities, street furniture

718 Landscape design of cemeteries
   .8 National cemeteries

719 Natural landscapes
   Class natural water features in 714

   .3 Reserved lands

   .32 Public parks and natural monuments
   Standard subdivisions are added for public parks and natural monuments, for public parks alone, or for natural monuments alone

   .33 Forest and water-supply reserves

   .36 Wildlife reserves

720 Architecture
   Class here comprehensive works on architecture and civic and landscape art

   For civic and landscape art, see 710
SUMMARY

720.1-.9 [Standard subdivisions]
721 Architectural structure
722 Architecture from earliest times to ca. 300
723 Architecture from ca. 300 to 1399
724 Architecture from 1400
725 Public structures
726 Buildings for religious and related purposes
727 Buildings for educational and research purposes
728 Residential and related buildings
729 Design and decoration of structures and accessories

.1 Philosophy and theory
.103-.108 Special topics

Add to base number 720.10 the numbers following 700.10 in 700.103–700.108, e.g., effects of social conditions and factors on architecture 720.103

.2 Miscellany
.22 Illustrations, models, miniatures

[.221] Drafting illustrations

Do not use; class in 720.284

.222 Architectural drawings and related illustrations

Add to base number 720.222 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., architectural drawings from England 720.22242

Class architectural drawings for one structure or a specific type of structure in 725–728, using notation 0222 from table under 721–729

.28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Including site planning

.284 Architectural drawing

Class drawings, illustrations, models in 720.222–720.228

.286 Remodeling

.288 Conservation, preservation, restoration

Do not use for routine maintenance and repair; class in 720.289

Class interdisciplinary works on conservation, preservation, restoration in 363.69

See Manual at 930–990: Historic preservation

.289 Safety measures and routine maintenance and repair

.4 Special topics

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 720.4 in the one coming first, e.g., multiple-purpose skyscrapers 720.483 (not 720.49)
.42 Architecture for the handicapped
.43 Architecture for persons in late adulthood and ill persons
.47 Architecture and the environment
.472 Energy resources
   Example: use of solar energy
   Class here energy conservation
.473 Earth-sheltered buildings
   Class here underground architecture
.48 Buildings by shape
   Examples: atrium, circular, multistory, single-story buildings
.483 Tall buildings
   Class here skyscrapers
.49 Multiple-purpose buildings
   Class a multiple-purpose building with one primary purpose with
   single-purpose buildings of that type, e.g., an apartment building with a floor
   of commercial space 728.314

.8 Architecture with respect to kinds of persons
[.846] Late adulthood
   Do not use; class in 720.43
.87 Gifted persons
   Class handicapped persons in 720.42, ill persons in 720.43

.9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment
Class here Oriental architecture from ca. 300 limited to a specific country or
locality [formerly 722], schools and styles limited to a specific country or
locality, architectural aspects of historic buildings
Class architectural drawings in 720.222, comprehensive works on specific
schools and styles not limited to a specific country or locality in 722–724

See Manual at 913–919: Historic sites and buildings

[.901–.905] Historical periods
   Do not use; class in 722–724

[.93] Ancient world
   Do not use; class in 722

.942 090 31 English architecture of 1500–1599
   Class here Elizabethan architecture [formerly also 724.1]
.942 090 32 English architecture of 1600–1699
   Including Jacobean architecture [formerly also 724.1]
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dewey Decimal Classification</th>
<th>720</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.942 090 33</td>
<td>English architecture of 1700–1799</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including Queen Anne architecture [formerly also 724.1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.946 090 32</td>
<td>Spanish architecture of 1600–1699</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class here Churrigueresque architecture [formerly also 724.19]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.95</td>
<td>Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class here comprehensive works on Oriental architecture [formerly 722], Buddhist architecture [formerly 722.4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class Buddhist architecture of national styles not provided for here with the style, e.g., Japanese Buddhist architecture 720.952</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.954</td>
<td>South Asia India</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class here comprehensive works on Jain, Hindu architecture [formerly 722.4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.97</td>
<td>North America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class here comprehensive works on ancient American, ancient North American architecture [formerly also 722.91]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.98</td>
<td>South America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class here ancient South American architecture [formerly also 722.91]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### 721–729 Specific aspects of architecture

Add to each term identified by * as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>01 Philosophy and theory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0103–0108 Special topics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add to 010 the numbers following 700.10 in 700.103–700.108, e.g., effects of social conditions and factors on architecture 0103</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>02 Miscellany</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0222 Architectural drawings and related illustrations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add to 0222 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., architectural drawings from England 022242</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials |
| 0286 Remodeling |
| 0288 Conservation, preservation, restoration |
| Do not use for routine maintenance and repair; class in 0289 |

| 0289 Safety measures and routine maintenance and repair |
| 04 Special topics |
| Add to 04 the numbers following 720.4 in 720.42–720.49, e.g., energy conservation 0472 |

| 09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment |
| Class comprehensive works in 720 |

466
721 Architectural structure

Class here interdisciplinary works on design and construction

Class architectural structure of specific types of structures in 725–728

*For engineering design and construction, see 690; design and decoration, 729; structural engineering, 624.*

*See Manual at 721; 721 vs. 690*

### SUMMARY

#### 721.01–.09 Standard subdivisions

| .1 | Foundations |
| .2 | Walls |
| .3 | Columnar constructions |
| .4 | Curved constructions and details |
| .5 | Roofs and roof structures |
| .6 | Floors |
| .7 | Ceilings |
| .8 | Other elements |

#### .01–.02 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 720.1–720.2, e.g., remodeling 721.0286; however, class materials in 721.044

#### .04 Special topics

##### .042 Buildings by shape

Examples: atrium, circular, multistory, single-story buildings

Class architectural construction of buildings of specific materials regardless of shape in 721.044

##### .044 Specific materials

#### .044 1–.044 6 Masonry

Add to base number 721.044 the numbers following 693 in 693.1–693.6, e.g., architectural construction in reinforced concrete 721.04454

#### .044 7 Metals

Add to base number 721.0447 the numbers following 669 in 669.1–669.7, e.g., architectural construction in aluminum 721.0447722

#### .044 8 Wood

#### .044 9 Other

Add to base number 721.0449 the numbers following 693.9 in 693.91–693.99, e.g., architectural construction in glass 721.04496
Other special topics of architectural construction

Add to base number 721.046 the numbers following 720.4 in
720.42–720.49, e.g., energy conservation 721.04672; however, class
buildings by shape in 721.042

> 721.1–721.8 Structural elements

Class here design [formerly also 729.3], decoration [formerly 729.3]
Class comprehensive works in 721, decoration of structural elements in specific
mediums in 729.4–729.8

.1 Foundations

.2 Walls
Including footings, entablatures; colonnades, partitions; bearing and retaining
walls
Arcades relocated to 721.41
See also 725.96 for free-standing walls

.3 Columnar constructions
Examples: abutments, colonnettes, columns, pedestals, piers, pilasters, posts
For colonnades, entablatures, see 721.2

.36 Architectural orders
For entablatures, see 721.2

.4 Curved constructions and details

.41 Arcades [formerly 721.2] and arches
For groined arches, see 721.44
See also 725.96 for free-standing arches

.43 Vaults
For specific types of vaults, see 721.44–721.45

> 721.44–721.45 Specific types of vaults
Class comprehensive works in 721.43

.44 Groined vaults
Including groined arches
Other types of vaults
Examples: expanding, fan, rib, tunnel vaults

Domes
Class cupolated roofs in 721.5

Niches

Roofs and roof structures
Examples: dormers, gables; cornices, pediments; cupolas, pinnacles, spires, towers
Including chimneys, skylights

Floors

Ceilings

Other elements
Examples: balustrades, fastenings, fireplaces

Openings
Class here blinds

Doors and doorways

Windows
Class windows as parts of roof structures in 721.5

Means of vertical access
Example: ramps

Stairs
Including escalators

Elevators

Extensions
Examples: balconies, decks, patios, porches

722-724 Architectural schools and styles
Class comprehensive works, schools and styles from ca. 300 limited to a specific country or locality in 720.9; architects of specific schools and styles not limited to a specific type of structure in 720.92; specific types of structures regardless of school or style in 725-728; details of construction of specific schools and styles in 721; design and decoration of structures of specific schools and styles in 729
Architecture from earliest times to ca. 300

Comprehensive works on Oriental architecture relocated to 720.95. Oriental architecture from ca. 300 limited to a specific country or locality relocated to 720.9, comprehensive works on Oriental architecture from ca. 300 to 1399 relocated to 723, comprehensive works on Oriental architecture from 1400 relocated to 724.

.1 Ancient Chinese, Japanese, Korean architecture

Class here ancient Oriental architecture

Class ancient architecture of ancient south and southeast Asia in 722.4, of ancient Middle East in 722.5.

.11 *Ancient Chinese architecture

Class ancient Tibetan architecture in 722.4.

.12 *Ancient Japanese architecture

.13 *Ancient Korean architecture

.2 *Ancient Egyptian architecture

.3 *Ancient Semitic architecture

Class comprehensive works on Semitic architecture in 720.8992.

.31 Phoenician architecture

Class here architecture of Tyre, Sidon, Beirut, Byblos.

For colonial Phoenician, see 722.32.

.32 Colonial Phoenician architecture

Examples: architecture of ancient Carthage, Utica, Cadiz, Cyprus.

.33 Ancient Palestinian architecture

Including Israelite, Judean, Jewish architecture.

.4 Ancient south and southeast Asian architecture

Comprehensive works on Buddhist architecture relocated to 720.95, on Jain, Hindu architecture relocated to 720.954.

.44 *Ancient Indian architecture

.5 Ancient Middle Eastern architecture

For Semitic architecture, see 722.3; Egyptian architecture, 722.2; Aegean architecture, 722.61.

.51 Mesopotamian architecture

.52 Ancient Persian architecture

.6 Ancient Western architecture

For Roman architecture, see 722.7; Greek (Hellenic) architecture, 722.8; other ancient Western architecture, 722.9.

*Add as instructed under 721–729.
.61 *Aegean, *Minoan, *Mycenaean architecture
.62 *Etruscan architecture
.7 *Roman architecture
.709.37 Architecture of Italian Peninsula and adjacent territories
Class architecture of Roman empire in 722.7

.8 *Greek (Hellenic) architecture
Class here comprehensive works on Greek and Roman architecture
For Roman architecture, see 722.7
.809.38 Architecture of Greece
Class architecture of Hellenistic world in 722.8

.9 Other ancient Western architecture
[.91] Ancient American architecture
Comprehensive works on ancient American, ancient North American architecture relocated to 720.97; on ancient South American architecture to 720.98

723 Architecture from ca. 300 to 1399
Class here comprehensive works on Oriental architecture from ca. 300 to 1399 [formerly 722]; medieval architecture
[.09] Historical, geographical, persons treatment
Do not use notation 09 from Table 1 here or in any subdivision of 723; class architecture from ca. 300 to 1399 limited to a specific country or locality in 720.9, persons treatment in 720.92

.1 Early Christian architecture
.2 Byzantine architecture
.3 Saracenic architecture
Class here Muslim, Moorish, Mudejar styles
.4 Romanesque and Norman architecture
.5 Gothic architecture

724 Architecture from 1400
Class here comprehensive works on Oriental architecture from 1400 [formerly 722], modern architecture
[.09] Historical, geographical, persons treatment
Do not use notation 09 from Table 1 here or in any subdivision of 724; class architecture from 1400 limited to a specific country or locality in 720.9, persons treatment in 720.92

*Add as instructed under 721–729
.1 1400–1800
Class here colonial styles
Elizabethan architecture relocated to 720.94209031, Jacobean architecture to 720.94209032, Queen Anne architecture relocated to 720.94209033
Class colonial styles of a later period with the period, e.g., 1800–1899 724.5

.12 1400–1499
Class here Renaissance architecture
Class Renaissance architecture of an earlier or later period with the period, e.g., 1500–1599 724.14

.14 1500–1599

.16 1600–1699
Class here comprehensive works on baroque architecture [formerly 724.19]
Class baroque architecture of 1700–1799 in 724.19

.19 1700–1799
Class here Georgian, rococo architecture
Churrigueresque architecture relocated to 720.94609032, comprehensive works on baroque architecture relocated to 724.16

.2 Classical revival architecture
Class here neoclassical architecture [formerly also 724.5]

.22 Roman revival architecture

.23 Greek revival architecture

.3 Gothic revival architecture

.5 1800–1899
Class here eclecticism, revivals, Victorian architecture
Neoclassical architecture relocated to 724.2
Class eclecticism and revivals of another specific period with the period, e.g., 1700–1799 724.19

For classical revival architecture, see 724.2, gothic revival architecture, 724.3

.52 Italianate revivals
Including Romanesque revival [formerly 724.8], Renaissance revival architecture

.6 1900–1999 [formerly 724.91]
Including art nouveau, expressionism, international style, functionalism

[.7] Swiss timber and half-timber
Provision discontinued because without meaning in styles of architecture
Romanesque revival architecture
Relocated to 724.52

1900–
Use of this number discontinued; class in 724

1900–1999
Relocated to 724.6

725–728 Specific types of structures
Class here development of architectural schools and styles, comprehensive
works on specific structures and their interior design and decorations,
interdisciplinary works on design and construction
Class comprehensive works in 720; engineering design and construction of
specific types of habitable structures in 690.5–690.8; structures rehabilitated to
a single new use with the new use, e.g., warehouses converted into apartments
728.314; structures rehabilitated to multiple new uses with the old use, e.g.,
warehouses converted into retail stores and apartments 725.35

For structural engineering, see 624.1; interior decoration, 747

725 Public structures
Not used primarily for religious, educational, research, residential purposes

SUMMARY

725.1 Government buildings
    .2 Commercial and communications buildings
    .3 Transportation and storage buildings
    .4 Industrial buildings
    .5 Health and welfare buildings
    .6 Prison and reformatory buildings
    .7 Refreshment facilities and park structures
    .8 Recreation buildings
    .9 Other public structures

.1 *Government buildings
    Class here international government, civic center buildings
    .11 *Legislative buildings
        Class here capitol
    .12 *Executive buildings
        Class here buildings containing branches of executive department
    .13 *County and *city government buildings
    .14 *Customs buildings
    .15 *Court, *record, *archive buildings

*Add as instructed under 721–729
.16 *Post offices

.17 *Official residences
   Including embassy, legation, consulate buildings
   Class here executive mansions, palaces of rulers

.18 *Military and *police buildings
   Examples: barracks, forts, castles, fortresses, armory and arsenal buildings
   Class engineering of forts and fortresses in 623.1, comprehensive works on castles in 728.81

.19 *Fire stations

.2 *Commercial and communications buildings
   For refreshment facilities, see 725.7

.21 *Retail trade buildings
   Class here stores, shops; bazaars, shopping malls

.23 *Office and *communications buildings
   Examples: medical office buildings and clinics, radio and television buildings and towers

.24 *Financial institutions
   For exchanges, see 725.25

.25 *Exchanges
   Examples: stock and commodity exchange, board of trade, chamber of commerce buildings

.3 *Transportation and storage buildings

.31 *Railroad and *rapid transit stations
   Class here passenger stations
   For railroad freight stations, see 725.32

.32 *Railroad freight stations

.33 *Railroad and *rapid transit buildings
   Examples: roundhouses, shops; tool storage, guard, signal buildings
   For railroad and rapid transit stations, see 725.31

.34 *Marine transportation facilities
   Examples: docks, piers
   Class shipyards in 725.4; engineering of naval facilities in 623.64; engineering of harbors, ports, roadsteads in 627.2

*Add as instructed under 721–729
.35 *Warehouses
   Class here comprehensive works on storage buildings
   Class a specific kind of storage building other than warehouse with the kind, e.g., storage elevators 725.36

.36 *Storage elevators

.38 *Motor vehicle transportation buildings
   Examples: bus terminals, garages, filling stations

.39 *Air transportation buildings
   Examples: air terminals, hangars
   Class engineering of military air facilities in 623.66

.4 *Industrial buildings
   Examples: factories, mills, plants, shipyards

.5 *Health and welfare buildings
   For medical office buildings and clinics, see 725.23

.51 *General hospital and sanitarium buildings
   For children’s hospital buildings, see 725.57

.52 *Psychiatric hospital buildings

.53 *Buildings of institutions for persons with mental handicaps

.54 *Buildings of institutions for persons with physical handicaps

.55 *Buildings of institutions for the poor
   Class buildings of institutions for indigent persons in late adulthood in 725.56

.56 *Buildings of institutions for persons in late adulthood

.57 *Child welfare institutions and *children’s hospital buildings

.59 Other

.592 *Veterinary hospitals and shelters

.594 *Homes for veterans

.597 *Morgues and *crematories

.6 *Prison and *reformatory buildings

.7 Refreshment facilities and park structures

.71 *Restaurant buildings

.72 *Bars (Pubs)

.73 *Bathhouses and *saunas

*Add as instructed under 721–729
.74 *Swimming pools
.76 *Amusement park buildings and *casinos

.8 **Recreation buildings**

For refreshment facilities and park structures, see 725.7

.804 General categories of recreation buildings
.804 2 Multiple-purpose complexes
   Class here cultural centers, recreation centers
   Class community centers for adult education in 727.9
.804 3 Sports complexes
   Variant names: sports centers, sports pavilions

.81 *Music halls and *concert halls
   For opera houses, see 725.822

.82 *Buildings for shows and spectacles
.822 *Theaters and *opera houses
.827 *Buildings for outdoor performances and *for outdoor sports
   Example: grandstands
   Class here amphitheaters, astrodomes, stadiums
   For racetrack buildings, see 725.89

.83 *Auditoriums
   Class here performing arts centers
   For music halls and concert halls, see 725.81; theaters and opera houses, 725.822

.84 *Buildings for indoor games
   Examples: bowling alleys; pool halls; halls for card games, checkers, chess
   For gymnasiums, see 725.85

.85 *Gymnasiums and *athletic club buildings
.86 *Rinks and *dance halls
.87 *Boathouses and *recreation pier buildings
   Including canoe club, yacht club buildings

.88 *Riding-club buildings
.89 *Racetrack buildings

*Add as instructed under 721–729
.9 Other public structures

.91 *Convention centers
  Class here exhibition buildings

.94 *Memorial buildings
  Class memorial buildings for a specific purpose with the purpose, e.g.,
  memorial library buildings 727.8

.96 Arches, gateways, walls
  Standard subdivisions are added for any or all of the topics in the heading
  See also 721.2 for walls as structural elements, 721.41 for arches as
  structural elements

.97 *Towers
  Examples: bell, clock towers

.98 Bridges, tunnels, moats
  Class engineering of moats in 623.31, of tunnels in 624.193, of bridges in
  624.2

726 Buildings for religious and related purposes

SUMMARY

726.1 Temples and shrines
  .2 Mosques and minarets
  .3 Synagogues and Judaic temples
  .4 Accessory houses of worship
  .5 Buildings associated with Christianity
  .6 Cathedrals
  .7 Monastic buildings
  .8 Mortuary chapels and tombs
  .9 Other buildings for religious and related purposes

> 726.1–726.3 Buildings associated with non-Christian religions

Class comprehensive works in 726; a specific kind of building for religious
purposes associated with a specific religion with the building, e.g., Buddhist
monasteries 726.7843

See also 726.5 for buildings associated with Christianity

.1 *Temples and *shrines
  Add to base number 726.1 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g., Buddhist
temples and shrines 726.143; however, class mosques and minarets in 726.2,
synagogues and Judaic temples in 726.3

  See Manual at 726.1

.2 *Mosques and *minarets

.3 *Synagogues and *Judaic temples

*Add as instructed under 721–729
.4 *Accessory houses of worship

For all religions
Examples: chapels, parish houses, Sunday school buildings

Class here comprehensive works on baptistries
Class baptistries as a part of church buildings in 726.596

For mortuary chapels, see 726.8
See also 726.595 for side chapels

.5 *Buildings associated with Christianity

Class here church buildings

Class a specific kind of building not provided for here with the building, e.g., Franciscan monasteries 726.773

For cathedrals, see 726.6

.51 Design [formerly also 726.523], decoration [formerly 726.523], construction of structural elements

Add to base number 726.51 the numbers following 721 in 721.1–721.8, e.g., design, decoration, construction of church vaulting 726.5143

Class decoration of structural elements in specific mediums in 726.524–726.528

.52 Design and decoration of parts and built-in church furniture

[.523] Design and decoration of structural elements

Relocated to 726.51

.524–.528 Decoration in specific mediums

Add to base number 726.52 the numbers following 729 in 729.4–729.8, e.g., decoration in relief 726.525

Class decorations of built-in church furniture in 726.529; decoration in a specific medium not in an architectural context with the medium, e.g., sculpture 730

.529 Built-in church furniture [formerly also 729.9]

Class built-in church furniture in a specific medium not in an architectural context with the medium, e.g., carved pew ends 731.54

.529 1 Sacramental furniture

Examples: altars, baptismal fonts, confessionals, tabernacles

.529 2 Rostral furniture

Examples: pulpits, lecterns, prayer desks

.529 3 Seats and canopies

Examples: baldachins, bishops’ thrones, choir stalls, pews

*Add as instructed under 721–729
.529 6 Screens and railings
    Examples: altar and rood screens, altar and chancel railings, reredoses

.529 7 Organ cases

.529 8 Lighting fixtures

.58 Buildings of specific denominations
    Add to base number 726.58 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g.,
    Anglican church buildings 726.583
    Class geographical treatment of buildings of specific denominations in
    726.509, specific parts of church buildings of specific denominations in
    726.59

.59 Parts
    Class design and construction of parts in 726.51, design and decoration of
    parts in 726.52

.591 Entrances and approaches

.592 Naves and transepts

.593 Chancels, sanctuaries, choir lofts, pulpit platforms

.594 Clerestories

.595 Side chapels
    See also 726.4 for chapels as separate buildings

.596 Sacristies and baptistries
    Class comprehensive works on baptistries in 726.4

.597 Towers and steeples

.6 *Cathedrals
    Class details and parts of cathedrals in 726.51–726.59

> 726.62–726.65 Cathedrals of specific denominations
    Class comprehensive works in 726.6, geographical treatment of cathedrals of
    specific denominations in 726.609

.62 Cathedrals of Eastern churches
    For Eastern Orthodox cathedrals, see 726.63

.63 Eastern Orthodox cathedrals

.64 Roman Catholic cathedrals

.65 Anglican cathedrals

*Add as instructed under 721–729
.69 Accessory structures
   Examples: cathedral cloisters, chapter houses
   Class here comprehensive works on cloisters
   Class monastic cloisters in 726.79

.7 *Monastic buildings
   Class here abbeys, convents, friaries, monasteries, priories
   Class monastic churches either as a place of public worship or as a separate
   church building in 726.5

.77 Of specific Christian orders
   Add to base number 726.77 the numbers following 271 in 271.1–271.9, e.g.,
   Franciscan monasteries 726.773
   Class geographical treatment of buildings of specific orders in 726.709

.78 Of orders of other religions
   Add to base number 726.78 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g.,
   Buddhist monasteries 726.7843

.79 Parts and accessory structures
   Examples: cells, cloisters, refectories
   Class monastic libraries in 727.8

.8 *Mortuary chapels and *tombs

.9 Other buildings for religious and related purposes
   Examples: episcopal palaces, missions, parsonages, buildings of religious
   associations, buildings housing roadside shrines

727 *Buildings for educational and research purposes
   Class here school buildings

.1 *Elementary school buildings

.2 *Secondary school buildings

.3 *College and university buildings
   Class specialized buildings of colleges and universities in 727.4–727.8

.38 Accessory structures
   Examples: dining halls, dormitories, student unions
   Music room buildings relocated to 727.478

.4 Professional and technical school buildings
   Use 727.40001–727.40009 for standard subdivisions
   Add to base number 727.4 notation 001–999, e.g., music room buildings
   727.478 [formerly also 727.38], law school buildings 727.434

*Add as instructed under 721–729
.5 Research buildings
Examples: laboratory, observatory buildings
Use 727.50001–727.50009 for standard subdivisions
Add to base number 727.5 notation 001–999, e.g., physics laboratories 727.553

.6 Museum buildings
Use 727.60001–727.60009 for standard subdivisions
Add to base number 727.6 notation 001–999, e.g., science museum buildings 727.65

For art museum buildings, see 727.7

.7 *Art museum and *gallery buildings

.8 *Library buildings

> 727.82–727.84 Specific kinds of libraries
Class comprehensive works in 727.8, geographical treatment regardless of kind of library in 727.809

.82 General libraries
Add to base number 727.82 the numbers following 027 in 027.1–027.8, e.g., public library buildings 727.824; then add further as instructed under 721–729

For branch libraries, see 727.84

.83 Libraries devoted to specific subjects

.84 Branch libraries

.9 Other buildings for educational and research purposes
Examples: community centers for adult education, learned society buildings

728 *Residential and related buildings
Class here domestic architecture, conventional housing
Class residential educational buildings in 727.1–727.3

For official residences, see 725.17; episcopal palaces, parsonages, 726.9

.1 *Low-cost housing
Unit and multiple dwellings designed along simple lines to reduce construction costs
Class specific types of low-cost housing in 728.3–728.7

.3 Specific kinds of conventional housing
Use of this number for comprehensive works on conventional housing discontinued; class in 728

*Add as instructed under 721–729
.31 *Multiple dwellings
   *Row houses and *townhouses
      Including duplex houses
   *Apartments (Flats)
      Including apartment hotels, tenements

.37 *Separate houses
   Class here cottages
   Class farmhouses and farm cottages in 728.6, vacation houses in 728.72, large and elaborate private dwellings in 728.8

.370 472 Energy conservation
      Including solar houses [formerly 728.69]

.372 *Houses with two or more stories

.373 *Single-story houses
      Class here bungalows, ranch and split-level houses

> 728.4–728.7 Special-purpose housing
   Class comprehensive works in 728

.4 *Club houses
      Country, city, fraternal clubs
      Class a type of club house not provided for here with the type, e.g., racetrack club houses 725.89

.5 *Hotels and *motels
   For apartment hotels, see 728.314

.6 *Farmhouses and *farm cottages
      Class farm buildings other than human residences in 728.92

[.67] Farmhouses and farm cottages
      Use of this number discontinued; class in 728.6

[.69] Solar houses
      Relocated to 728.370472

.7 *Vacation houses, cabins, hunting lodges, houseboats, mobile homes

.72 *Vacation houses

.73 *Cabins
      Class vacation cabins in 728.72

*Add as instructed under 721–729
.78  Houseboats
.79  Mobile homes
   Examples: campers, trailers
   For houseboats, see 728.78
   See Manual at 629.226 vs. 643.2, 690.879, 728.79

.8  *Large and elaborate private dwellings
    Class here chateaux, manor houses, mansions, plantation houses, villas

.81  *Castles
    Fortified residences
    Class here comprehensive works on architecture of castles
    Class castles as military structures in 725.18

.82  *Palaces
    Residences of the nobility
    Use of this number for chateaux discontinued; class in 728.8
    Class fortified palaces in 728.81
    See also 725.17 for palaces of rulers, 726.9 for episcopal palaces

[.83–.84]  Mansions, manor houses, villas
    Numbers discontinued; class in 728.8

.9  Accessory domestic structures
    Examples: bathhouses, conservatories, garages, gatehouses, patios, saunas,
    swimming pools

.92  Farm buildings other than human residences

.922  *Barns

729  Design and decoration of structures and accessories
    Class here interior design (the art or practice of planning and supervising the
    design and execution of architectural interiors and their furnishings)
    Class design and decoration of structures and accessories of specific types of
    buildings in 725–728
    For interior decoration, see 747
    See Manual at 729

>  729.1–729.2 Design in specific planes
    Class comprehensive works in 729, design of structural elements in specific
    planes in 721.1–721.8

*Add as instructed under 721–729
.1 Design in vertical plane  
   Examples: facades, elevations, sections  
.11 Composition  
.13 Proportion  
.19 Inscriptions and lettering  
.2 Design in horizontal plane (Plans and planning)  
   As related to function and size of areas  
   Class here modular design  
.23 Proportion  
.24 *Interior arrangement  
.25 *Lines of interior communication  
.28 Lighting  
.29 Acoustics  
[.3] Design and decoration of structural elements  
   Relocated to 721.1–721.8  

> 729.4–729.8 Decoration in specific mediums  
   Class comprehensive works in 729; decoration in a specific medium not in an architectural context with the medium, e.g., sculpture 730  
.4 Decoration in paint  
   As an adjunct to architecture  
.5 Decoration in relief  
   Examples: carved and sculptured decoration and ornament, Gothic tracery  
.6 Decoration in veneer and incrustation  
   Use of wood, stone, metal, enamel in architectural decoration  
.7 Decoration in mosaic  
   Class comprehensive works on mosaics in 738.5  
.8 Decoration in ornamental glass  
[.9] Built-in church furniture  
   Relocated to 726.529  

*Add as instructed under 721–729
730 Plastic arts  Sculpture

Class kinetic, sound sculpture; mixed media and composites; assemblages, constructions; land art in 709.04

SUMMARY

- Standard subdivisions of plastic arts
- Standard subdivisions of sculpture
- Processes, forms, subjects of sculpture
- Sculpture from earliest times to ca. 500, sculpture of nonliterate peoples
- Greek, Etruscan, Roman sculpture
- Sculpture from ca. 500 to 1399
- Sculpture from 1400
- Carving and carvings
- Numismatics and sigillography
- Ceramic arts
- Art metalwork

.01 Philosophy and theory of plastic arts

.02 Miscellany of plastic arts

.028 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials of plastic arts

Class here techniques of two or more of the plastic arts, e.g., firing of clays in sculpture and ceramics

.03-.09 Standard subdivisions of plastic arts

> 730.1–730.9 Standard subdivisions of sculpture

Class comprehensive works in 730

.1 Philosophy and theory of sculpture

.11 Appreciative aspects

Do not use for systems; class in 730.1

Class psychological principles in 730.19

.117 Aesthetics

.118 Criticism and appreciation

Theory, technique, history

Class works of critical appraisal in 730.9

.18 Inherent features

Examples: color, composition, decorative values, form, movement, space, style, symmetry, vision

.2 Miscellany of sculpture

[.28] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 731.028
.3-.8 Standard subdivisions of sculpture

.9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment of sculpture

Class here Oriental sculpture from ca. 500 limited to a specific country or locality [formerly 732.3–732.9], schools and styles limited to a specific country or locality

Class comprehensive works on specific schools and styles not limited to country or locality in 732–735, sculpture of nonliterate peoples regardless of time or place in 732.2

[.901-.905] Historical periods

Do not use; class in 732–735

.92 Sculptors

Description, critical appraisal, biography of sculptors and their works regardless of process, representation, style or school, period, place

Class sculptors who also work in the other plastic arts in 730.092

.922 Collected sculptors

Including works of sculptors from several geographical areas

Class works of more than one sculptor in the same geographical area in 730.91, 730.94–730.99, 732–735

[.93] Ancient world

Do not use; class in 732–733

.95 Asia

Class here comprehensive works on Oriental sculpture [formerly 732.3–732.9], Buddhist sculpture [formerly 732.4]

Class Buddhist sculpture not provided for here with the style, e.g., Japanese Buddhist sculpture 730.952

.954 South Asia  India

Class here comprehensive works on Jain, Hindu sculpture [formerly 732.4]

> 731–735 Sculpture

Class comprehensive works in 730

See Manual at 736–739 vs. 731–735

731 Processes, forms, subjects of sculpture

Class processes, forms, subjects of individual sculptors in 730.92; of specific periods and by specific schools in 732–735; of specific medieval or modern schools limited to a specific country or locality in 730.9
SUMMARY

731.028 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
   .2 Materials
   .3 Apparatus and equipment
   .4 Techniques and procedures
   .5 Forms
   .7 Specific types of sculpture in the round
   .8 Iconography

.028 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

   Comprehensive works

   Class techniques and procedures in 731.4, apparatus and equipment in 731.3, materials in 731.2

> 731.2–731.4 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

   Class comprehensive works in 731.028; forms and subjects employing techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials in 731.5–731.8

.2 Materials

   Examples: metals, wire, wood, stone, ceramic material, clay, glass, wax, rope, textiles, plastics, fiber glass, paper, papier-mâché, found objects

   Class use of materials in specific techniques in 731.4

.3 Apparatus and equipment

   Examples: tools, machines, accessories

   Class use of apparatus and equipment in specific techniques in 731.4

.4 Techniques and procedures

   .41 Direct-metal sculpture

      Examples: beating, hammering, bending, shaping, cutting, welding, soldering metals (including pipe and wire)

      Class art metalwork in 739

   .42 Modeling

      In clay, wax, other plastic materials with and without armatures

   .43 Molding

      Preparation of molds and models

      Class use of molds in 731.45

   .45 Casting

      Example: sand casting

   .452 In plaster and cement

   .453 In plastics
.456 In bronze
   Including lost-wax casting
   Class here casting in metals
   For casting in other metals, see 731.457

.457 In other metals

.46 Carving and chiseling techniques in sculpture

.462 Sculpturing in wood

.463 Sculpturing in stone

.47 Firing and baking
   Including firing and baking clay models for molding
   Class techniques of firing and baking in ceramics in 738.143

.48 Conservation, preservation, restoration, routine maintenance and repair, safety measures

.5 Forms
   Not limited by time, place, person
   General aspects: development, description, critical appraisal, collections of works
   For sculpture in the round, see 731.7

.54 Sculpture in relief
   Class iconography of sculpture in relief in 731.8

.542 Portals and doors

.549 Monumental reliefs
   For monumental brasses, see 739.522

.55 Mobiles and stabiles

.7 Specific types of sculpture in the round
   Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of works
   Example: totem poles
   Class iconography of sculpture in the round in 731.8

.72 Decorative sculpture
   Examples: garden sculpture, fountains, sculptured vases and urns

.74 Busts

.75 Masks

.76 Monuments
   For monumental brasses, see 739.522
.8 Iconography
   Not limited by time, place, person
   General aspects: development, description, critical appraisal, works

.81 Equestrian sculpture

.82-.89 Other specific subjects
   Add to base number 731.8 the numbers following 704.94 in
   704.942-704.949, e.g., mythology and legend 731.87; however, class busts
   in 731.74, masks in 731.75

> 732-735 Schools and styles of sculpture
   Class comprehensive works, medieval and modern Western schools and styles
   limited to a specific country or locality in 730.9; sculptors associated with
   specific schools and styles in 730.92

732 Sculpture from earliest times to ca. 500, sculpture of nonliterate peoples

[.09] Historical, geographical, persons treatment
   Do not use; class persons treatment in 730.9, historical, geographical
   treatment in 732

.2 Sculpture of nonliterate peoples
   Regardless of time or place

.22 Paleolithic sculpture

.23 Rock art (sculpture)

> 732.3-732.9 Ancient sculpture
   Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 in any subdivision of 732.3-732.9; class
   all persons treatment in 730.9
   Comprehensive works on Oriental sculpture relocated to 730.95, Oriental
   sculpture from ca. 500 limited to a specific country or locality relocated to
   730.9, comprehensive works on Oriental sculpture from ca. 500 to 1399
   relocated to 734, comprehensive works on Oriental sculpture from 1400
   relocated to 735
   Class comprehensive works in 732

.3 Ancient Palestinian sculpture
   Including Israelite, Judean, Jewish sculpture

.4 Ancient south and southeast Asian sculpture
   Comprehensive works on Buddhist sculpture relocated to 730.95, on Jain,
   Hindu sculpture relocated to 730.954

.44 Ancient Indian sculpture
.5 Mesopotamian and ancient Persian sculpture
.6 Ancient Germanic, Celtic, Slavic, Iberian, British sculpture
.7 Ancient Oriental sculpture
   Class ancient Oriental sculpture of a specific place not provided for here with
   the place, e.g., ancient Indian sculpture 732.44
.71 Ancient Chinese sculpture
.72 Ancient Japanese sculpture
.73 Ancient Korean sculpture
.8 Ancient Egyptian sculpture
.9 Sculpture of other ancient areas
   Add to base number 732.9 the numbers following —39 in notation 391–398
   from Table 2, e.g., Phoenician sculpture 732.944; however, ancient sculpture of
   Greek Archipelago relocated from 732.91 to 733.309391

733 Greek, Etruscan, Roman sculpture
.3 Greek (Hellenic) sculpture
   Comprehensive works on Greek and Roman sculpture is classed in 733
.309 38 Sculpture of Greece
   Class sculpture of Hellenistic world in 733.3
.309 391 Sculpture of Greek Archipelago [formerly 732.91]
.4 Etruscan sculpture
.5 Roman sculpture
   .509 37 Sculpture of Italian Peninsula and adjacent territories
      Class sculpture of Roman Empire in 733.5

734 Sculpture from ca. 500 to 1399
   Class here comprehensive works on Oriental sculpture from ca. 500 to 1399
   [formerly 732.3–732.9]; medieval sculpture
   Class sculpture from ca. 500 to 1399 limited to a specific country or locality in
   730.9

   [.09] Historical, geographical, persons treatment
      Do not use notation 09 from Table 1 here or in any subdivision of 734; class
      all geographical and persons treatment in 730.9

   .2 Styles
   .22 Early Christian and Byzantine sculpture
   .222 Early Christian sculpture
734 Plastic arts

735 Sculpture from 1400

Class here comprehensive works on Oriental sculpture from 1400 [formerly 732.3–732.9]; modern sculpture

Class sculpture from 1400 limited to a specific country or locality in 730.9

[.09] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use notation 09 from Table 1 here or in any subdivision of 735; class all geographical and persons treatment in 730.9

.2 Specific periods

.21 1400–1799

Examples: Renaissance, baroque sculpture

.22 1800–1899

Examples: classical revival sculpture, romanticism, realism

.23 1900–1999

.230 4 Schools and styles

Add to base number 735.2304 the numbers following 709.040 in 709.0401–709.0407, e.g., abstractionism in sculpture 735.230452

.231–.239 Periods

Add to base number 735.23 the numbers following —0904 in notation 09041–09049 from Table 1, e.g., sculpture of 1960–1969 735.236

.24 2000–2099

736–739 Other plastic arts

Processes and products

Class comprehensive works in 730, other plastic arts not provided for here in 745–749

See also 731–735 for sculpture

See Manual at 736–739 vs. 731–735

736 Carving and carvings

.2 Precious and semiprecious stones (Glyptics)

Class engraved seals, stamps, signets in 737.6, setting of precious and semiprecious stones in 739.27
.202 8 Lapidary work
Contains cutting, polishing, engraving gems

.22 Specific forms
Class scarabs in 736.20932, carving in specific materials regardless of form
in 736.23–736.28

.222 Cameos
.223 Intaglios
.224 Figurines

> 736.23–736.28 Specific stones
Class comprehensive works in 736.2

.23 Diamonds
.24 Jade

See also 731–735 for jade sculpture

.25 Sapphires
.28 Obsidian

.4 Wood
Including whittling
Example: butter prints and molds

See also 731–735 for wood sculpture, 745.51 for wood handicrafts

.5 Stone
Including lettering, inscriptions, designs
Class here effigial and sepulchral slabs

.6 Ivory, bone, horn, shell, amber

.62 Ivory
Class netsukes of ivory in 736.68

See also 731–735 for ivory sculpture

.68 Netsukes

.7 Ornamental fans
Class fans of a specific material with the material, e.g., ivory fans 736.62

.9 Other materials

.93 Wax
.94 Snow and ice
Plastic arts  Sculpture

.95  Soap
.98  Paper cutting and folding
.982  Origami
.984  Silhouettes

Class comprehensive works on drawing and cutting silhouettes in 741.7

737  Numismatics and sigillography

For paper money, see 769.55

.2  Medals and related objects
  .22  Medals
      Class here medallions
  .222  Commemorative medals
  .223  Civilian and military medals
      Including decorations, orders
  .224  Religious medals
  .23  Talismans and amulets
  .24  Pins and buttons
  .242  Political (Campaign) pins and buttons
  .243  Sports pins and buttons
      Example: baseball pins and buttons

.3  Counters and tokens

Standard subdivisions are added for counters and tokens, for counters alone, for
    tokens alone

.4  Coins

Class here counterfeit coins

.409  Historical, geographical, persons treatment
      Class coins of specific countries in 737.49

.43  Gold coins
  .430 9  Historical, geographical, persons treatment
      Class gold coins of specific countries in 737.49

.49  Of specific countries

By place of origin

Add to base number 737.49 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Roman coins
minted in Egypt 737.4932

See also 737.43094 for gold coins of Europe
738 Ceramic arts

Class here pottery

Class ceramic sculpture in 731–735

Works about “pottery” in the sense of porcelain and earthenware or stoneware are classed here, in the sense of only porcelain are classed in 738.2

For glass, see 748

SUMMARY

738.01–.09 Standard subdivisions

.1 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

.2 Porcelain

.3 Earthenware and stoneware

.4 Enameling and enamels

.5 Mosasics

.6 Ornamental bricks and tiles

.8 Other products

[.028] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 738.1

.09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here brands of pottery [formerly 738.23]

.092 Potters

Description, critical appraisal, biography of potters regardless of material or product

Class here ceramic artists

Class enamels in 738.4092, mosaicists in 738.5092

.1 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

.12 Materials

Examples: clays, e.g., kaolin; glazes, e.g., petuntse; color materials

Class use of materials in specific techniques in 738.14

.13 Apparatus and equipment

Examples: kilns, potter’s wheels

Class use of apparatus and equipment in specific techniques in 738.14
Techniques and procedures

Class techniques of making specialized products in 738.4–738.8

For decorative treatment, see 738.15; conservation, preservation, restoration, safety measures, 738.18

Modeling and casting

Firing

Before and after glazing

Glazing

Decorative treatment

Examples: underglaze and overglaze painting, slip tracing, sgraffito decoration, transfer painting

For glazing, see 738.144

Conservation, preservation, restoration, safety measures

Including expertizing, routine maintenance and repair

738.2–738.8 Products

Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of works

Class comprehensive works in 738

Porcelain

Use of this number for comprehensive works on pottery discontinued; class in 738

Class comprehensive works on porcelain, earthenware, stoneware in 738

[.202 8] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 738.1

Historical and geographical treatment of porcelain

Class here brands [formerly 738.27], geographical treatment of types and varieties [formerly 738.2709], geographical treatment of products [formerly 738.2809]

[.209 2] Persons treatment

Do not use; class in 738.092

[.23] Specific varieties and brands of pottery

Number discontinued; class in 738

Brands of pottery relocated to 738.09

[.24] Specific products of pottery

Number discontinued; class in 738
.27 Specific types and varieties of porcelain
   Examples: blue and white, flow-blue
   Brands relocated to 738.209

.270 9 Historical treatment of porcelain
   Geographical treatment of types and varieties relocated to 738.209

.28 Specific porcelain products
   Class specific products of specific types or varieties in 738.27, specialized products in 738.4–738.8

.280 9 Historical treatment
   Geographical treatment of products relocated to 738.209

.3 Earthenware and stoneware

.[302 8] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
   Do not use; class in 738.1

.309 Historical and geographical treatment
   Class here brands [formerly 738.37], geographical treatment of types and varieties [formerly 738.3709], geographical treatment of products [formerly 738.3809]

.[309 2] Persons treatment
   Do not use; class in 738.092

.37 Specific types and varieties of earthenware and stoneware
   Examples: delft, faience, majolica
   Brands relocated to 738.309

.370 9 Historical treatment
   Geographical treatment of types and varieties relocated to 738.309

.38 Specific earthenware and stoneware products
   Class specific products of specific types and varieties in 738.37; specialized products in 738.4–738.8

.380 9 Historical treatment
   Geographical treatment of products relocated to 738.309

.382 Middle Eastern and Western vessels
   Ancient and classical
   Standard subdivisions are added for a specific type of vessel, e.g., ancient Egyptian vases 738.3820932
   Use of this number for comprehensive works on vases discontinued; class in 738.38
Other containers
Number discontinued; class in 738.38

> 738.4–738.8 Specialized products and techniques of making them

Class comprehensive works in 738

.4 Enameling and enamels

Examples: basse-taille, champlevé, ronde bosse

For nielloing, see 739.15; jewelry, 739.27

.42 Cloisonné

.46 Surface-painted enamels

.5 Mosaics

Class here mosaic painting, comprehensive works on mosaics in all materials

Class mosaics of a specific material not provided for here with the material, e.g., mosaic glass 748.5

.52 Mosaics used with architecture

Examples: walls, floors, pavements, fixed screens and panels

.56 Mosaics applied to portable objects

Examples: mosaic jewelry, ornaments, ornamental objects, movable panels

.6 Ornamental bricks and tiles

Standard subdivisions are added for bricks and tiles, for bricks alone, and for tiles alone

.8 Other products

Examples: braziers, candlesticks, lamps, lighting fixtures, stoves

.82 Figurines

Examples: figure groups, animals, plants

739 Art metalwork

For numismatics, see 737

SUMMARY

739.1 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
.2 Work in precious metals
.3 Watches and clocks
.4 Ironwork
.5 Work in other metals
.7 Arms and armor
Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 739.1

Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials for a specific kind of metalwork with the kind, e.g., goldsmithing 739.22028

Materials

Class use of materials in specific techniques in 739.14

Apparatus and equipment

Examples: tools, machines, accessories

Class use of apparatus and equipment in specific techniques in 739.14

Techniques and procedures

Examples: bending, casting, drawing, forging, rolling, shaping metals by hammering and beating (repoussé work), stamping, welding

For decorative treatment, see 739.15

Decorative treatment

Examples: chasing, damascening, nielloing, painting, patinating

Conservation, preservation, restoration, safety measures

Including routine maintenance and repair

Work in precious metals

Class watches and clocks in precious metals in 739.3

739.22–739.24 In specific metals

Class comprehensive works in 739.2, jewelry in specific metals in 739.27

Goldsmithing

Class comprehensive works on gold- and silversmithing in 739.2

Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class techniques and procedures in 739.224, apparatus and equipment in 739.223, materials in 739.222

Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 739.227

Goldsmiths

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 739.2272)
.222-226 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Add to base number 739.22 the numbers following 739.1 in 739.12–739.16, e.g., decorative treatment 739.225

Class comprehensive works in 739.22028; historical, geographical, persons treatment in 739.227; techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials for specific products in 739.228

.227 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Add to base number 739.227 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., goldsmiths 739.2272

(Option: Class goldsmiths in 739.22092)

Works about “goldsmiths” in the sense of both gold- and silversmiths are classed in 739.2092

.228 Products

Gold and gold-plate

Class historical, geographical, persons treatment of specific products in 739.227

.228 2 Religious articles

.228 3 Tableware

Utensils used for setting a table or serving food and drink

Including flatware, hollow ware

Class tableware for religious use in 739.2282

.228 4 Receptacles

Examples: boxes, loving cups, vases

Class religious receptacles in 739.2282

.23 Silversmithing

Add to base number 739.23 the numbers following 739.22 in 739.22028–739.228, e.g., silversmiths 739.2372, silver tableware 739.2383

.24 Platinumwork

.27 Jewelry

Design of settings, mounting gems, repair work

Class here interdisciplinary works on making fine and costume jewelry

Class interdisciplinary works on jewelry in 391.7, on making costume jewelry in 688.2; making handcrafted costume jewelry in 745.5942; carving precious and semiprecious stones in 736.2; jewelry made in a material other than metal with the material, e.g., mosaic jewelry 738.56

.270 28 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class techniques and procedures in 739.274, apparatus and equipment in 739.273, materials in 739.272
.272-.276 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Add to base number 739.27 the numbers following 739.1 in 739.12–739.16, e.g., techniques 739.274
Class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials for specific products in 739.278

.278 Specific products
Examples: belt buckles, finger rings, shoe buckles, watch fobs

.3 Watches and clocks
Class here clockcases regardless of material
Add to base number 739.3 the numbers following 739.22 in 739.22028–739.227, e.g., decorative treatment 739.35
Class clocks as furniture in 749.3; interdisciplinary works on clocks in 681.113, on watches in 681.114

739.4–739.5 Work in base metals
Class comprehensive works in 739, watches and clocks in base metals in 739.3

For arms and armor, see 739.7

.4 Ironwork
Class here wrought iron, cast iron, stainless steel

.402 8-.47 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials; historical, geographical, persons treatment
Add to base number 739.4 the numbers following 739.22 in 739.22028–739.227, e.g., decorative treatment 739.45

.48 Specific products
Examples: balcony motifs, balustrades, grills, knockers, ornamental nails
Class historical, geographical, persons treatment of specific products in 739.47

.5 Work in other metals

.51 Copper and its alloys
For brass, see 739.52

.511 Copper

.512 Bronze
Class bronze sculpture in 731–735

.52 Brass

.522 Monumental brasses
Class here rubbing and rubbings for study and research of brasses
Class rubbings as art form in 760

500
.53 Tin and its alloys
   
   *For bronze, see 739.512*

.532 Tin

.533 Pewter

.54 Lead

.55 Zinc and its alloys
   
   *For brass, see 739.52*

.56 Nickel

.57 Aluminum

.58 Chromium

.7 **Arms and armor**

Class here decorative treatment of shapes, handles, grips, metalwork

Class interdisciplinary works in 623.44

*See also 623.441 for stone weapons*

> 739.72–739.74 Arms

Class comprehensive works in 739.7

.72 Edged weapons

Examples: axes, bayonets, daggers, dirks, knives, spears

Class edged arrows in 739.73, interdisciplinary works on knives in 621.932

.722 Swords and sabers

Standard subdivisions are added for swords and sabers, for swords alone, for sabers alone

.73 Missile-hurling weapons

Examples: air guns, bows and arrows, spring guns

*For firearms, see 739.74*

.74 Firearms

Add to base number 739.74 the numbers following 623.4 in 623.42–623.44, e.g., pistols 739.7443

Class interdisciplinary works on small firearms in 683.4

.75 Armor

.752 Shields
740 Drawing and decorative arts

SUMMARY
741 Drawing and drawings
742 Perspective
743 Drawing and drawings by subject
745 Decorative arts
746 Textile arts
747 Interior decoration
748 Glass
749 Furniture and accessories

741 Drawing and drawings

Class comprehensive works on drawing and painting in 750, on two-dimensional art in 760

For drawing and drawings by subject, see 743

SUMMARY
741.01-.09 Standard subdivisions
.2 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
.5 Cartoons, caricatures, comics
.6 Graphic design, illustration, commercial art
.7 Silhouettes
.9 Collections of drawings

.01 Philosophy and theory

.011 Appreciative aspects

Do not use for systems; class in 741.01

Class psychological principles in 741.019

.011 7 Aesthetics

.011 8 Criticism and appreciation

General aspects: theory, technique, history

Class works of critical appraisal in 741.09

.018 Inherent features

Examples: composition, color, form, style, decorative values, light, space, time, movement, symmetry

Class perspective in 742

[.028] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 741.2

.074 Museums and exhibits

Class collections of drawings in 741.9
.09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment
Class collections of drawings of specific periods and places in 741.92–741.99

.092 Artists
Description, critical appraisal, biography of artists regardless of medium, process, subject, period, place
Description, critical appraisal, biography of artists working in special applications relocated to 741.5–741.7
Class collections of drawings in 741.9

.2 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
Including one-color washes highlighting drawings
Class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials used in special applications in 741.5–741.7; used in drawing specific subjects in 743.4–743.8; used by individual artists in 741.092

For perspective, see 742
See also 751.422 for watercolor

.21 Techniques of reproduction and conservation

.217 Reproduction
Execution and identification

.2172 Reproductions and copies

.2174 Forgeries and alterations

.218 Conservation, preservation, restoration
Including expertizing
Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 741.217; routine maintenance and repair in 741.219

.219 Safety measures and routine maintenance and repair

> 741.22–741.29 Specific mediums
Class comprehensive works in 741.2

.22 Charcoal

.23 Chalk and crayon

.235 Pastel

.24 Pencil

.25 Silverpoint

.26 Ink with pen, brush, marker

.29 Scratchboard and airbrush drawing
741.5–741.7 Special applications

Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, description, critical appraisal, collections

Class here description, critical appraisal, biography of artists working in special applications [formerly 741.092]; collections by an individual artist devoted to special applications [formerly 741.9]

Class comprehensive works in 741.6

.5 Cartoons, caricatures, comics

Including fotonovelas

Class here cartoon fiction [formerly also with fiction with use of notation 306 from Table 3–B], graphic novels (visual novels)

Class cartoons or caricatures whose purpose is to inform or persuade with the subject of the cartoon or caricature, e.g., political cartoons 320.0207

.507 4 Museums and exhibits

Class collections in 741.59

.509 2 Artists

Class collections by individual artists in 741.593–741.599

.58 Animated cartoons

Class comprehensive works on cartoon films in 791.433, photographic techniques in 778.5347

.59 Collections

Class here cartoons with subordinate text

.590 9 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by specific continents, countries, localities in 741.593–741.599 (not 741.59093–741.59099)

.593–.599 Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 741.59 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., collections of cartoons from London 741.59421

Collections by individual artists are classed at country level only. Notation 074 from Table 1 for collections is not added. For example, a collection of an individual artist from London is classed in 741.5942 (not 741.95421, 741.9542074421)
.6 Graphic design, illustration, commercial art

Class here comprehensive works on special applications of drawing; on graphic design, illustration, commercial art

Class graphic arts, comprehensive works on two-dimensional art in 760; a specific type of illustration, a specific form of graphic design, a specific form of commercial art, not provided for here with the type or form, e.g., original oil paintings for book jackets 759

See Manual at 800 vs. 741.6

.64 Books and book jackets

Standard subdivisions are added for books and book jackets, books alone, and for book jackets alone

Class illumination of manuscripts and books in 745.67

.642 Children's books

.65 Magazines and newspapers

.652 Magazines and magazine covers

Standard subdivisions are added for magazines and magazine covers, for magazines alone, and for magazine covers alone

.66 Covers for sheet music and recordings

.67 Advertisements and posters

Standard subdivisions are added for advertisements and posters, for advertisements alone

.672 Fashion drawing

Class fashion design in 746.92

.674 Posters

Class posters as a specific form of prints in 769.5

.68 Calendars, postcards, greeting and business cards

.682 Calendars

.683 Postcards

Class government-issued postcards without illustration in 769.566

.684 Greeting cards

.685 Business cards (Trade cards)

.69 Labels and match covers

.692 Labels

.694 Match covers [formerly also 769.5]

.7 Silhouettes

Class cut-out silhouettes in 736.984
.9 Collections of drawings

Regardless of medium or process

Class here exhibition catalogs

Preliminary drawings are classed with the finished work unless they are treated as works of art in their own right

Collections by an individual artist devoted to special applications relocated to 741.5–741.7

Class collections by more than one artist devoted to special applications in 741.5–741.7, collections of drawings by subject not from a specific period or place in 743.9

> 741.92–741.99 Collections of drawings from specific periods and places

Regardless of subject

Class comprehensive works in 741.9

.92 Historical periods

Not limited geographically

.921 Earliest times to 499 A.D.

.922 500–1399

.923 1400–1799

.924 1800–

.924 1 1800–1899

.924 2 1900–1999

.93–.99 Specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 741.9 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., collections of drawings from London 741.9421

Collections by individual artists are classed at country level only. Notation 074 from Table 1 for collections is not added. For example, a collection of an individual artist from London is classed in 741.942 (not 741.9421, 741.942074421)

742 Perspective

General aspects: theory, principles, methods

Class perspective in drawing specific subjects in 743.4–743.8, in special applications in 741.5–741.7; comprehensive works on perspective in the arts in 701.82
743 Drawing and drawings by subject

.028 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
   Comprehensive works
   Class specific subjects in 743.4–743.8

> 743.4–743.8 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
   Class comprehensive works in 743.028, artists regardless of subject in 741.092

.4 Drawing human figures
   Class here nudes
   For drawing draped figures, see 743.5

.42 Portraiture
   Class portraiture of specific kinds of persons in 743.43–743.45

> 743.43–743.45 Specific kinds of persons
   Class comprehensive works in 743.4, anatomy of specific kinds of persons in 743.49

.43 Men

.44 Women

.45 Children

.46 Bones (Skeletal system)

.47 Muscles (Muscular system)

.49 Anatomy for artists
   Including parts and regions of body, e.g., head, abdomen, hands
   For bones, see 743.46; muscles, 743.47

.5 Drawing draperies and draped figures
   For fashion drawing, see 741.672

.6 Drawing animals

.62–.69 Specific animals
   Add to base number 743.6 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g.,
   drawing birds 743.68

.7 Drawing plants
   Including flowers, fruit

.8 Drawing other subjects
   Add to base number 743.8 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.943–704.949,
   e.g., landscapes 743.836

507
.9 Collections of drawings by subject (Iconography)

Not limited by period or by place of production

Add to base number 743.9 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942-704.949, e.g., collections of drawings of buildings 743.94

Class collections of drawings by subject from a specific period or place in 741.92-741.99

[744] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 17

745 Decorative arts

Class here folk art

Class decorative arts not provided for here in 736-739, 746-749

For interior decoration, see 747

SUMMARY

745.1 Antiques
.2 Industrial art and design
.4 Pure and applied design and decoration
.5 Handicrafts
.6 Calligraphy, illumination, heraldic design
.7 Decorative coloring
.8 Panoramas, cycloramas, dioramas
.9 Other decorative arts

.1 Antiques

Class a specific kind of antique with the kind, e.g., brasses 739.52, passenger automobiles 629.222

See Manual at 745.1

.102 8 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
.102 87 Techniques and reproduction

Execution and identification

.102 872 Reproductions and copies
.102 874 Forgeries and alterations
.102 88 Conservation, preservation, restoration

Including expertizing

Do not use for routine maintenance and repair; class in 745.10289

Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 745.10287

.102 89 Safety measures and routine maintenance and repair
.2 Industrial art and design
Creative design of mass-produced commodities
Class design of a specific commodity with the commodity, e.g., automobiles 629.231

.4 Pure and applied design and decoration
Class here design source books
Class design in a specific art form with the form, e.g., design in architecture 729
For industrial design, see 745.2

[.409] Historical, geographical, persons treatment
Do not use; class in 745.44

(.409 2) Artists
(Use of this number is optional; prefer 745.4492)

.44 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

> 745.441–745.445 Periods of development
Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality
Class comprehensive works in 745.44

.441 Nonliterate peoples, and earliest times to 499
Including paleolithic art
Class here design and decoration by nonliterate peoples regardless of time or place

.442 500–1399
Including early Christian, Byzantine, Romanesque, Gothic styles

.443 1400–1799
Including Renaissance, baroque, rococo styles

.444 1800–1999
.444 1 1800–1899
Including classical revival, romantic, art nouveau styles
.444 2 1900–1999

.445 2000–2099
.449 Geographical and persons treatment

Add to base number 745.449 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., artists 745.4492

(Option: Class artists in 745.4092)

Class design and decoration by nonliterate peoples regardless of place in 745.441

.5 Handicrafts

Creative work done by hand with aid of simple tools or machines

Including work in bread dough

Class home (amateur) workshops in 684.08, interdisciplinary works on handicrafts in 680

For decorative coloring, see 745.7; floral arts, 745.92

See Manual at 745.5 vs. 680

SUMMARY

| 745.51 | In woods
| 745.53 | In leathers and furs
| 745.54 | In papers
| 745.55 | In shells
| 745.56 | In metals
| 745.57 | In rubber and plastics
| 745.58 | From beads, found and other objects
| 745.59 | Making specific objects

> 745.51–745.58 In specific materials

Class comprehensive works in 745.5, specific objects made from specific materials in 745.59, glass handicrafts in 748

For textile handicrafts, see 746

.51 In woods

Examples: inlay trim, marquetry, ornamental woodwork, scrollwork

Including bamboo

Class treen (woodenware) in 674.88, cabinetmaking in 684.08, wooden furniture making in 684.104, artistic aspects of furniture in 749

For ornamental woodwork in furniture, see 749.5

.53 In leathers and furs

Class construction of clothing in 646.3

.531 Leathers

.537 Furs
.54 In papers
   Examples: endpapers, paper boxes, tissue papers, wallpapers
   Including gift wrapping, quilling
   Class paper cutting and folding in 736.98

.542 Papier-mâché
   Class papier-mâché used in sculpture in 731.2

.546 Decoupage
   Including potichomania

.55 In shells

.56 In metals
   Class art metalwork in 739

.57 In rubber and plastics

.572 Plastics

.58 From beads, found and other objects
   Class specific objects made from other objects in 745.59

.582 Beads
   For bead embroidery, see 746.5

.584 Found objects
   Examples: cattails, scrap, stones, hosiery

.59 Making specific objects
   Class here handicrafts in composite materials

.592 Toys, models, miniatures, related objects
   Class interdisciplinary works on models and miniatures in 688.1, on
   mass-produced and handcrafted toys in 688.72
   Including paper airplanes

> 745.592 2–745.592 4 Toys
   Class comprehensive works in 745.592
   For toy soldiers, see 745.59282

.592 2 Dolls, puppets, marionettes, and their clothing

.592 21 Dolls and their clothing

.592 24 Puppets and marionettes and their clothing

.592 3 Dollhouses and furniture
.592 4 Soft toys
   Example: stuffed animals
   Class stuffed dolls in 745.59221

.592 8 Models and miniatures
   Including ships in bottles
   Class here interdisciplinary works on handcrafted models and miniatures
   Class models and miniatures produced by assembly-line or mechanized manufacturing, interdisciplinary works on models and miniatures in 688.1; miniature and model educational exhibits, models for technical and professional use with the subject illustrated, e.g., handcrafted miniature anthropological exhibits 573.074

   See Manual at 745.592

.592 82 Military models and miniatures
   Including toy soldiers

.593 Useful objects
   For toys, models, miniatures, related objects, see 745.592

.593 2 Lampshades

.593 3 Candles and candlesticks

.593 32 Candles

.593 4 Snuffboxes

.593 6 Decoys
   Class carved birds not used for hunting in 730

.594 Decorative objects

.594 1 For special occasions
   Examples: holidays, weddings
   Class here greeting cards

   For Easter eggs, see 745.5944

.594 12 Christmas

.594 2 Costume jewelry
   Class interdisciplinary works on costume jewelry in 391.7, on making jewelry in 739.27, on making costume jewelry in 688.2

.594 3 Artificial flowers
   Class arrangement of artificial flowers in 745.92

.594 4 Egg decorating
   Including Easter eggs
.6 Calligraphy, illumination, heraldic design

.61 Calligraphy

Class here artistic, decorative lettering

Class penmanship in 652.1, typography in 686.22

.619 Styles

.619 7 Latin (Western) styles

.619 74 Carolingian calligraphy

.619 75 Black-letter and Gothic calligraphy

.619 77 Italic calligraphy

.619 78 Roman calligraphy

.619 8 Greek calligraphy

.619 9 Other

Add to base number 745.6199 the numbers following —9 in —91–99 from Table 6, e.g., Chinese calligraphy 745.619951

.66 Heraldic design

.67 Illumination of manuscripts and books

Class here facsimiles of manuscripts reproduced for their illuminations

Standard subdivisions are added for manuscripts and books, for manuscripts alone, and for books alone

Class development, description, critical appraisal of manuscripts in 091, of illustrated books in 096.1

See also 741.64 for book illustration

See Manual at 745.67

.674 Illuminated manuscripts and books by language

Add to base number 745.674 notation 1–9 from Table 6, e.g., illuminated manuscripts in Byzantine Greek 745.67487; however, class illuminated manuscripts in Latin in 745.67094

Class illuminated manuscripts and books in specific languages produced in specific countries and localities in 745.67093–745.67099

.7 Decorative coloring

Class printing, painting, dyeing textiles in 746.6

.72 Painting and lacquering

.723 Painting

Examples: rosemaling, tolecraft

.726 Lacquering

Class here japanning
Stenciling

Decalcomania

Gilding

Class gilding as an aspect of bookbinding in 686.36, of illumination of manuscripts and books in 745.67

Panoramas, cycloramas, dioramas

Other decorative arts

Floral arts

Flower arrangement: selection and arrangement of plant materials and appropriate accessories

Class here arrangement of artificial flowers

Class making artificial flowers in 745.5943, potted plants as interior decorations in 747.98

> 745.922–745.926 Three-dimensional arrangements

Class comprehensive works in 745.92

> 745.922–745.925 Three-dimensional arrangements with specific materials

Class comprehensive works in 745.92, arrangements with specific materials for special occasions in 745.926

Flower arrangements in containers

Occidental compositions

Oriental compositions

Chinese flower arrangements

Japanese flower arrangements

Flower arrangements without containers

Examples: corsages, boutonnieres, set floral pieces

Fruit and vegetable arrangements

Including carving of vegetables to produce artificial flowers

Arrangements with other plant materials

Examples: driftwood, pods and cones, dried and gilded grasses and leaves

Three-dimensional arrangements for special occasions

Examples: arrangements for church services, funerals, holidays, weddings
Two-dimensional arrangements
Use of seeds and other dried plant materials in pictures, hangings, trays, for other decorative purposes

746 Textile arts

Class here textile handicrafts

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
   Class techniques of reproduction and conservation in 048
0288 Routine maintenance and repair [formerly also 0489]
0289 Safety measures [formerly also 0489]
04 Special topics
041 Patterns
042 Stitches
048 Techniques of reproduction and conservation
0487 Reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations
   Execution and identification
0488 Conservation, preservation, restoration
   Including expertizing
   Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 0487
[0489] Routine maintenance and repair, safety measures
   Routine maintenance and repair relocated to 0288, safety measures relocated to 0289

Class domestic sewing and related operations in 646.2, a specific textile product not provided for here with the product, e.g., stuffed animals 745.5924

SUMMARY

746.04 Specific materials
   .1 Yarn preparation and weaving
   .2 Laces and related fabrics
   .3 Pictures, hangings, tapestries
   .4 Needle- and handwork
   .5 Bead embroidery
   .6 Printing, painting, dyeing
   .7 Rugs and carpets
   .9 Other textile products

   .04 Specific materials

   Add to base number 746.04 the numbers following 677 in 677.1–677.7, e.g., silk 746.0439, string art 746.0471

   Class products in a specific material with the product, e.g., string pictures 746.3
> 746.1–746.9 Products and processes

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of precedence, e.g., embroidering tapestry 746.3 (*not* 746.44)

- Laces and related fabrics 746.2
- Pictures, hangings, tapestries 746.3
- Rugs and carpets 746.7
- Other textile products 746.9
- Yarn preparation and weaving 746.1
- Needle- and handwork 746.4
- Bead embroidery 746.5
- Printing, painting, dyeing 746.6

Class comprehensive works in 746, home sewing and clothing in 646, textile manufacturing in 677

.1 Yarn preparation and weaving

.11 Carding and combing

.12 Spinning, twisting, reeling

.13 Dyeing

.14 *Weaving

  Example: card weaving

  *For weaving unaltered vegetable fibers, see 746.41; nonloom weaving, 746.42*

.2 Laces and related fabrics

.22 *Laces

  Examples: crocheted, darned laces

  *For tatting, see 746.436*

.222 *Bobbin laces

.224 *Needlepoint laces

.226 *Knitted laces

.27 Passementerie

  Examples: braids, cords, fringes

.3 *Pictures, hangings, tapestries

[.309] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

  Do not use; class in 746.39

(.309 2) Artists

  (Use of this number is optional; prefer 746.392)

*Add as instructed under 746*
.39  Historical, geographical, persons treatment
     Add to base number 746.39 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., artists 746.392
     (Option: Class artists in 746.3092)

.4  Needle- and handwork

.41  Weaving, braiding, matting unaltered vegetable fibers
     Examples: raffia work, rushwork

.412  Basketry

.42  Nonloom weaving and related techniques
     Examples: braiding, plaiting, twining
     Class nonloom weaving of unaltered vegetable fibers in 746.41
     For card weaving, see 746.14

.422  Knotting
     *Macramé
     *Netting
     Including knotless netting, sprang

.43  *Knitting, crocheting, tatting

.432  *Knitting
     Class comprehensive works on knitting and crocheting in 746.43

.434  *Crocheting

.436  *Tatting

.44  *Embroidery
     Examples: couching, cutwork, drawn work, hardanger, smocking

.440 28  Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
     Including machine embroidery

.442  *Canvas embroidery and needlepoint
     Including bargello
     Class cross-stitch and counted thread embroidery in 746.443

.443  *Cross-stitch
     Class here counted thread embroidery

.445  *Appliqué

.446  *Crewelwork

.46  *Patchwork and quilting
     Class quilts in 746.97

*Add as instructed under 746
*Bead embroidery

Printing, painting, dyeing

Examples: hand decoration, stenciling

*Printing

Block and silk-screen

Resist-dyeing

*Batik

*Tie-dyeing

*Rugs and carpets

Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 746.79

Artists

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 746.792)

*Woven rugs and carpets

Examples: Jacquard, plain, tapestry, twill weaves

Including Navaho rugs

*Woven rugs and carpets, see 746.75

*Crocheted, knitted, braided rugs and carpets

*Hooked and embroidered rugs and carpets

Pile rugs and carpets

Asian pile rugs and carpets

Class here Oriental-style rugs and carpets

Class styles from specific Asian countries and localities in

746.751-746.758, from Caucasus region in 746.759

746.751-746.759 Oriental-style rugs and carpets

Class comprehensive works in 746.75095

.751-.758 Styles from specific Asian countries and localities

Add to base number 746.75 the numbers following —5 in notation 51–58
from Table 2, e.g., Chinese rugs 746.751

.759 Styles from Caucasus region

.79 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Add to base number 746.79 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., artists 746.792

*Add as instructed under 746
Other textile products

Costume

Including fashion design

Class interdisciplinary works on clothing in 391, on clothing construction in 646.4

See Manual at 391 vs. 646.3, 746.92

746.94–746.98 Interior furnishings

Standard subdivisions are added for a single product, e.g., New England quilts 746.970974

Class comprehensive works in 746.9

*Draperies and curtains

*Furniture covers

Examples: antimacassars, kneelers, slipcovers, upholstery

*Table linens

Examples: doilies, mats, napkins (serviettes), scarves, tablecloths; fair linens

*Bedclothing

Examples: afghans, bedspreads, blankets, quilts; sheets, pillowcases

*Towels and toweling

747 Interior decoration

Design and decorative treatment of interior furnishings

Class here interior decoration of residential buildings [formerly also 645]

Class textile arts and handicrafts in 746, interior design in 729

Interior decoration of specific types of residential buildings is classed in 747.88

For furniture and accessories, see 749

SUMMARY

747.1 Decoration under specific limitations

.2 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

.3 Ceilings, walls, doors, windows

.4 Floors

.5 Draperies, upholstery, rugs and carpets

.7 Decoration of specific rooms of residential buildings

.8 Decoration of specific types of buildings

.9 Specific decorations

[.09] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 747.2

*Add as instructed under 746
(0.092) Artists

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 747.2)

.1 Decoration under specific limitations

Example: decorating on a budget

Class a specific aspect of decoration under limitations with the aspect, e.g.,
decorating dining rooms on a budget 747.76

.2 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here artists

(Option: Class artists in 747.092)

> 747.201−747.205 Periods of development

Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality

Class comprehensive works in 747.2

.201 Earliest times to 499 A.D.

.202 500−1399

.203 1400−1799

.203 4 1400−1499

Class here Renaissance period

Class Renaissance decoration of an earlier or later period with the
specific period, e.g., interior decoration in the 1500s 747.2035

.203 5 1500−1599

.203 6 1600−1699

.203 7 1700−1799

.204 1800−1999

.204 8 1800−1899

.204 9 1900−1999

Add to base number 747.2049 the numbers following −0904 in
notation 09041−09049 from Table 1, e.g., interior decoration in the
1970s 747.20497

.205 2000−2099

.21−.29 Geographical treatment

Add to base number 747.2 the numbers following 708 in 708.1−708.9, e.g.,
interior decoration and artists in Islamic areas 747.2917671

Individual artists are classed in notation at country level only
747.3–747.4 Decoration of specific elements

Class comprehensive works in 747, decoration of specific elements in specific types of buildings in 747.8, decoration of specific elements in specific rooms of residential buildings in 747.7, specific decorations of specific elements in 747.9

.3 Ceilings, walls, doors, windows

Including decorative hangings, painting, paneling, woodwork

Class here textile wall coverings, wallpapers

For draperies, see 747.5

.4 Floors

For rugs and carpets, see 747.5

.5 Draperies, upholstery, rugs and carpets

.7 Decoration of specific rooms of residential buildings

Standard subdivisions are added for individual rooms

Class specific decorations regardless of room in 747.9

.73 Home libraries and studies

.75 Living rooms, drawing rooms, parlors

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all of the topics in the heading

.76 Dining rooms

.77 Bedrooms and nurseries

.78 Bathrooms and powder rooms

.79 Other rooms

.791 Recreation and family rooms

.797 Kitchens

.8 Decoration of specific types of buildings

Class specific decorations regardless of type of building in 747.9

.85–.87 Decoration of public, religious, educational, research buildings

Add to base number 747.8 the numbers following 72 in 725–727, e.g.,
decoration of theaters 747.85822
.88 Decoration of specific types of residential buildings

Add to base number 747.88 the numbers following 728 in 728.1–728.9, e.g., decoration of hotels 747.885

Class decoration of residential buildings of institutions in 747.85–747.87

Comprehensive works on decoration of residential buildings are classed in 747

*For decoration of specific rooms of residential buildings, see 747.7*

.9 **Specific decorations**

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., decorative lighting for Christmas 747.92 (*not* 747.93)

- Decorating with house plants 747.98
- Decorative lighting 747.92
- Decorating with color 747.94
- Decorations for specific occasions 747.93

*See also 747.5 for draperies, upholstery, rugs and carpets*

.92 Decorative lighting

.93 Decorations for specific occasions

- Examples: for parties, weddings, holidays

.94 Decorating with color

.98 Decorating with houseplants

**748 Glass**

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>748.092</th>
<th>Persons treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>Glassware</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>Stained, painted, leaded, mosaic glass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.6</td>
<td>Methods of decoration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.8</td>
<td>Specific articles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

.092 Persons treatment

Class here glassmakers

The term “glassmakers” when referring only to makers of glassware is classed in 748.29

**.2 Glassware**

Class here blown, cast, decorated, fashioned, molded, pressed glassware

Class stained glass in 748.5

*For methods of decoration, see 748.6; specific articles, 748.8*

.202 8 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

.202 82 Glassblowing

.202 86 Bottle and jar cutting
748  Drawing and decorative arts  748

.202 87  Reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations
Execution and identification

.202 88  Repair and restoration
Including expertizing
Safety measures relocated to 748.20289
Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations
in 748.20287

.202 89  Safety measures [formerly also 748.20288]

[.209]  Historical, geographical, persons treatment
Do not use; class in 748.29

(.209 2)  Glassware makers
(Use of this number is optional; prefer 748.29)

.29  Historical, geographical, persons treatment
Class here glassware makers
(Option: Class glassware makers in 748.2092)

.290 1–.290 5  Periods of development
Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality
Add to base number 748.290 the numbers following 747.20 in
747.201–747.205, e.g., glassware of 1700–1799 748.29037; however,
Greco-Roman glass relocated from 748.2901 to 748.29938

.291–.299  Geographical treatment
Add to base number 748.29 the numbers following 708 in 708.1–708.9,
e.g., Greco-Roman glass 748.29938 [formerly 748.2901], glassware and
glassmakers of Pennsylvania 748.29148
Individual glassmakers are classed in notation at country level only

.5  Stained, painted, leaded, mosaic glass
Standard subdivisions are added for stained glass alone, for painted glass alone,
and for leaded glass alone
Class comprehensive works on mosaics in 738.5
For specific articles, see 748.8

.502 8  Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

.502 82  Glass painting and staining

.502 84  Leaded glass craft

.502 85  Mosaic glass craft and making glass mosaics

.502 88  Conservation, preservation, restoration
Do not use for routine maintenance and repair; class in 748.50289

.502 89  Safety measures and routine maintenance and repair
[.509] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 748.59

(.509 2) Artists

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 748.59)

.59 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here artists

(Option: Class artists in 748.5092)

.590 1-.590 5 Periods of development

Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality

Add to base number 748.590 the numbers following 747.20 in 747.201–747.205, e.g., 500–1399 748.5902

.591-.599 Geographical treatment

Add to base number 748.59 the numbers following 708 in 708.1–708.9, e.g., stained glass of Chartres 748.59451

Individual artists are classed in notation at country level only

.6 Methods of decoration

Examples: cutting, enameling, engraving, etching, sandblasting

Class methods of decoration of specific articles in 748.8

For painted glass, see 748.5

[.609 2] Persons treatment

Do not use; class in 748.29

.8 Specific articles

Examples: mirrors, ornaments

Class mirrors as furniture in 749.3, glass lamps and lighting fixtures in 749.63

.82 Bottles

Bottles of artistic interest regardless of use

Class manufacture of glass bottles in 666.192

.83 Tableware

Class here drinking glasses

.84 Paperweights

.85 Glass beads

749 Furniture and accessories

For upholstery, see 747.5

[.09] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 749.2
Furniture makers

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 749.2)

.1 Antique furniture

Class specific kinds of antique furniture in 749.3

.102 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

.102 87 Reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations

Execution and identification

.102 88 Conservation, preservation, restoration

Including expertizing

Do not use for routine maintenance and repair; class in 749.10289

Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 749.10287

.102 89 Safety measures and routine maintenance and repair

[.109] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 749.2

.2 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here antiques and reproductions, furniture makers

(Option: Class furniture makers in 749.092)

.201–.205 Periods of development

Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality

Add to base number 749.20 the numbers following 747.20 in

747.201–747.205, e.g., Renaissance period 749.2034

.21–.29 Geographical treatment

Add to base number 749.2 the numbers following 708 in 708.1–708.9, e.g.,

English furniture and furniture makers 749.22

Individual furniture makers are classed in notation at country level only

.3 Specific kinds of furniture

Examples: beds, cabinets, chests, clockcases, desks, mirrors, screens, tables

Class outdoor furniture in 749.8

For built-in furniture, see 749.4; heating and lighting fixtures and furniture, 749.6; picture frames, 749.7

.32 Chairs

.4 Built-in furniture

Class built-in church furniture in architectural design in 726.529

For heating and lighting fixtures and furniture, see 749.6
.5 Ornamental woodwork in furniture
Examples: inlay trim, lacquer work, marquetry, scrollwork
Class ornamental woodwork in a specific kind of furniture with the kind, e.g., picture frames 749.7

.6 Heating and lighting fixtures and furniture

.62 Heating
Examples: mantels, fireplace and inglenook fixtures and furniture

.63 Lighting
Examples: chandeliers, lamps, sconces
Class built-in church lighting fixtures in architectural design in 726.5298

.7 Picture frames
Including shadow boxes
Class here picture framing

.8 Outdoor furniture
Class furniture used both in- and outdoors in 749.3

750 Painting and paintings
Class here comprehensive works on painting and drawing

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of precedence, e.g., Canadian painters of landscapes 759.11 (not 758.10971), landscape painting in Canada 758.10971 (not 759.11)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Individual painters and their work</th>
<th>759.1-.9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials</td>
<td>751.2-.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iconography</td>
<td>753-758</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific forms</td>
<td>751.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geographical treatment</td>
<td>759.1-.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periods of development</td>
<td>759.01-.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color</td>
<td>752</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Class comprehensive works on graphic arts, two-dimensional art in 760; painting in a specific decorative art with the art, e.g., illumination of manuscripts and books 745.67

For drawing and drawings, see 741

SUMMARY

750.1-.9 Standard subdivisions
751 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, forms
752 Color
753 Symbolism, allegory, mythology, legend
754 Genre paintings
755 Religion and religious symbolism
757 Human figures and their parts
758 Other subjects
759 Historical, geographical, persons treatment
.1 Philosophy and theory

.11 Appreciative aspects
   Do not use for systems; class in 750.1
   Class psychological principles in 750.19

.117 Aesthetics

.118 Criticism and appreciation
   General aspects: theory, technique, history
   Class works of critical appraisal in 759

.18 Inherent features
   Examples: composition, form, style, perspective, decorative values, light,
   vision, space, movement, symmetry
   Class color in 752

[.28] Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
   Relocated to 751

[.9] Historical, geographical, persons treatment
   Do not use; class in 759

(.92) Painters
   (Use of this number is optional; prefer 759)

751 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
   [formerly 750.28], forms

.2 Materials
   Examples: surfaces, pigments, mediums, fixatives, coatings
   Class use of materials in specific techniques in 751.4

.3 Apparatus, equipment, artists’ models
   Class use of apparatus and equipment in specific techniques in 751.4
.4 Techniques and procedures

.42 Use of water-soluble mediums

For tempera painting, see 751.43

.422 Watercolor painting

Including casein painting, gouache

Class ink painting in color in 751.425

.422 4 Watercolor painting techniques by subject

Add to base number 751.4224 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., techniques of landscape painting in watercolor 751.422436

.425 Ink painting

.425 1 Chinese ink painting

.425 14 Chinese ink painting techniques by subject

Add to base number 751.42514 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., techniques of landscape painting in Chinese ink painting 751.4251436

.425 2 Japanese ink painting

.426 Acrylic painting

.43 Tempera painting

.44 Fresco painting

.45 Oil painting

.454 Oil painting techniques by subject

Add to base number 751.454 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., techniques of landscape painting in oils 751.45436

.46 Encaustic (Wax) painting

.49 Other methods

Examples: finger, polymer, roller (brayer), sand painting

Class mosaic painting in 738.5

.493 Collage

With painting as the basic technique

.494 Airbrush

.5 Techniques of reproduction

Execution, identification, determination of authenticity of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations

For printmaking and prints, see 760

.58 Forgeries and alterations

528
.6 Conservation, preservation, restoration, safety measures, routine care

.62 Conservation, preservation, restoration

Including expertizing

Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 751.5; routine care in 751.67

.67 Safety measures, routine care

.7 Specific forms

[.72] Easel paintings

Number discontinued; class in 750

.73 Murals and frescoes

Class here painted graffiti, street art

.74 Panoramas, cycloramas, dioramas

.75 Scene paintings

Including theatrical scenery

.76 Glass underpainting

Class glass underpainting as a technique of glass decoration in 748.6

.77 Miniatures

Class miniatures done as illuminations in manuscripts and books in 745.67

See Manual at 745.67

752 Color

Class technology of color in 667, comprehensive works on color in the fine and decorative arts in 701.85

> 753–758 Iconography

General aspects: development, description, critical appraisal, works regardless of form

Class comprehensive works in 750

See Manual at 753–758

753 Symbolism, allegory, mythology, legend

.6 Symbolism and allegory

For religious symbolism, see 755

.7 Mythology and legend

Class religious mythology in 755

754 Genre paintings
755  Religion and religious symbolism

Add to base number 755 the numbers following 704.948 in 704.9482–704.9489, e.g., paintings of Holy Family 755.56

[756]  Historical events

Relocated to 758.99

757  Human figures and their parts

Not provided for in 753–755, 758

Class here portraits

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., groups of nude women 757.4 (not 757.22 or 757.6)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specific kinds of persons</th>
<th>Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Erotica</td>
<td>757.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miniature portraits</td>
<td>757.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific kinds of persons</td>
<td>757.3–.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groups of figures</td>
<td>757.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>According to attire</td>
<td>757.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

.2  According to attire

.22 Nudes

.23 Draped figures

> 757.3–757.5 Specific kinds of persons

Class here portraits of individuals

Class comprehensive works in 757

.3 Men

.4 Women

.5 Children

.6 Groups of figures

.7 Miniature portraits

.8 Erotica

Including pornography

[.9]  General collections of portraits

Number discontinued; class in 757

758  Other subjects

.1 Landscapes

Add to base number 758.1 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., landscapes of Utah 758.1792
Painting and paintings

.2 Marine scenes and seascapes

.3 Animals
   Including hunting scenes
   Class hunting scenes in which animals are not the center of interest with the subject, e.g., hunters 757.6
   See Manual at 753–758

.4 Still life
   .42 Flowers

.5 Plants
   For flowers, see 758.42
   See Manual at 753–758

.6 Industrial and technical subjects

.7 Architectural subjects and cityscapes
   Add to base number 758.7 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., cityscapes of England 758.742

.9 Other
   Add to base number 758.9 notation 001–999, e.g., paintings of historical events 758.99 [formerly also 756]
   For genre paintings, see 754; landscapes, 758.1; seascapes, 758.2; cityscapes, 758.7

759 Historical, geographical, persons treatment
   General aspects: development, description, critical appraisal, works
   (Option: Class painters in 750.92)
   Class exhibitions of paintings not limited by place, period, or subject in 750.74

> 759.01–759.07 Periods of development
   Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality, works on one or two periods of European painting
   Class comprehensive works in 759; works on three or more periods of European painting in 759.94; schools associated with a specific locality in 759.1–759.9, e.g., Florentine school of Italian painting 759.551

.01 Nonliterate peoples, and earliest times to 499
   .011 Nonliterate peoples
      Regardless of time or place
      Class paintings of both nonliterate and literate cultures in 759.1–759.9
   .0112 Paleolithic painting and paintings
759

Rock art (painting and paintings)

500–1399

Class here medieval painting and paintings

500–1199

Early Christian painting and paintings

Class early Christian painting and paintings before 500 in 759.01

Byzantine painting and paintings

Class Byzantine painting and paintings before 500 in 759.01

Romanesque painting and paintings

1200–1399

Class here Gothic painting and paintings

Class Gothic painting and paintings of an earlier or later period with the specific period, e.g., 500–1199 759.021

1400–1599

Class here Renaissance painting and paintings

Class Renaissance painting and paintings before 1400 in 759.022

1600–1799

1600–1699

Class here baroque painting and paintings

Class baroque painting and paintings of 1700–1799 in 759.047

1700–1799

Including rococo painting and paintings

1800–1899

Add to base number 759.05 the numbers following 709.034 in 709.0341–709.0349, e.g., romanticism in painting 759.052

1900–1999

Class here modern painting

Add to base number 759.06 the numbers following 709.040 in 709.0401–709.0407, e.g., surrealist painting 759.0663

For 1800–1899, see 759.05

2000–2099
> 759.1–759.9 Geographical treatment

Individual painters are classed in notation at country level only

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to painting and paintings of a specific country, use one of the following:

(Option A: Place them first by use of a letter or other symbol for the country, e.g., Burmese painting and paintings 759.B [preceding 759.1]

(Option B: Class them in 759.1; in that case class painting and paintings of North America in 759.97)

Class comprehensive works in 759, painting and paintings of nonliterate peoples in 759.01, Western painting of one or two specific periods in 759.02–759.07

.1 North America

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to painting and paintings of a specific country other than United States and Canada, class them in this number; in that case class painting and paintings of North America in 759.97)

Class painting and paintings of Middle America in 759.972

.11 Canada

Add to base number 759.11 the numbers following —71 in notation 711–719 from Table 2, e.g., painting and paintings of Toronto 759.113541

.13 United States

Class painting and paintings of specific states in 759.14–759.19

See also 759.97295 for painting and paintings of Puerto Rico

.14–.19 Specific states of United States

Add to base number 759.1 the numbers following —7 in notation 74–79 from Table 2, e.g., painting and paintings of San Francisco 759.19461

Class individual painters in 759.13, painting and paintings of Hawaii in 759.9969

.2 British Isles  England

For the purpose of classification, England, Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland are considered to be separate countries. Therefore, an English painter is classed in 759.2, a Scottish painter in 759.2911, a Welsh painter in 759.2929, and a Northern Ireland painter in 759.2916

.21–.28 England

Add to base number 759.2 the numbers following —42 in notation 421–428 from Table 2, e.g., painting and paintings of Manchester 759.2733

.29 Scotland, Ireland, Wales

Add to base number 759.29 the numbers following —4 in notation 41–42 from Table 2, e.g., painting and paintings of Scotland 759.2911
.3-.8 Other European countries

Add to base number 759 the numbers following —4 in notation 43–48 from Table 2, e.g., painting and paintings of France 759.4

Class comprehensive works, and painting and paintings of other European countries not provided for in notation 43–48 from Table 2 in 759.94, e.g., painting and paintings of Netherlands 759.9492

.9 Other geographical areas

.91 Areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 759.91 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., Western Hemisphere 759.91812

Class individual painters in the notation for their respective countries

.93-.99 Continents, countries, localities

Class here painting and paintings of specific periods, e.g., painting and paintings of 1800–1899 in South America 759.9809034

Add to base number 759.9 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., comprehensive works on painting and paintings of Europe 759.94, Etruscan painting and paintings 759.9375

Class works on one or two periods of European painting in 759.02–759.07, e.g., painting and paintings of 1800–1899 in Europe 759.05 (not 759.9409034); individual painters from Soviet Union in 759.7, individual Hawaiian painters in 759.13

760 Graphic arts Printmaking and prints

Graphic arts: any and all nonplastic representations on flat surfaces, including painting, drawing, prints, and photographs

Including copy art made with photoduplication equipment, rubbings, typewriter art, typographical designs; two-dimensional mixed-media art and composites

Class here two-dimensional art; prints and at least one other of the graphic arts

Class comprehensive works on graphic and plastic arts in 701–709; rubbings used for study and research in a specific field with the field, e.g., monumental brasses 739.522

For drawing and drawings, see 741; painting and paintings, 750; photography and photographs, 770; printing, 686.2

See Manual at 700

SUMMARY

760.01-.09 Standard subdivisions of graphic arts

.1-.8 Standard subdivisions of printmaking and prints

761 Relief processes (Block printing)

763 Lithographic (Planographic) processes

764 Chromolithography and serigraphy

765 Metal engraving

766 Mezzotinting, aquatinting, related processes

767 Etching and drypoint

769 Prints

534
.01-.03  Standard subdivisions of graphic arts
.04    Special topics of graphic arts
.044   Iconography of graphic arts

Add to base number 760.044 the numbers following 704.94 in
704.942-704.949, e.g., landscapes in graphic arts 760.04436

.05-.08  Standard subdivisions of graphic arts
.09    Historical, geographical, persons treatment
.090 1-.090 5  Periods of development

Not limited by country or locality

Add to base number 760.090 the numbers following 709.0 in
709.01-709.05, e.g., graphic arts of the Renaissance 760.09024

.1  Philosophy and theory of printmaking and prints

.11    Appreciative aspects

Do not use for systems; class in 760.1
Class psychological principles in 760.19

.117  Aesthetics

.118  Criticism and appreciation

General aspects: theory, technique, history
Class works of critical appraisal in 769.9

.18    Inherent features

Examples: color, composition, decorative values, form, light, movement,
perspective, style, space, symmetry, vision

.2  Miscellany of printmaking and prints

.28    Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials of printmaking
and prints

Class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials for making
specific kinds of prints in 761-767

.3-.6  Standard subdivisions of printmaking and prints

.7  Education, research, related topics of printmaking and prints

[.75]    Collecting prints

Do not use; class in 769.12

.8  History and description of printmaking and prints with respect to
kinds of persons
[.9]  Historical, geographical, persons treatment of printmaking and prints
   Do not use; class in 769.9

(.92)  Printmakers
   (Use of this number is optional; prefer 769.92)

>  761–769 Printmaking and prints
   Class comprehensive works in 760

>  761–767 Printmaking
   Fine art of executing a printing block or plate representing a picture or design
   conceived by the printmaker or copied from another artist's painting or drawing
   or from a photograph
   General aspects: techniques, procedures, equipment, materials
   Class comprehensive works in 760.28; techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials of reproduction, preservation, routine care in 769.1; techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials employed by individual printmakers in 769.92

761  Relief processes (Block printing)
   Examples: raw potato printing, rubber-stamp printing
   .2  Wood engraving
   .3  Linoleum-block printing
   .8  Metal engraving

[762]  [Unassigned]
   Most recently used in Edition 14

763  Lithographic (Planographic) processes
   For chromolithography, see 764.2
   .2  Surfaces
      .22  Stone lithography
      .23  Aluminum lithography
      .24  Zinc lithography

764  Chromolithography and serigraphy
   .2  Chromolithography
   .8  Serigraphy
      Class here silk-screen printing
> 765–767 Intaglio processes
   Class comprehensive works in 765

765 Metal engraving
   Class here comprehensive works on metal relief and metal intaglio processes, on intaglio processes
   Class metal relief engraving in 761.8
   For mezzotinting and aquatinting, see 766; etching and drypoint, 767

   .2 Line engraving
   .5 Stipple engraving
   .6 Criblé engraving

766 Mezzotinting, aquatinting, related processes
   .2 Mezzotinting
   .3 Aquatinting
   .7 Composite processes
   Use of two or more processes in a single print

767 Etching and drypoint
   .2 Etching
   .3 Drypoint

[768] [Unassigned]
   Most recently used in Edition 14

769 Prints
   Works produced using a printing block, screen, or plate
   General aspects: description, critical appraisal, collections regardless of process

SUMMARY

769.01–.08 Standard subdivisions
   .1 Collecting, reproduction, preservation, routine care of prints
   .4 Iconography
   .5 Forms of prints
   .9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment of printmaking and prints

   .028 8 Maintenance and repair [formerly also 769.19]
   Class conservation, preservation, restoration in 769.18

   [.075] Collecting prints
   Do not use; class in 769.12
[.09]  Historical, geographical, persons treatment
   Do not use; class in 769.9

.1  Collecting, reproduction, preservation, routine care of prints
   Class collecting, reproduction, preservation, routine care of specific forms of
   prints in 769.5

.12  Collecting prints

.17  Techniques of reproduction

.172  Reproductions and copies

.174  Forgeries and alterations

.18  Conservation, preservation, restoration
   Including expertizing
   Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 769.17

[.19]  Maintenance and repair
   Relocated to 769.0288

.4  Iconography
   Add to base number 769.4 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949,
   e.g., portrait prints 769.42
   Class postage stamps by subject in 769.564, printmakers regardless of subject in
   769.92

.5  Forms of prints
   Examples: lettering, inscriptions, designs on name cards, diplomas, decorative
   prints, posters
   Match covers relocated to 741.694
   Class prints other than postage stamps on a specific subject regardless of form
   in 769.4, made by an individual printmaker regardless of form in 769.92;
   comprehensive works on posters in 741.674

.52  Bookplates

.53  Paper dolls

.55  Paper money
   Class here counterfeit paper money

[.550 9]  Historical, geographical, persons treatment
   Do not use; class in 769.559

.559  Historical, geographical, persons treatment
   Add to base number 769.559 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., paper
   money of France 769.55944
.56 Postage stamps and related devices

Class here philately

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the one coming first, e.g., counterfeit stamps depicting birds 769.562 (not 769.56432)

Class stamps other than for prepayment of postage in 769.57

[.560 9] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 769.569

.561 United Nations postage stamps, postal stationery, covers

.562 Counterfeit postage stamps, covers, cancellations

.563 Postage stamps commemorating persons and events

.564 Postage stamps depicting various specific subjects (Iconography)

Add to base number 769.564 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.943–704.949, e.g., postage stamps of birds of the world 769.56432

For stamps commemorating persons and events, see 769.563

.565 Covers

.566 Postal stationery

Postal-service-issued stationery (e.g., letter sheets, envelopes, postcards) bearing imprinted stamps

Class illustrated postcards in 741.683

.567 Postmarks, cancellations, cachets

Standard subdivisions may be added for postmarks, cancellations, cachets, for postmarks alone, for cancellations alone, and for cachets alone

See also 769.562 for counterfeit cancellations

.569 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Add to base number 769.569 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., postage stamps from San Marino 769.5694549

.57 Stamps other than for prepayment of postage

Examples: Christmas seals, officially sealed labels, ration coupons; postage-due, postal savings, revenue and savings stamps
.9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment of printmaking and prints

Add to base number 769.9 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., printmakers 769.92

(Option: Class printmakers in 760.92)

Class the history of a specific process with the process, e.g., history of lithography 763.09

See Manual at 769.92

770 Photography and photographs

Class technological photography in 621.367

SUMMARY

770.1–.9 Standard subdivisions
771 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
772 Metallic salt processes
773 Pigment processes of printing
774 Holography
778 Specific fields and special kinds of photography, and related activities
779 Photographs

.1 Philosophy and theory

.11 Inherent features

Examples: color, composition, decorative values, form, light, movement, perspective, space, style, symmetry, vision

Do not use for systems; class in 770.1

.2 Miscellany

.23 Photography as a profession, occupation, hobby

.232 Photography as a profession and occupation

.233 Photography as a hobby

[.28] Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use for apparatus, equipment, materials; class in 771

Techniques and procedures relocated to 771

.9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

.92 Photographers

Regardless of type of photography; however, class motion-picture photographers in 778.53092, television photographers in 778.59092

Class photographs in 779
771 Techniques, procedures [formerly also 770.28], apparatus, equipment, materials

Including techniques of pinhole photography, of photography without camera

Class here interdisciplinary works on description, use, manufacture of apparatus, equipment, materials

Class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials used in special processes in 772–774; in specific fields and special kinds of photography in 778; manufacture of a specific kind of apparatus, equipment, material with the subject, e.g., of cameras 681.418

.1 Studios, laboratories, darkrooms

Class laboratory and darkroom practice in 771.4

.2 Furniture and fittings

.3 Cameras and accessories

.31 Specific makes (brands) of cameras

Arrange alphabetically by trade name

.32 Specific types of cameras

Examples: 35mm single-lens reflex, automatic, instant, large format, miniature

Class specific makes of specific types of cameras in 771.31

.35 Optical parts of cameras

Class optical parts of specific makes of cameras in 771.31

For shutters, see 771.36; focusing and exposure apparatus, 771.37

.352 Lenses

.356 Filters

.36 Camera shutters

Class shutters of specific makes of cameras in 771.31

.37 Focusing and exposure apparatus

Examples: exposure meters, range finders, viewfinders

Class focusing and exposure apparatus of specific makes of cameras in 771.31

.38 Accessories

Examples: carrying cases, tripods

.4 Darkroom and laboratory practice

For chemical materials, see 771.5

.43 Preparation of negatives
.44 Preparation of positives
   Examples: contact printing, enlarging, developing, mounting

.45 Preservation and storage of negatives and transparencies

.46 Preservation and storage of positives
   For mounting, see 771.44

.47 Recovery of waste materials

.49 Developing and printing apparatus
   Examples: enlargers, frames, trays, utensils

.5 Chemical materials

.52 Support materials
   Examples: backings of cellulose compounds, ceramics, glass, metal, paper

.53 Photosensitive surfaces

.532 Specific photosensitive surfaces
   .532 2 Plates
   .532 3 Papers
   .532 4 Films

.54 Developing and printing supplies
   Examples: developing, fixing, intensifying, reducing, toning solutions

> 772–774 Special processes
   Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

   Class comprehensive works in 771, processing techniques in specific fields and special kinds of photography in 778

   For photomechanical printing techniques, see 686.232

772 Metallic salt processes

.1 Direct positive and printing-out processes
   Early photographic processes
   For platinum printing-out process, see 772.3

.12 Daguerreotype process

.14 Wet-collodion, ferrotype, tintype processes

.16 Kallitype processes

.3 Platinotype processes
   Including platinum printing-out process
Silver processes
Use of silver halides in principal light-sensitive photographic emulsions

773 Pigment processes of printing
Early photographic printing processes

.1 Carbon and carbro processes
Examples: Mariotype, ozotype, ozobrome

.2 Powder (Dusting-on) processes
Including peppertype processes
Class xerography in 686.44

.3 Imbibition processes

.5 Gum-bichromate processes

.6 Photoceramic and photoenamel processes

.7 Diazotype processes

.8 Oil processes
Including bromoil process

774 Holography

[775] [Unassigned]
Most recently used in Edition 14

[776] [Unassigned]
Most recently used in Edition 14

[777] [Unassigned]
Most recently used in Edition 14

778 Specific fields and special kinds of photography, and related activities
General aspects: techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
Class here interdisciplinary works on use and manufacture of apparatus, equipment, materials of specific fields and specific kinds of photography
Class manufacture of a specific kind of apparatus, equipment, materials with the subject, e.g., of cameras 681.418
SUMMARY

778.2 Photographic projection
.3 Special kinds of photography
.4 Stereoscopic photography and projection
.5 Motion-picture and television photography, and related activities
.6 Color photography and photography of colors
.7 Photography under specific conditions
.8 Special effects and trick photography
.9 Photography of specific subjects

.2 Photographic projection

Including filmstrips, filmslides

For stereoscopic projection, see 778.4; motion-picture projection, 778.55

.3 Special kinds of photography

Not provided for elsewhere

Including Kirlian photography (high-voltage, high-frequency photopsychography)

Class a specific application of photography with the application, e.g., use of photography in astronomy 522.63

For technological photography and photo-optics, see 621.367

See also 133.8 for parapsychological aspects of Kirlian photography

See Manual at 778.3 vs. 621.367

.31 Photomicrography

For motion-picture photomicrography, see 778.56

.32 Photography in terms of focus

.322 Telephotography

For aerial and space photography, see 778.35; panoramic photography, 778.36

.324 Close-up photography

Including photomacrography

Class close-up motion-picture and television photography in 778.5

.34 Infrared photography

Interdisciplinary works

Class technological infrared photography in 621.3672

.35 Aerial and space photography

Including interpretation

For photogrammetry, see 526.982

.36 Panoramic photography
.37 High-speed photography
   Including use of short-duration electronic flash
   Class high-speed motion-picture photography in 778.56, use of normal photographic electronic flash (flashbulb photography) in 778.72

.4 Stereoscopic photography and projection
   Class stereoscopic motion-picture projection in 778.5541
   *For stereoscopic motion-picture photography, see 778.5341*

.5 Motion-picture and television photography, and related activities
   .52 General topics of motion-picture and television photography
   Add to base number 778.52 the numbers following 778.5 in 778.53-778.58, e.g., lighting for motion-picture and television photography 778.52343

> 778.53-778.58 Motion pictures
   Class comprehensive works in 778.5

   .53 Motion-picture photography (Cinematography) and editing
   Class here comprehensive works on cinematography and projection
   Class special kinds of motion-picture photography applicable to science and technology in 778.56, comprehensive works on motion-picture production and cinematography in 791.43
   *For motion-picture projection, see 778.55*

   .532 Darkroom and laboratory practice

   .534 Specific types and elements of motion-picture photography

   .534 1 Stereoscopic

   .534 2 Color

   .534 3 Lighting

   .534 4 Sound
   Including sound-picture recording, sound synchronization and scoring, postsynchronization
   Film music relocated to 781.542

   .534 5 Special effects
   Examples: double-image, trick photography

   .534 6 Time-lapse

   .534 7 Animated cartoons

   .534 9 Amateur
   Class darkroom and laboratory practice for amateurs in 778.532; specific types and elements of amateur motion-picture photography in 778.5341-778.5347

   .534 91 Specific types of cameras
.535 Editing films
   Including titling
   Class editing in a specific type or element of motion-picture photography in 778.534

.538 Photography of specific subjects
   Add to base number 778.538 notation 001–999, e.g., motion-picture photography of birds 778.538598
   Class specific types and elements of motion-picture photography regardless of subject in 778.534

.55 Motion-picture projection

.554 Of specific kinds of motion pictures
   .554 1 Stereoscopic
   .554 2 Color
   .554 4 Sound
   .554 9 Amateur

.56 Special kinds of motion-picture photography
   Not provided for elsewhere
   Examples: high-speed motion-picture photography, motion-picture photomicrography
   Class a specific application with the application, e.g., use of motion-picture photography in diagnosis of diseases 616.075028

.58 Preservation and storage of motion-picture films

.59 Television photography
   Television music relocated to 781.546

.599 Television recording and recorders
   Tape, film, disc
   .599 2 Recording
   .599 3 Recorders

.6 Color photography and photography of colors
   Class color photomicrography in 778.31
   For color motion-picture photography, see 778.5342

.602 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
   Class processing auxiliary techniques and procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials in color photography in 778.66
Photography and photographs

.62 Photography of colors in monochrome
   Orthochromatic and panchromatic

.63 Direct process reproduction in color photography
   Including Lippmann process

.65 Additive processes in color photography

.66 Processing techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials in color photography
   Class here subtractive processes, production of color films and prints by subtractive analysis and subtractive synthesis, respectively
   Class direct process reproduction in color photography in 778.63, additive processes in color photography in 778.65

.7 Photography under specific conditions

.71 Outdoors

.712 In sunlight

.719 At night

   *For infrared photography, see 778.34*

.72 Indoors and by artificial light
   Class here use of normal photographic electronic flash (flashbulb photography)
   Class short-duration flash in high-speed photography in 778.37

   *For infrared flash photography, see 778.34*

.73 Underwater

.75 Under extreme climatic conditions

.76 Available light
   Class outdoor available light photography in 778.71, indoor available light photography in 778.72

.8 Special effects and trick photography
   Examples: composite, high-contrast, tabletop photography; photomontage; photography of specters, distortions, multiple images, silhouettes
   Class special effects motion-picture photography in 778.5345

.9 Photography of specific subjects
   Class here comprehensive works on techniques of photographing, photographs of, and photographers of a specific subject
   Add to base number 778.9 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., portrait photography 778.92
   Class photographers in 770.92, photography by specific methods regardless of subject in 778.3–778.8
Photographs

Add to base number 779 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., photographs of children 779.25

See Manual at 779

Music

This schedule is new and has been prepared with little or no reference to previous editions. Most numbers have been reused with new meanings.

A comparative table giving both old and new numbers for a substantial list of topics and equivalence tables showing the numbers in the old and new schedules appear in Volume 1 in this edition

(Optional: Distinguish scores by prefixing a letter or other symbol to the number for treatises, e.g., music for violin M787.2 or &787.2, and distinguish miniature scores from other scores by a special prefix, e.g., MM787.2; distinguish recordings in a similar manner, e.g., violin recordings R787.2 or MR787.2. Alternatively, distinguish scores, texts, recordings by adding to the number for treatises the numbers following 78 in 780.26–780.269, e.g., miniature scores of music for violin 787.20265. Examples in this schedule do not distinguish scores, texts, or recordings)

In building numbers, do not add by use of 0 or 1 (alone or in combination) more than twice, e.g., history of rock protest songs 782.421661592 (not 782.42166159209)

(Optional: Add as many times as desired)

See Manual at 780

SUMMARY

780.000 1–.099 9 Relation of music to other subjects

.1–.9 Standard subdivisions

781 General principles and musical forms

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions

.1 Basic principles

.2 Elements of music

.3 Composition

.4 Techniques of music

.5 Kinds of music

.6 Traditions of music

.7 Sacred music

.8 Musical forms

782 Vocal music

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions

.01–.08 [General principles and musical forms]

.1 Dramatic vocal forms

.2 Nondramatic vocal forms

.3 Services (Liturgy and ritual)

.4 Secular forms

.5 Mixed voices

.6 Women’s voices

.7 Children’s voices

.8 Men’s voices

.9 Other types of voices
783 Music for single voice
   The voice
   .001-.009 Standard subdivisions
   .01-.09 [General principles and musical forms]
   .1 Single voices in combination
   .2 Solo voice
   .3 High voice
   .4 Middle voice
   .5 Low voice
   .6-.8 Woman’s, child’s, man’s voice
   .9 Other types of voice

784 Instruments and instrumental ensembles and their music
   .01-.09 Standard subdivisions
   .1 General principles, musical forms, instruments
   .2 Full (Symphony) orchestra
   .3 Chamber orchestra
   .4 Light orchestra
   .6 Keyboard, mechanical, electronic, percussion bands
   .7 String orchestra
   .8 Wind band
   .9 Brass band

785 Ensembles with only one instrument per part
   .001-.009 Standard subdivisions
   .01-.09 [General principles, musical forms, instruments]
   .1 Ensembles by size
   .2 Ensembles with keyboard
   .3 Ensembles without electrophones and with percussion and keyboard
   .4 Ensembles without keyboard
   .5 Ensembles without keyboard and with percussion
   .6 Keyboard, electrophone, percussion ensembles
   .7 String ensembles Bowed string ensembles
   .8 Woodwind ensembles
   .9 Brass ensembles

786 Keyboard, mechanical, electrophonic, percussion instruments
   .2 Pianos
   .3 Clavichords
   .4 Harpsichords
   .5 Keyboard wind instruments Organs
   .6 Mechanical and aeolian instruments
   .7 Electrophones Electronic instruments
   .8 Percussion instruments
   .9 Drums and devices used for percussion effects

787 Stringed instruments (Chordophones) Bowed stringed instruments
   .2 Violins
   .3 Violas
   .4 Cellos (Violoncellos)
   .5 Double basses
   .6 Other bowed stringed instruments Viols
   .7 Plectral instruments
   .8 Plectral lute family
   .9 Harps and musical bows
Wind instruments (Aerophones)
  .2 Woodwind instruments and free aerophones
  .3 Flute family
  .4 Reed instruments
  .5 Double-reed instruments
  .6 Single-reed instruments
  .7 Saxophones
  .8 Free reeds
  .9 Brass instruments (Lip-reed instruments)

Relation of music to other subjects
Works in which the focus is music
Add to base number 780.0 three-digit notation 001–999, e.g., music and literature 780.08, music and Welsh literature 780.0891 (not 780.089166), music and the performing arts 780.079 (not 780.07902)

See Manual at 780.079 vs. 790.2

Philosophy and theory
Class general principles, theory of music in 781

Languages (Terminology) and communication

Musical notation, abbreviations, symbols
Examples: staff notation, neumes, tablature, tonic sol-fa
Including braille musical notation
Class transcription from one form of notation to another in 780.149

Editing

Analytical guides and program notes
Do not use for scientific principles; class in 781.2

Bibliographies, catalogs, indexes
(Optional number; prefer 016.78)

*Bibliographies and catalogs of music literature

*Bibliographies and catalogs of scores and parts
Example: bibliographies and catalogs of manuscript scores and parts

*Discographies
Bibliographies and catalogs of music recorded on phonorecords (cylinders, discs, wires, tapes, films)
Example: biodiscographies

Psychological principles
Do not use; class in 781.11

Miscellany
*(Optional number; prefer 016.78)
.202 Synopses and outlines
   Class synopses of stories and plots in 782.00269

.216 Lists, inventories, catalogs of music
   Class here thematic catalogs
   Class thematic catalogs of individual composers in 780.92

.26 Treatises on music scores, recordings, texts
   (Option: Use this number and its subdivisions to distinguish scores and recordings within 780; see details in note under 780)
   (Option: Class here law; prefer appropriate subdivisions of 340)
   In other parts of the schedules, indicate scores, recordings, texts, and treatises about them by adding the numbers following 78 in 780.262–780.269, e.g., bibliography of musical manuscripts 016.780262, bibliography of manuscripts of violin music 016.78720262, discography of violin music 016.78720266

   See Manual at 780: Standard subdivisions

> 780.262–780.265 Scores
   Class comprehensive works in 780.26
   For words and other vocal sounds to be sung or recited with music, see 780.268

.262 *Manuscripts
   Including sketch books, autograph scores

.263 *Printed music
   For performance scores, see 780.264; study scores 780.265
   See also 070.5794 for music publishing, 686.284 for music printing

.264 *Performance scores and parts
   Examples: full scores, conducting scores, piano-vocal scores

.265 *Study scores (Miniature scores, Pocket scores)

.266 *Sound recordings of music
   Class here comprehensive works on music recordings
   For video recordings, see 780.267
   See also 781.49 for recording of music

.267 *Video recordings of music

*(Option: Use this standard subdivision to distinguish scores and recordings, see details in note under 780)
Words and other vocal sounds to be sung or recited with music

Examples: librettos, lyrics, poems, screenplays

Class here texts

The words must be discussed in a musical context. Thus, if the words are presented as literature, folklore, or religious text, class the work in 800, 398, 200, respectively

Use this subdivision only for building other numbers; never use it by itself

Class comprehensive works in 782.00268

For stories plots, synopses, see 780.269

See Manual at 780.268

Stories, plots, synopses

Example: scenarios

Use this subdivision only for building other numbers; never use it by itself

Class comprehensive works in 782.00269

See Manual at 780.269

Auxiliary procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Class techniques of music in 781.4, instruments in 784

See also 780.26 for scores, 780.266 for recordings

Education, research, performances, related topics

Including use of apparatus and equipment in study and teaching

Review, exercises, examinations, works for self-instruction

Special teaching and learning methods

Example: programmed teaching

Class techniques for acquiring musical skills and learning a repertoire in 781.42

Performances

General aspects: concerts and recitals

Do not use for use of apparatus and equipment in study and teaching; class in 780.7

Add to base number 780.78 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., concerts in London 780.78421

See also 781.43 for performance techniques
Competitions, festivals, awards, financial support
Including adjudication
Add to base number notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., festivals in France 780.7944
Class performances at festivals and competitions in 780.78

History and description of music with respect to kinds of persons
Music with respect to specific racial, ethnic, national groups
Class folk music in 781.62
See Manual at 780.89 vs. 781.62

Historical, geographical, persons treatment
General aspects: development, description, critical appraisal
Class critical appraisal in analytical guides and program notes in 780.15

> 780.901–780.905 Periods of stylistic development of music
Class here schools and styles not limited ethnically or by country or locality
Even though the periods are those of Western music, this does not limit the use
of these numbers to Western or European music only. Any time period of any
music transcending ethnic or country limitations is classed here
Class comprehensive works in 780.9

Ancient times to 499

500–1499
Examples: Gothic style, ars antiqua, ars nova, medieval music

1450–
Class here modern music
For 1900–1999, see 780.904; 2000–2099, 780.905

Ca. 1450–ca. 1600
Example: Renaissance music

Ca. 1600–ca. 1750
Examples: baroque music, nuove musiche

Ca. 1750–ca. 1825
Examples: preclassicism, classicism, rococo style, 18th century music
Class rococo style of earlier period, music of earlier part of 18th
century in 780.9032
.903 4  Ca. 1825–ca. 1900
   Examples: romanticism, nationalism, 19th century music
   Class music of earlier part of 19th century in 780.9033, 20th century
   nationalism in 780.904

.904  1900–1999
   Examples: impressionism, neoclassicism, avant-garde music
   Class early impressionism in 780.9034

[.904 1–.904 9]  Individual decades
   Do not use; class in 780.904

.905  2000–2099

.92  Persons associated with music
   Examples: composers, performers, critics
   Class here thematic catalogs of individual composers
   (Option: Class individual composers in 789)
   Class general thematic catalogs in 780.216

.94  European music
   Use this number only for works that stress that they are discussing the
   European origin and character of music in contrast to music from other
   sources

>  781–788 Principles, forms, ensembles, voices, instruments
   Class here music of all traditions
   (Option: 781–788 may be used for only one tradition of music; in that case,
   class all other traditions in 789. For example, if it is desired to emphasize
   Western art music, class it here, and class all other traditions of music in 789,
   e.g., jazz 789.5; or, if it is desired to emphasize jazz, class it here, and class all
   other traditions of music in 789, e.g., Western art music 789.8)
   Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two
   or more subdivisions of 781–788 in the one coming last, e.g., Johann Sebastian
   Bach’s cello sonatas 787.4183 (not 784.183), jazz mass 782.323165 (not
   781.65)
   Class comprehensive works in 780

781  General principles and musical forms
   Class here music theory
   Use the subdivisions of 781 only when the subject is not limited to voice,
   instrument, or ensemble. If voice, instrument, or ensemble is specified, class with
   voice, instrument, or ensemble; and then add as instructed. For example, rehearsal
   of music 781.44, rehearsal of opera (a form for the voice) 782.1144
SUMMARY

781.01-.09  Standard subdivisions
  .1  Basic principles
  .2  Elements of music
  .3  Composition
  .4  Techniques of music
  .5  Kinds of music
  .6  Traditions of music
  .7  Sacred music
  .8  Musical forms

.01-.09  Standard subdivisions
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., music theory during the Renaissance 781.09031

.1  Basic principles
  .11  Psychological principles
    For aesthetics, appreciation, taste, see 781.17
  .12  Religious principles
  .17  Artistic principles
    Including aesthetics, appreciation, taste

> 781.2–781.8  Other principles and musical forms
Add to notation for each term identified by * as follows:
  01–09  Standard subdivisions
    Notation from Table 1 as modified at 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078
  1  General principles
    Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., rock music 166, rehearsing rock music 166144

Class comprehensive works in 781

.2  *Elements of music
Class here scientific principles

SUMMARY

781.22  Time
  .23  Musical sound
  .24  Melody
  .25  Harmony
  .26  Tonal systems
  .28  Texture

.22  *Time
    For playing time, see 781.432

.222  *Pulse

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8
.224  *Rhythm
.226  *Meter
.23  *Musical sound
.232  *Pitch
.233  *Volume
.234  *Timbre (Tone color)
.235  *Attack and decay
.236  *Silence
   Including rests
.237  *Intervals
   For consonance, see 781.238; dissonance, 781.239
.238  *Consonance
.239  *Dissonance
.24  *Melody
.246  *Scales and scalic formations
.247  *Ornaments
   Examples: trills, embellishments
.248  *Themes
   Examples: subject, countersubject, idée fixe, leitmotif
   See also 780.216 for thematic catalogs
.25  *Harmony
   Class here harmonic organization, comprehensive works on harmony and
   counterpoint
   Class intervals in 781.237, figured bass in 781.47
   For homophony, see 781.285; counterpoint, 781.286
.252  *Chords
   Including arpeggios
.254  *Cadences
.256  *Harmonic rhythm
.258  *Tonality
   Key relationships
   For tonal systems, see 781.26

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8
.26 *Tonal systems

.262 *Diatonicism

.263 *Medieval church modes
   Class here comprehensive works on modes, modes of Western folk music
   
   For other modes, see 781.264

.264 Other modes
   Examples: ancient Greek modes, Byzantine echoi, Indian rāgas
   Class modes of Western folk music in 781.263

.265 *Macrotonality
   Tonality based on units larger than the diatonic whole tone
   Including pentatonicism

.266 *Whole tonality
   Tonality based on scales of diatonic whole tones

.267 *Atonality
   Music with no fixed tonic or key center
   
   For dodecaphony, see 781.268

.268 *Dodecaphony (Twelve-tone system, Note rows)
   Class comprehensive works on serialism in 781.33

.269 *Microtonality
   Tonality based on melodic units smaller than the diatonic semitone

.28 *Texture

.282 *Monody
   Music with a single melodic line

.283 *Heterophony
   Music with a single melodic line simultaneously varied by two or more performers

.284 *Polyphony
   Two or more melodic lines
   
   For homophony, see 781.285; counterpoint, 781.286

.285 *Homophony
   Two or more mutually dependent melodic lines

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8
.286  *Counterpoint
   Two or more independent melodic lines
   Class comprehensive works on harmony and counterpoint in 781.25

.3  *Composition

[.302 85]  Computer composition
   Do not use; class in 781.34

.32  *Indeterminacy and aleatory composition
   Forms of composition based on chance

.33  Serialism

.330 1–.330 9  Standard subdivisions
   Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g.,
   performances of serial music 781.33078

.331  Basic principles

.331 1  Psychological principles
   For aesthetics, appreciation, taste, see 781.3317

.331 2  Religious principles

.331 7  Artistic principles
   Including aesthetics, appreciation, taste

.332–.338  Specific elements
   Add to base number 781.33 the numbers following 781.2 in
   781.22–781.28, e.g., serialized rhythm 781.3324; however, class
   atonality in 781.267

.34  *Computer composition

.344–.346  Computer science aspects
   Unless it is redundant, add to base number 781.34 the numbers following
   00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital microcomputers 781.34416, but use of
digital computers 781.34 (not 781.344)

.36  *Extemporization (Improvisation)

.37  *Arrangement
   Example: transcription
   For arrangements, see 781.38

.374  *Orchestration

.377  *Paraphrase and parody

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8
.38 *Arrangements
.382-.388 By original voice, instrument, ensemble
   Add to base number 781.38 the numbers following 78 in 782-788, e.g.,
   arrangements of violin music 781.3872
   Use these subdivisions only for building other numbers; never use them
   by themselves
   See Manual at 781.382-781.388

.4 *Techniques of music
   Class techniques of composition in 781.3
   .42 *Techniques for acquiring musical skills and learning a repertoire
      .423 *Sight and score reading
         Class here visual techniques
      .424 *Listening and ear training
         Class here aural techniques
      .426 *Memorizing
   .43 *Performance techniques
      For extemporization, see 781.36; specific performance techniques,
      781.44-781.48
      See also 784.193 for techniques for playing instruments
   .432 *Playing time
   .434 *Harmonization
   .436 *Transposition
   .438 *Ensemble technique

> 781.44-781.48 Specific performance techniques
   Class comprehensive works in 781.43
   .44 *Rehearsal and practice
   .45 *Conducting
   .46 *Interpretation
      Including rubato
   .47 *Accompaniment
      Including continuo (thorough bass)
      See Manual at 781.47
   *Add as instructed under 781.2-781.8
.48 *Breathing and resonance

See also 784.1932 for breathing and resonance associated with instrumental performance

.49 *Recording of music

See also 621.3893 for sound recording and reproducing equipment, 780.266 for treatises on music recordings

.5 *Kinds of music

SUMMARY

781.52 Music for specific times
 .53 Music in specific settings
 .54 Music for specific media
 .55 Music accompanying public entertainments
 .56 Program music
 .57 Music accompanying activities
 .58 Music accompanying stages of the life cycle
 .59 Music reflecting other themes and subjects

.52 *Music for specific times

.522 *For days of week

.522 2 *Sunday

.522 8 *Saturday

.523 *For times of day

Examples: morning, noon, evening

.524 *For the seasons

.524 2 *Spring

.524 4 *Summer

.524 6 *Fall (Autumn)

Including harvest

.524 8 *Winter

.53 *Music in specific settings

.532 *Outdoor

Including street music

.534 *Indoor

For specific indoor settings, see 781.535–781.539

> 781.535–781.539 Specific indoor settings

Class music in religious settings in 781.7, comprehensive works in 781.534

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8
*Domestic setting
*Court setting
*Theater setting
*Concert hall setting

*Music for specific media
To be classed here the music must be either background or mood music

*Film music [formerly also 778.5344]
See also 778.5344 for sound synchronization of motion pictures

*Radio music

*Television music [formerly also 778.59]
See also 778.59 for sound synchronization of television programs

*Music accompanying public entertainments

*Dramatic music
Class here incidental dramatic music
Class dramatic vocal music in 782.1

*Dance music
For ballet music, see 781.556

*Ballet music

*Program music
Music depicting extramusical concepts, e.g., music depicting the sea
Class musical forms depicting extramusical concepts in 784.18, e.g., nocturnes 784.18966

*Music accompanying activities
Examples: inaugurations, initiations
Class music accompanying stages of the life cycle in 781.58, music reflecting other themes and subjects regardless of activity in 781.59

*Music accompanying stages of the life cycle

*Birth and infancy
Examples: music for infant baptisms and circumcisions
Class here music for confinements

*Attainment of puberty
Example: music for bar mitzvahs

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8
.584  *Attainment of majority
    Example: music for debuts

.586  *Courtship and betrothal

.587  *Weddings and marriage

.588  *Dying and death
    Examples: music for burials, cremations, funerals, mourning

.59  *Music reflecting other themes and subjects

.592  *Protest

.593  *Work

.594  *Sports and recreation

.595  *Sea life

.599  *Patriotic, *political, *military
    Class here music commemorating historical events

.6  *Traditions of music
    Works emphasizing a specific tradition
    (Option: If 781–788 is used for only one tradition of music, class all other
    traditions in 789)

**SUMMARY**

781.62  Folk music

.63  Popular music

.64  Western popular music

.65  Jazz

.66  Rock (Rock 'n' roll)

.68  Western art (Classical) music

.69  Non-Western music

.62  Folk music
    Music indigenous to the cultural group in which it occurs, usually evolved
    through aural transmission
    
    *See also 780.9 for music of and performed in a specific location
    *See Manual at 780.89 vs. 781.62

.620 01–.620 07  Standard subdivisions
    Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g.,
    performances of folk music 781.620078

.620 08  History and description of folk music with respect to kinds of persons

[.620 089]  Treatment with respect to specific racial, ethnic, national groups
    Do not use; class in 781.621–781.629

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8
.620 09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

.620 090 1–.620 090 5 Historical periods

Add to base number 781.620090 the numbers following 780.90 in 780.901–780.905, e.g., folk music of the Renaissance 781.62009031

.620 091–.620 099 Geographical and persons treatment

Class geographical treatment of folk music of specific racial, ethnic, national groups in 781.621–781.629

.620 1–.620 5 General principles

Add to base number 781.620 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.5, e.g., folk music for springtime 781.6205242, rehearsing folk music for springtime 781.6205242144

.620 6 Stylistic influences of other traditions of music

Add to base number 781.6206 the numbers following 781.6 in 781.63–781.69, e.g., influence of jazz on folk music 781.62065, performances of folk music influenced by jazz 781.62065078

.621–.629 Folk music of specific racial, ethnic, national groups

Add to base number 781.62 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., Spanish folk music 781.6261; then add further as follows:

001–008 Standard subdivisions
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of Spanish folk music 781.62610078

009 Historical, geographical, persons treatment
00901–00905 Historical periods
Add to base number 0090 the numbers following 780.90 in 780.901–780.905, e.g., Spanish folk music of the Renaissance 781.6261009031

[0093–0099] Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities
Do not use; class in 03–09

01 General principles
Add to 01 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.5, e.g., Spanish folk music for springtime 781.6261015242, rhythm in Spanish folk music for springtime 781.62610152421224

02 Stylistic influence of other traditions of music
Add to 02 the numbers following 781.6 in 781.63–781.69, e.g., influence of jazz on Spanish folk music 781.6261025, performances of Spanish folk music influenced by jazz 781.6261025078

03–09 Specific continents, countries, localities
Add to 0 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Spanish folk music in New York City 781.626107471
781.63–781.69 Other traditions of music

Add to notation for each term identified by † as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions
   Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g.,
   performances 078

1 General principles and stylistic influences of other traditions of music

11–15 General principles
   Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.5, e.g.,
   springtime music 15242, melody in springtime music
   15242124

16 Stylistic influences of other traditions of music
   Add to 16 the numbers following 781.6 in 781.62–781.69, e.g.,
   influence of folk music 162, performances of influence of folk
   music 162078

Class comprehensive works in 781.6

.63 †Popular music

   For Western popular music, see 781.64

.64 †Western popular music

   Examples: ragtime, reggae, skiffle

   Most works on Western popular music are predominantly about popular
   songs and are classed in 782.42164

   For jazz, see 781.65; rock, 781.66

.642 †Country music

   Class here bluegrass music

.643 †Blues

   Class here rhythm and blues

.644 †Soul

.65 †Jazz

.652 †Early jazz

   Class here origins of jazz

.653 †Traditional jazz

   Examples: New Orleans, Dixieland, Southwest and Kansas City, Harlem,
   white New York styles; Chicago breakdown

.654 †Mainstream jazz

   Including swing

†Add as instructed under 781.63–781.69
Music

781

.655 ♠Modern jazz
   Examples: bop (bebop), hard bop, cool jazz, progressive jazz
   For avant-garde jazz, see 781.656

.656 ♠Avant-garde jazz

.657 ♠Hybrid styles
   Examples: Afro-Cuban, third stream, Indo-jazz

.66 ♠Rock (Rock ’n’ roll)
   Examples: acid, folk, hard, soft rock

.68 ♠Western art (Classical) music
   Classical music as only one of many traditions
   Class here comprehensive works on art music
   Class general works on art (classical) music in 780
   For non-Western art music, see 781.69

.69 ♠Non-Western art music

.7 Sacred music
   Class sacred music accompanying stages of life cycle in 781.58

   “Church music” usually means Christian church music and is classed in 781.71

   See also 782.22 for sacred vocal music

SUMMARY

781.700 1–700.9 Standard subdivisions
   .701–.706 General principles
      .71 Christian sacred music
      .72 Music of Christian church year
      .73 Sacred music of classical (Greek and Roman) and Germanic religions
      .74–.79 Sacred music of other specific religions

.700 1–.700.9 Standard subdivisions
   Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of sacred music 781.70078

.701–.706 General principles
   Add to base number 781.70 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.6, e.g., harmonic rhythm in sacred music 781.70256, appreciation of harmonic rhythm in sacred music 781.70256117

.71 Christian sacred music
   For music of Christian church year, see 781.72

♠Add as instructed under 781.63–781.69
.710 01-.710 09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of Christian sacred music 781.70078

.710 1-.710 6 General principles

Add to base number 781.710 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.6, e.g., harmonic rhythm in Christian sacred music 781.710256, appreciation of harmonic rhythm in Christian sacred music 781.710256117

.711-.718 Of specific denominations

Add to base number 781.71 the numbers following —2 in notation 21–28 from Table 7, e.g., Baptist sacred music 781.7161; then add further as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of Baptist sacred music 781.71610078

01–06 General principles

Add to 0 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.6, e.g., harmonic rhythm in Baptist sacred music 781.71610256, appreciation of harmonic rhythm in Baptist sacred music 781.71610256117

.72 *Music of Christian church year

.722 *Advent

.723 *Christmas day

Class here Christmas season

For Epiphany, see 781.724

.724 *Epiphany

.725 *Lent

.725 5 *Passiontide

For Holy Week, see 781.726

.726 *Holy Week

Including Palm Sunday, Maundy Thursday, Good Friday

.727 *Easter Sunday

Class here Eastertide (Easter season)

For Ascensiontide, see 781.728

.728 *Ascensiontide

.729 *Pentecost and Trinity Sunday

.729 3 *Pentecost (Whitsunday)

.729 4 *Trinity Sunday

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8
.73 *Sacred music of classical (Greek and Roman) and Germanic religions

.74-.79 Sacred music of other specific religions

Add to base number 781.7 the numbers following —29 in —294–299 from Table 7, e.g., Judaic sacred music 781.76; then add further as follows:

- Standard subdivisions
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of Judaic sacred music 781.760078

- General principles
  - Add to base number 0 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.6, e.g., harmonic rhythm in Judaic sacred music 781.760256, appreciation of harmonic rhythm in Judaic sacred music 781.760256117

.8 *Musical forms

Class here formal analysis; works that do not specify voice, instrument, or ensemble

Class works for specific voice, instrument, or ensemble with the voice, instrument, or ensemble, e.g., Brahms’s Variations on a theme by Schumann 786.21825 (not 781.825)

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8
782 Vocal music

Class orchestral music with vocal parts in 784.22

For music for single voices, see 784.22

SUMMARY

782.001–009 Standard subdivisions
    .01–08 [General principles and musical forms]
    .1 Dramatic vocal forms Operas
    .2 Nondramatic vocal forms
    .3 Services (Liturgy and ritual)
    .4 Secular forms
    .5 Mixed voices
    .6 Women’s voices
    .7 Children’s voices
    .8 Men’s voices
    .9 Other types of voices

.001–009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of vocal music 782.0078

.01–07 General principles

Add to base number 782.0 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., rehearsing vocal music 782.044, rhythm in patriotic vocal music 782.05991224

.08 Musical forms

Add to base number 782.08 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., vocal music in waltz form 782.08846

For vocal forms, see 782.1–782.4

> 782.1–782.4 Vocal forms

Class here treatises about and recordings of vocal forms for specific voices and ensembles

Add to notation for each term identified by * as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions
    Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078
    1 General principles and musical forms

11–17 General principles
    Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., rock music 166, rehearsing rock music 166144

18 Musical forms
    Add to 18 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., da capo form 1822, composition in da capo form 182213

Class comprehensive works in 782
.1 *Dramatic vocal forms  *Operas

Regardless of type of voice or vocal group

Operas and related forms: musical vocal forms in which the action is predominantly in the music, whether or not dialogue is involved

Example: operas for children

Class here concert versions

Stage presentations of dramatic vocal forms relocated to 792.5

See Manual at 792.5 vs. 782.1

.109 2 Persons associated with dramatic vocal forms, with operas

Class here biographies of singers known equally well as opera and recital singers, of conductors known primarily as opera conductors

Class biographies of singers known primarily as recital singers in 782.42168092, of conductors known equally well for conducting operas and orchestral music in 784.092

.109 4 European opera

Use this number only for works that stress that they are discussing European opera in contrast to operas from all other sources

.12 *Operettas

.13 *Singspiels

.14 *Musical plays

Musical vocal forms in which the action is predominantly outside the music

Examples: ballad operas, musicals, revues

For masques, see 782.15

.15 *Masques

.2 *Nondramatic vocal forms

For secular forms, see 782.4

.22 *Sacred vocal forms

For specific sacred vocal forms, see 782.23–782.29

> 782.23–782.29 Specific sacred vocal forms

Class comprehensive works in 782.22

For services, see 782.3

.23 *Oratorios

Example: passions

*Add as instructed under 782.1–782.4
.24 *Large-scale vocal works *Cantatas
Class here comprehensive works on cantatas

For oratorios, see 782.23; secular cantatas, 782.48

.25 *Sacred songs
Example: spirituals
Class here *small-scale sacred vocal forms
If the songs are called hymns, class them in 782.27; if called carols, class them in 782.28; otherwise, class them here

For motets, see 782.26; hymns, 782.27; carols, 782.28

.26 *Motets
.265 *Anthems

.27 *Hymns
Class texts of hymns without music in 245, comprehensive works on hymns without music in 264.2

For carols, see 782.28

.28 *Carols
.29 *Liturgical forms
.292 *Chant
Including responses, e.g., litanies, suffrages
Class here plainsong
Class Gregorian chant in 782.3222, Anglican chant in 782.3223

> 782.294–782.298 Specific texts
Class comprehensive works in 782.29

.294 *Psalms
.295 *Biblical texts
Examples: Lord’s Prayer, amens, canticles

For psalms, see 782.294

.296 *Non-Biblical texts
Class parts of the mass in 782.323

.297 *Tropes
Accretions to the liturgy

For liturgical drama, see 782.298

.298 *Liturgical drama
*Add as instructed under 782.1–782.4
.3  *Services (Liturgy and ritual)

Musical settings of prescribed texts of specific religions

Class texts used by a specific religion with the religion, e.g., liturgy and ritual of a Christian church 264

.32  *Christian services

.322  Services of specific denominations

Add to base number 782.322 the numbers following —2 in notation 21–28 from Table 7, e.g., music for Methodist services 782.3227; then add further as follows:

001–009  Standard subdivisions
  Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of music for Methodist services 782.32270078

01–07  General principles
  Add to 0 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., music for Methodist Easter Sunday services 782.32270727, composition of music for Methodist Easter Sunday services 782.3227072713

08  Musical forms
  Add to 08 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., preludes for Methodist services 782.322708928, composition of preludes for Methodist services 782.32270892813

Class specific liturgies of specific denominations in 782.323–782.326

> 782.323–782.326 Specific liturgies

Class comprehensive works in 782.32

.323  *Mass (Communion service)

This number is used for music including both the common and the proper of the mass. Masses written from 1350 to today are usually limited to the common and are thus classed in 782.3232. The major exception is the requiem mass, which is classed in 782.3238. Music for an individual part of the mass is classed with that part, e.g., gradual 782.3235

.323 2  *Common (Ordinary) of the mass

Contains Kyrie, Gloria, Credo, Sanctus, Benedictus, Agnus Dei

Class common of requiem mass in 782.3238

.323 5  *Proper of the mass

Contains introit, gradual, tract, sequence, offertory, communion

Class proper of requiem mass in 782.3238

.323 8  *Requiem mass

*Add as instructed under 782.1–782.4
.324  *Divine office
Contains matins, lauds, prime, terce, sext, none, vespers, compline

See also 782.325 for morning prayer, 782.326 for evening prayer

.325  *Morning prayer
Example: matins of the Anglican church

.326  *Evening prayer
Example: evensong of the Anglican church

.33  *Services of classical (Greek and Roman) and Germanic religions

.34-.39  Services of other specific religions
Add to base number 782.3 the numbers following —29 in notation 294–299 from Table 7, e.g., music for Judaic services 782.36; then add further as follows:

001–009  Standard subdivisions
  Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of music for Judaic services 782.360078

01–07  General principles
  Add to 0 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., music for Judaic spring services 782.3605242, composition of music for Judaic spring services 782.360524213

08  Musical form
  Add to 08 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., preludes for Judaic services 782.3608928, composition of preludes for Judaic services 782.360892813

.4  *Secular forms

.42  *Songs
Class here comprehensive works on songs

For sacred songs, see 782.25

.421 680 92  Persons associated with art songs
  Class here biographies of singers known primarily as recital singers
  Class biographies of singers known equally well as opera and recital singers in 782.1092

.43  *Forms derived from poetry  *Madrigals
Examples: frottole, balletts, chansons, ballads

.47  *Song cycles

.48  *Secular cantatas

*Add as instructed under 782.1–782.4
782.5–782.9 Vocal executants

Add to notation for each term identified by † as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions
  Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078

1 General principles and musical forms
   Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., rock music 166, rehearsing rock music 166144

11–17 General principles
   Add to 18 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., da capo form 1822, composition in da capo form 182213
   Class dramatic vocal forms in 782.1
   For nondramatic vocal forms, see 2–4

18 Musical forms
   Add the numbers following 782 in 782.2–782.4, e.g., secular cantatas 48

Use 782.5–782.9 for scores and parts of vocal forms for specific vocal ensembles. Use 782.1–782.4 for treatises about and recordings of vocal forms for specific vocal ensembles. Class performance techniques for a specific ensemble or form with the ensemble or form, e.g., breathing techniques for choral music 782.5148, for opera 782.1148

Class comprehensive works in 782

.5 †Mixed voices

Class here choral music, music intended equally for choral or part-song performance, choral music with solo parts, unison voices

For part songs, see 783.1

782.6–782.9 Types of voices

Class comprehensive works in 782

.6 †Women’s voices

Class here music intended equally for women’s or children’s voices

Class music for children’s voices in 782.7

.66 †Soprano (Treble) voices

.67 †Mezzo-soprano voices

.68 †Contralto (Alto) voices

.7 †Children’s voices

Class music intended equally for women’s or children’s voices in 782.6

.76 †Soprano (Treble) voices

.77 †Mezzo-soprano voices

.78 †Contralto (Alto) voices

.79 †Changing voices

†Add as instructed under 782.5–782.9
782.8  †Men’s voices

782.86  †Treble and alto voices

Class here countertenor, falsetto, castrato voices

782.87  †Tenor voices

782.88  †Baritone voices

782.89  †Bass voices

782.9  †Other types of voices

782.96  †Speaking voices (Choral speech)

782.97  †Sprechgesang

782.98  †Whistle

783  Music for single voices  The voice

Use 783 for scores and parts of vocal forms for specific kinds or ensembles of single voice. Use 782.1–782.4 for treatises about and recordings of vocal forms for specific kinds or ensembles of single voice. Class performance techniques for a specific kind or ensemble of single voice or for a specific form with the kind, ensemble, or form, e.g., breathing techniques for part songs 783.1148, for opera 782.1148

SUMMARY

783.001–.009  Standard subdivisions
  .01–.09  [General principles and forms]
  .1  Single voices in combination
  .2  Solo voice
  .3  High voice
  .4  Middle voice
  .5  Low voice
  .6–.8  Woman’s, child’s, man’s voice
  .9  Other type of voice

783.001–.009  Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of music for single voice 783.0078

783.01–.07  General principles

Add to base number 783.0 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., patriotic music for single voices 783.0599, rhythm in patriotic music for single voices 783.05991224

783.08  Musical forms

Add to base number 783.08 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., vocal music in waltz form for the single voice 783.08846

For dramatic vocal forms, see 782.1; nondramatic vocal forms, 783.09

†Add as instructed under 782.5–782.9
.09 Nondramatic vocal forms
   Add to base number 783.09 the numbers following 782 in 782.2–782.4, e.g.,
   carols for single voices 783.0928

.1 Single voices in combination
   Class here part songs
   Class music intended equally for choral or part-song performance in 782.5

.101–.109 Standard subdivisions
   Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g.,
   performances of part songs 783.1078

.11 General principles and musical forms

.111–.117 General principles
   Add to base number 783.11 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7,
   e.g., patriotic part songs 783.11599, rehearsing patriotic part songs
   783.11599144

.118 Musical forms
   Add to base number 783.118 the numbers following 784.18 in
   784.182–784.189, e.g., part songs in waltz form 783.118846, rehearsing
   part songs in waltz form 783.118846144
   For dramatic vocal forms, see 782.1; nondramatic vocal forms,
   783.119

.119 Nondramatic vocal forms
   Add to base number 783.119 the numbers following 782 in 782.2–782.4,
   e.g., carols for single voices in combination 783.11928

> 783.12–783.19 Ensembles by size
   Add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:
   01–09 Standard subdivisions
      Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g.,
      performances 078
   1 General principles and musical forms
   11–17 General principles
      Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., rock
      music 166, rehearsing rock music 166144
   18 Musical forms
      Add to 18 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189,
      e.g., da capo form 1822, composition in da capo form 182213
      Class dramatic vocal forms in 782.1
      For nondramatic vocal forms, see 2–4
   2–4 Nondramatic vocal forms
      Add the numbers following 782 in 782.2–782.4, e.g., secular
      cantatas 48

   Class comprehensive works in 783.1

575
.12 †Duets
.13 †Trios
.14 †Quartets
.15 †Quintets
.16 †Sextets
.17 †Septets
.18 †Octets
.19 †Nonets and larger combinations

783.2–783.9 Solo voices
Add to each subdivision identified by ‡ notation 01–4 from table under 783.12–783.19, e.g., secular cantatas 48
Class comprehensive works in 783.2

.2 ‡Solo voice
Class here comprehensive works on types of single voices
Class specific types of single voices in 783.3–783.9

783.3–783.9 Specific types of single voices
Class comprehensive works in 783.2, single voices in ensembles in 783.12–783.19

.3 ‡High voice
Class woman’s soprano voice in 783.66; child’s soprano voice in 783.76; man’s treble voice and alto voice in 783.86, tenor voice in 783.87

.4 ‡Middle voice
Class woman’s mezzo-soprano voice in 783.67, child’s mezzo-soprano voice in 783.77, baritone voice in 783.88

.5 ‡Low voice
Class woman’s contralto voice in 783.68, child’s contralto voice in 783.78, bass voice in 783.89

†Add as instructed under 783.12–783.19
‡Add as instructed under 783.2–783.9
783.6–.8 **Woman’s, child’s, man’s voice**

Add to base number 783 the numbers following 782 in 782.6–782.8, e.g., bass voice 783.89

.9 **‡Other types of voice**

.96 ‡Speaking voice

.97 ‡Sprechgesang

.98 ‡Whistle

.99 ‡Voice instruments

Examples: didjeridu, mirliton (kazoo)

Including voice disguisers (sympathetic instruments relying on the human voice for their sound production) and roarers

---

> **784–788 Instruments and their music**

Add to notation for each term identified by * as follows:

01–09 **Standard subdivisions**

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078

*See Manual at 784–788: Add table: 092*

1 **General principles, musical forms, instruments**

11–17 **General principles**

Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., performance techniques 143

*For techniques for playing instruments, see 193*

18–19 **Musical forms and instruments**

Add to 1 the numbers following 784.1 in 784.18–784.19, e.g., sonata form 183, techniques for playing instruments 193

Class comprehensive works in 784

**784 Instruments and instrumental ensembles and their music**

*For specific instruments and their music, see 786–788*

*See also 787 for music for unspecified melody instrument*

**SUMMARY**

784.01–.09 **Standard subdivisions**

.1 **General principles, musical forms, instruments**

.2 **Full (Symphony) orchestra**

.3 **Chamber orchestra**

.4 **Light orchestra**

.6 **Keyboard, mechanical, electronic, percussion bands**

.7 **String orchestra**

.8 **Wind band**

.9 **Brass band**

‡Add as instructed under 783.2–783.9
.01-.09 Standard subdivisions
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1-780.9, e.g., performances

.1 General principles, musical forms, instruments

SUMMARY

784.11-.17 General principles
  .18 Musical forms
  .19 Instruments

.11-.17 General principles
Add to base number 784.1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1-781.7, e.g.,
performance techniques 784.143

For techniques for playing instruments, see 784.193

.18 †Musical forms

SUMMARY

784.18 General musical forms
  .183 Sonata forms
  .184 Symphony forms
  .185 Suite and related forms
  .186 Concerto forms
  .187 Contrapuntal forms
  .188 Dance forms
  .189 Other instrumental forms

.182 †General musical forms

.182 2 †Binary, ternary, da capo forms

.182 3 †Strophic form

.182 4 †Rondo forms
Example: sonata-rondo form

.182 5 †Variation forms
Example: theme and variations

.182 6 †Paraphrase forms
Including musical parody

.182 7 †Ground bass forms (Ostinato forms)
Examples: chaconne, passacaglia

> 784.183–784.189 Instrumental forms
Class comprehensive works in 784.18

†Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8
†Sonata forms

Class sonata-rondo form in 784.1824

†Sonatina form

†Symphony forms

Examples: sinfonietta, symphonic poem

†Sinfonia concertante form

†Suite and related forms

Example: cassation

†Divertimento form

†Partita form

†Serenade form

†Suite form

†Concerto forms

Use this subdivision only for concerto forms other than solo instruments with full orchestra, e.g., concerto forms for wind bands 784.8186, Bartok's Concerto for orchestra 784.2186

Examples: cadenza, concertante

Class comprehensive works on the concerto in 784.23

†Concertino form

†Contrapuntal forms

†Fugue form

†Invention form

†Canzona form

†Fancy and ricercar forms

Examples: innomine, tiento

†Canon form

†Dance forms

†European dance forms

Examples: galliard, saltarello

For dances of the classical suite form, see 784.1883; European dance forms of the nineteenth and later centuries, 784.1884

†Pavane form

†Dances of the classical suite form

Examples: gavotte, siciliano

†Minuet form

†Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8
.188 4 †European dance forms of the nineteenth and later centuries
   Examples: galop, mazurka, polonaise

.188 44 †Polka form

.188 46 †Waltz form

.188 5 †Asian dance forms

.188 6 †African dance forms

.188 7 †North American dance forms
   Examples: cakewalk, hoedown

*For Latin-American dance forms, see 784.1888*

.188 8 †Latin-American dance forms
   Examples: rumba, samba

.188 85 †Tango form

.188 9 †Dance forms of the Pacific Ocean islands and other parts of the world

.189 †Other instrumental forms
   Class here small-scale and character instrumental forms

.189 2 †Introductory forms
   Music preceding other music or other activities

.189 24 †Fanfare form

.189 26 †Overture form

.189 28 †Prelude form

.189 3 †Intermediate forms
   Music for between or after other activities
   Examples: intermezzo, interlude, postlude, voluntary
   Class incidental dramatic music in 781.552

.189 4 †Forms of music of an improvisatory or virtuoso nature
   Examples: arabesque, impromptu

.189 45 †Rhapsody form

.189 47 †Toccata form

.189 49 †Artistic étude form

.189 6 †Romantic and descriptive forms
   Examples: ballade, meditation, song without words

.189 64 †Elegy form

.189 66 †Nocturne form

.189 68 †Romance form

†Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8
.189 7  †March form
.189 9  †Forms derived from vocal music
.189 92  †From sacred music
    Example: chorale prelude
    Class instrumental forms derived from liturgical forms in 784.18993
.189 925  †Chorale form
.189 93  †From liturgical forms

.19  Instruments

For specific instruments, see 786–788

.190 28  Auxiliary techniques and procedures
    Class description and design in 784.1922, construction in 784.1923

[.190 287]  Testing and measurement
    Do not use; class in 784.1927

[.190 288]  Maintenance and repair
    Do not use; class in 784.1928

[.190 94–.190 99]  Historical and geographical treatment by specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
    Do not use; class in 784.194–784.199

.192  Specific techniques and procedures

.192 2  Description and design

.192 3  Construction
    Class construction by machine in 681.8

.192 7  Testing, measurement, verification

.192 8  Maintenance, tuning, repair
    Including temperament

.193  †Techniques for playing instruments
    Class comprehensive works on performance techniques in 784.143

.193 2  †Breathing and resonance

.193 4  †Embouchure
    Examples: lipping, tonguing

.193 6  †Arm techniques

.193 62  †Forearm techniques

.193 64  †Wrist techniques

†Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8
.193 65 †Hand techniques

For left-hand techniques, see 784.19366; right-hand techniques, 784.19367

.193 66 †Left-hand techniques

.193 67 †Right-hand techniques

.193 68 †Finger techniques

Examples: touch, fingerling, vibrato

.193 69 †Bowing techniques

.193 8 †Leg techniques

Example: pedaling

.194–.199 Geographical treatment

Add to base number 784.19 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., instruments of Germany 784.1943

.2 *Full (Symphony) orchestra

Class here comprehensive works on orchestral combinations, music intended equally for orchestral or chamber performance

For other orchestral combinations, see 784.3–784.9; chamber music, 785

.209 2 Persons associated with full (symphony) orchestras

Class here biographies of conductors known equally well for conducting operas and orchestral music

Class biographies of conductors known primarily as opera conductors in 782.1092

.22 *Orchestra with vocal parts

.23 *Orchestra with one or more solo instruments

Class here comprehensive works on concertos

For orchestra with more than one solo instrument, see 784.24; orchestra with one solo instrument, 784.25

.24 *Orchestra with more than one solo instrument

Example: concerti grossi

.25 *Orchestra with one solo instrument

Class here comprehensive works on solo concertos

For specific solo instruments, see 784.26–784.28

.26–.28 Specific solo instruments with orchestra

Add to base number 784.2 the numbers following 78 in 786–788, e.g., orchestra with solo piano 784.262, e.g., rehearsing orchestra with solo piano 784.262144

*Add as instructed under 784–788

†Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8
784.3–784.9 Other orchestral combinations and band

Add to notation for each term identified by † as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions
   Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g.,
   performances 078

1 General principles, musical forms, instruments
11–17 General principles
   Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g.,
   sacred music 17, rehearsing sacred music 17044

18–19 Musical forms and instruments
   Add to 1 numbers following 784.1 in 784.18–784.19, e.g.,
   waltz form 18846, bowing techniques 19369

2 Featured voices, instruments, ensembles
   Add to 2 the numbers following 78 in 782–788, e.g., flutes 2832

Class comprehensive works on orchestral combinations and band, on band in
784; comprehensive works on orchestral combinations in 784.2

.3 †Chamber orchestra

For chamber music, see 785

.4 †Light orchestra

Class here salon orchestra

.44 †School orchestra

.46 †Orchestra with toy instruments

.48 †Dance orchestra (Dance band)

.6 †Keyboard, mechanical, electronic, percussion bands

.68 †Percussion band
   Class here rhythm band

.7 †String orchestra

.8 †Wind band

Band consisting of woodwind instruments, brass instruments, or both

For brass band, see 784.9

.83 †Marching band

.84 †Military band

.89 †Woodwind band

.9 †Brass band

†Add as instructed under 784.3–784.9
785 Ensembles with only one instrument per part

Class here chamber music

Class works for solo melody instrument with keyboard or other accompaniment in 786–788

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>785.001-.009</th>
<th>Standard subdivisions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.01-.09</td>
<td>General principles, musical forms, instruments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.1</td>
<td>Ensembles by size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>Ensembles with keyboard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>Ensembles without electrophones and with percussion and keyboard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>Ensembles without keyboard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>Ensembles without keyboard and with percussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.6</td>
<td>Keyboard, electophone, percussion ensembles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.7</td>
<td>String ensembles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.8</td>
<td>Woodwind ensembles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.9</td>
<td>Brass ensembles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

.001-.009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of chamber music 785.0078

.01-.07 General principles

Add to base number 785.0 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., performance techniques 785.043

*For techniques for playing instruments, see 785.093*

.08-.09 Musical forms and instruments

Add to base number 785.0 the numbers following 784.1 in 784.18–784.19, e.g., waltz form 785.08846, techniques for playing instruments 785.093

.1 Ensembles by size

These provisions, when applied throughout 785, refer to the number of instruments, except for percussion ensembles in 785.68, where they refer to the number of performers

.12 *Duets*

.13 *Trios*

.14 *Quartets*

.15 *Quintets*

.16 *Sextets*

.17 *Septets*

.18 *Octets*

.19 *Nonets and larger ensembles*

*Add as instructed under 784–788*
> **785.2–785.9 Specific kinds of ensembles**

Add to notation for each term identified by † as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions
   Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078

1 General principles, musical forms, size of ensemble

11–17 General principles
   Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., sacred music 17, conducting sacred music 17045
   Class instrumental techniques for mixed ensembles in 784.193, for specific instruments in 786–788, e.g., bowing techniques for violins 787.219369

18 Musical forms
   Add to 18 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., waltz form 18846

19 Size of ensemble
   Add to 19 the numbers following 785.1 in 785.12–785.19, e.g., octets 198

Class comprehensive works in 785

> **785.2–785.5 Ensembles consisting of two or more instrumental groups**

Class comprehensive works in 785

.2 †Ensembles with keyboard

*For ensembles without electrophones and with percussion and keyboard, see 785.3*

.22 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, keyboard

.23 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, keyboard

.24 †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, keyboard

.25 †Ensembles of brass, strings, keyboard

†Add as instructed under 785.2–785.9
.26  †Ensembles of woodwind and keyboard
      Two or more woodwind instruments
      See also 788.2 for ensembles of one woodwind instrument and keyboard

.27  †Ensembles of brass and keyboard
      Two or more brass instruments
      See also 788.9 for ensembles of one brass instrument and keyboard

.28  †Ensembles of strings and keyboard
      Two or more stringed instruments
      See also 787 for ensembles of one stringed instrument and keyboard

.29  †Ensembles with electrophones, percussion, keyboard

.292  †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, electrophones, percussion, keyboard

.293  †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, electrophones, percussion, keyboard

.294  †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, electrophones, percussion, keyboard

.295  †Ensembles of brass, strings, electrophones, percussion, keyboard

.296  †Ensembles of woodwind, electrophones, percussion, keyboard

.297  †Ensembles of brass, electrophones, percussion, keyboard

.298  †Ensembles of strings, electrophones, percussion, keyboard

.299  †Ensembles with electrophones and keyboard

.299 2  †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, electrophones, keyboard

.299 3  †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, electrophones, keyboard

.299 4  †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, electrophones, keyboard

.299 5  †Ensembles of brass, strings, electrophones, keyboard

.299 6  †Ensembles of woodwind, electrophones, keyboard

.299 7  †Ensembles of brass, electrophones, keyboard

.299 8  †Ensembles of strings, electrophones, keyboard

.299 9  †Ensembles of electrophones and keyboard
      Two or more electrophones
      See also 786.7 for ensembles of one electrophone and keyboard

.3  †Ensembles without electrophones and with percussion and keyboard

.32  †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, percussion, keyboard

.33  †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, percussion, keyboard

†Add as instructed under 785.2–785.9
.34 †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, percussion, keyboard
.35 †Ensembles of brass, strings, percussion, keyboard
.36 †Ensembles of woodwind, percussion, keyboard
.37 †Ensembles of brass, percussion, keyboard
.38 †Ensembles of strings, percussion, keyboard
.39 †Ensembles of keyboard and percussion
.4 †Ensembles without keyboard

For ensembles without keyboard and with percussion, see 785.5

.42 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings
.43 †Ensembles of woodwind and brass (Wind ensembles)
.44 †Ensembles of woodwind and strings
.45 †Ensembles of brass and strings
.46 †Ensembles with electrophones
.462 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, electrophones
.463 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, electrophones
.464 †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, electrophones
.465 †Ensembles of brass, strings, electrophones
.466 †Ensembles of woodwinds and electrophones
.467 †Ensembles of brass and electrophones
.468 †Ensembles of strings and electrophones
.5 †Ensembles without keyboard and with percussion

.52 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, percussion
.53 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, percussion
.54 †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, percussion
.55 †Ensembles of brass, strings, percussion
.56 †Ensembles of woodwind and percussion
.57 †Ensembles of brass and percussion
.58 †Ensembles of strings and percussion
.59 †Ensembles with electrophones and percussion
.592 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, electrophones, percussion
.593 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, electrophones, percussion
.594 †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, electrophones, percussion

†Add as instructed under 785.2–785.9
.595  †Ensembles of brass, strings, electrophones, percussion
.596  †Ensembles of woodwind, electrophones, percussion
.597  †Ensembles of brass, electrophones, percussion
.598  †Ensembles of strings, electrophones, percussion
.599  †Ensembles of electrophones and percussion

785.6–785.9 Ensembles consisting of only one instrumental group

The inclusion of "only one kind" in the 785.6–785.9 headings limits the subdivisions to individual kind of instruments, not to family of instruments. For example, a string quartet, which usually consists of two violins, a viola, and a cello is classed in 785.7194 string quartets, not 785.72194 violin quartets.

When adding from 786–788 to indicate the instrument, add only the notation for the instrument; do not follow the footnote leading to add instructions. After indicating the instrument, add as instructed under 785.2–785.9, where notation 19 is used to indicate size of ensemble. For example, 785.7194 means string quartets, not string instruments of Europe (the meaning that would result from following the footnote instruction). The correct number for string quartets of Europe is 785.7194094.

Class comprehensive works in 785

.6  †Keyboard, electrophone, percussion ensembles

.62–.65  Keyboard ensembles

Add to base number 785.6 the numbers following 786 in 786.2–786.5 for the instrument only, e.g., music for piano ensembles 785.62; then add further as instructed under 785.2–785.9, e.g., music for two pianos 785.62192.

.67  †Electrophone ensembles

Class ensembles of a specific kind or group of electrically amplified or modified standard instruments with the instrument or group of instruments, e.g., electric guitar ensembles 785.787.

See also 786.7 for electronic music for one performer.

.673–.676  Ensembles with only one type of electrophone instrument

Add to base number 785.67 the numbers following 786.7 in 786.73–786.76 for the instrument only, e.g., music for synthesizers 785.674; then add further as instructed under 785.2–785.9, e.g., sextets for synthesizers 785.674196.

.68  †Percussion ensembles

Class here ensembles for more than one performer; see note under 785.1.

See also 786.8 for percussion music for one performer.

†Add as instructed under 785.2–785.9.
.7 ♦ String ensembles ♦ Bowed string ensembles

Ensembles of only one kind of stringed instrument

Add to base number 785.7 the numbers following 787 in 787.2–787.9 for the instrument only, e.g., music for guitar 785.787; then add further as instructed under 785.2–785.9, e.g., quartet for guitars 785.787194

.8 ♦ Woodwind ensembles

Ensembles of only one kind of woodwind instrument

Add to base number 785.8 the numbers following 788 in 788.2–788.8 for the instrument only, e.g., music for saxophones 785.87; then add further as instructed under 785.2–785.9, e.g., quartet for saxophones 785.87194

.9 ♦ Brass ensembles

Ensembles of only one kind of brass instrument

Add to base number 785.9 the numbers following 788.9 in 788.92–788.99 for the instrument only, e.g., music for trombones 785.93; then add further as instructed under 785.2–785.9, e.g., quartet for trombones 785.93194

786–788 Specific instruments and their music

Class here music for solo instrument, music for solo instruments accompanied by one other instrument when accompanying instrument clearly has a subsidiary role

Unless the forerunner of a modern instrument has its own notation, class it with the modern instrument. For example, the shawm, a forerunner of the oboe and an instrument without its own number, is classed with the oboe in 788.52; however, the vihuela, the forerunner of the guitar, is classed in 787.86 (its own number), not with the guitar in 787.87

Class comprehensive works in 784, chamber music in 785, voice instruments in 783.99

786 ♠ Keyboard, mechanical, electrophonic, percussion instruments

Class here comprehensive works on keyboard instruments, on keyboard stringed instruments; music for unspecified keyboard instrument

SUMMARY

786.2 Pianos
.3 Clavichords
.4 Harpsichords
.5 Keyboard wind instruments Organs
.6 Mechanical and aeolian instruments
.7 Electrophones Electronic instruments
.8 Percussion instruments
.9 Drums and devices used for percussion effects

*Add as instructed under 784–788
†Add as instructed under 785.2–785.9
786.2–786.5 Keyboard instruments
Class comprehensive works in 786, mechanical keyboard instruments in 786.66, keyboard idiophones in 786.83

786.2–786.4 Keyboard stringed instruments
Class comprehensive works in 786

.2 *Pianos
.28 *Prepared pianos
.3 *Clavichords
.4 *Harpsichords
Class here virginals, spinets

.5 *Keyboard wind instruments *Organs
Class concertinas in 788.84, accordions in 788.86

.55 *Reed organs and *regals
Variant names for reed organs: American organs, cabinet organs, harmoniums

.59 *Electronic organs
Class here comprehensive works on keyboard electrophones
Class a keyboard instrument whose sound is generated by conventional means, even though amplified or modified electronically, with the instrument, e.g., electric piano 786.2

See also 786.74 for synthesizers

.6 *Mechanical and aeolian instruments

786.64–786.68 Mechanical instruments
Class comprehensive works in 786.6

.64 *Mechanical struck idiophones
Examples: mechanized bells, carillons
Class here comprehensive works on mechanical idiophones

For mechanical plucked idiophones, see 786.65

.65 *Mechanical plucked idiophones
Examples: music boxes, symphonions

*Add as instructed under 784–788
Music

.66  *Mechanical keyboard instruments
   Mechanical instruments with attached functional keyboard
   Example: player pianos (pianolas)
   Class mechanical wind keyboard instruments in 786.68

.67  *Mechanical stringed instruments
   Class mechanical stringed keyboard instruments in 786.66

.68  *Mechanical wind instruments
   Example: fair organs

.69  *Aeolian instruments
   Instruments activated by the blowing of the wind

.7   *Electrophones   *Electronic instruments
   Class here music made from electrically produced or manipulated sounds
   Class keyboard electrophones in 786.59; a specific electrically amplified or
   modified standard instrument other than keyboard instruments with the
   instrument, e.g., electric guitar 787.87

.73  *Monophonic electrophones
   Electronic sound producers capable of producing only one pitch at a time
   Examples: ondes martenot, theremins

.74  *Synthesizers
   Class here electronic music
   For tapes, see 786.75; computers, 786.76

.75  Tapes
   Class here musique concrète (concrete music)

.76  Computers

.8   *Percussion instruments
   For drums, see 786.92-786.98; struck stringed instruments, 787.7

.82  *Idiophones (Vibrating sonorous solids)
   Class here comprehensive works on percussion instruments of definite pitch
   Class percussion instruments of indefinite pitch in 786.88
   For mechanical idiophones, see 786.64; keyboard idiophones, 786.83;
   set idiophones, 786.84-786.87; single idiophones, 786.88

.83  *Keyboard idiophones
   Class here celestas

*Add as instructed under 784-788
786.84–786.87 Set idiophones

Class comprehensive works in 786.84

.84 *Percussed idiophones

Sonorous solids struck by or against nonsonorous objects, e.g., sticks struck on ground

Class here comprehensive works on set idiophones (similar sonorous solids combined to form one instrument)

For plucked idiophones, see 786.85; friction idiophones, 786.86; concussion idiophones, 786.87

.842–.848 Sonorous solids of specific shapes

Add to base number 786.84 the numbers following 786.884 in 786.8842–786.8848, e.g., bar idiophones 786.843, performances on bar idiophones 786.843078

.85 *Plucked idiophones

Elastic bars or rods, usually of metal, fixed at one end and vibrated by plucking the free end

Example: sanzas (thumb pianos)

.86 *Friction idiophones

Objects rubbed to produce sounds of definite pitch

.862–.868 Sonorous solids of specific shapes

Add to base number 786.86 the numbers following 786.884 in 786.8842–786.8848, e.g., vessels 786.866, rehearsing on vessels 786.866144

.87 *Concussion idiophones

Two or more similar sonorous objects struck together to make both vibrate

.872–.878 Sonorous objects of specific shapes

Add to base number 786.87 the numbers following 786.884 in 786.8842–786.8848, e.g., blocks 786.873, rehearsing playing of blocks 786.873144

.88 *Single idiophones

Idiophones consisting of a single sonorous object

Class here comprehensive works on percussion instruments of indefinite pitch

Class a specific percussion instrument of indefinite pitch not provided for here with the instrument, e.g., cymbals 786.873

*Add as instructed under 784–788
.884 *Percussed idiophones
.884 2  *Sticks or rods
   Example: triangles
.884 3  *Bars, plates, blocks
   Examples: anvils, gongs
.884 4  *Troughs
.884 5  *Tubes
.884 6  *Vessels

   For bells, see 786.8848
.884 8  *Bells
.884 85  *Hand bells
.885  *Rattled idiophones
   Examples: maracas, sistrums
.886  *Scraped idiophones
   Idiophones consisting of two objects, a notched one being scraped by the
   other to create vibrations in one or the other
   Examples: washboards, football rattles
.887  *Plucked idiophones
   Example: jew’s harps
.888  *Friction idiophones
   Example: musical saws

.9  *Drums and devices used for percussion effects

>  786.92–786.98 Drums (Membranophones, Vibrating stretched membranes)
   Class comprehensive works in 786.9
.92  *Struck drums

   For kettle-shaped drums, see 786.93; tubular drums, 786.94;
   frame-shaped drums, 786.95
.93  *Kettle-shaped drums
   Examples: timpani (kettledrums), nakars (naqara), tabla
.94  *Tubular drums
   Example: snare drums (side drums)

*Add as instructed under 784–788
| .95 | *Frame-shaped drums |
|     | Drums with depth of body not exceeding radius of membrane |
|     | Examples: bass drums, tambourines |
| .96 | *Rattle drums |
|     | Drums whose membrane or membranes are struck by pellets or pendants |
| .97 | *Plucked drums |
|     | Drums each with a string that when plucked transmits a vibration to the membrane through which the string passes |
| .98 | *Friction drums |
|     | Drums whose membrane is made to vibrate by being rubbed either directly or by an attached stick or cord |
|     | Examples: quicas, rommelpots |
| .99 | *Devices used for percussion effects |
|     | Examples: whips, motor horns, sirens, popguns |

787 *Stringed instruments (Chordophones)  *Bowed stringed instruments

Class here music for unspecified melody instrument, comprehensive works on the lute family (instruments whose strings run from the resonating belly to the neck)

Class keyboard stringed instruments in 786, mechanical stringed instruments in 786.67

**SUMMARY**

| 787.2 | Violins |
| .3 | Violas |
| .4 | Cellos (Violoncellos) |
| .5 | Double basses |
| .6 | Other bowed stringed instruments  Viols |
| .7 | Plectral instruments |
| .8 | Plectral lute family |
| .9 | Harps and musical bows |

.2 *Violins

Class here comprehensive works on violin family

For violas, see 787.3; cellos, 787.4; double basses, 787.5

.3 *Violas

.4 *Cellos (Violoncellos)

.5 *Double basses

.6 *Other bowed stringed instruments  *Viols

For double basses, see 787.5

*Add as instructed under 784–788
*Descant viols
*Treble viols
*Tenor viols
*Bass viols (Viola da gambas)
*Viola d’amores
*Hurdy-gurdies (Vielles)

*Plectral instruments

Class here zithers, comprehensive works on struck stringed instruments

For plectral lute family, see 787.8; harps and musical bows, 787.9

> 787.72–787.75 Zithers

Class comprehensive works in 787.7

*Stick, tube, trough zithers
*Frame, ground, harp, raft zithers
*Board zithers

Examples: cimbaloms, dulcimers, santirs, yang ch’ins

Class here struck board zithers

For plucked board zithers, see 787.75

*Plucked board zithers

Examples: Appalachian dulcimers, autoharps, concert zithers, psalteries, Tyrolean zithers

*Lyres

*Plectral lute family

Class here long-necked, short-necked lutes

*Round-backed lute family

Examples: sitars, tamburas

For lutes, see 787.83; mandolins, 787.84

*Lutes

*Mandolins

*Flat-backed lute family

Examples: biwas, citterns, shamisens

For vihuelas, see 787.86; guitars, 787.87; banjos, 787.88; ukuleles, 787.89

*Add as instructed under 784–788
.86 *Vihuelas
.87 *Guitars
.875 *Balalaikas
.88 *Banjos
.89 *Ukuleles
.9 *Harps and musical bows
.92 *Musical bows
  Stringed instruments each with one or more strings stretched across a single flexible string bearer
  Class pluriarcs in 787.93
.93 *Pluriarcs (Compound musical bows)
  Stringed instruments with strings stretched across several string bearers

> 787.94–787.98 Harps
  Class comprehensive works in 787.9
  .94 *Bow (Arched) harps and *angle harps
    Harps with neck forming an arch with the resonator
  .95 *Frame harps
    Harps with pillar joining end of neck to resonator
    Examples: orchestral harps, Celtic harps
  .98 *Bridge harps (Harp-lutes)
    Lute-bodied harps with strings that are perpendicular to body of the harp and that pass through a bridge
    Example: koras

788 *Wind instruments (Aerophones)
  Class keyboard wind instruments in 786.5, mechanical wind instruments in 786.68

SUMMARY

788.2 Woodwind instruments and free aerophones
  .3 Flute family
  .4 Reed instruments
  .5 Double-reed instruments
  .6 Single-reed instruments
  .7 Saxophones
  .8 Free reeds
  .9 Brass instruments (Lip-reed instruments)

*Add as instructed under 784–788
*Woodwind instruments and free aerophones

For specific woodwind instruments, see 788.3–788.8

*Free aerophones

Aerophones in which the airstream is not directed into or through a cavity or tube but directly into the outer air, or the air remains static and the instrument when moved vibrates through friction with the air

Example: bull-roarers

Class free aerophones used for percussion effects in 786.99

788.3–788.8 Specific woodwind instruments

Class comprehensive works in 788.2

*Flute family

Class here nose flutes

*Transverse (Side-blown) flutes

Variant name: flutes

For piccolos and fifes, see 788.33; bass flutes, 788.34

*Piccolos and *fifes

*Bass flutes

*Duct, *end-blown, *notched flutes

Examples: flageolets, penny whistles, shakuhanchis

For recorders, see 788.36

*Recorders

*Sopranino recorders

*Descant (Soprano) recorders

*Treble (Alto) recorders

*Tenor recorders

*Bass recorders

*Multiple flutes  *Pan pipes

Several flutes formed into one instrument

*Vessel flutes

Example: ocarinas

*Add as instructed under 784–788
*.4 *Reed instruments
   For double-reed instruments, see 788.5; single-reed instruments, 788.6; free reeds, 788.8

*.49 *Bagpipes
   Examples: cornemuses; Northumbrian, uillean (union) pipes
   Class here single- and double-reed bagpipes

*.5 *Double-reed instruments
   Examples: crumhorns, racketts
   For bagpipes, see 788.49

*.52 *Oboes

*.53 *Cors anglais (English horns)

*.58 *Bassoons
   For double bassoons, see 788.59

*.59 *Double bassoons (Contrabassoons)

*.6 *Single-reed instruments
   For bagpipes, see 788.49; saxophones, 788.7

*.62 *Clarinets
   For bass clarinets, see 788.65

*.65 *Bass clarinets

*.7 *Saxophones
   *Soprano saxophones

*.73 *Alto saxophones

*.74 *Tenor saxophones

*.75 *Bass saxophones

*.8 *Free reeds
   Instruments consisting of sets of individual free reeds

*.82 *Mouth organs *Harmonicas
   Example: shengs

*.84 *Concertinas
   Example: bandoneons

*.86 *Accordions

*.863 *Button accordions *Melodeons

*.865 *Piano accordions

*Add as instructed under 784–788
.9 *Brass instruments (Lip-reed instruments)
  .92 *Trumpets
  .93 *Trombones
  .94 *French horns (Horns)
    See also 788.53 for English horns
  .95 *Bugles
  .96 *Cornets
  .97 *Flugelhorns (Saxhorns)
  .974 *Tenor horns
    Examples: B-flat horns (also called baritones in United Kingdom and
    Germany) and E-flat horns (also called alto horns in North America and
    France)
  .975 *Euphoniums and *baritones (American)
  .98 *Tubas
  .99 *Other brass instruments
    Examples: cornetts, ophicleides, serpents

(789) Composers and traditions of music

(Optional number and subdivisions; prefer 780–788)

(Option A: Arrange treatises about all composers at 789 plus an alphabeting mark;
    then to the result add notation following 78 in 780–788)

(Option B: Use 789 and its subdivisions for traditions of music)

(If both options are used, class comprehensive works on traditions of music in
789.1)

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or
    more subdivisions of 789 in the one coming last, e.g., Spanish folk music for
springtime 789.26105242 (not 789.205242)

(1.1) †General principles of traditions of music

(If both options are used, class here comprehensive works on traditions of
music)

Add to base number 789.1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.5, e.g.,
treatment of springtime music in various traditions 789.15242

(2) †Folk music

Music indigenous to the cultural group in which it occurs, usually evolved
through aural transmission

(.200 1–.200 7) †Standard subdivisions
    Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g.,
    performances of folk music 789.20078

*Add as instructed under 784–788
†(Optional number; prefer 781–788)
(.200 8) †History and description of folk music with respect to kinds of persons

[.200 89] Treatment with respect to specific racial, ethnic, national groups

Do not use; class in 789.21–789.29

(.200 9) †Historical, geographical, persons treatment

(.200 901–.200 905) †Historical periods

Add to base number 789.20090 the numbers following 780.90 in 780.901–780.905, e.g., Renaissance folk music 789.2009031

(.200 91–.200 99) †Geographical and persons treatment

Class geographical treatment of folk music of specific racial, ethnic, national groups in 789.21–789.29

(.201) †General principles, stylistic influences of other traditions, musical forms

(.201 1–.201 5) †General principles

Add to base number 789.201 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.5, e.g., folk music for springtime 789.2015242, rhythm in folk music for springtime 789.20152421224

(.201 6) †Stylistic influences of other traditions of music

Add to base number 789.2016 the numbers following 789 in 789.3–789.9, e.g., influence of jazz on folk music 789.20165, performances of folk music influenced by jazz 789.20165078

(.201 8) †Musical forms

Add to base number 789.2018 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., march form in folk music 789.201897

(.202–.208) †Voices, instruments, ensembles

Add to base number 789.20 the numbers following 78 in 782–788, e.g., folk songs for women singers 789.202642

(.21–.29) †Folk music of specific racial, ethnic, national groups

Add to base number 789.2 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., Spanish folk music 789.261; then add further as follows:

001–008 Standard subdivisions
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of Spanish folk music 789.2610078

009 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

00901–00905 Historical periods
Add to 0090 the numbers following 780.90 in 780.091–780.095, e.g., Spanish folk music of the Renaissance 789.261009031

[0093–0099] Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities
Do not use; class in 03–09

†(Optional number; prefer 781–788)
(789.3–789.9) Other traditions of music

Add to notation for each term identified by * as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions
   Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performance 0078

01 General principles, stylistic influences of other traditions of music, musical forms

011–015 General principles
   Add to 01 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.5, e.g., Spanish folk music for springtime 789.261015242, rhythm in Spanish folk music for springtime 789.261015242124

016 Stylistic influences of other traditions of music
   Add to 016 the numbers following 789 in 789.3–789.9, e.g., influence of jazz on Spanish folk music 789.2610165, performances of Spanish folk music influenced by jazz 789.2610165078

018 Musical forms
   Add to 018 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., march form in Spanish folk music 789.26101897

02 Voices, instruments, ensembles
   Add to 02 the numbers following 78 in 782–788, e.g., Spanish folk music for the guitar 789.26102787

03–09 Specific continents, countries, localities
   Add to 0 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Spanish folk music in New York City 789.26107471

> (789.3–789.9) Other traditions of music

Class comprehensive works in 789

(3) †*Popular music

*Add as instructed under 789.3–789.9
†(Optional number; prefer 781–788)
789 Dewey Decimal Classification 789

(.4) ✽Western popular music

Examples: ragtime, reggae, skiffle

For jazz, see 789.5; rock, 789.6

(.42) ✽Country music

Class here bluegrass music

(.43) ✽Blues

Class here rhythm and blues

(.44) ✽Soul

(.5) ✽Jazz

(.52) ✽Early jazz

Class here origins of jazz

(.53) ✽Traditional jazz

Examples: New Orleans, Dixieland, Southwest and Kansas City, Harlem, white New York styles; Chicago breakdown

(.54) ✽Mainstream jazz

Including swing

(.55) ✽Modern jazz

Examples: bop (bebop), hard bop, cool jazz, progressive jazz

For avant-garde jazz, see 789.56

(.56) ✽Avant-garde jazz

(.57) ✽Hybrid styles

Examples: Afro-Cuban, third stream, Indo-jazz

(.6) ✽Rock (Rock 'n' roll)

Examples: acid, folk, soft rock

(.8) ✽Western art (Classical) music

Class here comprehensive works on art music

For non-Western art music, see 789.9

(.9) ✽Non-Western art music

*Add as instructed under 789.3–789.9
	(Optional number; prefer 781–788)
Recreational and performing arts

Class here interdisciplinary works on recreation

Class the sociology of recreation in 306.48

*For music, see 780*

*See Manual at 790*

**SUMMARY**

790.01-.09 Standard subdivisions of recreation

.1-.2 [Recreational activities and the performing arts in general]

791 Public performances
792 Stage presentations
793 Indoor games and amusements
794 Indoor games of skill
795 Games of chance
796 Athletic and outdoor sports and games
797 Aquatic and air sports
798 Equestrian sports and animal racing
799 Fishing, hunting, shooting

.01 Philosophy and theory of recreation

.013 Value, influence, effect

.013 2 Psychological principles

.013 5 Effective use of leisure

[.019] Psychological principles

Do not use; class in 790.0132

.02-.05 Standard subdivisions of recreation

.06 Organizations dealing with and management of recreation

.068 Recreation centers

Indoor and outdoor

Including parks and community centers as recreation centers

Add to base number 790.068 notation 1-9 from Table 2, e.g., recreation centers of California 790.068794

Do not use for management of recreation; class in 790.069

.069 Management of recreation

Add to base number 790.069 the numbers following —068 in notation 0681-0688 from Table 1, e.g., personnel management 790.0693

.07 Education, research, related topics of recreation

.08 History and description of recreation with respect to groups of persons

Class activities and programs for specific classes of people in 790.19

.09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment of recreation
Recreational activities

Class a specific activity with the subject, e.g., outdoor sports 796, piano playing 786.2143, paper cutting and folding 736.98

[.101-.109] Standard subdivisions
Do not use; class in 790.01–790.09

.13 Activities generally engaged in by individuals
Class here hobbies

.132 Collecting
Class collecting a specific kind of object with the object, using notation 075 from Table 1, e.g., stamp collecting 769.56075

.133 Play with mechanical and scientific toys
Examples: electric trains, racing cars sets
Class play with a specific toy provided for elsewhere with the toy, e.g., flying model airplanes 796.15

.134 Participation in contests
Examples: writing jingles, matching numbers
See also 659.17 for advertising by means of contests

.138 Passive (Spectator) activities
Examples: reading, watching, listening

.15 Activities generally engaged in by groups

.19 Activities and programs for specific classes of people
Class activities generally engaged in by individuals in 790.13, by groups other than families in 790.15

.191 For families

.192 For specific age levels
Examples: young adults, mature adults
Class activities for specific sexes regardless of age in 790.194; for invalids, convalescents, handicapped persons regardless of age in 790.196

.1922 Children

.1926 Adults aged 65 and over

.194 For groups by sex
Class activities for invalids, convalescents, persons with handicaps regardless of sex in 790.196

.196 For invalids, convalescents, persons with handicaps

604
.2 The performing arts in general
Class a specific art with the subject, e.g., motion pictures 791.43, symphony orchestra performances 784.2078
Works that treat only public performances, e.g., stage, radio, television, music, are classed in 791. Works that also include athletic and outdoor sports and games are classed here
See Manual at 780.079 vs. 790.2

791 Public performances
Other than musical, sport, game performances
Class here performances at fairs
For stage presentations, see 792; magic, 793.8
See also 780 for musical performances, 793-796 for sport and game performances

SUMMARY
791.01-.09 Standard subdivisions
.1 Traveling shows
.3 Circuses
.4 Motion pictures, radio, television
.5 Puppetry and toy theaters
.6 Pageantry
.8 Animal performances

.06 Organizations and management

.068 Amusement parks
Add to base number 791.068 notation 1-9 from Table 2, e.g., amusement parks of United States 791.06873
Do not use for management; class in 791.069

.069 Management
Add to base number 791.069 the numbers following —068 in notation 0681-0688 from Table 1, e.g., management of marketing 791.0698

.092 Persons
See Manual at 791.092

.1 Traveling shows
Example: medicine shows
For circuses, see 791.3

.12 Minstrel shows and skits
See also 792.7 for vaudeville
.3 Circuses
Class here amateur circuses

.32 Animal performances

.33 Clowns

.34 Acrobatics and trapeze work

.35 Freaks and sideshows

.38 Parades

[.39] Amateur circuses
Number discontinued; class in 791.3

.4 Motion pictures, radio, television
Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 791.4 in the one coming last, e.g., critical appraisal of a specific film 791.4372 (not 791.433)

See also 302.234 for social aspects of motion pictures, radio, and television as mass media

See Manual at 303.376 vs. 363.31, 791.4; 384.54, 384.55, 384.8 vs. 791.4

.43 Motion pictures
Class here dramatic films
Class photographic aspects of motion pictures in 778.53, made-for-TV movies in 791.45

See also 384.8 for communication aspects of motion pictures

.430 1-.430 8 Standard subdivisions
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 792.01–792.02, e.g., makeup for motion pictures 791.43027; however, class programming (scheduling) in 384.84, types of presentation in 791.433

.430 9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment
Class here description, critical appraisal of specific companies and studios
Class description, critical appraisal of specific films in 791.437

[.430 909] Special aspects
Relocated to 791.436

.433 Types of presentation
Examples: home and amateur films, cartoon films, puppet films
Class animation of films in 741.58

[.435] Kinds of motion pictures
Number discontinued; class in 791.43
Recreational and performing arts

[.435 2] Dramatic films
   Number discontinued; class in 791.43

[.435 3] Educational and documentary films, newsreels
   Relocated to 070.18

.436 Special aspects [formerly 791.430909]
   Class here genres of, types of films

.436 1 Films displaying specific qualities
   Add to base number 791.4361 the numbers following — 1 in notation
   12–17 from Table 3–C, e.g., comedies 791.43617

.436 2–.436 8 Films dealing with specific themes and subjects
   Add to base number 791.436 the numbers following — 3 in notation
   32–38 from Table 3–C, e.g., films of the West and Westerns
   791.436278

.437 Films
   General aspects: description, critical appraisal, screenplays
   Class texts of plays in 800, subject-oriented films themselves with the
   subject, e.g., films on flower gardening 635.9
   See Manual at 791.437 and 791.447, 791.457, 792.9

.437 2 Single films
   Arrange alphabetically by title of film

.437 5 Two or more films
   Class here collections of film reviews
   Class works which focus on a specific aspect of films with the aspect
   in 791.436, e.g., Westerns 791.436278; critical appraisal of films
   associated with a specific person with the person, e.g., films of a
   motion-picture photographer 778.5092, of a director 791.430233092

.44 Radio
   Class here dramatic programs
   See also 384.54 for communication aspects of radio

.440 1–.440 8 Standard subdivisions
   Notation from Table 1 as modified under 792.01–792.02, e.g., value
   of radio 791.44013; however, class programming (scheduling) in
   384.5442, types of presentation in 791.443

.440 9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment
   Class here description, critical appraisal of specific companies and
   stations
   Class description, critical appraisal of specific programs in 791.447

[.440 909] Special aspects
   Relocated to 791.446

607
Types of presentation
Examples: live or recorded, network production, announcing, commercials

Kinds of programs
Number discontinued; class in 791.44
Radio educational, expository, news programs relocated to 070.194, radio sports programs to 070.449796

Special aspects [formerly 791.440909]
Class here genres of, types of programs

Programs displaying specific qualities
Add to base number 791.4461 the numbers following — 1 in notation 12–17 from Table 3–C, e.g., comedies 791.44617

Programs dealing with specific themes and subjects
Add to base number 791.446 the numbers following — 3 in notation 32–38 from Table 3–C, e.g., programs of the West and Westerns 791.446278

Programs
General aspects: description, critical appraisal, radio plays
Class texts of plays in 800, subject-oriented programs themselves with the subject, e.g., programs on flower gardening 635.9

See Manual at 791.437 and 791.447, 791.457, 792.9

Single programs
Arrange alphabetically by name of program

Two or more programs
Class here collections of program reviews
Class works which focus on a specific aspect of programs with the aspect in 791.446, e.g., Westerns 791.446278; critical appraisal of programs associated with a specific person with the person, e.g., programs of a director 791.440233092

Television
Class here dramatic and audience programs, use of videotapes
Class use of videotapes not provided for here with the subject, e.g., video recordings of rock music 781.66

See also 384.55 for communication aspects of television

Standard subdivisions
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 792.01–792.02, e.g., scenery and lighting for television 791.45025; however, class programming (scheduling) in 384.5531, types of presentation in 791.453
.450 9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment
Class here description, critical appraisal of specific companies, stations, networks
Class description, critical appraisal of specific programs in 791.457

[.450 909] Special aspects
Relocated to 791.456

.453 Types of presentation
Examples: live or filmed, color or black-and-white, network production, announcing, commercials

[.455] Kinds of programs
Number discontinued; class in 791.45
Educational, expository, news television programs relocated to 070.195, television sports programs to 070.449796

.456 Special aspects [formerly 791.450909]
Class here genres of, types of programs

.456 1 Programs displaying specific qualities
Add to base number 791.4561 the numbers following —1 in notation 12–17 from Table 3–C, e.g., comedies 791.45617

.456 2–.456 8 Programs dealing with specific themes and subjects
Add to base number 791.456 the numbers following —3 in notation 32–38 from Table 3–C, e.g., programs of the West and Westerns 791.456278

.457 Programs
General aspects: description, critical appraisal, television plays
Class texts of plays in 800, subject-oriented programs themselves with the subject, e.g., programs on flower gardening 635.9

See Manual at 791.437 and 791.447, 791.457, 792.9

.457 2 Single programs
Arrange alphabetically by name of program

.457 5 Two or more programs
Class here collections of program reviews
Class works which focus on a specific aspect of programs with the aspect in 791.456, e.g., Westerns 791.456278; critical appraisal of programs associated with a specific person with the person, e.g., programs of a television photographer 778.59092, of a director 791.450233092
.5 Puppetry and toy theaters

.53 Puppetry
- Class here marionettes, shadow puppets
- Class puppet films in 791.433

.538 Production scripts of puppet plays
- Class texts of plays in 800

.6 Pageantry

Examples: processions, festivals, illuminations, parades, floats for parades

For water pageantry, see 797.203; circus parades, 791.38

See Manual at 394.5 vs. 791.6

.62 Pageants

.622 Religious pageants

.624 Historical and patriotic pageants

.64 Cheerleading
- Add to base number 791.64 the numbers following 796.3 in 796.31-796.35, e.g., cheerleading at American football games 791.6432

.8 Animal performances

Example: cockfighting

For circus animal performances, see 791.32; equestrian sports and animal racing, 798

.82 Bullfighting

.84 Rodeos
- Class here Wild West shows

792 Stage presentations

Class here theater, dramatic presentation

Class texts of plays in 800

For motion pictures, radio, television, see 791.4; puppetry and toy theaters, 791.5

SUMMARY

792.01-.09 Standard subdivisions

.1 Tragedy and serious drama

.2 Comedy and melodrama

.3 Pantomime

.5 Opera

.6 Musical plays

.7 Variety shows

.8 Ballet and modern dance

.9 Stage productions
Recreational and performing arts

.01 Philosophy, theory, aesthetics

.013 Value, influence, effect

Class influence and effect on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on crime 364.254

.015 Criticism and appreciation

General aspects: theory, technique, history

Do not use for scientific principles; class in 792.01

.02 Handbooks, techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, miscellany

[.021] Tabulated and related materials

Do not use; class in 792.0291

792.022–792.028 Handbooks, techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Use notation 01–09 (except —028) from Table 1 under each subdivision identified by *, e.g., periodicals on amateur theater 792.022205

Do not use for miscellany; class in 792.029

Class comprehensive works in 792.02

.022 *Types of stage presentation

Examples: municipal theater, showboats, street theater

.022 2 *Amateur theater

.022 3 *Little theater

.022 4 *Summer theater

.022 6 *Children’s theater

.022 8 *Arena theater (Theater-in-the-round)

.023 *Supervision

.023 2 *Production

.023 3 *Direction

.023 6 *Programming

.024 *Special effects

Examples: sound effects, visual effects

.025 *Setting

Contains scenery, lighting

.026 *Costuming

.027 *Makeup

*Add standard subdivisions as instructed under 792.022–792.028
.028  *Acting and performance
      Including impersonation, improvisation, use of expression and gestures

.029  Miscellany
      Do not use for commercial miscellany; class in 792.0299

.029 07  Humorous treatment

.029 08  Audiovisual treatment

.029 1−.029 7  Miscellaneous works
      Add to base number 792.029 the numbers following —02 in notation
      021−027 from Table 1, e.g., stage as a profession 792.0293

.029 9  Commercial miscellany
      Examples: house organs, prospectuses, price lists, trade catalogs

.09  Historical, geographical, persons treatment
      Class here description, critical appraisal of specific theaters and companies
      Class specific productions in specific theaters or by specific companies in
      792.9

[.090 9]  Special aspects
      Number discontinued; class in 792.09

>  792.1−792.8 Specific kinds of performances
      Add to the notation for each notation identified by † the numbers following 792
      in 792.01−792.09, e.g., costuming for ballet 792.8026
      Class comprehensive works in 792

.1  †Tragedy and serious drama

.12  †Tragedy

.14  †Historical drama

.16  †Religious and morality plays
      Examples: passion, miracle, mystery plays
      See also 792.09 for treatment of religious concepts in the theater

.2  †Comedy and melodrama

.23  †Comedy

.27  †Melodrama
      Including modern mystery (suspense) drama

.3  †Pantomime

*Add standard subdivisions as instructed under 792.022−792.028
†Add as instructed under 792.1−792.8
.5  †Opera

Class here comprehensive works on stage presentations of dramatic vocal forms
[formerly 782.1]

For musical plays, see 792.6; variety shows, 792.7

See also 782.1 for comprehensive works on opera

See Manual at 792.5 vs. 782.1

.509  Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here description, critical appraisal of specific theaters and companies

Class specific productions in specific theaters or by specific companies in 792.54

.54  Opera productions

General aspects: description, critical appraisal, production and stage guides

.542  Single operas

Arrange alphabetically by title

.545  Two or more operas

Class here collections of reviews

Class critical appraisal of operas associated with a specific person with the person, e.g., operas associated with a singer 782.1092, with a director 792.50233092

.6  †Musical plays

See also 782.14 for comprehensive works on musical plays

See Manual at 792.5 vs. 782.1

.609  Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here description, critical appraisal of specific theaters and companies

Class specific productions in specific theaters or by specific companies in 792.64

.62  Dancing

Including choreography

.64  Musical play productions

General aspects: description, critical appraisal, production and stage guides

.642  Single musical plays

Arrange alphabetically by name

†Add as instructed under 792.1–792.8
Two or more musical plays

Class here collections of reviews

Class critical appraisal of musical plays associated with a specific person with the person, e.g., musical plays associated with a singer 782.14092, with a director 792.60233092

†Variety shows

Class here burlesque, cabaret, vaudeville, music hall and night club presentations

Including tap dancing [formerly 793.324]

Class stage productions in 792.9

See also 791.12 for minstrel shows and skits

†Ballet and modern dance

Class here comprehensive works on dancing [formerly 793.3], theatrical dancing [formerly 793.32]

Class dancing in musical plays in 792.62

For tap dancing, see 792.7, social, folk, national dancing, 793.3

See Manual at 792.8 vs. 793.3

Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here description, critical appraisal of specific theaters and companies

Class specific productions in specific theaters or by specific companies in 792.84

Choreography

Class here choreology, e.g., Labanotation, Benesh

Use of this number for ballet dancing discontinued; class in 792.8

Ballet productions

General aspects: description, critical appraisal, production scripts

Class here stories, plots, analyses, librettos, stage guides

Single ballets

Arrange alphabetically by title

Two or more ballets

Class here collections of reviews

Class critical appraisal of ballets associated with a specific person with the person, e.g., ballets associated with a director 792.80233092

†Add as instructed under 792.1–792.8
Stage productions

General aspects: description, critical appraisal, production scripts and stage guides

Class here description, critical appraisal of specific theaters and companies

Class description, critical appraisal, production scripts of ballets in 792.84

See Manual at 791.437 and 791.447, 791.457, 792.9

Single productions

Arrange alphabetically by title

Two or more productions

Class here collections of reviews

Class critical appraisal of productions associated with a specific person with the person, e.g., productions associated with a director 792.0233092

Indoor games and amusements

For indoor games of skill, see 794; games of chance, 795

Philosophy and theory

Activities and programs for specific classes of people

Add to base number 793.019 the numbers following 790.19 in 790.191–790.196, e.g., indoor games and amusements for children 793.01922

Do not use for psychological principles; class 793.01

History and description with respect to kinds of persons

Class activities and programs for specific classes of people in 793.019

Parties and entertainments

Children’s parties

Seasonal parties

Class children’s seasonal parties in 793.21

Charades and tableaux

Social, folk, national dancing

Examples: belly, jazz dancing

Comprehensive works on dancing relocated to 792.8

See Manual at 792.8 vs. 793.3

Folk and national dancing

Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class 793.319
.319  Historical, geographical, persons treatment
       Add to base number 793.319 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., folk
dances of Germany 793.31943

.32  Clog dancing
       Theatrical dancing relocated to 792.8

[.324]  Tap and clog dancing
       Use of this number for clog dancing discontinued; class in 793.32
       Tap dancing relocated to 792.7

.33  Ballroom dancing (Round dances)
       Examples: fox trot, jitterbug, waltz
       Including disco dancing

.34  Square dancing

.35  Dances with accessory features
       Examples: cotillions, germans, sword dances

.38  Balls
       Class ballroom dancing in 793.33

.4  Games of action
       Examples: blind man's buff, musical chairs

.5  Forfeit and trick games

.7  Games not characterized by action
     For charades and tableaux, see 793.24

.73  Puzzles and puzzle games
       Examples: acrostics, anagrams, literary games, quizzes; jigsaw puzzles
       Class puzzles as formal instructional devices for the teaching of a specific
subject with the subject, using notation 07 from Table 1, e.g., puzzles
       teaching the use of the Bible 220.07
     For mathematical games and recreations, see 793.74

.732  Crossword puzzles

.735  Riddles
     See also 398.6 for riddles as folk literature

.74  Mathematical games and recreations
.8 Magic and related activities
   Example: scientific recreations
   Class here conjuring
   *For card tricks, see 795.438*

.87 Juggling

.89 Ventriloquism

.9 Other indoor diversions
   Example: making cat’s cradles

.92 War games (Battle games)
   *See also 355.48 for military use of war games, 796.1 for outdoor war games*

.93 Adventure games    Fantasy games
   Examples: Dungeons and Dragons®, RuneQuest®
   Class here mystery games, role-playing games
   *See also 793.92 for war games (battle games)*

[D.930 285] Data processing    Computer applications
   Do not use; class in 793.932

.932 Computer adventure games    Computer fantasy games
   Unless it is redundant, add to base number 793.932 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., programs for digital microcomputers 793.932536, but use of digital computers 793.932 (not 793.9324)
   Class comprehensive works on computer games in 794.8

794 Indoor games of skill
   Example: go-moku
   Class here board games
   Class war games in 793.92, adventure, fantasy, mystery games in 793.93, games combining skill and chance in 795
   *For backgammon, see 795.15*

**SUMMARY**

794.1 Chess
.2 Checkers (Draughts)
.3 Darts
.6 Bowling
.7 Ball games
.8 Electronic games    Computer games
.1 Chess

Data processing  Computer applications

Do not use; class in 794.172

.12 Strategy and tactics

General aspects: combinations, sacrifices, traps, pitfalls, attack, counterattack, defense

Class strategy and tactics with individual chessmen in 794.14

.122 Openings

.123 Middle games

.124 End games

.14 Individual chessmen

General aspects: position, moves, power, value

.142 Pawns

.143 Rooks (Castles)

.144 Knights

.145 Bishops

.146 Queen

.147 King

.15 Collections of games

.152 Master matches

Class master matches by individual players in 794.159

.157 Tournaments and championships

Class tournaments and championships of individual players in 794.159

.159 Games, matches, tournaments, championships of individual players

.17 Special forms of chess

Examples: blind play, simultaneous play, living chess; use of nonelectronic mechanical chess players

.172 Electronic chess  Computer chess

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 794.172 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital microcomputers 794.172416, but use of digital computers 794.172 (not 794.1724)

.18 Variants of chess

Examples: Chinese (chong-kie), Japanese (shogi), three-dimensional chess, fairy chess, hexagonal chess

.2 Checkers (Draughts)

Use of this number for other board games discontinued; class in 794
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| [.22]   | Checkers (Draughts)  
Number discontinued; class in 794.2 |
| .3      | Darts |
| .6      | Bowling  
*See also 796.315 for lawn bowling* |
| .7      | Ball games  
Class athletic ball games in 796.3  
*For bowling, see 794.6* |
| .72     | Billiards  
*For pool, see 794.73* |
| .73     | Pool (Pocket billiards) |
| .735    | Snooker |
| .75     | Pinball games [*formerly 795.2*] |
| .8      | Electronic games  
**Computer games**  
Class computerized forms of a specific indoor game or amusement with the game in 793–795, using notation 0285 from Table 1, e.g., computerized checkers 794.20285 |
| [.802 85] | Data processing  
Computer applications  
*Do not use; class in 794.81* |
| .81     | Data processing  
Computer applications  
Unless it is redundant, add to base number 794.81 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., programs for digital microcomputers 794.81536, but use of digital computers 794.81 (not 794.814)  
Class data processing for specific genres of computer games in 794.82, for computerized athletic and outdoor sports and games in 794.86–794.89 |
| .82     | Specific genres of computer games  
Class computerized war games (battle games) in 793.920285; computerized adventure, fantasy, mystery games in 793.932; computerized athletic and outdoor sports and games in 794.86–794.89  
*See Manual at 794.82* |
| .822    | Arcade games  
Unless it is redundant, add to base number 794.822 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., programs for digital microcomputers 794.822536, but use of digital computers 794.822 (not 794.8224) |
| .86–.89 | Computerized athletic and outdoor sports and games  
Add to base number 794.8 the numbers following 79 in 796–799, e.g., computerized baseball 794.86357 |
**795**  
Games of chance

Class here gambling

Class gambling on a specific activity with the activity, e.g., on horse racing 798.401

*See also 364.172 for gambling as a crime*

.01  
Theory

Including betting systems, probabilities of winning

*See also 519.2 for statistical probability in games of chance*

.1  
Games with dice

.12  
Craps

.15  
Backgammon

.2  
Wheel and top games

Examples: roulette, slot machines

Pinball games relocated to 794.75

.3  
Games dependent on drawing numbers or counters

Examples: bingo, dominoes, mah-jongg

.4  
Card games

.41  
Games based chiefly on skill

Example: cribbage

.412  
Poker

.413  
Whist and bridge whist

.414  
Auction bridge

.415  
Contract bridge

Class here comprehensive works on bridge

*For bridge whist, see 795.413; auction bridge, 795.414*

.415 2  
Bidding

.415 3  
Play of the hand

.415 4  
Scoring systems

.415 8  
Collections of games and matches

.416  
Pinochle

.418  
Rummy and its variants

Examples: canasta, samba, bolivia

.42  
Games based chiefly on chance

Examples: baccarat, faro, twenty-one (blackjack)
795  Recreational and performing arts  795

.43  Games and recreations based on position and skill

   Examples: solitaire, patience

.438  Card tricks

796  Athletic and outdoor sports and games

For aquatic and air sports, see 797; equestrian sports and animal racing, 798; fishing, hunting, shooting, 799

See Manual at 613.71 vs. 646.75, 796; 796

SUMMARY

796.01-.09  Standard subdivisions
   .1  Miscellaneous games
   .2  Activities and games requiring equipment
   .3  Ball games
   .4  Weight lifting, track and field, gymnastics
   .5  Outdoor life
   .6  Cycling and related activities
   .7  Driving motor vehicles
   .8  Combat sports
   .9  Ice and snow sports

.01  Philosophy and theory

.019  Activities and programs for specific classes of people

   Add to base number 796.019 the numbers following 790.19 in 790.191-790.196, e.g., sports for girls 796.0194

   Do not use for psychological principles; class in 796.01

.06  Organizations, facilities, management

.068  Facilities

   Class here astrodomes, field houses, playgrounds, stadiums

   Add to base number 796.068 notation 1-9 from Table 2, e.g., playgrounds of London 796.068421

   Do not use for management; class in 796.069

.069  Management

   Add to base number 796.069 the numbers following —068 in notation 0681-0688 from Table 1, e.g., financial management 796.0691

.07  Study and teaching

.077  Coaching

   Do not use for programmed texts; class in 796.07

.08  History and description of sports and games with respect to groups of persons

   Class activities and programs for specific classes of people in 796.019
.1 Miscellaneous games
   Not provided for elsewhere

.13 Singing and dancing games

.14 Active games
   Examples: leapfrog, hide-and-seek, puss in corner, prisoner’s base
   
   For activities and games requiring equipment, see 796.2

.15 Play with kites, remote-controlled devices, similar devices
   Example: flying model airplanes
   
   See also 790.133 for play with mechanical and scientific toys

.2 Activities and games requiring equipment
   Not provided for elsewhere
   Examples: flying discs (Frisbees®), marbles, Yo-Yos®

.21 Roller skating
   Including skateboarding

.24 Pitching games
   Examples: quoits, horseshoes

.3 Ball games
   SUMMARY

796.31 Ball thrown or hit by hand
   .32 Inflated ball thrown or hit by hand
   .33 Inflated ball driven by foot
   .34 Racket games
   .35 Ball driven by club, mallet, bat

.31 Ball thrown or hit by hand

.312 Handball

.315 Lawn bowling
   
   See also 794.6 for indoor bowling

.32 Inflated ball thrown or hit by hand
   Example: netball

.323 Basketball

.323 01-.323 09 Standard subdivisions
   Notation from Table 1 as modified under
   796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., basketball courts 796.323068

.323 2 Strategy and tactics

.323 3 Refereeing
Specific types of basketball
Class here games [formerly 796.3237]
Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3232, refereeing of specific types of basketball in 796.3233

Precollege basketball
College basketball
Professional and semiprofessional basketball

Games
Relocated to 796.3236

Variants
Example: wheelchair basketball

Volleyball

Inflated ball driven by foot
Example: pushball

SUMMARY

796.332 American football
.333 Rugby Union rugby
.334 Soccer (Association football)
.335 Canadian football
.336 Australian-rules football

American football

Miscellany

Handbooks and guides
Official rules
Spectators' guides
Apparatus, equipment, materials
Examples: balls, goal posts
Class technique and procedures in 796.3322

Organizations, facilities, management
Examples: clubs, leagues

Grounds and their layout
Add to base number 796.332068 notations 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., football fields of Washington, D.C. 796.332068753
Do not use for management; class in 796.332069
Management

Add to base number 796.332069 the numbers following —068 in notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., financial management 796.3320691

Study and teaching

Coaching

Do not use for programmed texts; class in 796.33207

Competitions and awards [formerly 796.3327]

Strategy and tactics

Formations

Examples: T, split T, spread, single wingback

Line play

Backfield play

Passing

Blocking and tackling

Kicking

Refereeing and umpiring

Specific types of American football

Class here games [formerly 796.3327]

Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3322, refereeing and umpiring of specific types of American football in 796.3323

Precollege football

College football

Example: bowl games

See also 796.332648 for Super Bowl

Professional and semiprofessional football

Super Bowl

Games relocated to 796.3326, competitions and awards to 796.332079

Variants

Examples: six-man football, touch football

Rugby Union rugby

Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., official rules 796.33302022
.333 2  Strategy and tactics
.333 23  Forward play
    Including scrummaging, line-outs
.333 24  Halfback play
.333 25  Three-quarter play
.333 26  Back play
.333 3  Refereeing and umpiring
.333 6  Specific types of rugby
    Class here games [formerly 796.3337]
    Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3332, refereeing
    and umpiring of specific types of rugby in 796.3333
.333 62  Club
    Including college and university
.333 63  County
.333 64  Tours
.333 65  International
[.333 7]  Games
    Relocated to 796.3336
.333 8  Variants
    Example: league rugby
.334  Soccer (Association football)
.334 01-.334 09  Standard subdivisions
    Notation from Table 1 as modified under
    796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., equipment 796.334028
.334 2  Strategy and tactics
.334 22  Formations
.334 23  Forward play
.334 24  Halfback play
.334 25  Back play
.334 26  Goalkeeping
.334 3  Refereeing and umpiring
.334 6  Specific types of soccer
    Class here games [formerly 796.3347]
    Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3342, refereeing
    and umpiring of specific types of soccer in 796.3343
.334 62  Amateur soccer
.334 63 League soccer
.334 64 Cup competition

*For World Cup competition, see 796.334668*

.334 66 International
.334 668 World Cup competition

[.334 7] Games
Relocated to 796.3346

.334 8 Variants

.335 Canadian football

.335 01–.335 09 Standard subdivisions
Notation from Table 1 as modified under
796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., coaching 796.335077

.335 2 Strategy and tactics
.335 3 Refereeing and umpiring

.335 6 Specific types of Canadian football
Class here games [formerly 796.3357]
Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3352, refereeing
and umpiring of specific types of Canadian football in 796.3353

.335 62 Precollege Canadian football
.335 63 College Canadian football
.335 64 Professional and semiprofessional Canadian football
.335 648 Grey Cup

[.335 7] Games
Relocated to 796.3356

.335 8 Variants
Example: touch football

.336 Australian-rules football

.34 Racket games
Examples: court tennis (royal tennis), paddle tennis

.342 Tennis (Lawn tennis)

.342 01–.342 09 Standard subdivisions
Notation from Table 1 as modified under
796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., layout of tennis courts
796.342068

.342 2 Strategy and tactics
Recreational and performing arts

796

.342 21 Service
.342 22 Forehand
.342 23 Backhand
.342 27 Singles
.342 28 Doubles
.342 3 Refereeing
.343 Rackets and squash
.345 Badminton
.346 Table tennis
.347 Lacrosse
.35 Ball driven by club, mallet, bat

SUMMARY

796.352 Golf
.353 Polo
.354 Croquet
.355 Field hockey
.357 Baseball
.358 Cricket

.352 Golf

.352 01-.352 09 Standard subdivisions
    Notation from Table 1 as modified under
    796.3320202-796.332077, e.g., official rules 796.35202022

.352 2 Variants
    Example: miniature golf

.352 3 Tactics of play
    Class here grip, swing, adapting to specific golf courses

.352 32 Play with woods
.352 33 Play with distance irons
    Class here comprehensive works on play with irons
    For play with chipping or pitching irons, see 796.35234

.352 34 Play with chipping or pitching irons
.352 35 Putting
.352 4 Refereeing
.352 6 Specific types of golf
   Class here games and matches [formerly 796.3527]
   Class tactics of play regardless of type in 796.3523, refereeing of
   specific types of golf in 796.3524
.352 62 Amateur golf
   Class open games and matches in 796.35266
.352 64 Professional golf
   Class open games and matches in 796.35266
.352 66 Open games and matches
   Examples: British Open, Masters Tournament

[.352 7] Games and matches
   Relocated to 796.3526

.353 Polo
.354 Croquet
.355 Field hockey
   Including indoor hockey
   See also 796.962 for ice hockey

.357 Baseball

.357 01-.357 09 Standard subdivisions
   Notation from Table 1 as modified under
   796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., baseball leagues 796.35706

.357 2 Strategy and tactics
.357 22 Pitching
.357 23 Catching
.357 24 Infield play
   Class here comprehensive works on fielding
   For outfield play, see 796.35725

.357 25 Outfield play
.357 26 Batting
.357 27 Base running
.357 3 Umpiring

.357 6 Specific types of baseball
   Class here games [formerly 796.3577]
   Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3572, umpiring of
   specific types of baseball in 796.3573
.357 62 Precollege baseball
   Including sandlot baseball
   Class here Little league
.357 63 College baseball
.357 64 Professional and semiprofessional baseball
.357 646 World series games
.357 648 All-star games
[.357 7] Games
   Relocated to 796.3576
.357 8 Variants
   Examples: softball, indoor baseball
.358 Cricket
.358 01-.358 09 Standard subdivisions
   Notation from Table 1 as modified under
   796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., equipment 796.358028
.358 2 Strategy and tactics
.358 22 Bowling
.358 23 Fielding
.358 24 Wicketkeeping
.358 26 Batting
.358 3 Umpiring
.358 6 Specific types of cricket
   Class here matches [formerly 796.3587]
   Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3582, umpiring of
   specific types of cricket in 796.3583
.358 62 Amateur cricket
   Including school, college and university
.358 63 County
.358 65 International
[.358 7] Matches
   Relocated to 796.3586
.358 8 Variants
   Example: single-wicket cricket
.4  Weight lifting, track and field, gymnastics

Exercise relocated to 613.71

.406  Organizations, facilities, management

.406 8  Gymnasiums and stadiums

Add to base number 796.4068 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
gymnasiums of Japan 796.406852

Do not use for management; class in 796.4069

.406 9  Management

Add to base number 796.4069 the numbers following —068 in
notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., financial management
796.40691

.407  Study and teaching

.407 7  Coaching

Do not use for programmed texts; class in 796.407

.41  Weight lifting

Weight lifting for fitness relocated to 613.713; calisthenics, gymnastic
exercises to 613.714; sports gymnastics to 796.44

.42  Track and field

Class here running

For field events, see 796.43

See also 613.7172 for running as an exercise

.420 6  Organizations, facilities, management

.420 68  Athletic fields

Add to base number 796.42068 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
athletic fields of Russia 796.4206847

Do not use for management; class in 796.42069

.420 69  Management

Add to base number 796.42069 the numbers following —068 in
notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., personnel management
796.420693

.422  Sprints [formerly 796.426]

Class sprint relays in 796.427

.423  Middle-distance races

Class middle-distance relay races in 796.427

.424  Distance races

Class distance relay races in 796.427

For marathon, see 796.425; cross country races, 796.428
.425 Marathon
Class here comprehensive works on non-track races
For cross country races, see 796.427; race walking, 796.429

.426 Hurdles and steeplechase
Use of this number for comprehensive works on running discontinued; class in 796.42
Sprints relocated to 796.422
Class hurdle and steeplechase relay races in 796.427

.427 Relay races

.428 Cross-country races

.429 Race walking (Heel-and-toe races)

.43 Jumping, vaulting, throwing
Class here field events

.432 Jumping
Contains long jump (broad jump), triple jump (hop, step, and jump), high jump

.434 Pole vaulting
See also 796.44 for gymnastic vaulting

.435 Throwing
Examples: boomerang and discus throwing, javelin hurling, shot-putting
See also 796.24 for throwing games

.44 Sports gymnastics [formerly 796.41]
Examples: rhythmic gymnastics, use of horizontal and parallel bars, vaulting
For trapeze work, rope climbing, wire walking, see 796.46; acrobatics, tumbling, trampolining, contortion, 796.47
See also 613.714 for gymnastic exercises

.46 Trapeze work, rope climbing, wire walking
See also 791.34 for trapeze work and wire walking as circus acts

.47 Acrobatics, tumbling, trampolining, contortion
Including floor exercise
See also 791.34 for acrobatics as circus acts
.48 Olympic games

Arrange specific games chronologically

Class paralympics and special olympics in 796.0196, a specific activity with the subject, e.g., basketball 796.323, swimming 797.21

For winter Olympic games, see 796.98

.480 93-.480 99 Geographical treatment

Do not use for specific games; class in 796.48

.5 Outdoor life

Class a specific activity of outdoor life not provided for here with the activity, e.g., fishing 799.1

.51 Walking

Class here backpacking, hiking, orienteering

Walkers' guides that give only route details are classed here. Guides that also give description of things en route are classed in 914–919

For walking by kind of terrain, see 796.52

.52 Walking and exploring by kind of terrain

.522 Mountains, hills, rocks

Class here mountaineering

.522 3 Rock climbing

.525 Caves

Class here spelunking

See also 797.2 for cave swimming

.53 Beach activities

For aquatic sports, see 797.1–797.3

.54 Camping

Example: snow camping

.542 Kinds of camps

Class here camps operated for profit

Class activities in specific kinds of camps in 796.545

.542 2 Institutional camps

Examples: school, church, YMCA, scouts

Class institutional day camps in 796.5423

.542 3 Day camps
Recreational and performing arts

796.545 Activities
   Examples: woodcraft, campfires, games
   *For beach activities, see 796.53*

796.56 Dude ranching and farming

796.6 **Cycling and related activities**
   Use of wheeled vehicles not driven by motor or animal power
   Examples: land sailing, soapbox racing
   *For roller skating, see 796.21*

796.62 Racing
   Use of this number for soapbox racing discontinued; class in 796.6

796.64 Touring

796.7 **Driving motor vehicles**
   *For snowmobiling, see 796.94*

> 796.72–796.76 Driving for competition
   Class comprehensive works in 796.7

796.72 **Automobile racing**
   *See also 790.133 for toy car racing*

796.720 6 **Organizations, facilities, management**

796.720 68 **Race tracks and speedways**
   Add to base number 796.72068 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
   Indianapolis Motor Speedway 796.7206877252
   Do not use for management; class in 796.72069

796.720 69 **Management**
   Add to base number 796.72069 the numbers following —068 in
   notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., financial management
   796.720691

796.73 **Automobile rallies**

796.75 **Motorcycle and motor scooter racing**

796.756 **Motocross**

796.76 **Midget car racing (Karting)**

> 796.77–796.79 Driving for pleasure
   Class comprehensive works in 796.7
Driving sports cars for pleasure
Driving family cars for pleasure
Travel for pleasure by mobile home
Examples: camper, trailer

**Combat sports**

Class here martial arts
Class combat with animals in 791.8

Unarmed combat

*For boxing, see 796.83*

Wrestling

Including arm wrestling

Continental (Greco-Roman) wrestling
Freestyle (Catch-as-catch-can) wrestling
Sumo

Jujitsu and related martial arts forms

*See also 613.7148 for related therapeutic exercises*

Judo

Class here jujitsus
Karate
Aikido
Chinese forms    T’ai chi ch’üan

*For kempo and kung fu, see 796.8159*

Kempo and kung fu

Use of this number for other forms discontinued; class in 796.815

Boxing

Fencing

Including kendo, bojutsu
Class here sword fighting

**Ice and snow sports**

*For ice fishing, see 799.12*

*See also 796.54 for snow camping, 798.6 for horse-drawn sleighing*

Ice skating

Figure skating

Examples: ice dancing, pair skating
.914 Speed skating
.92 Snowshoeing
.93 Skiing
.932 Cross-country skiing
   Including biathlon
   Class here Nordic skiing, Nordic combination
   *For jumping, see 796.933*
.933 Jumping
.935 Alpine skiing
   Contains downhill, giant slalom, slalom
   Example: supergiant slalom
.937 Freestyle skiing
   Examples: ballet, mogul, trick skiing
.94 Snowmobiling
.95 Sledding and coasting
   Examples: bobsledding, lugeing, tobogganing
.96 Ice games
   Example: curling
.962 Ice hockey
   *See also 796.355 for field hockey*
.962 01-.962 09 Standard subdivisions
   Notation from Table 1 as modified under
   796.3320202-796.332077, e.g., equipment 796.962028
.962 2 Strategy and tactics
   Including skating, stickhandling, passing
.962 27 Goalkeeping
.962 3 Refereeing
.962 6 Specific types of ice hockey
   Class here games [formerly 796.9627]
   Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.9622
.962 62 Junior hockey
.962 63 College hockey
.962 64 Professional hockey
.962 648 Stanley Cup
.962 66 International hockey
    Class here specific tournaments

[.962 7] Games
    Relocated to 796.9626

.97 Iceboating

.98 Winter Olympic games
    Arrange specific games chronologically
    Class a specific activity with the activity, e.g., skating 796.91

.980 93–.980 99 Geographical treatment
    Do not use for specific games; class in 796.98

797 Aquatic and air sports
    Safety measures
    Class comprehensive works on water safety in aquatic sports in 797.200289

> 797.1–797.3 Aquatic sports
    Class comprehensive works in 797
    For fishing, see 799.1

.1 Boating

.12 With specific types of vessels
    Class seamanship for specific types of vessels in 623.882, boat racing with specific types of vessels in 797.14

.122 Canoeing

.123 Rowboating

.124 Sailboating
    See also 797.33 for sailboarding

.124 6 Yachting
    Class here comprehensive works on yachting
    Class motor yachting in 796.1256

.125 Motorboating

.125 6 Yachting

.129 Houseboating
    See also 643.2 for houseboats as dwellings
Boat racing and regattas

Standard subdivisions are added for any type of racing, e.g., yacht racing in Britain 791.140941

Other aquatic sports

Relocated to 797.3

Swimming and diving

Class here water parks

Use 797.2001-797.2009 for standard subdivisions

Water pageantry

See also 797.21 for synchronized swimming

Swimming

Example: synchronized swimming

For underwater swimming, see 797.23

Underwater swimming

Examples: deep-sea, skin, scuba diving

Springboard and precision diving

Water games

Example: water polo

Other aquatic sports [formerly 797.17]

Surfing (Surf riding)

Windsurfing (Boardsailing, Sailboarding)

Water skiing

Jet skiing

Air sports

Balloon flying

> 797.52-797.54 Flying motor-driven aircraft

Class comprehensive works in 797.5

Racing

Flying for pleasure

Stunt flying

Class here display aerobatics
Equestrian sports and animal racing

> 798.2–798.6 Equestrian sports

Class comprehensive works in 798, hunting with aid of horses in 799.23

*For polo, see* 796.353

.2 Horsemanship

*For horse racing, see* 798.4

*See Manual at* 798.2

.23 Riding

Class here training of both horse and rider, dressage

Class training of the horse alone in 636.1088

*For jumping, see* 798.25

[.230 74] Exhibitions

Do not use; class in 798.24

[.230 79] Competitions and awards

Do not use; class in 798.24

.24 Riding exhibitions and competitions

Example: three-day events

Class jumping in 798.25

.25 Jumping

.4 Horse racing    Flat racing

.400 1–.400 5 Standard subdivisions

.400 6 Organizations, facilities, management

.400 68 Race tracks

Add to base number 798.40068 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., race tracks of England 798.4006842

Do not use for management; class in 798.40069

.400 69 Management

Add to base number 798.40069 the numbers following —068 in notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., management of marketing 798.400698

.400 7–.400 9 Standard subdivisions
.401  Betting  
     Including pari-mutuel

[.43]  Flat racing  
     Number discontinued; class in 798.4

.45  Steeplechasing and hurdling

.46  Harness racing

.6  Driving and coaching  
     Including horse-drawn sleighing
     *For harness racing, see 798.46*

.8  Dog racing  
     Use of this number for racing animals other than horses and dogs discontinued; class in 798

799  Fishing, hunting, shooting  
     *See also 688.79 for the manufacture of both mass-produced and handcrafted equipment*

.1  Fishing  
     Class commercial and sport fishing in 639.2

.11  Freshwater fishing  
     Class fishing for specific kinds of freshwater fish in 799.17

>  799.12–799.14 Specific methods of fishing  
     Class comprehensive works in 799.1; specific methods of freshwater fishing in 799.11, of saltwater fishing in 799.16, of fishing for specific kinds of fish in 799.17

.12  Angling  
     Examples: still fishing, fly casting, bait casting, spinning, trolling, ice fishing
     *See also 688.7912 for making artificial flies*

.13  Net fishing  
     Example: seining

.14  Other methods of fishing  
     Example: spearfishing

.16  Saltwater fishing  
     Class fishing for specific kinds of saltwater fish in 799.17

[.160 916 3–.160 916 7]  In specific bodies of water  
     Do not use; class in 799.166
.166  In specific bodies of water

Add to base number 799.166 the numbers following 551.46 in 551.461–551.469, e.g., fishing in Gulf of Darien 799.16635

.17  Fishing for specific kinds of fish

Add to base number 799.17 the numbers following 597 in 597.2–597.5, e.g., trout fishing 799.1755

.2  Hunting

Class here comprehensive works on hunting and shooting sports

Class commercial and sport hunting in 639.1

For shooting other than game, see 799.3

.202  Miscellany

.202 8  Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

> 799.202 82–799.202 85 Ballistic devices in hunting and shooting

Class comprehensive works in 799.2028

.202 82  Blowpipes, boomerangs, spears, bolas, lassos, slings, nets
.202 83  Guns
.202 832  Rifles
.202 833  Pistols
.202 834  Shotguns
.202 85  Bows and arrows

Do not use for data processing or computers; class in 799.2028

[.209]  Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 799.29

> 799.21–799.23 Methods

Class comprehensive works in 799.2, methods of hunting specific kinds of animals in 799.24–799.27

.21  Shooting game

.213  With guns
.215  With bows and arrows
.23  Hunting with aid of animals
.232  With falcons
.234  With dogs
> 799.24–799.27 Hunting specific kinds of animals
   Class comprehensive works in 799.2
   .24   Birds

> 799.242–799.244 Of specific habitats
   Class comprehensive works in 799.24, birds of specific kinds regardless of habitat in 799.248
   .242   Land birds
   .243   Bay and shore birds
   .244   Waterfowl
   .248   Specific kinds
   Add to base number 799.248 the numbers following 598 in 598.3–598.9, e.g., ducks 799.24841; however, class comprehensive works on hunting bay and shore birds in 799.243
   .25   Small game hunting
      For birds, see 799.24
   .254–.259   Specific kinds
      Add to base number 799.25 the numbers following 59 in 594–599, e.g., rabbits 799.259322
   .26   Big game hunting
      Class here comprehensive works on hunting big game mammals
      For specific kinds, see 799.27
   .27   Specific kinds of big game
      For birds, see 799.24
   .271–.278   Mammals
      Add to base number 799.27 the numbers following 599 in 599.1–599.8, e.g., elephants 799.2761
      Class comprehensive works in 799.26
   .279   Reptiles
      Add to base number 799.279 the numbers following 597.9 in 597.92–597.98, e.g., crocodiles 799.2798
   .29   Historical, geographical, persons treatment
      Add to base number 799.29 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., hunting in Germany 799.2943
.3 Shooting other than game

For ballistic devices, see 799.20282–799.20285

.31 With guns

.312 At stationary targets

For biathlon, see 796.932

.313 At moving targets

Examples: trapshooting, skeet shooting

.32 With bow and arrow (Archery)
800 Literature (Belles-lettres) and rhetoric

Class here works of literature, works about literature
(Option: Class belletristic essays, speeches, letters, satire, humor, quotations, epigrams, anecdotes, diaries, journals, reminiscences on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., essays on architecture 720)

After general topics (800–809) the basic arrangement is literature by language, then literature of each language by form, then each form by historical period; however, miscellaneous writings are arranged first by historical period, then by form. More detailed instructions are given at the beginning of Table 3

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of precedence, e.g., collections of drama written in poetry from more than one literature 808.82 (not 808.81)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drama</th>
<th>Poetry</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class epigrams in verse with miscellaneous writings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiction</td>
<td>Essays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speeches</td>
<td>Letters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous writings</td>
<td>Satire and humor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class here collections of satire and humor in two or more literary forms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Option: Give precedence to satire and humor over all other forms)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Class interdisciplinary works on language and literature in 400, interdisciplinary works on the arts in 700, folk literature in 398.2; librettos, poems, words written to be sung or recited with music in 780

See Manual at 800; 800 vs. 398.2; 800 vs. 591, 636, 398.245; 800 vs. 741.6

801 Philosophy and theory

.3 Value, influence, effect
.9 Nature and character
.92 Psychology
    Including literature as a product of imagination
.93 Aesthetics
.95 Criticism
   Class here theory, technique, history of literary criticism
   Class works of critical appraisal in 809

> 801.951–801.957 Criticism of specific literary forms
   Observe table of precedence under 800
   Class comprehensive works in 801.95, textual criticism of specific literary forms in 801.959

   .951 Poetry
   .952 Drama
   .953 Fiction
   .954 Essays
   .955 Speeches
   .956 Letters
   .957 Satire and humor
       Class here parody
   .959 Textual criticism

802 Miscellany
803 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances
[804] [Unassigned]
       Most recently used in Edition 16

805 Serial publications
   Class collections of literary texts in serial form in 808.80005, history, description, critical appraisal in serial form in 809.005

806 Organizations
807 Education, research, related topics
808 Rhetoric and collections of literary texts from more than one literature

Rhetoric: the effective use of language

Class here composition, literary plagiarism

Do not use for history and description of literature and rhetoric with respect to kinds of persons; class history and description of rhetoric with respect to kinds of persons in 808.008, collections of literary texts from more than one literature with respect to kinds of persons in 808.89

Class general treatment of standard usage of language (prescriptive linguistics) in 418; treatment of standard usage in a specific language with the specific language, using notation 8 from Table 4, e.g., English usage 428; theory, technique, history of literary criticism in 801.95

See Manual at 808.001–808.7 vs. 070.52

SUMMARY

808.001-.009 Standard subdivisions of rhetoric
+.02-.06 General topics in rhetoric
+.1 Rhetoric of poetry
+.2 Rhetoric of drama
+.3 Rhetoric of fiction
+.4 Rhetoric of essays
+.5 Rhetoric of speech
+.6 Rhetoric of letters
+.7 Rhetoric of satire and humor
+.8 Collections of literary texts from more than one literature

.001-.009 Standard subdivisions of rhetoric

> 808.02–808.06 General topics in rhetoric

Class comprehensive works in 808

.02 Authorship and editorial techniques

Writing in publishable form

Class here comprehensive works on preparation and submission of manuscripts

Authorship and editorial techniques for specific kinds of composition relocated to 808.06

Class submission of manuscripts to agents and publishers in 070.52

See also 001.4 for research

See Manual at 808.001–808.7 vs. 070.52

[.025] Writing for publication

Number discontinued; class in 808.02
.027 Editorial techniques
   Preparation of manuscripts in publishable form
   Class here style manuals

.04 Rhetoric in specific languages
   Class preparation of manuscripts regardless of language in 808.02, rhetoric
   of specific kinds of composition regardless of language in 808.06

.042 In English

.042 7 Study of rhetoric through critical reading
   Including collections and single works for critical reading
   See Manual at 808.0427

[.042 75] Literature for learning rhetoric
   Number discontinued; class in 808.0427

.043-.049 In other languages
   Add to base number 808.04 notation 3–9 from Table 6, e.g., German
   rhetoric 808.0431; then to the result add the numbers following 808.042
   in 808.04201–808.0427, e.g., study of German rhetoric through critical
   reading 808.04317

.06 Rhetoric of specific kinds of composition
   Class here authorship and editorial techniques for specific kinds of
   composition [formerly 808.02]
   Class rhetoric in specific literary forms in 808.1–808.7

.062 Abstracts and summaries

.066 Professional, technical, expository literature
   Add to base number 808.066 three-digit numbers 001–999 (but no
   standard subdivisions), e.g., technical writing 808.0666, writing of
   technical dictionaries 808.0666 (not 808.066603), writing on bridge
   engineering 808.066624 (not 808.0666242); then, for writing in a foreign
   language, add 0 and to the result add notation 2–9 from Table 6, e.g.,
   technical writing in Spanish for speakers of another language
   808.0666061
   Editorial mechanics in journalistic writing [formerly 070.415] are classed
   in 808.06607, style manuals for business writing in 808.06665 [formerly
   651.7402], style of business letters in 808.066651 [formerly 651.75]
   For expository writing for children, see 808.0688; abstracts and
   summaries, 808.062
   See Manual at 651.7 vs. 808.06665, 658.45

.067 Adult easy literature
   Works for adults learning to read or for adult beginners in foreign
   languages

646
.068  Children’s literature
.068 1-.068 7  Specific literary forms
      Add to base number 808.068 the numbers following 808 in
      808.1-808.7, e.g., drama 808.0682
.068 8  Expository writing

>  808.1–808.7 Rhetoric in specific literary forms

Observe table of precedence under 800

Class comprehensive works in 808, specific forms for children in
808.0681–808.0687

.1  Rhetoric of poetry

Class here prosody

Add to base number 808.1 the numbers following —10 in notation 102–108
from Table 3–B, e.g., lyric poetry 808.14

See Manual at 808.1 vs. 414.6

.2  Rhetoric of drama

Add to base number 808.2 the numbers following —20 in notation 202–205
from Table 3–B, e.g., one-act plays 808.241

.3  Rhetoric of fiction

Class here the rhetoric of novelettes and novels

Add to base number 808.3 the numbers following —30 in notation 301–308
from Table 3–B, e.g., science fiction 808.38762

.4  Rhetoric of essays

.5  Rhetoric of speech

Art or technique of oral expression

Class here voice, expression, gesture

.51  Public speaking (Oratory)

Examples: after-dinner, platform, radio speaking; making speeches and
toasts for special occasions

For debating and public discussion, see 808.53; preaching, 251

.53  Debating and public discussion

.54  Recitation

Class here oral interpretation

Class choral speaking in 808.55

.543  Storytelling

.545  Reading aloud

.55  Choral speaking
.56 Conversation
[.59] Listening

Number discontinued because without meaning in context

.6 Rhetoric of letters

.7 Rhetoric of satire and humor

Class here rhetoric of parody

.8 Collections of literary texts from more than one literature

By more than one author

Use of this number for general works consisting equally of literary texts and history, description, critical appraisal of literature discontinued; class in 800

Works consisting equally of literary texts and history, description, critical appraisal of literature are classed in subdivisions of 808.8 if limited to specific topics found in those subdivisions, e.g., texts and criticism of literature of the 18th century 808.80033, texts and criticism of drama 808.82

Class two or more literatures in the same language with the literature of that language

See Manual at 808.8

SUMMARY

808.800 01–800 07 Standard subdivisions
.800 1–800 5 Collections from specific periods
.801–803 Collections displaying specific features

.81 Collections of poetry
.82 Collections of drama
.83 Collections of fiction
.84 Collections of essays
.85 Collections of speeches
.86 Collections of letters
.87 Collections of satire and humor
.88 Collections of miscellaneous writings
.89 Collections for and by specific kinds of persons

.800 01–800 07 Standard subdivisions

[.800 08] History and description with respect to kinds of persons

Do not use; class in 808.89

[.800 09] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 809

.800 1–800 5 Collections from specific periods

Add to base number 808.800 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., collections of 18th century literature 808.80033
808.81–808.88 Collections in specific forms

Aside from additions, changes, deletions, exceptions shown under specific entries, add to the notation for each term identified by * as follows:

001–008 Standard subdivisions
009 Geographical treatment
   Class historical periods in 01–05; persons treatment in the number for the specific form, without adding notation from Table 1
01–05 Historical periods
   Add to 0 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., 18th century 033

Observe the table of precedence under 800

Class comprehensive works in 808.8

.81 *Collections of poetry

.812–.818 Specific kinds
   Add to base number 808.81 the numbers following —10 in notation 102–108 from Table 3–B, e.g., collections of narrative poetry 808.813

.819 Poetry displaying specific features
   Add to base number 808.819 notation 1–3 from Table 3–C, e.g.,
   collections of poetry about animals 808.81936
   Class poetry of specific kinds regardless of feature in 808.812–808.818

.82 *Collections of drama

.822–.825 Specific media, scopes, kinds
   Add to base number 808.82 the numbers following —20 in notation 202–205 from Table 3–B, e.g., collections of tragedies 808.82512

.829 Drama displaying specific features
   Add to base number 808.829 notation 1–3 from Table 3–C, e.g.,
   collections of plays about Abraham Lincoln 808.829351
   Class drama of specific media, scopes, kinds regardless of feature in 808.822–808.825

.83 *Collections of fiction

.831–.838 Specific scopes and types
   Add to base number 808.83 the numbers following —30 in notation 3^1–308 from Table 3–B, e.g., collections of love stories 808.8385

*Add as instructed under 808.81–808.88
.839 Fiction displaying specific features

Add to base number 808.839 notation 1–3 from Table 3–C, e.g.,
collections of fiction about animals 808.83936

Class fiction of specific scopes and types regardless of feature in
808.831–808.838

.84 *Collections of essays

.849 Essays displaying specific features

Add to base number 808.849 notation 1–3 from Table 3–C, e.g.,
collections of descriptive essays 808.84922

.85 *Collections of speeches

.851–.856 Specific kinds

Add to base number 808.85 the numbers following —50 in notation
501–506 from Table 3–B, e.g., debates 808.853

.859 Speeches displaying specific features

Add to base number 808.859 notation 1–3 from Table 3–C, e.g.,
collections of descriptive speeches 808.85922

Class speeches of specific kinds regardless of feature in
808.851–808.856

.86 *Collections of letters

.869 Letters displaying specific features

Add to base number 808.869 notation 1–3 from Table 3–C, e.g.,
collections of letters displaying classicism 808.869142

.87 *Collections of satire and humor

.879 Satire and humor displaying specific features

Add to base number 808.879 notation 1–3 from Table 3–C, e.g.,
collections of literary humor about holidays 808.87933

.88 *Collections of miscellaneous writings

.882 Jokes [formerly 808.887], quotations, epigrams, anecdotes, graffiti

.883 Diaries, journals, notebooks, reminiscences

.887 Works without identifiable form

Class here experimental and nonformalized works

Jokes relocated to 808.882

.888 Prose literature

Class a specific form of prose literature with the form, e.g., essays
808.84; prose without identifiable form in 808.887

*Add as instructed under 808.81–808.88
.89 Collections for and by specific kinds of persons
Add to base number 808.89 notation 8–9 from Table 3–C, e.g., collections of literature in more than one language by persons of African descent 808.89896

Class literature in specific forms for and by specific kinds of persons in 808.81–808.88, literature displaying specific features for and by specific kinds of persons in 808.801–808.803, literatures of specific languages for and by specific kinds of persons in 810–890

809 History, description, critical appraisal of more than one literature
Treating works by more than one author
Class here collected biography
Class theory, technique, history of literary criticism in 801.95; two or more literatures in the same language with the literature of that language

See Manual at 808.8

.001–.007 Standard subdivisions
[.008] History and description with respect to kinds of persons

Do not use; class in 809.8

[.009] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class persons in 809, historical periods in 809.01–809.05, geographical treatment in 809.89

.01–.05 Literature from specific periods
Add to base number 809.0 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of 18th century literature 809.033

.1–.7 Literature in specific forms
Add to base number 809 the numbers following 808.8 in 808.81–808.87, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of narrative poetry 809.13, of poetry about animals 809.136
**.8 Literature for and by specific kinds of persons**

Class here history and description of literature with respect to kinds of persons

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of precedence, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of literature for or by American Roman Catholic girls 809.892827 (not 809.813, 809.89222, or 809.8973)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Persons of specific age groups</td>
<td>809.89282-.89285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persons of specific sexes</td>
<td>809.89286-.89287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persons occupied with geography, history, related disciplines</td>
<td>809.8929</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persons of other specific occupational and miscellaneous characteristics</td>
<td>809.89204-.89279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persons of specific racial, ethnic, national groups</td>
<td>809.801-.889</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persons resident in specific continents, countries, localities</td>
<td>809.893-.899</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persons resident in specific regions</td>
<td>809.891</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Class literature in specific forms for and by specific kinds of persons in 809.1–809.7, literature displaying specific features for and by specific kinds of persons in 809.9, literatures of specific languages for and by specific kinds of persons in 810–890

---

> 809.801–809.889 Literature for and by specific racial, ethnic, national groups

Class comprehensive works in 809.8

.801–.879 For and by general and larger Western racial, ethnic, national groups

Add to base number 809.8 notation 01–79 from Table 5, e.g., North Americans 809.81

.88 For and by other racial, ethnic, national groups

.881 Ancient Greeks

.888 Modern Greeks and Cypriots

.889 Other

Add to base number 809.889 the numbers following —9 in notation 91–99 from Table 5, e.g., Jewish literature 809.88924, African literature 809.8896

.89 For and by other specific kinds of persons

Add to base number 809.89 the numbers following —9 in notation 91–99 from Table 3–C, e.g., literature in more than one language by painters 809.89275, by residents of Canada 809.8971
.9 Literature displaying specific features

Class literature in specific forms regardless of feature in 809.1–809.7

.91–.92 Displaying specific qualities and elements

Add to base number 809.9 notation 1–2 from Table 3–C, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of literature displaying tragedy and horror 809.916

Class literature dealing with specific themes and subjects regardless of quality or element displayed in 809.933

.93 Displaying other aspects

.933 Dealing with specific themes and subjects

Add to base number 809.93 notation 32–38 from Table 3–C, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of literature dealing with marriage 809.93354

.935 Emphasizing subjects

Literary appraisal of works not basically belles-lettres

Add to base number 809.935 notation 001–999, e.g., religious works as literature 809.9352, biography and autobiography as literature 809.93592
810–890 Literatures of specific languages

Literature is classed by the language in which originally written, regardless of country

(Optional: Class translations into a language requiring local emphasis with the literature of that language)

Unless there is a specific provision for a dialect, literature in a dialect is classed with the literature of the basic language

Literature in a pidgin or creole is classed with the source language from which more of its vocabulary comes than from its other source language(s)

(Optional: For any group of literatures, add 04 and then add notation 01–89 from Table 3–B, e.g., collections of lyric poetry written in African languages 896.0410408)

(Optional: To give preferred treatment to, or make available more and shorter numbers for the classification of, literature of any specific language that it is desired to emphasize, use one of the following options:

(Optional A: Class in 810, where full instructions appear

(Optional B: Give preferred treatment by placing before 810 through use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., literature of Arabic language 8A0, for which the base number is 8A

(Optional C: Where two or more countries share the same language, either [1] use initial letters to distinguish the separate countries, or [2] use the special number designated for literatures of those countries that are not preferred. Full instructions appear under 810, 819, 820, 828.99, 840.1–848.9, 848.99, 860.1–868.9, 868.99, 869, 869.899)

Under each literature identified by *, add to designated base number notation 1–8 from Table 3–A for works by or about individual authors, notation 01–89 from Table 3–B for works by or about more than one author. If the base number is not identified in a note, it is the number given for the literature, e.g., for Dutch 839.31. Full instructions for building numbers are given at the start of Table 3.

The numbers used in this schedule for literatures of individual languages do not necessarily correspond exactly with those in 420–490 or with the notation in Table 6. Use notation from Table 6 only when so instructed, e.g., at 899.

Class comprehensive works in 800.

810 *American literature in English

English-language literature of Western Hemisphere and Hawaii

Base number: 81

Special interpretations of and exceptions to notation from Table 3 for use with American literature in English:

810.8099 Collections for and by persons resident in Hawaii
810.999 History, description, critical appraisal of literature for and by persons resident in Hawaii

(continued)
**American literature in English (continued)**

Assign period numbers for the United States (including Puerto Rico) and Canada only.

**PERIOD TABLES FOR AMERICAN LITERATURE IN ENGLISH**

**For Canada**

- 3 Colonial period to 1867
- 4 1867–1900
- 5 1900–
- 52 1900–1945
- 54 1945–

**For United States**

- 1 Colonial period, 1607–1776
- 2 1776–1830
- 3 1830–1861
  - Class here 19th century
  - Class 1800–1830 in 2, 1861–1899 in 4
- 4 1861–1900
- 5 1900–
- 52 1900–1945
- 54 1945–

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific literature other than American literature in English, e.g., Afrikaans literature, class it here; in that case class American literature in English in 820. Other options are described under 810–890)

(Option: Distinguish literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of Canada C810, of Jamaica J810, of United States U810; or class literatures not requiring local emphasis in 819. If literatures are identified by one of these methods, assign period numbers for Middle and South American literature as well as for United States and Canadian literature. Other options are described under 810–890)

Class comprehensive works on American literature in English and English literature in 820

**811** ‡Poetry

**812** ‡Drama

**813** ‡Fiction

**814** ‡Essays

**815** ‡Speeches

**816** ‡Letters

**817** ‡Satire and humor

**818** ‡Miscellaneous writings

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
‡Add as instructed under 810 and at the beginning of Table 3
American literatures in English not requiring local emphasis

(Optional number and subdivisions; prefer 810–818 for all American literatures in English. Other options are described under 810–890)

Class here English-language literatures of specific American countries other than the country requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries emphasizing United States literature class here Canadian literature, and libraries emphasizing Canadian literature class here United States literature.

(.1) *†Canada

(.3) *†United States

(.5) *†Mexico

(.7) †Central America

(.700 1–.708 9) †Subdivisions of Central American literature in English

Add to base number 819.70 as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., collections of Central American dramatic poetry in English 819.7010208

(.71–.77) †Specific countries

Add to 819.7 the numbers following —728 in notation 7281–7287 from Table 2, e.g., English-language literature of Costa Rica 819.76; then to the base number thus derived add as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., collections of English-language literature of Costa Rica displaying naturalism 819.7608012

(.8) †West Indies (Antilles) and Bermuda

(.800 1–.808 9) †Subdivisions of English-language literatures of the West Indies (Antilles) and Bermuda

Add to base number 819.80 as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., collections of English-language literature of the West Indies for children 819.800809282

(.81) *†Cuba

(.82) *†Jamaica

(.83) *†Dominican Republic

(.84) *†Haiti

(.85) *†Puerto Rico

(.86) *†Bahama Islands

(.87) *†Leeward Islands

(.88) *†Windward and other southern islands

(.89) *†Bermuda

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
†(Optional number; prefer 810–818)
American literature in English

(.9) †South America

(.900 1-.908) †Subdivisions of English-language literatures of South America

Add to base number 819.90 as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., collections of English-language one-act plays from South America 819.90204108

(.91-.99) †Specific countries

Add to 819.9 the numbers following —8 in notation 81–89 from Table 2, e.g., English-language literature of Brazil 819.91; then add further as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., history and critical appraisal of English-language literature of Brazil 819.9109

820 *English and Old English (Anglo-Saxon) literatures

Base number for English: 82

Assign period numbers for Great Britain and Ireland only

PERIOD TABLES FOR ENGLISH
For Great Britain and Ireland

1 Early English period, 1066–1400
   Class here medieval period
2 Pre-Elizabethan period, 1400–1558
3 Elizabethan period, 1558–1625
   Including Jacobean period
   Class here 16th century, Renaissance period
   Class 1500–1558, the pre-Elizabethan part of the Renaissance in 2
4 Post-Elizabethan period, 1625–1702
   Including Caroline and Restoration periods
5 Queen Anne period, 1702–1745
   Class here 18th century
   Class 1700–1702 in 4, 1745–1799 in 6
6 1745–1800
7 1800–1837
   Class here romantic period
8 Victorian period, 1837–1900
   Class here 19th century
   Class 1800–1837 in 7
9 1900–
91 1900–2000
912 1900–1945
914 1945–

(Option: Distinguish English-language literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of England E820, of Ireland Ir820, of Scotland S820, of Wales W820, or of all British Isles B820, of Australia A820, of India In820; or class literatures not requiring local emphasis in 828.99. If literatures are identified by one of these methods, assign optional period numbers for literature of Ireland, Africa, Asia, Australia, and New Zealand. Other options are described under 810–890)

†(Optional number; prefer 810–818)
**820  *English and Old English (Anglo-Saxon) literatures (continued)***

(For Ireland)

1. Medieval and early modern to 1660
2. 1660–1800
3. 1800–1900
4. Irish literary revival, 1900–1945
5. 1945–

(For African countries other than South Africa)

1. To 1960
2. 1960–

(For Asian countries)

1. Early period to 1858
2. 1858–1947
3. 1947–

(For Australia)

1. Early period to 1890
2. 1890–1945
3. 1945–

(For New Zealand)

1. Early period to 1907
2. 1907–

(For South Africa)

1. To 1909
2. 1909–1961
3. 1961–

*For American literature in English, see 810*

**821  ‡English poetry**

**822  ‡English drama**

.3  *Elizabethan period, 1558–1625*

.33  William Shakespeare

(Option: Subarrange works about and by Shakespeare according to the following table, which may be adapted for use with any specific author:

A  Authorship controversies
   (Option: Class here bibliography; prefer 016.82233)
B  Biography
D  Critical appraisal
   Class critical appraisal of individual works in O-Z
E  Textual criticism
   Class textual criticism of individual works in O-Z
F  Sources, allusions, learning

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
‡Add as instructed under 820 and at the beginning of Table 3
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Societies, concordances, miscellany</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Quotations, condensations, adaptations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Complete works in English without notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Complete works in English with notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Complete works in translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Partial collections in English without notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Partial collections in English with notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Partial collections in translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;O–Z</td>
<td>Individual works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;O–R</td>
<td>Comedies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O1–2</td>
<td>All’s well that ends well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O3–4</td>
<td>As you like it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O5–6</td>
<td>The comedy of errors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O7–8</td>
<td>Love’s labour’s lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1–2</td>
<td>Measure for measure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3–4</td>
<td>The merchant of Venice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P5–6</td>
<td>The merry wives of Windsor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P7–8</td>
<td>A midsummer night’s dream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q1–2</td>
<td>Much ado about nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q3–4</td>
<td>The taming of the shrew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q5–6</td>
<td>The tempest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q7–8</td>
<td>Twelfth night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R1–2</td>
<td>The two gentlemen of Verona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R3–4</td>
<td>The winter’s tale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;S–V</td>
<td>Tragedies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S1–2</td>
<td>Antony and Cleopatra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S3–4</td>
<td>Coriolanus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S5–6</td>
<td>Cymbeline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S7–8</td>
<td>Hamlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1–2</td>
<td>Julius Caesar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3–4</td>
<td>King Lear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T5–6</td>
<td>Macbeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T7–8</td>
<td>Othello</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U1–2</td>
<td>Pericles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U3–4</td>
<td>Romeo and Juliet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U5–6</td>
<td>Timon of Athens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U7–8</td>
<td>Titus Andronicus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V1–2</td>
<td>Troilus and Cressida</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;W–X</td>
<td>Histories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W1–2</td>
<td>Henry IV, parts 1–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W3–4</td>
<td>Henry V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W5–6</td>
<td>Henry VI, parts 1–3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W7–8</td>
<td>Henry VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X1–2</td>
<td>King John</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X3–4</td>
<td>Richard II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X5–6</td>
<td>Richard III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Poems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y1–2</td>
<td>General works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y3–4</td>
<td>Venus and Adonis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y5–6</td>
<td>The rape of Lucrece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y7–8</td>
<td>Sonnets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z</td>
<td>Spurious and doubtful works</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Use the first number of each pair for texts, the second for description and critical appraisal. Class poems in 821.3.)
823 ‡English fiction
824 ‡English essays
825 ‡English speeches
826 ‡English letters
827 ‡English satire and humor
828 ‡English miscellaneous writings

(.99) English-language literatures not requiring local emphasis

(Optional number and subdivisions; prefer 820–828 for all non-American English-language literatures. Other options are described under 810–890)

Class here English-language literatures of specific non-American countries other than the country requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries emphasizing British literature may class here Australian, Indian, other literatures, and libraries emphasizing Indian literature may class here British literature.

(.991) †Scotland and Ireland

(Option: Class here all English-language literature of *United Kingdom, of *Great Britain, of *British Isles)

(.991 1) *†Scotland
(.991 5) *†Ireland

(.992) *†England and Wales

(.992 9) *†Wales

(.993) †New Zealand, Australia, India, South Africa

(.993 3) *†New Zealand
(.993 4) *†Australia
(.993 5) *†India
(.993 6) *†South Africa

(.994–.999) †Other parts of the world

English-language literature except of British Isles, Western Hemisphere, Hawaii, New Zealand, Australia, India, South Africa

Add to 828.99 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., English-language literature of Israel 828.995694; then add 0 and to the base number thus derived add as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., English-language poetry of Israel 828.99569401

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
†(Optional number; prefer 820–828)
‡Add as instructed under 820 and at the beginning of Table 3
829  *Old English (Anglo-Saxon)*

Special interpretations of and exceptions to notation from Table 3 for use with Old English appear below under 829.2–829.8

.1  Poetry

*For Caedmon, see 829.2; Beowulf, 829.3; Cynewulf, 829.4*

.2  Caedmon

.3  Beowulf

.4  Cynewulf

.8  Prose literature

830  **Literatures of Germanic (Teutonic) languages**  **German literature**

*For English and Old English (Anglo-Saxon) literatures, see 820*

.01–.09  Standard subdivisions of literatures of Germanic (Teutonic) languages

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3*
830.1–838.9 Subdivisions of *German literature

Class here literature in Alsatian, Franconian, Pennsylvania Dutch (Pennsylvania German), Swabian, Swiss-German dialects

Base number: 83

**PERIOD TABLE**

1. Early period to 1100
   - Class here Old High German literature
   - 1100–1150 relocated to 21

2. 1100–1350
   - Class here medieval period, 750–1350; Middle High German literature
   - Class 750–1100 in 1

21. 1100–1250
   - Including 1100–1150 [formerly 1]
   - Class here Blütezeit

22. 1250–1350
   - Class here 1300–1350 [formerly 3]

3. 1350–1517
   - 1350–1400 relocated to 22

4. Reformation period, 1517–1625

5. 1625–1750
   - Class here the baroque period

6. Classical period, 1750–1830
   - Class here 18th century, the romantic period
   - Class 1700–1750 in 5, the later romantic period in 7

7. Postclassical period, 1830–1856
   - Class here 19th century
   - Class 1800–1830 in 6, 1856–1899 in 8

8. 1856–1900

9. 1900–

91. 1900–2000

912. 1900–1945

914. 1945–

Class comprehensive works in 830, Yiddish (Judeo-German) literature in 839.09, low German (Plattdeutsch) literature in 839.4

.1–.9 Standard subdivisions; collections; history, description, critical appraisal of ‡German literature

831. ‡German poetry

832. ‡German drama

833. ‡German fiction

834. ‡German essays

835. ‡German speeches

836. ‡German letters

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
‡Add as instructed under 830.1–838.9 and at the beginning of Table 3
837  $German satire and humor
838  $German miscellaneous writings
839  Other Germanic (Teutonic) literatures
   .09  *Yiddish

PERIOD TABLE
1  Early period to 1700
2  Period of enlightenment, 1700–1860
3  Golden age and modern period, 1860–

> 839.1–839.4 West Germanic literatures
Class comprehensive works in 839

.1  Old Low Germanic literatures
   Examples: Old Frisian, Old Low Franconian, Old Low German, Old Saxon

> 839.2–839.4 Modern Low Germanic literatures
Class comprehensive works in 839

.2  *Frisian

PERIOD TABLE
1  Early period to 1609
2  1609–1800
3  1800–1900
4  1900–

.3  Netherlandish literatures

.31  *Dutch

Class here Flemish literature [formerly 839.32]

PERIOD TABLE
1  Medieval period to 1450
2  Renaissance period, 1450–1600
3  1600–1700
4  1700–1800
5  1800–1900
6  1900–
62  1900–1945
64  1945–

[.32]  Flemish literature
Relocated to 839.31

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
‡Add as instructed under 830.1–838.9 and at the beginning of Table 3
.36 *Afrikaans

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1875
2 1875–1904
3 1904–1924
4 1924–1961
   Class here 20th century
5 1961–

.4 *Low German (Plattdeutsch)

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1600
2 1600–1900
3 1900–

.5 Scandinavian (North Germanic) literatures

For specific Scandinavian literatures, see 839.6–839.8

> 839.6–839.8 Specific Scandinavian literatures

Class comprehensive works in 839.5

.6 West Scandinavian literatures Old Norse (Old Icelandic)

.600 1–.600 9 Standard subdivisions of West Scandinavian literatures
.601–.68 Subdivisions of *Old Norse (Old Icelandic)
   Base number: 839.6

.69 Modern West Scandinavian literatures Modern Icelandic

.690 01–.690 09 Standard subdivisions of modern West Scandinavian literatures
.690 1–.698 Subdivisions of *Modern Icelandic
   Base number: 839.69

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period, 1500–1720
2 Age of enlightenment, 1720–1835
3 Renaissance, 1835–1900
   Class here 19th century
   Class 1800–1835 in 2
4 1900–

See also 839.699 for Faeroese

.699 *Faeroese

> 839.7–839.8 East Scandinavian literatures

Class comprehensive works in 839.5

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
**Swedish**

PERIOD TABLE
1 Medieval period to 1520
2 Reformation period, 1520–1640
3 Age of Stjernhjelm, 1640–1740
   Class here 17th century
   Class 1600–1640 in 2
4 Age of Dalin, 1740–1780
   Class here 18th century
   Class 1700–1740 in 3
5 Age of Gustavus, 1780–1800
6 1800–1900
7 1900–
72 1900–1945
74 1945–

**Danish and Norwegian**

**Danish**

PERIOD TABLE
1 Medieval period to 1500
2 Reformation period, 1500–1560
3 Learned period, 1560–1700
4 Age of Holberg, 1700–1750
5 Period of enlightenment, 1750–1800
6 1800–1900
7 1900–
72 1900–1945
74 1945–

Class Dano-Norwegian literature in 839.82

**Norwegian (Bokmal, Riksmal)**

Class here Dano-Norwegian literature, comprehensive works on Norwegian literature

PERIOD TABLE
1 Medieval period to 1500
2 Reformation period, 1500–1560
3 Learned period, 1560–1700
4 1700–1750
5 Period of enlightenment, 1750–1800
6 1800–1900
7 1900–
72 1900–1945
74 1945–

*For New Norse literature, see 839.83*

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3*
.83  *Norwegian (New Norse, Landsmal)

PERIOD TABLE
6  1800–1900
7  1900–
72  1900–1945
74  1945–

Class comprehensive works on Norwegian literature in 839.82

.9  East Germanic literatures

Examples: Burgundian, Gothic, Vandalic

840  Literatures of Romance languages  French literature

Class comprehensive works on Italic languages in 870

For literatures of Italian, Romanian, Rhaeto-Romanic languages, see 850; of Spanish and Portuguese languages, 860

.01–.09  Standard subdivisions of literatures of Romance languages

> 840.1–848.9 Subdivisions of *French literature

Base number: 84

Assign period numbers only for European countries

PERIOD TABLE FOR FRENCH

For European countries

1  Early period to 1400  
   Class here medieval period
2  1400–1500
3  Renaissance period, 1500–1600
4  Classical period, 1600–1715
5  1715–1789  
   Class here 18th century, Enlightenment, Age of Reason
   Class 1700–1715 in 4, 1789–1799 in 6
6  Revolution and Empire, 1789–1815
7  Constitutional monarchy, 1815–1848  
   Class here 19th century
   Class 1800–1815 in 6, 1848–1899 in 8
8  1848–1900
9  1900–
91  1900–2000
912  1900–1945
914  1945–

(Option: Distinguish French-language literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of Canada C840, of France F840; or class literatures not requiring local emphasis in 848.99. If literatures are identified by one of these methods, assign the following optional period numbers for Belgium and non-European countries. Other options are described under 810–890

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
840.1–848.9 Subdivisions of *French literature (continued)

(For Asian and African countries
(1) To 1960
(2) 1960–

(For Belgium
(1) Early period to 1830
(2) 1830–1900
   Class here 19th century
   Class 1800–1830 in 2
(3) 1900–
(32) 1900–1945
(34) 1945–

(For Canada
(3) Colonial period to 1867
(4) 1867–1900
(5) 1900–
(52) 1900–1945
(54) 1945– )

Class comprehensive works in 840, Provençal literature in 849

.1–.9 Standard subdivisions; collections; history, description, critical appraisal of ‡French literature

841 ‡French poetry
842 ‡French drama
843 ‡French fiction
844 ‡French essays
845 ‡French speeches
846 ‡French letters
847 ‡French satire and humor
848 ‡French miscellaneous writings

(.99) French-language literatures not requiring local emphasis

(Optional number and subdivisions; prefer 840–848 for all French-language literatures. Other options are described under 810–890)

Class here literatures of specific countries, e.g., libraries emphasizing literature of France may class here Belgian and Canadian literatures, and libraries emphasizing Canadian literature may class here literature of France

(.991) *‡France

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
†(Optional number; prefer 840–848)
‡Add as instructed under 840.1–848.9 and at the beginning of Table 3
(.992) *†Canada
(.993) *†Belgium
(.994-.999) †Other parts of the world

French-language literature except of France, Belgium, Canada

Add to 848.99 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., French-language literature of Tahiti 848.9996211; then add 0 and to the base number thus derived add as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., French-language drama of Tahiti 848.999621102

849 *Provençal and Catalan
Base number for Provençal: 849

PERIOD TABLE FOR PROVENÇAL
1 Early period to 1100
2 Golden age, 1100–1300
3 1300–1500
4 Decline and revival, 1500–1900
5 1900–
52 1900–1945
54 1945–

.9 *Catalan

PERIOD TABLE
1 First period to 1350
2 Second period, 1350–1450
3 Golden age, 1450–1500
   Class here 15th century
   Class 1400–1450 in 3
4 Decline and revival, 1500–1900
5 1900–
52 1900–1945
54 1945–

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
†(Optional number; prefer 840–848)
Literatures of *Italian, Romanian, Rhaeto-Romanic languages

Base number for Italian: 85

PERIOD TABLE FOR ITALIAN

1 Early period to 1375
2 Period of classical learning, 1375–1492
   Class here Renaissance period
   Class later Renaissance period in 3
3 1492–1542
4 1542–1585
   Class here 16th century
   Class 1500–1542 in 3, 1585–1599 in 5
5 Period of decline, 1585–1748
6 Period of renovation, 1748–1814
   Class here 18th century
   Class 1700–1748 in 5
7 1814–1859
   Class here 19th century
   Class 1800–1814 in 6, 1859–1899 in 8
8 1859–1900
9 1900–
91 1900–2000
914 1900–1945
915 1945–

Class comprehensive works on Romance languages in 840, on Italic languages in 870

851 ‡Italian poetry
852 ‡Italian drama
853 ‡Italian fiction
854 ‡Italian essays
855 ‡Italian speeches
856 ‡Italian letters
857 ‡Italian satire and humor
858 ‡Italian miscellaneous writings

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
‡Add as instructed under 850 and at the beginning of Table 3
859  *Romanian and Rhaeto-Romanic

Base number for Romanian: 859

PERIOD TABLE FOR ROMANIAN
1  Early period to 1800
2  1800–1900
3  1900–
32  1900–1945
34  1945–

.9  Rhaeto-Romanic languages

Examples: Friulian, Ladin, Romansh

860  Literatures of Spanish and Portuguese languages

.01–.09  Standard subdivisions of literatures of Spanish and Portuguese languages

860.1–868.9 Subdivisions of *Spanish literature

Class here Judeo-Spanish (Ladino), Papiamento literature

Base number: 86

Assign period numbers only for Spain

PERIOD TABLES FOR SPANISH

For Spain
1  Early period to 1369
2  1369–1516
3  Golden Age, 1516–1700
4  1700–1800
5  1800–1900
6  1900–
62  1900–1945
64  1945–

(Option: Distinguish Spanish-language literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of Chile Ch860, of Colombia Co860, of Mexico M860 [or, of all American countries A860], of Spain S860; or class literatures not requiring local emphasis in 868.99. If literatures are identified by one of these methods, assign the following optional period numbers for literature of American countries. Other options are described under 810–890)

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

(continued)
> **860.1–868.9 Subdivisions of *Spanish literature (continued)*

(For American countries)

(1) Colonial and revolutionary period, 1519–1826
(2) 1826–1888
   Class here 19th century
   Class 1800–1826 in 1, 1888–1899 in 3
(3) Period of modernism and realism, 1888–1910
(4) 1910–
(42) 1910–1945
(44) 1945–

Class comprehensive works in 860

.1–.9 Standard subdivisions; collections; history, description, critical appraisal of ‡Spanish literature

861 ‡Spanish poetry
862 ‡Spanish drama
863 ‡Spanish fiction
864 ‡Spanish essays
865 ‡Spanish speeches
866 ‡Spanish letters
867 ‡Spanish satire and humor
868 ‡Spanish miscellaneous writings

(.99) Spanish-language literatures not requiring local emphasis

(Optional number and subdivisions; prefer 860–868 for all Spanish-language literatures. Other options are described under 810–890)

Class here literatures of specific countries other than the country requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries emphasizing literature of Spain may class here Hispanic-American literatures, and libraries emphasizing literature of Mexico may class here literatures of other Hispanic-American countries and of Spain

(.991) *‡Spain

(.992) †Hispanic North America

Class here comprehensive works on Spanish-language literature of Hispanic America

*For Hispanic South America, see 868.993

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
†(Optional number; prefer 860–868)
‡Add as instructed under 860.1–868.9 and at the beginning of Table 3
(.992 001−.992 08)  †Subdivisions of Spanish-language literatures of Hispanic North America

Add to base number 868.9920 as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., collections of Spanish-language one-act plays of Hispanic North America 868.99202041

(.992 1)  *†Mexico

(.992 2)  †Central America

(.992 200 1−.992 208)  †Subdivisions of Spanish-language literatures of Central America

Add to base number 868.99220 as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., collections of Spanish-language one-act plays of Central America 868.992202041

(.992 21−.992 27)  †Specific countries

Add to 868.9922 the numbers following —728 in notation 7281−7289 from Table 2, e.g., Spanish-language literature of Costa Rica 868.99226; then to the base number thus derived add as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., collections of Spanish-language literature of Costa Rica displaying naturalism 868.9922608012

(.992 3)  †West Indies (Antilles)

(.992 300 1−.992 308)  †Spanish-language literatures of the West Indies (Antilles)

Add to base number 868.99230 as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., collections of Spanish-language one-act plays of the West Indies 868.99230204108

(.992 31)  *†Cuba

(.992 33)  *†Dominican Republic

(.992 35)  *†Puerto Rico

(.993)  †Hispanic South America

(.993 001−.993 08)  †Subdivisions of Spanish-language literatures of Hispanic South America

Add to base number 868.9930 as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., collections of Spanish-language dramatic poetry of Hispanic South America 868.993010208

(.993 2−.993 9)  †Specific countries

Add to 868.993 the numbers following —8 in notation 82−87, 89 from Table 2, e.g., Spanish-language literature of Chile 868.9933; then to the base number thus derived add as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., history and critical appraisal of Spanish-language literature of Chile 868.993309

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
†(Optional number; prefer 860−868)
(994-.999) †Other parts of the world

Spanish-language literature except of Spain, Hispanic America

Add to 868.99 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Spanish-language literature of the United States 868.9973; then add 0 and to the base number thus derived add as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., Spanish-language poetry of the United States 868.997301

869 *Portuguese

Class here Galician (Gallegan) literature

Assign period numbers for Portugal only

PERIOD TABLES FOR PORTUGESE

For Portugal

1 Early period to 1500
2 1500–1800
   Including classical period
3 1800–1900
4 1900–
41 1900–1945
42 1945–

(Option: Distinguish Portuguese-language literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of Brazil B869, of Portugal P869; or class literatures not requiring local emphasis in 869.899. If literatures are identified by one of these methods, assign the following optional period numbers for literature of Brazil. Other options are described under 810–890)

(For Brazil)

(1) Period of formation, 1500–1750
(2) Period of transformation, 1750–1830
(3) 1830–1921
   Class here 19th century
   Class 1800–1830 in 2
(4) 1921–

See also 860 for Papiamento literature

(.899) Portuguese-language literatures not requiring local emphasis

(Optional number and subdivisions; prefer 869.01–869.8 for all Portuguese-language literatures. Other options are described under 810–890)

Class here literatures of specific countries other than the country requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries emphasizing literature of Portugal may class here Brazilian literature, and libraries emphasizing Brazilian literature may class here literature of Portugal

(.899 1) *‡Portugal
(.899 2) *‡Brazil

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
†(Optional number; prefer 860–868)
‡(Optional number; prefer 869.01–869.8)
(.899 4-.899 9) ‡Other parts of world

Portuguese-language literature except of Portugal, Brazil

Add to 869.899 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Portuguese-language literature of India 869.89954; then add 0 and to the base number thus derived add as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g.,

Portuguese-language drama of India 869.8995402

870 Literatures of Italic languages  Latin literature

Class comprehensive works of or on literatures of classical languages in 880

For literatures of Romance languages, see 840

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of literatures of Italic languages

.1–.9 Standard subdivisions, collections, history, description, critical appraisal of *Latin literature

In more than one form by more than one author

Use the period table under 871–878

> 871–878 Specific forms of Latin literature

Add to base number 87 as instructed at the beginning of Table 3; however, observe the special interpretations of and exceptions to notation from Table 3 that appear below, e.g., collections of Latin poetry of the medieval period 871.0308, critical appraisal of Latin epic poetry and fiction of the Roman period 873.0109

PERIOD TABLE FOR LATIN

1 Roman period to ca. 500
2 Pre-Carolingian period, ca. 500–ca. 750
3 Medieval period, ca. 750–1350
4 Modern period, 1350–

Class comprehensive works in 870

871 §Latin poetry

For dramatic poetry, see 872; epic poetry, 873; lyric poetry, 874

.01–.04 Specific periods

Use the period table under 871–878

Do not use 871.02–871.08 for specific kinds

872 §Latin dramatic poetry and drama

.01–.04 Specific periods

Use the period table under 871–878

Do not use 872.02–872.05 for specific media, scopes, kinds

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
‡(Optional number; prefer 869.01–869.8)
873  §Latin epic poetry and fiction
    .01-.04 Specific periods
    Use the period table under 871-878
    Do not use 873.01-873.08 for specific scopes and types

874  §Latin lyric poetry
    .01-.04 Specific periods
    Use the period table under 871-878

875  §Latin speeches
    .01-.04 Specific periods
    Use the period table under 871-878
    Do not use 875.01-875.06 for specific kinds

876  §Latin letters
    .01-.04 Specific periods
    Use the period table under 871-878

877  §Latin satire and humor
    .01-.04 Specific periods
    Use the period table under 871-878

878  §Latin miscellaneous writings
    .000 1-.000 9 Standard subdivisions
    .002-.008 Specific kinds
    .01-.04 Specific periods
    Use the period table under 871-878

879  Literatures of other Italic languages
    .4 Latinian literatures other than Latin
    .7 Literatures of Sabellian languages
    .9 Osco-Umbrian literatures

880  Literatures of Hellenic languages  Classical
     Greek literature
     Class here comprehensive works of or on literatures of classical languages
     For Latin literature, see 870
     .01-.09 Standard subdivisions of classical literatures
     §Add as instructed under 871-878 and at the beginning of Table 3
.1-.9 Standard subdivisions, collections, history, description, critical appraisal of *classical Greek literature

In more than one form by more than one author

Use the period table under 881–888

> 881–888 Specific forms of classical Greek literature

Add to base number 88 as instructed at the beginning of Table 3; however, observe the special interpretations of and exceptions to notation from Table 3 that appear below, e.g., collections of classical Greek poetry of the medieval and Byzantine periods 881.0208, critical appraisal of classical Greek epic poetry and fiction of the ancient period 883.0109

PERIOD TABLE FOR CLASSICAL GREEK

1 Ancient period to ca. 500
2 Medieval and Byzantine periods, ca. 500–1600
3 Modern period, 1600–

Class comprehensive works in 880

881 ‡Classical Greek poetry

For dramatic poetry, see 882; epic poetry, 883; lyric poetry, 884

.01–.03 Specific periods

Use the period table under 881–888

Do not use 881.02–881.08 for specific kinds

882 ‡Classical Greek dramatic poetry and drama

.01–.03 Specific periods

Use the period table under 881–888

Do not use 882.02–882.05 for specific media, scopes, kinds

883 ‡Classical Greek epic poetry and fiction

.01–.03 Specific periods

Use the period table under 881–888

Do not use 883.01–883.08 for specific scopes and types

884 ‡Classical Greek lyric poetry

.01–.03 Specific periods

Use the period table under 881–888

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
‡Add as instructed under 881–888 and at the beginning of Table 3
885  Classical Greek literature
.01–.03 Specific periods
   Use the period table under 881–888
   Do not use 885.01–885.06 for specific kinds

886  Classical Greek letters
.01–.03 Specific periods
   Use the period table under 881–888

887  Classical Greek satire and humor
.01–.03 Specific periods
   Use the period table under 881–888

888  Classical Greek miscellaneous writings
.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions
.002–.008 Specific kinds
.01–.03 Specific periods
   Use the period table under 881–888

889  Modern Greek
   Class here Katharevusa and Demotic

PERIOD TABLE
1  Early period to 1821
2  1821–1900
3  1900–
32  1900–1945
34  1945–

890  Literatures of other languages

SUMMARY
891  East Indo-European and Celtic literatures
892  Afro-Asiatic (Hamito-Semitic) literatures  Semitic literatures
893  Non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic literatures
894  Ural-Altaic, Paleosiberian, Dravidian literatures
895  Literatures of East and Southeast Asia  Sino-Tibetan literatures
896  African literatures
897  Literatures of North American native languages
898  Literatures of South American native languages
899  Literatures of nonaustronesian languages of Oceania, of Austronesian languages, of miscellaneous languages

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
‡Add as instructed under 881–888 and at the beginning of Table 3
891  East Indo-European and Celtic literatures

SUMMARY

891.1  Indo-Iranian (Aryan) literatures
  .2  Sanskrit
  .3  Middle Indic literatures (Secondary Prakrits)
  .4  Modern Indic literatures (Tertiary Prakrits)
  .5  Iranian literatures
  .6  Celtic literatures
  .7  East Slavic literatures  Russian
  .8  Slavic literatures
  .9  Baltic and other Indo-European literatures

.1  Indo-Iranian (Aryan) literatures

  For Indic (Indo-Aryan) literatures, see 891.2–891.4; Iranian literatures, 891.5

>  891.2–891.4 Indic (Indo-Aryan) literatures

  Class comprehensive works in 891.1

  .2  *Sanskrit

  Class here Vedic (Old Indic) literature, classical Sanskrit literature

  .3  Middle Indic literatures (Secondary Prakrits)

  Class here comprehensive works on Prakrit literatures

  Class tertiary Prakrit literatures in 891.4

  .37  *Pali

  .4  Modern Indic literatures (Tertiary Prakrits)

  PERIOD TABLE FOR SPECIFIC MODERN INDIC LITERATURES
  1  To 1345
  2  1345–1645
  3  1645–1845
  4  1845–1895
  5  1895–1920
  6  1920–1940
  7  1940–

  Class here 19th century
  Class 1800–1845 in 3, 1895–1899 in 5

  Class 1900–1920 in 5, 1920–1940 in 6

  (Option: Treat literatures of all *modern Indic languages as literature of one language, with base number 891.4)

  .41  *Sindhi and Lahnda

  Base number for Sindhi: 891.41

  Use the period table under 891.4

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
Literatures of other languages

.419 *Lahnda
Use the period table under 891.4

.42 *Panjabi
Use the period table under 891.4

.43 Western Hindi literatures  Hindi
.430 01-.430 09 Standard subdivisions of Western Hindi literatures
.430 1-.438 Subdivisions of *Hindi
Base number: 891.43
Use the period table under 891.4

.439 *Urdu
Use the period table under 891.4

.44 *Bengali
Use the period table under 891.4
Class Assamese literature in 891.451

.45 Assamese, Bihari, Oriya

.451 *Assamese
Use the period table under 891.4

.454 *Bihari
Class here literatures in Bhojpuri, Magahi, Maithili
Use the period table under 891.4

.46 *Marathi
Class here Konkani literature
Use the period table under 891.4

.47 *Gujarati and Rajasthani
Base number for Gujarati: 891.47
Use the period table under 891.4

.479 *Rajasthani
Class here Jaipuri, Marwari literatures
Use the period table under 891.4

.48 *Sinhalese
Class hereMahl (Maldivian), Sinhalese-Maldivian literatures
Use the period table under 891.4

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
.49 Other Indic (Indo-Aryan) literatures
   Examples: Eastern Hindi, Nepali, Pahari
   Including literatures in Awadhi, Bagheli, Chattisgarhi
   See also 895.49 for literatures of Himalayan languages, e.g., Newari

.499 Dardic (Pisacha) literatures
   Examples: Kashmiri, Khowar, Kohistani, Shina
   Including Kafiri, Romany (Gypsy)

.5 Iranian literatures

.51 *Old Persian
   Class here ancient West Iranian literatures
   See also 891.52 for Avestan literature

.52 *Avestan
   Class here ancient East Iranian literatures

.53 Middle Iranian literatures
   Examples: Khotanese (Saka), Pahlavi (Middle Persian), Sogdian

.55 *Modern Persian (Farsi)

   PERIOD TABLE
   1 Period of formal development, ca. 1000–1389
   2 Period of traditionalism, 1389–1900
   3 1900–

   Class Tajik literature in 891.59

.59 Other modern Iranian literatures
   Examples: Baluchi, Kurdish, Ossetic, Tajik, Yaghnobi

.593 Pamir (Galcha) literatures Pashto (Afghan)

.593 001–.593 009 Standard subdivisions of Pamir (Galcha) literatures

.593 01–.593 8 Subdivisions of *Pashto (Afghan) literature

.6 Celtic literatures

   Example: Gaulish

.62 *Irish Gaelic

   PERIOD TABLE
   1 Early period to 1171
   2 Period of decline, 1171–1700
   3 Period of renaissance, 1700–1850
   4 Modern period, 1850–

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
Literatures of other languages

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.63</th>
<th>*Scottish Gaelic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERIOD TABLE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Early period to 1600</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Renaissance, 1600–1830</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Modern period, 1830–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Including 19th century</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 1800–1830 in 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.64</th>
<th>*Manx</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.66</th>
<th>*Welsh (Cymric)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERIOD TABLE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Early period to 1600</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 1600–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.67</th>
<th>*Cornish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.68</th>
<th>*Breton</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERIOD TABLE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Early period to 1800</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 1800–1900</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 1900–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.7</th>
<th>East Slavic literatures Russian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

| .700 1–.700 9 | Standard subdivisions of East Slavic literatures |
| .701–.78 | Subdivisions of *Russian |
| Base number: 891.7 |
| **PERIOD TABLE** |
| 1 Early period to 1700 |
| 2 1700–1800 |
| 3 1800–1917 |
| 4 1917– |
| 42 1917–1945 |
| 44 1945– |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.79</th>
<th>*Ukrainian and Belorussian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base number for Ukrainian: 891.79</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERIOD TABLE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Early period to 1798</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 1798–1917</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 1917–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.799</th>
<th>*Belorussian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERIOD TABLE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Early period to 1798</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 1798–1917</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 1917–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3*
.8  Slavic literatures

Class here comprehensive works on literatures of Balto-Slavic languages

For East Slavic literatures, see 891.7; Baltic literatures, 891.91–891.93

.81  South Slavic literatures  Bulgarian

For Serbo-Croatian, see 891.82; Slovenian, 891.84

.810 01–.810 09  Standard subdivisions of South Slavic literatures

.810 1–.818  Subdivisions of *Bulgarian

Base number: 891.81

PERIOD TABLE

1  Early period to 1850
2  1850–1900
3  1900–

.819  *Macedonian

.82  *Serbo-Croatian

PERIOD TABLE

1  Early period to ca. 1550
2  Period of renaissance, ca. 1550–1700
3  1700–1800
4  1800–1900
5  1900–

.84  *Slovenian

PERIOD TABLE

1  Early period to ca. 1550
2  Period of renaissance, ca. 1550–1700
3  1700–1800
4  1800–1900
5  1900–

.85  West Slavic literatures  Polish

Including Kashubian

For Czech, see 891.86; Slovak, 891.87; Wendish, 891.88; Polabian, 891.89

.850 01–.850 09  Standard subdivisions of West Slavic literatures

.850 1–.858  Subdivisions of *Polish

Base number: 891.85

PERIOD TABLE

1  Early period to 1400
2  Period of development, 1400–1500
3  Golden age, 1500–1600
4  Period of decline, 1600–1700
5  1700–1795
6  Period of renaissance, 1795–1919
7  1919–

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
.86 *Czech

For literature in Moravian dialects, see 891.87

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1400
2 Reformation period, 1400–1450
3 Humanist period, 1450–1620
4 Period of decline, 1620–1900
5 1900–

.87 *Slovak

Class here literature in Moravian dialects

.88 *Wendish (Sorbian, Lusatian)

.89 *Polabian

.9 Baltic and other Indo-European literatures

> 891.91–891.93 Baltic literatures

Class comprehensive works in 891.9

.91 Old Prussian

.92 *Lithuanian

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1800
2 1800–1900
3 1900–

.93 *Latvian (Lettish)

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1800
2 1800–1900
3 1900–

.99 Other Indo-European literatures

.991 *Albanian

.992 *Armenian

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 600
2 600–1000
3 1000–1400
4 1400–1850
5 Modern period, 1850–

.993–.998 Other

Add to 891.99 the numbers following —9199 in notation 91993–91998 from Table 6, e.g., Hittite 891.998

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
892 Afro-Asiatic (Hamito-Semitic) literatures  Semitic literatures

For non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic literatures, see 893

.1 East Semitic literatures  Akkadian literature
Class here literatures in Assyrian, Babylonian, Chaldean dialects of Akkadian
See also 892.2 for Aramaic, 899.95 for Sumerian

> 892.2–892.9 West Semitic literatures
Class comprehensive works in 892

> 892.2–892.6 Northwest Semitic literatures
Class comprehensive works in 892

.2 Aramaic literatures
For Eastern Aramaic literatures, see 892.3

.29 Western Aramaic literatures
Former heading: Biblical Aramaic (Chaldee) and Samaritan

.3 Eastern Aramaic literatures  Syriac

.4 *Hebrew

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 700
2 Medieval period, 700–1700
3 1700–1820
4 1820–1885
   Class here 19th century
   Class 1800–1820 in 3, 1885–1899 in 5
5 1885–1947
6 1947–
   Class here 20th century
   Class 1900–1947 in 5

.6 Canaanite-Phoenician literatures
Examples: Eblaite, Ugaritic literatures
Class here comprehensive works on Canaanitic literatures
For Hebrew, see 892.4
See also 899.95 for Sumerian literature

> 892.7–892.9 Southwest Semitic literatures
Class comprehensive works in 892

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
.7 *Arabic

Class here Maltese literature

PERIOD TABLE
1 Pre-Islamic period to 622
2 Early Islamic and Mukhadrami period, 622–661
   Class here 7th century
   Class 600–622 in 1, 661–699 in 32
3 661–1258
32 Umayyad period, 661–750
34 Abbasid period, 750–1258
4 Period of decline, 1258–1800
5 Period of renaissance, 1800–1945
6 Contemporary period, 1945–

.8 Ethiopic literatures

Examples: Geez, Gurage, Harari, Tigre, Tigrinya

.87 *Amharic

.9 South Arabic literatures

Examples: Mahri, Qarawi, Shkhauri, Sokotri

893 Non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic literatures

Former heading: Hamitic and Chad literatures

Add to 893 the numbers following —93 in notation 931–937 from Table 6, e.g.,
Somali literature 893.5
Base number for *Coptic: 893.2
Base number for *Hausa: 893.72

894 Ural-Altaic, Paleosiberian, Dravidian literatures

.1–.3 Altaic literatures

Add to 894 the numbers following —94 in notation 941–943 from Table 6, e.g.,
Mongolian literature 894.2
Base number for *Turkish (Osmanli): 894.35

PERIOD TABLE FOR TURKISH (OSMANLI)
1 Early period to 1500
2 1500–1850
3 Modern period, 1850–
   Including 19th century
   Class 1800–1850 in 2

Base number for *Azerbaijani: 894.361

Class comprehensive works in 894; Japanese in 895.6; Korean in 895.7

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
894.4–894.5 Uralic literatures

Class comprehensive works in 894

.4 Samoyedic literatures

.5 Finno-Ugric literatures

.51 Ugric literatures

Examples: Ostyak, Vogul

.511 *Hungarian (Magyar)

PERIOD TABLE

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Early period to 1800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1800–1900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1900–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

.53 Permian literatures

Contains Votyak (Udmurt), Zyrian

.54 Finnic literatures

Examples: Karelian, Livonian, Veps

For Lapp, see 894.55; Middle Volga literatures, 894.56

.541 *Finnish (Suomi)

PERIOD TABLE

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Early period to 1800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1800–1900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1900–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

.545 *Estonian

PERIOD TABLE

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Early period to 1861</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Modern period, 1861–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

.55 *Lapp

.56 Middle Volga literatures

Examples: Mari, Mordvin

.6 Paleosiberian (Hyperborean) literatures

Including Ainu literature

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
894

*Dravidian literatures*

PERIOD TABLE FOR SPECIFIC DRAVIDIAN LITERATURES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Time Period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>To 1345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1345–1645</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1645–1845</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1845–1895</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Class here 19th century
Class 1800–1845 in 3, 1895–1899 in 5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Time Period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1895–1920</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1920–1940</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>1940–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Class here 20th century
Class 1900–1920 in 5, 1920–1940 in 6

(Optional: Treat literatures of all *Dravidian languages as literature of one language, with base number 894.8)

.81 South Dravidian literatures

Examples: Kota, Toda
Class here literatures of the Dravida group
Kurukh (Orāon), Malto literatures relocated to 894.83

.811 *Tamil*
Use the period table under 894.8

.812 *Malayalam*
Use the period table under 894.8

.814 *Kannada (Kanarese)*
Use the period table under 894.8

.82 Central Dravidian literatures

Former heading: Andhra group

.823 *Gondi*
Use the period table under 894.8

.824 *Khond (Kandh)*
Use the period table under 894.8

.827 *Telugu*
Use the period table under 894.8

.83 North Dravidian literatures

Brahui
Examples: Kurukh (Oraon), Malto [both formerly 894.81]

.830 01–.830 09 Standard subdivisions of North Dravidian literatures

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3*
.830 1-.838 Subdivisions of *Brahui

Use the period table under 894.8

Base number: 894.83

895 Literatures of East and Southeast Asia Sino-Tibetan literatures

Example: Miao (Hmong) literature

Here are classed literatures of South Asian languages closely related to the languages of East and Southeast Asia

Class literature of Malay languages in 899.2

.1 *Chinese

PERIOD TABLE

1 Origins, 15th century to 221 B.C.
   221–200 B.C. relocated to 22
   Class here the classical age
2 221 B.C.–618 A.D.
   Class here the middle epoch
   618–699 A.D. relocated to 3
22 Period of Chin and Han dynasties, 221 B.C.–220 A.D.
   Including 221–200 B.C. [formerly 1]
24 Period of Six Dynasties and Sui dynasty, 220–618 A.D.
3 Period of T’ang and Five dynasties, 618–960
   Including 618–699 [formerly 2]
   Class here renaissance and neoclassicism
4 960–1912
42 Period of Sung dynasty, 960–1279
44 Period of Yüan (Mongol) dynasty, 1271–1368
   Class period of Yüan dynasty during 1271–1279 in 42
46 Period of Ming dynasty, 1368–1644
48 Period of Ch’ing (Manchu) dynasty, 1644–1912
5 Modern Chinese literature, 1912–
51 1912–1949
52 1949–

.4 Tibeto-Burman literatures Tibetan

Examples: literatures of the Bodo-Naga-Kachin, Kuki-Chin, Loloish languages

For Burmese, see 895.8

.400 1–.400 9 Standard subdivisions of Tibeto-Burman literatures

.401–.48 Subdivisions of *Tibetan

Base number: 895.4

.49 Literatures of Himalayan (Gyarung-Mishmi) languages

Example: Newari

See also 891.49 for Nepali literature

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
### Japanese

**PERIOD TABLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Early period to 1185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Heian period, 794–1185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Medieval period, 1185–1603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Kamakura period, 1185–1334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>1334–1603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class here Muromachi period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Tokugawa (Edo) period, 1603–1868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>1603–1770</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including Genroku period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>1770–1868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1868–1945</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including Bunka-Bunsei period (1804–1830)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Meiji period, 1868–1912</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>1912–1945</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class here 20th century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class 1900–1912 in 42, 1945–1999 in 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1945–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Korean

**PERIOD TABLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Early period to 1392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Yi period, 1392–1910</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Transition period, 1894–1910</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1910–1945</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1945–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class here 20th century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class 1900–1910 in 28, 1910–1945 in 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Burmese

**PERIOD TABLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Early period to 1800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1800–1900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1900–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3*
.9  Literatures of miscellaneous languages of Southeast Asia; Munda literatures

Limited to the literatures named below

Class Malay literatures in 899.2

.91  Thai (Tai) literatures  Thai (Siamese)

Class Annam-Muong literatures in 895.92

.910 01-.910 09  Standard subdivisions of literatures of Thai languages

.910 1-.918  Subdivisions of *Thai (Siamese)

Base number: 895.91

PERIOD TABLE
1  Early period to 1800
2  1800–1900
3  1900–

.919  Other Thai (Tai) literatures

Examples: Ahom, Khamti, Lao, Shan

Use of this number for Karen discontinued; class in 895

Class Annam-Muong literatures in 895.92

.92–.95  Annam-Muong, Mon-Khmer, Munda literatures

Add to 895.9 the numbers following —959 in notation 9592–9595 from Table 6, e.g., Mundari literature 895.95

Base number for *Vietnamese (Annamese): 895.922

PERIOD TABLE FOR VIETNAMESE (ANNAMESE)
1  Early period to 1800
2  1800–1900
3  1900–

Base number for *Khmer (Cambodian): 895.932

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
African literatures

Add to 896 the numbers following —96 in notation 961–965 from Table 6, e.g., Mandingo literature 896.34

(Option: Treat literatures of all *African languages as literature of one language, with base number 896)

Base number for *Wolof: 896.3214
Base number for *Fulani (Fulah): 896.322
Base number for *Ibo (Igbo): 896.332
Base number for *Yoruba: 896.333
Base number for *Ewe: 896.3374
Base number for *Akan: 896.3385
Base number for *Bemba: 896.3915
Base number for *Nyanja: 896.3918
Base number for *Swahili: 896.392
Base number for *Kongo: 896.3931
Base number for *Ruanda: 896.39461
Base number for *Rundi: 896.39465
Base number for *Kikuyu: 896.3954
Base number for *Ganda (Luganda): 896.3957
Base number for *Lingala: 896.39686
Base number for *Shona: 896.3975
Base number for *Northern Sotho: 896.39771
Base number for *Southern Sotho: 896.39772
Base number for *Tswana: 896.39775
Base number for *Xhosa: 896.3985
Base number for *Zulu: 896.3986

PERIOD TABLE FOR SPECIFIC AFRICAN LITERATURES

1  To 1960
2  1960–

For Ethiopic literatures, see 892.8; non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic literatures, 893

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3
897  **Literatures of North American native languages**

Example: Tarascan

Class here comprehensive works on literatures of North and South American native languages

Add to 897 the numbers following —97 in notation 971–979 from Table 6, e.g.,
Macro-Penutian literatures 897.4

(Optional: Treat literatures of all *North American native languages as literature
of one language, with base number 897)

*For literatures of South American native languages, see 898*

898  **Literatures of South American native languages**

Examples: Hishkaryana; Penutian literatures of South America

Add to 898 the numbers following —98 in notation 982–984 from Table 6, e.g.,
Guaraní literature 898.3

(Optional: Treat literatures of all *South American native languages as literature
of one language, with base number 898)

Base number for *Quechua: 898.323*

Class comprehensive works on literatures of North and South American native languages in 897

899  **Literatures of nonaustrotopian languages of Oceania, of Austronesian languages, of miscellaneous languages**

Add to 899 the numbers following —99 in notation 991–999 from Table 6, e.g.,
Polynesian literatures 899.4

Use of this number for literatures of other languages discontinued; class in 890

Base number for *Tagalog (Filipino): 899.211*

**PERIOD TABLE FOR TAGALOG (FILIPINO)**

1  Early period to 1800
2  1800–1900
3  1900–

Base number for *Indonesian (Bahasa Indonesia): 899.221*

**PERIOD TABLE FOR INDOENSIAN (BAHASA INDONESIA)**

1  Early period to 1900
2  1900–

Base number for *Javanese: 899.222*

Base number for *Malay (Bahasa Malaysia): 899.28*

Base number for *Malagasy: 899.3*

Base number for *Basque: 899.92*

Base number for *Sumerian: 899.95*

Base number for *Esperanto: 899.992*

Base number for *Interlingua: 899.993*

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3*
900  Geography, history, and auxiliary disciplines

Class here social situations and conditions; general political history; military, diplomatic, political, economic, social, welfare aspects of specific wars

History of witch crazes relocated to 133.4309, sociology of witch crazes to 306.4

Class historical and geographical treatment of a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject, using notation 09 from Table 1, e.g., historical and geographical treatment of natural sciences 509, of economic situations and conditions 330.9, of purely political situations and conditions 320.9, history of military science 355.009

Interdisciplinary works on ancient world, on specific continents, countries, localities are classed in 930–990

See also 303.49 for projected events (future history)

See Manual at 400 vs. 900; 900

.1–.9  Standard subdivisions of geography and history

901  Philosophy and theory of history

902  Miscellany of history

903  Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of history

904  Collected accounts of events

Class here adventure

Class travel in 910; collections limited to a specific period in 909, to a specific area or region in 909.09, 930–990; history of a specific kind of event with the event, e.g., geological history of California earthquakes 551.2209794

See Manual at 900: Historic events vs. nonhistoric events

.5  Events of natural origin

.7  Events induced by human activity

905  Serial publications of history

906  Organizations and management of history
907  Education, research, related topics of history

.2  Historical research

Class here historiography

Class writing of history in 808.0669

.201-.209  Geographical and persons treatment

Add to base number 907.20 notation 1-9 from Table 2, e.g., historians and historiographers 907.202

Historians and historiographers who specialize in a specific area are classed with the area in 930-990, using notation 007202 from Table under 930-990, e.g., the biography of a German who specializes in French history in general 944.007202. Those who specialize in specific historical periods of a specific area are classed with the historical period for the area studied, using notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., the biography of a German historian who specializes in the French Revolutionary period 944.04092

908  History with respect to kinds of persons

[.9]  Racial, ethnic, national groups

Do not use; class in 909.04

909  World history

Civilization and events not limited geographically

(Option: Class elementary textbooks on general history in 372.89045)

Class history of ancient world to ca. 499 in 930, history of specific continents, countries, localities in modern world in 940-990; collected accounts of events not limited by period, area, region, subject in 904

See Manual at 305 vs. 306, 909, 930-990; 320 vs. 909, 930-990; 910 vs. 909, 930-990

[.001-.008]  Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 901-908

[.009]  Historical treatment

Do not use; class in 907.2

.04  History with respect to racial, ethnic, national groups

Add to base number 909.04 notation 03-99 from Table 5, e.g., world history of Jews 909.04924; then add 0 and to the result add the numbers following 909 in 909.1-909.8, e.g., world history of Jews in 18th century 909.0492407

(Option: Class here general history of racial, ethnic, national groups in a specific continent, country, locality; prefer subdivision 004 from Table under 930-990. If option is chosen, add notation 03-99 from Table 5 as above; then add 00 instead of 0 as above for world history by period, e.g., world history of Jews in 18th century 909.04924007; for specific areas add 0 and to the result add notation 3-9 from Table 2, e.g., history of Jews in Germany 909.04924043)
909.07-909.08 General historical periods

Class here general histories covering three or more continents (or three or more countries if not on the same continent)

Class comprehensive works in 909, ancient history in 930, specific historical periods in 909.1-909.8

.07 Ca. 500-1450/1500

Including Crusades

See also 940.18 for history of Europe during the Crusades

.08 Modern history, 1450/1500-

.09 Areas, regions, places in general

Not limited by continent, country, locality

Class here interdisciplinary works on areas, regions, places in general (other than land forms, oceans, seas)

Use 909.0901-909.0909 for standard subdivisions

Add to base number 909.09 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., history of tropical regions 909.093, of Caribbean Sea 909.096365; then add *0 and to the result add the numbers following 909 in 909.1-909.8, e.g., history of tropical regions in 1950–1959 909.0930825

Class interdisciplinary works on land forms, oceans, seas in 551.4

For geography of and travel in areas, regions, places in general, see 910.91

909.1-909.8 Specific historical periods

Class comprehensive works in 909, general historical periods in 909.07-909.08

.1 6th-12th centuries, 500–1199

.2 13th century, 1200–1299

.3 14th century, 1300–1399

.4 15th century, 1400–1499

.5 16th century, 1500–1599

.6 17th century, 1600–1699

.7 18th century, 1700–1799

.8 1800–

.81 19th century, 1800–1899

Class here Industrial Revolution

*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1
.82 20th century, 1900–1999
.821 1900–1919

For World War I, see 940.3
.822 1920–1929
.823 1930–1939
.824 1940–1949

For World War II, see 940.53
.825 1950–1959
.826 1960–1969
.827 1970–1979
.828 1980–1989
.829 1990–1999
.83 21st century, 2000–2099

See also 303.49 for futurology

910 Geography and travel

(Optional: Class elementary textbooks on general geography in 372.891045)

Class works on civilization, other than accounts of travel in 909, in ancient world and specific places in modern world in 930–990; geographical treatment of specific disciplines or subjects with the discipline or subject, e.g., geographical treatment of religion 200.9, of geomorphology 551.409

See Manual at 508 vs. 574, 910, 304.2; 550 vs. 910; 910 vs. 909, 930–990

.01 Philosophy and theory of geography and travel

.014 Language (Terminology) and communication

Class here discourses on place names and their origin, history, meaning

Class dictionaries and gazetteers of place names in 910.3

.02 The earth (Physical geography)

Class specific features in 550, e.g., glaciers 551.312

See also 551.4 for geomorphology

See Manual at 550 vs. 910

.020 9 Historical and persons treatment

Class physical geography of areas, regions, places in general in 910.021; of ancient world in 913.02; of specific continents, countries, localities in 913.1–919.9, using notation 02 from table under 913–919
Of areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 910.021 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–18 from Table 2, e.g., of forests 910.02152

Geography of and travel in areas, regions, places in general

Relocated to 910.91

Topical geography

(Optional number; prefer specific subject, e.g., economic geography 330.91–330.99)

Do not use for philosophy and theory of geography and travel; class 910.01

Add to base number 910.1 notation 001–899, e.g., economic geography 910.133; then add 0 and to the result add notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., economic geography of British Isles 910.133041

Miscellany

World travel guides

Class here guidebooks and tour books providing tourists updated information about places in many areas of the globe: how to travel, what to see, where to stay, how to plan a vacation

Class guides to areas, regions, places in general in 910.91, to specific continents, countries, localities in 913–919, using notation 04 from table under 913–919

Illustrations, models, miniatures

Pictures and related illustrations

Example: aerial photographs not limited to one specific area or region

Diagrams

Class maps, plans, related forms in 912

Directories of persons and organizations

Class here city directories, telephone books

Class city directories, telephone books of a specific place in 913–919

Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances, gazetteers

Class here works on place names systematically arranged for ready reference

Class discourses on place names in 910.014; historical material associated with place names in general in 909, on specific places in 930–990
910  
**Dewey Decimal Classification**

.4  Accounts of travel  
Not geographically limited  
Class travel accounts that emphasize civilization of places visited in 909  
*For discovery and exploration, see 910.9*  
*See also 508 for scientific exploration and travel, 910.202 for world travel guides*

.41  Trips around the world

.45  Ocean travel and seafaring adventures  
Examples: pirates’ expeditions, shipwrecks  
Class ocean trips around the world in 910.41; travel in specific oceans in 910.9163–910.9167

[.453]  Collected voyages of adventure  
Number discontinued; class in 910.45

.5–.8  Standard subdivisions

.9  Historical, geographical, persons treatment  
Class here discovery, exploration, growth of geographic knowledge

.91  Geography of and travel in areas, regions, places in general [formerly 910.09]  
<Option: Class elementary geography textbooks on specific areas, regions, places in general in 372.8911>  
Class interdisciplinary works on land forms, oceans, seas in 551.4; physical geography of areas, regions, places in general in 910.02

.92  Geographers, travelers, explorers regardless of country of origin

.93–.99  Discovery and exploration by specific countries  
Do not use for geography of and travel in specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds; class in 913–919  
Add to base number 910.9 notation 3–9 from Table 2 for the country responsible, e.g., explorations by Great Britain 910.941  
Class discovery and exploration by a specific country in areas, regions, places in general in 910.91, in specific continents, countries, localities, extraterrestrial worlds in 913–919, using notation 04 from table under 913–919; periods of discovery and exploration in history in 940–990

911  Historical geography  
Growth and changes in political divisions  
Class here historical atlases

.09  Historical treatment  
Class geographical and persons treatment in 911.1–911.9
.1–.9 Geographical and persons treatment
   Add to base number 911 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., historical geography of China 911.51

912 Graphic representations of surface of earth and of extraterrestrial worlds
   Class here atlases, maps, charts, plans
   Class map drawing in 526.0221
   See Manual at T1—0223 vs. 912
   .01 Philosophy and theory
   .014 Map reading
      Do not use for languages (terminology); class in 912.01
   .014 8 Map scales, symbols, abbreviations
   .09 Historical and persons treatment of maps and map making
      Class maps of specific areas, regions, places in general in 912.19; of specific continents, countries, localities, extraterrestrial worlds in 912.3–912.9

.1 Areas, regions, places in general
   [.100 1–.189 9] Specific subjects
      Relocated to subject with use of notation 0223 from Table 1
   .19 Specific areas, regions, places in general
      Add to base number 912.19 the numbers following 1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., maps of Western Hemisphere 912.19812

.3–.9 Specific continents, countries, localities, extraterrestrial worlds
   Class here land atlases of countries, tax maps that provide general descriptions of assessed land and structures
   Add to base number 912 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., maps of Du Page County, Illinois 912.77324
913–919 Geography of and travel in ancient world and specific continents, countries, localities in modern world; extraterrestrial worlds

Class here comprehensive works on ancient and modern geography of and travel in specific continents, countries, localities

(Option: Class elementary geography textbooks on ancient world, on specific continents, countries, localities in 372.8913–372.8919)

Add to base number 91 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., geography of England 914.2, of Norfolk, England 914.261; then add further as follows:

001 Philosophy and theory
0014 Language (Terminology) and communication
Class here discursive works on place names and their origin, history, and meaning
Class dictionaries and gazetteers of place names in 003

002 Miscellany
0022 Illustrations, models, miniatures
00222 Pictures and related illustrations
Example: aerial photographs
Class photographs reflecting the civilization of places in 930–990

0025 Directories of persons and organizations
Class here city directories, telephone books

003 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances, gazetteers
Class here works on place names systematically arranged for ready reference
Class discourses on place names in 0014, historical material associated with place names in 930–990

005–008 Standard subdivisions

01 Prehistoric geography
Do not add to notation 4–6 from Table 2 if there is a corresponding notation 3 from Table 2, e.g., prehistoric geography of Greece 913.801 (not 914.9501), of Russia 914.701
Class prehistoric geography of areas, regions, places in general in 09, prehistoric physical geography in 02

02 The earth (Physical geography)
Class specific features in 550, e.g., glaciers of Canada 551.3120971
See also 551.4 for geomorphology
See Manual at 550 vs. 910

(continued)
> 913–919 Geography of and travel in ancient world and specific continents, countries, localities in modern world; extraterrestrial worlds (continued)

04 Travel
Class here discovery, exploration; guidebooks
Guidebooks emphasizing a specific subject relocated to the subject, e.g., a guidebook to holy places in Spain 263.04246
Class travel accounts that emphasize the civilization of country visited in 930–990, world travel guides in 910.202
See Manual at 913–919: Add table: 04

041–049 Historical periods
Add to 04 the historical period numbers following 0 that appear in subdivisions of 930–990, e.g., travel in England during Tudor period 914.2045
For United States historical periods, add to 04 the numbers following 973 in 973.1–973.9, e.g., travel in United States during the Nixon administration 917.304924

09 Areas, regions, places in general
Add to 09 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–18 from Table 2, e.g., geography of urban regions of England 914.209732
Class physical geography of areas, regions, places in 02; travel in 04; civilization in subdivisions 0091–0098 under 930–990

Class comprehensive works, geography of and travel in more than one continent in 910; historical geography in 911; graphic representations in 912; interdisciplinary works on geography and history of ancient world, of specific continents, countries, localities in 930–990; area studies in 940–990

See Manual at 913–919.

913 *Geography of and travel in ancient world
Class Biblical geography in 220.91

914 *Geography of and travel in Europe

915 *Geography of and travel in Asia

916 *Geography of and travel in Africa

917 *Geography of and travel in North America

918 *Geography of and travel in South America

919 *Geography of and travel in other parts of world and extraterrestrial worlds

*Add as instructed under 913–919
920 Biography, genealogy, insignia

Class here autobiographies, diaries, reminiscences, correspondence

Class biography of persons associated with a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject, using notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., biography of chemists 540.92

(Optional: Class individual biography in 92 or B, collected biography in 92 or 920 undivided)

.001-.007 Standard subdivisions of biography

.008 History and description with respect to kinds of persons

[.008 1-.008 2] Men and women

Do not use; class in 920.7

[.008 8] Occupational and religious groups

Do not use; class in 920.1–928.9

[.008 9] Racial, ethnic, national groups

Do not use; class in 920.0092

.009 General collections of biography by period, region, group

Class collections by specific continents, countries, localities in 920.03–920.09

.009 01-.009 05 Historical periods

Add to base number 920.0090 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., general biography of 19th century 920.009034

.009 1 Areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 920.0091 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., biographies of suburbanites 920.0091733

.009 2 Racial, ethnic, national groups

Add to base number 920.0092 notation 03–99 from Table 5, e.g., biographies of Swedes 920.0092397

.02 General collections of biography

Not limited by period, place, group and not associated with a specific subject

.03–.09 General collections of biography by specific continents, countries, localities

Not associated with a specific subject

Add to base number 920.0 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., collections of biographies of persons resident in England 920.042

Class collections by sex regardless of continent, country, locality in 920.7
920.1–928.9 Biography of specific classes of persons

(Option A: Use subdivisions identified by *

(Option B: Class individual biography in 92 or B, collected biography in 92 or 920 undivided

(Option C: Class individual biography of men in 920.71, of women in 920.72

(Prefer specific discipline or subject, using notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., collected biography of scientists 509.22)

Add to notation for each term identified by † notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Baptists from Louisiana 922.6763

Class comprehensive works in 920.02

(.1) *Bibliographers
(.2) *Librarians and book collectors
(.3) *Encyclopedists
    Class lexicographers in 924
(.4) *Publishers and booksellers
(.5) *Journalists and news commentators

.7 Persons by sex

Class here individual biography of persons not associated with a specific discipline or subject, collected biography of persons by sex

(Option: Class here all individual biography; prefer specific discipline or subject, using notation 092 from Table 1)

.71 Men
.72 Women

(.9) *Persons associated with other subjects

Not provided for in 920.1–920.5, 921–928

Add to base number 920.9 notation 001–999, e.g., astrologers 920.91335

(921) *Philosophers and psychologists

(21.1–21.8) Modern Western philosophers and psychologists

Class comprehensive works in 21

(1) *United States and Canadian philosophers and psychologists
(2) *British philosophers and psychologists
    Contains English, Scottish, Irish, Welsh philosophers and psychologists
(3) *German and Austrian philosophers and psychologists

*(Optional number; prefer specific subject or discipline, as described under 920.1–928.9)
(.4) *French philosophers and psychologists
(.5) *Italian philosophers and psychologists
(.6) *Spanish and Portuguese philosophers and psychologists
(.7) *Russian philosophers and psychologists
(.8) *†Other modern Western philosophers and psychologists
(.9) *Ancient, medieval, Oriental philosophers and psychologists

Add to base number 921.9 the numbers following 18 in 181–189, e.g., Aristotelian philosophers 921.95

(922) *Religious leaders, thinkers, workers

> (922.1–922.8) Christians

Class comprehensive works in 922

(.1) *†Early and Eastern churches

(.2) *Roman Catholics

(.21) *Popes

(.22) *Saints

(.24-.29) *†Other

(.3) *†Anglicans

(.4) *†Lutherans, Huguenots, continental Protestants

(.5) *†Presbyterians, Congregationalists, American Reformed

(.6) *†Baptists, Disciples of Christ, Adventists

(.7) *†Methodists

(.8) *Members of other Christian denominations and sects

(.81) *†Unitarians and Universalists

(.83) *†Latter-Day Saints

(.84) *†Swedenborgians

(.85) *†Christian Scientists

(.86) *†Friends (Quakers)

(.87) *†Mennonites

(.88) *†Shakers

(.89) *Others

*(Optional number; prefer specific subject or discipline, as described under 920.1–928.9)
†Add as instructed under 920.1–928.9
(922) *Adherents of other religions
(9.1) *Atheists and Deists
    Theosophists relocated to 922.99
(9.4) *Adherents of Indic religions
(9.43) *Buddhists
(9.44) *Jains
(9.45) *Hindus
(9.46) *Sikhs
(9.5) *Zoroastrians (Parsees)
(9.6) *Adherents of Judaism
(9.7) *Adherents of Islam
(9.9) *Others
    Example: Theosophists [formerly 922.91]

(923) *Persons in social sciences

(9.1) **†Heads of state
    Examples: kings, queens, presidents

(9.2) **†Persons in political science and politics
    Examples: legislators, governors, politicians, statesmen, diplomats, nobility; political scientists
    For heads of state, see 923.1

(9.3) *Persons in economics
(9.31) **†Labor leaders
(9.33–.39) **†Others

(9.4) *Criminals and persons in law
(9.41) **†Criminals
(9.43–.49) **†Persons in law

(9.5) **†Public administrators and military persons
    For heads of state, see 923.1; governors, politicians, statesmen, 923.2

(9.6) **†Philanthropists, humanitarians, social reformers

(9.7) **†Educators

(9.8) **†Persons in commerce, communication, transportation

(9.9) *Explorers, geographers, pioneers, frontiersmen

*(Optional number; prefer specific subject or discipline, as described under 920.1–928.9)
†Add as instructed under 920.1–928.9
(924)  *Philologists and lexicographers
Add to base number 924 notation 1–9 from Table 6, e.g., lexicographers of Chinese 924.951

(925)  *Scientists
Add to base number 925 the numbers following 5 in 510–590, e.g., botanists 925.8

(926)  *Persons in technology
Add to base number 926 the numbers following 6 in 610–690, e.g., engineers 926.2

*See also 920.4 for booksellers

(927)  *Persons in the arts and recreation
Add to base number 927 the numbers following 7 in 710–790, e.g., baseball players 927.96357

*For persons in literature, see 928

(928)  *Persons in literature, history, biography, genealogy
Examples: historians, writers and critics of belles-lettres

*See also 923.9 for explorers, geographers, pioneers, frontiersmen

(.1)  *Americans

(.2–.9)  *Others
Add to base number 928 notation 2–9 from Table 6 for language in which person has written, e.g., writers in Italian 928.51

929  Genealogy, names, insignia

.1  Genealogy

*For sources, see 929.3; family histories, 929.2

*See Manual at 929.1

[.102 8]  Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
Do not use; class genealogical techniques and procedures in 929.1072; equipment, apparatus, materials in 929.3

.107 2  Research
Class here the specific techniques and procedures involved in doing genealogical research in a specific area
Class comprehensive works on genealogical research in 929.1

[.109 4–.109 9]  Continents, countries, localities in modern world
Do not use; class in 929.1072

*(Optional number; prefer specific subject or discipline, as described under 920.1–928.9)
.2 Family histories

(Optional: Arrange alphabetically by name)

Class family histories emphasizing the contributions of the members of the family to a specific occupation with the occupation, e.g., the Rothschilds as a family of bankers 332.10922; family histories of a prominent person that emphasize the person’s life with the biography number for the person, e.g., forebears, family, and life of Winston Churchill 941.082092

For royal houses, peerage, gentry, see 929.7

See Manual at 929.2; 929.2 vs. 929.7

.202 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Class the techniques of compiling family histories in 929.1

.3 Genealogical sources

Examples: census records, court records, tax lists, wills

Use only for sources published by a genealogical organization or by a genealogist. Sources published by other agencies are classed with the subject of the publication, e.g., United States census records 317.3.

Standard subdivisions are added for miscellaneous collections and individual sources

Cemetery records relocated to 929.5

Class how to use sources in 929.1

For epitaphs, see 929.5

.309 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by specific continents, countries, localities in 929.33–929.39 (not 929.3093–929.3099)

.33–.39 Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities

Regardless of form

Add to base number 929.3 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., sources from New York 929.3747

.4 Personal names

See also 929.97 for names of houses, pets, ships

.42 Surnames

.44 Forenames

Class here lists of names for babies

.5 Cemetery records [formerly 929.3]

Regardless of form

Example: epitaphs
.6 Heraldry

Class here family coats of arms

Class comprehensive works on coats of arms in 929.82

*For armorial bearings, see 929.82; royal houses, peerage, gentry, orders of knighthood, 929.7*

.7 Royal houses, peerage, gentry, orders of knighthood

Class here rank, precedence, titles of honor; genealogies tracing or establishing titles of honor; works emphasizing lineage or descent with respect to royalty, the peerage, or gentry; history and genealogy of royal families

Class histories of a royal family that include general historical events or biographies of members of the royal family in 930–990

*See Manual at 929.2 vs. 929.7*

.709 Historical and geographical treatment

Class here countries outside Europe [*formerly* 929.7999]

Class historical and geographical treatment by specific countries of Europe in 929.72–929.79 (*not* 929.70941–929.70949)

.71 Orders of knighthood

Class Christian orders of knighthood in 255.791, Christian orders of knighthood in church history in 271.791

> 929.72–929.79 Treatment of royal houses, peerage, gentry by specific countries of Europe

Class comprehensive works in 929.7094

.72 Great Britain and Ireland

.73–.79 Other countries of Europe

Add to base number 929.7 the numbers following —4 in notation 43–49 from Table 2, e.g., royal houses of France 929.74

[.799 9] Countries outside Europe

Relocated to 929.709
.8 Awards, orders, decorations, armorial bearings, autographs

.81 Awards, orders, decorations

Standard subdivisions are added for awards, orders, or decorations considered alone

Add to base number 929.81 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., orders of Germany 929.8143

Class awards, orders, decorations associated with a specific subject with the subject, using notation 079 from Table 1, e.g., American football awards 796.332079

*For armorial bearings, see 929.82*

.82 Armorial bearings

Contains coats of arms, crests, seals

*For family coats of arms, see 929.6*

.88 Autographs

.9 Forms of insignia and identification

Examples: motor vehicle registration plates, ownership and service marks, trademarks

Class forms of insignia and identification not provided for here with the form, e.g., coats of arms 929.82; identification marks in a specific subject with the subject, using notation 027 from Table 1, e.g., airline insignia 387.70275

.92 Flags and banners

Examples: national, state, provincial, ship, ownership flags and banners

Class military use in 355.15

.97 Names

Examples: names of houses, ships, pets

*For place names, see 910.014; personal names, 929.4*
930–990 History of ancient world; of specific continents, countries, localities; of extraterrestrial worlds

Civilization and events

Class here interdisciplinary works on geography and history of ancient world, of specific continents, countries, localities

(Optional: Class elementary history textbooks on ancient world, on specific continents, countries, localities in 372.893–372.899)

Add to base number 9 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., general history of Europe 940, of England 942, of Norfolk, England 942.61; then add further as follows:

001–003 Standard subdivisions

004 Racial, ethnic, national groups

(Option: Class in 909.04)

Add to 004 notation 03–99 from Table 5, e.g., history and civilization of North American native peoples in New York 974.700497

Class indigenous groups in the prehistoric period with the period, e.g., Inca empire before Spanish conquest 985.01; relation of racial, ethnic, national groups to a war with the war, e.g., relation of Jews to World War II 940.531503924

005–006 Standard subdivisions

007 Study and teaching

0072 Historical research

Class here historiography

007202 Historians and historiographers

Class historians and historiographers specializing in a specific historical period of a specific area with the historical period for the area studied, using notation 092 from Table 1; e.g., the biography of a Canadian historian who specializes in United States Revolutionary War 973.3092

008 History with respect to kinds of persons

[0089] Racial, ethnic, national groups

Do not use; class in 004

009 Areas, regions, places, persons

0091–0098 Areas, regions, places in general

Add to 009 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–18 from Table 2, e.g., urban regions 009732

(continued)
930–990 History of ancient world; of specific continents, countries, localities; of extraterrestrial worlds (continued)

0099 Persons
Description, critical appraisal, biography of persons associated with the history of the continent, country, locality but limited to no specific period
Class persons of a specific period in 01–09, using notation 092 from Table 1; historians and historiographers in 007202

00992 [00994]
Collected treatment
Individual treatment
Notation discontinued; class in 0099

01–09 Historical periods
Class here indigenous groups in the prehistoric period, e.g., Inca empire before Spanish conquest 985.01 (not 985.00498)
Add to 0 the period division numbers following 0 from the appropriate continent, country, locality in 930–990, e.g., period of 1760–1820 in British history 073 (from 941.073), period of 1815–1847 in German history 073 (from 943.073), period of 1815–1847 in Austrian history 042 (from 943.042)
Unless other period notation is specified, add to each geographical subdivision of an area the period notation for the area as a whole, e.g., period of Ottoman Empire in Saudi Arabia 953.803 (based on period of Ottoman Empire in Arabian Peninsula 953.03)
Class areas, regions, places in general in a specific period in 0091–0098; racial, ethnic, national groups in a specific period in 004

See Manual at 930–990: Add table: 01–09

The schedules that follow do not enumerate all the countries and localities that appear in Table 2; however, the foregoing instructions apply to history of any place in notation 3–9 from Table 2

Class comprehensive works in 909; geography of ancient world, of specific continents, countries, localities in 913–919; sociology of war in 303.66, of military institutions in 306.27; social factors affecting war in 355.02, social causes of war in 355.0274

See Manual at 305 vs. 306, 909, 930–990; 320 vs. 909, 930–990; 355.009 vs. 930–990; 910 vs. 909, 930–990; 930–990
930 History of ancient world to ca. 499

SUMMARY

930.01-.09 Standard subdivisions
.1-.5 [Archaeology and historical periods]
931 China to 420
932 Egypt to 640
933 Palestine to 70
934 India to 647
935 Mesopotamia and Iranian Plateau to 637
936 Europe north and west of Italian peninsula to ca. 499
937 Italian peninsula and adjacent territories to 476
938 Greece to 323
939 Other parts of ancient world to ca. 640

.01-.09 Standard subdivisions
As modified under 930–990; however, class archaeology in 930.1

.1 Archaeology
Study of past civilizations through discovery, collection, interpretation of material remains
Class here prehistoric archaeology; interdisciplinary works on archaeology
Class archaeology of continents, countries, localities provided for in notation 3 from Table 2 in 931–939; archaeology of modern period, ancient and prehistoric archaeology of continents, countries, localities not provided for in notation 3 from Table 2 in 940–990; archaeology of specific oceans and seas in 909.0963–909.0967; industrial archaeology in 609

See also 700 for artistic aspects of archaeological objects

.102 Miscellany
.102 8 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
.102 804 Underwater archaeology
.102 82 Discovery of remains
.102 83 Excavation of remains
.102 85 Interpretation of remains
Including dating techniques

> 930.11–930.16 Specific prehistoric ages
Class comprehensive works in 930.1

.11 Eolithic Age

.12 Paleolithic (Old Stone) Age
Class here comprehensive works on Stone Ages

For Mesolithic Age, see 930.13; Neolithic Age, 930.14

.13 Mesolithic (Middle Stone) Age
.14 Neolithic (New Stone) Age
.15 Copper and Bronze Age
.16 Iron Age
.2-.5 Historical periods

Add to base number 930 the numbers following —0901 in notation 09012–09015 from Table 1, e.g., world history in 1st century A.D. 930.5; however, class specific archaeological ages in 930.11–930.16

> 931–939 Specific places

Class comprehensive works in 930; archaeology of modern period, ancient and prehistoric archaeology of continents, countries, localities not provided for in notation 3 from Table 2 in 940–990; archaeology of specific oceans and seas in 909.0963–909.0967

931 *China to 420

(Option: Class in 951.011–951.014)
.01 Earliest history to ca. 1523 B.C.
.02 Period of Shang (Yin) dynasty, ca. 1523–ca. 1028 B.C.
.03 Period of Chou dynasty and warring states, ca. 1028–222 B.C.
.04 Period of Ch’in to Chin (Tsin) dynasties, 221 B.C.–420 A.D.

932 *Egypt to 640

(Option: Class in 962.01)
.01 Earliest history to 332 B.C.
.011 Prehistoric period to ca. 3100 B.C.
.012 Protodynastic, Old Kingdom, first intermediate periods, ca. 3100–2052 B.C.
  Contains 1st-11th dynasties
.013 Middle Kingdom and second intermediate periods, 2052–1570 B.C.
  Contains 12th-17th dynasties
.014 Period of New Kingdom, 1570–1075 B.C.
  Contains 18th-20th dynasties
.015 Late and Saite periods, 1075–525 B.C.
  Contains 21st-26th dynasties
  Including period of sovereignty of Cush

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.016 Persian periods and last Egyptian kingdom, 525–332 B.C.
  Contains 27th-31st dynasties

.02 Hellenistic, Roman, Byzantine periods, 332 B.C.–640 A.D.

.021 Hellenistic period, 332–30 B.C.

.022 Roman period, 30 B.C.–324 A.D.

.023 Byzantine (Coptic) period, 324–640

933 *Palestine to 70

(Optional: Class in 956.9401, Jordan in 956.9501)

See also 220.93 for Biblical archaeology, 220.95 for history of Biblical events

.01 Earliest history to return of Jews from bondage in Egypt, ca. 1225 B.C.

.02 Great age of Twelve Tribes, ca. 1225–922 B.C.
  Including rule of Judges, Saul, David, Solomon

.03 Periods of partition, conquest, foreign rule, 922–168 B.C.
  Including periods of Assyrian, Babylonian, Persian, Hellenistic rule

.04 168–63 B.C.
  Contains Hasmonean (Maccabean) period

.05 Period of Roman protectorate and rule to destruction of Jerusalem,
  63 B.C.–70 A.D.

934 *India to 647

(Optional: Class in 954.01)

.01 Pre-Aryan civilizations to ca. 1500 B.C.

.02 Indo-Aryan (Vedic) period, ca. 1500–ca. 600 B.C.
  Including Iron Age culture in south India

.03 Ca. 600–ca. 322 B.C.

.04 Period of Mauryas, ca. 322–185 B.C.

.043 Ca. 322–ca. 274 B.C.

.045 Reign of Asoka, ca. 274–ca. 237 B.C.

.047 Ca. 237–185 B.C.

.05 Period of changing dynasties, 185 B.C.–318 A.D.

.06 Period of Guptas, 318–500

.07 500–647
  Including reign of Harsha, 606–647

*Add as instructed under 930–990
935  *Mesopotamia and Iranian Plateau to 637*

(Option: Class Mesopotamia in 956.701, Iranian Plateau in 955.01)

.01 Elamite, Sumerian, Akkadian, Ur periods to ca. 1900 B.C.

.02 Period of Babylonian Empire and Kingdom of Mitanni, ca. 1900–ca. 900 B.C.
   Including reign of Hammurabi, ca. 1792–ca. 1750 B.C.

.03 Period of Assyrian Empire, ca. 900–625 B.C.

.04 Period of Median and Neo-Babylonian (Chaldean) Empires, 625–539 B.C.
   Including reign of Nebuchadnezzar II, 605–562 B.C.

.05 Period of Persian Empire, 539–332 B.C.
   *For Persian Wars, see 938.03*

.06 Hellenistic, Seleucid, Parthian periods, 332 B.C.–226 A.D.

.07 Period of Neo-Persian (Sassanian) Empire, 226–637

936  *Europe north and west of Italian Peninsula to ca. 499*

Class here comprehensive works on ancient Europe

Class a specific part of ancient Europe not provided for here with the part, e.g.,
Italy 937, Russia 947.01

(Option: Class in 940.11)

.1  *British Isles to 410  Northern Britain and Ireland*

(Option: Class British Isles in 941.012, northern Britain in 941.1012, Ireland in 941.5012)

Add to base number 936.1 the numbers following 936.2 in 936.201–936.204,
e.g., Roman period 936.104

   *For southern Britain, see 936.2*

.2  *Southern Britain to 410  England*

(Option: Class in 942.012)

.201 Earliest period to ca. 600 B.C.

.202 Celtic period, ca. 600–55 B.C.

.203 Period of early Roman contacts, 55 B.C.–43 A.D.

.204 Roman period, 43–410

.3  *Germanic regions to 481*

(Option: Class general works in 943.012, Austria in 943.601, general works on
Scandinavia in 948.012, Norway in 948.1012, Sweden in 948.5012, Denmark in
948.9012, Netherlands in 949.2012)

.301 Earliest period to 113 B.C.

*Add as instructed under 930–990*
.302 Period of contacts with Roman Republic and Empire, 113 B.C.–481 A.D.

.4 *Celtic regions to 486

(Option: Class general works in 944.012, Belgium in 949.3012, Luxembourg in 949.3501, Switzerland in 949.4012)

For British Isles, see 936.1

.401 Earliest period to 125 B.C.

.402 Gallo-Roman period, 125 B.C.–486 A.D.

.6 *Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands to 415

(Option: Class general works in 946.012, Portugal in 946.9012)

.601 Earliest period to ca. 1000 B.C.

.602 Period of Greek, Phoenician, and early Celtic and Germanic contacts, ca. 1000–218 B.C.

.603 Roman period, 218 B.C.–415 A.D.

937 *Italian Peninsula and adjacent territories to 476

(Option: Class in 945.012)

.01 Earliest period and Roman Kingdom to ca. 500 B.C.

.02 Period of Roman Republic, ca. 500–31 B.C.

For specific periods, see 937.03–937.05

> 937.03–937.05 Specific periods under the Republic

Class comprehensive works in 937.02

.03 Period of unification of Italy, ca. 500–264 B.C.

.04 Period of Punic Wars, 264–146 B.C.

.05 Period of civil strife, 146–31 B.C.

.06 Period of Roman Empire, 31 B.C.–476 A.D.

For specific periods, see 937.07–937.09

> 937.07–937.09 Specific periods under the Empire

Class comprehensive works in 937.06

.07 Early and middle periods, 31 B.C.–284 A.D.

.08 Period of absolutism, 284–395

.09 Final period, 395–476

*Add as instructed under 930–990
**938**  
*Greece to 323*

(Option: Class in 949.5012)

01 Earliest times to 775 B.C.
02 775–500 B.C.
03 Persian Wars, 500–479 B.C.
04 Period of Athenian supremacy, 479–431 B.C.
05 Period of Peloponnesian War, 431–404 B.C.
06 Period of Spartan and Theban supremacy, 404–362 B.C.
07 Period of Macedonian supremacy, 362–323 B.C.
08 Hellenistic period, 323–146 B.C.
09 Roman era, 146 B.C.–323 A.D.

.1 *Macedonia to 323*

(Option: Class comprehensive works in 949.56012, Albania in 949.65012)

**939**  
*Other parts of ancient world to ca. 640*

.1 *Aegean Islands to 323*

(Option: Class in 949.9012)

Add to base number 939.1 the numbers following 938 in 938.01–938.09, e.g., Hellenistic period 939.108

.18 *Crete to 323*

(Option: Class in 949.98012)

.2 *Western Asia Minor to ca. 640*

Class here comprehensive works on Asia Minor

(Option: Class in 956.1012)

For eastern Asia Minor, see 939.3

.3 *Eastern Asia Minor and Cyprus to ca. 640*

(Option: Class in 956.1012)

.37 *Cyprus to ca. 640*

(Option: Class in 956.45012)

.4 *Middle East to ca. 640*

(Option: Class Middle East in 956.012)

Class a specific part of Middle East not provided for here with the part, e.g., Egypt 932, Palestine 933

.43 *Syria*

Including Antioch

(Option: Class Antioch in 956.4, Syria in 956.9101)

*Add as instructed under 930–990*
.44 *Phoenicia to ca. 640  
   (Option: Class in 956.9202)

.46 *Edom and Moab to 70  
   (Option: Class Edom in 956.94901; Moab in 956.95601)

.47 *Arabia Deserta to 637  
   (Option: Class in 956.701)

.48 *Arabia Petraea to 622  
   Including Sinai Peninsula; Petra  
   (Option: Class Arabia Petraea in 953.01; Sinai Peninsula in 953.101; Petra in 956.95701)

.49 *Arabia Felix to 622  
   Class here comprehensive works on Arabia  
   (Option: Class Arabia Felix, Arabia in 953.01)  
   For Arabia Deserta, see 939.47; Arabia Petraea, 939.48

.6 *Central Asia to ca. 640  
   Including earliest history of Afghanistan to ca. 640 [formerly also 958.101]  
   (Option: Class in 958)

.7 *North Africa to ca. 640  
   (Option: Class in 961.01)  
   For Egypt, see 932

.71 *Mauretania to 647  
   (Option: Class in 965.01, Morocco in 964.01)

.72 *Numidia to 647  
   (Option: Class in 965.501)

.73 *Carthage to 647  
   (Option: Class in 961.101)

.74 *Tripolis to 644  
   Class here comprehensive works on ancient Libya  
   (Option: Class in 961.201)  
   For Cyrenaica, see 939.75; Marmarica, 939.76

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.75 *Cyrenaica to 644
   (Option: Class in 961.201)

.76 *Marmarica to 644
   (Option: Class in 961.201)

.77 *Gaetulia to 647
   (Option: Class in 965.701)

.78 *Ethiopia to 500
   (Option: Class in 962.501)

.8 *Southeastern Europe to ca. 640
   (Option: Class Hungary in 943.9011, Turkey in Europe in 949.61012,
    Yugoslavia in 949.7012, Serbia in 949.71011, Bulgaria in 949.77012, Romania
    in 949.8012)

> 940–990 General history of modern world, of extraterrestrial worlds

Class here area studies; comprehensive works on ancient and modern history of
specific continents, countries, localities

Class comprehensive works in 909

For general history of ancient world, see 930

940 General history of Europe  Western Europe

SUMMARY

940.01–.09 Standard subdivisions
   .1 Early history to 1453
   .2 1453–
   .3 World War I, 1914–1918
   .4 Military history of World War I
   .5 1918–

941 British Isles
   .01–.08 [Historical periods of British Isles]
      .1 Scotland
      .2 Northeastern Scotland
      .3 Southeastern Scotland
      .4 Southwestern Scotland
      .5 Ireland
      .6 Ulster  Northern Ireland
      .7 Republic of Ireland
      .8 Leinster
      .9 Munster

942 England and Wales
   .01–.08 [Historical periods of England and Wales]

*Add as instructed under 930–990
940 Dewey Decimal Classification

943 Central Europe Germany
.000 1-.000 9 Standard subdivisions of central Europe
.001-.009 Standard subdivisions of Germany
.01-.08 Historical periods of Germany
.1 Northeastern Germany
.6 Austria and Liechtenstein
.7 Czechoslovakia
.8 Poland
.9 Hungary

944 France and Monaco
.01-.08 Historical periods of France
.9 Southeastern France and Monaco Provence region

945 Italian Peninsula and adjacent islands Italy
.01-.09 Historical periods of Italy
.4 Emilia-Romagna region and San Marino
.6 Central Italy and Vatican City
.8 Sicily and adjacent islands

946 Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands Spain
.000 1-.000 9 Standard subdivisions of Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands
.001-.009 Standard subdivisions of Spain
.01-.08 Historical periods of Spain
.7 Eastern Spain and Andorra
.8 Andalusia autonomous community and Gibraltar
.9 Portugal

947 Eastern Europe Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (Soviet Union)
.000 1-.000 9 Standard subdivisions of eastern Europe
.001-.009 Standard subdivisions of Russia
.01-.08 Historical periods of Russia

948 Northern Europe Scandinavia
.01-.08 Historical periods of Scandinavia
.1 Norway
.2 Southeastern Norway
.3 Southwestern Norway
.4 Central and northern Norway
.5 Sweden
.6 Southern Sweden
.7 Central Sweden
.8 Northern Sweden
.9 Denmark and Finland

949 Other parts of Europe
.1 Northwestern islands
.2 Netherlands (Holland)
.3 Southern Low Countries Belgium
.4 Switzerland
.5 Greece
.6 Balkan Peninsula
.7 Yugoslavia and Bulgaria
.8 Romania
.9 Aegean Sea islands

.01-.09 Standard subdivisions
As modified under 930–990
940

General history of Europe

Western Europe

940

.1 Early history to 1453

Class here Middle Ages, 476–1453
Class ancient history to ca. 499 in 936

(.11) Ancient history to ca. 499
(Optional number; prefer 936)

.12 Ca. 500–799
Class here Dark Ages

.14 Age of feudalism, 800–1099

.142 800–899
.144 900–999
.146 1000–1099

For period of First Crusade, see 940.18

.17 1100–1453
For period of Crusades, 1100–1299, see 940.18; 1300–1453, 940.19

.18 Period of Crusades, 1100–1299
Including First Crusade, 1096–1099
Class comprehensive works on Crusades in 909.07

.182 1100–1199
.184 1200–1299
.19 1300–1453

.192 1300–1399
Including period of Black Death

.193 1400–1453

.2 1453–
For World War I, see 940.3; 1918– , 940.5

.21 Renaissance period, 1453–1517
Class here 15th century
For 1400–1453, see 940.193
See also 945.05 for Renaissance period in Italy

.22 1517–1789
For Reformation period, 1517–1648, see 940.23; 1648–1789, 940.25

.23 Reformation period, 1517–1648
For Thirty Years’ War, see 940.24

.232 1517–1618

721
.24  Thirty Years’ War, 1618–1648
.25  1648–1789
.252  1648–1715
   Class here 17th century
   Class 1600–1648 in 940.23
.252 5  1688–1701
   Class here War of the League of Augsburg (War of the Grand
   Alliance), 1688–1697
   Class North American aspects of the war in 973.25
.252 6  War of the Spanish Succession, 1701–1714
   Class North American aspects of the war in 973.25
.253  1715–1789
.253 2  War of the Austrian Succession, 1740–1748
   Class North American aspects of the war in 973.26
.253 4  Seven Years’ War, 1756–1763
   Class North American aspects of the war in 973.26
.27  Period of French Revolution and Napoleon I, 1789–1815
   Class here Napoleonic Wars in specific European countries, e.g., war in
   Spain, 1807–1814
.28  1815–1914
   Class here comprehensive works on 19th-20th centuries
   Class comprehensive works on 20th century in 940.5
.282  1815–1829
.283  1830–1848
.284  Revolutions of 1848
.285  1848–1859
.286  1860–1869
.287  1870–1899
.288  1900–1914
.3 World War I, 1914–1918

For military history, see 940.4

[.308] World War I with respect to kinds of persons

Do not use; class in 940.315

.31 Social, political, economic history

Add to base number 940.31 the numbers following 940.531 in
940.5311–940.5317, e.g., internment camps 940.317 [formerly 940.472]

For diplomatic history, see 940.32

.32 Diplomatic history

Class diplomatic causes in 940.3112, efforts to preserve or restore peace in
940.312, diplomatic results in 940.314

.322 Allies and associated powers

Add to base number 940.322 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., diplomatic
history of Great Britain 940.32241

.324 Central Powers

Add to base number 940.324 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., diplomatic
history of Germany 940.32443

.325 Neutrals

Add to base number 940.325 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., diplomatic
history of Switzerland 940.325494

.33 Participation of specific groups of countries

Class a specific activity with the activity, e.g., diplomatic history among
neutrals 940.325

For participation of specific countries and localities, see
940.34–940.39

.332 Allies and associated powers

.334 Central Powers

.335 Neutrals

.34–.39 Participation of specific countries and localities

Class here mobilization in specific countries and localities

Add to base number 940.3 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., participation of
Great Britain 940.341

Class a specific activity with the activity, e.g., efforts by a specific country to
preserve or restore peace 940.312
.4 Military history of World War I

SUMMARY

940.400 1-.400 9 Standard subdivisions
   .401-.409 [General aspects]
   .41 Operations and units
   .42 Land campaigns and battles of 1914–1916
   .43 Land campaigns and battles of 1917–1918
   .44 Air operations
   .45 Naval operations
   .46-.48 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials; prisoner-of-war camps; health and social services; other topics

.400 1-.400 8 Standard subdivisions
.400 9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment
   Class military participation of specific countries in 940.409, personal narratives in 940.481–940.482

.401 Strategy
   .401 2 Allies and associated powers
   .401 3 Central Powers

.402 Mobilization
   For mobilization in specific countries and localities, see 940.34–940.39

.403 Racial minorities as troops

.405 Repressive measures and atrocities
   Class internment camps in 940.317

.409 Military participation of specific countries
   Add to base number 940.409 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., military participation of Germany 940.40943

.41 Operations and units
   Class land campaigns and battles by year in 940.42–940.43
   For air operations, see 940.44; naval operations, 940.45

> 940.412–940.413 Military units and their operations
   Class here organization, history, rosters, service records
   Class comprehensive works in 940.41; units engaged in a special service with the service, e.g., ambulance companies 940.4753; operations in specific theaters in 940.414–940.416
   For rolls of honor and lists of dead, see 940.467

.412 Military units of Allies and associated powers
   Add to base number 940.412 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., French units 940.41244

724
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.413</th>
<th>Military units of Central Powers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Add to base number 940.413 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Austrian units 940.413436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.414</td>
<td>Operations in Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.414 3</td>
<td>German fronts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.414 4</td>
<td>French front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class here western front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class German western front in 940.4143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.414 5</td>
<td>Italian front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.414 7</td>
<td>Russian front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class here eastern front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class German eastern front in 940.4143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.415</td>
<td>Operations in Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.416</td>
<td>Operations in Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.42</td>
<td>Land campaigns and battles of 1914–1916</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.421</td>
<td>1914, western front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.422</td>
<td>1914, eastern front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.423</td>
<td>1914, other areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.424</td>
<td>1915, western and Austro-Italian fronts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.425</td>
<td>1915, eastern Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.426</td>
<td>1915, other areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.427</td>
<td>1916, European fronts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.427 2</td>
<td>Western and Austro-Italian fronts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.427 5</td>
<td>Eastern front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.429</td>
<td>1916, other areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.429 1</td>
<td>Asia Minor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.43</td>
<td>Land campaigns and battles of 1917–1918</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.431</td>
<td>1917, western and Austro-Italian fronts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.432</td>
<td>1917, eastern front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.433</td>
<td>1917, other areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.434</td>
<td>1918, western and Austro-Italian fronts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including final German offensives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class final allied offensives in 940.435–940.436</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
.435 Allied offensives of July 18–September 24, 1918
.436 Allied offensives of September 25–November 11, 1918
.437 1918, eastern front
.438 1918, other areas
.439 Armistice, November 11, 1918
.44 Air operations
   Including antiaircraft defenses
   Class here combined air and naval operations
   For naval operations, see 940.45
[.441] Activities
   Number discontinued; class in 940.44
.442 Air raids
   Class specific events by year in 940.444–940.448
.443 Air bases

> 940.444–940.448 Events by year

   Class comprehensive works in 940.44
   .444 Events of 1914
   .445 Events of 1915
   .446 Events of 1916
   .447 Events of 1917
   .448 Events of 1918
   .449 Operations of specific countries
      Class here aircraft, fliers, units
      Add to base number 940.449 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., air
      operations of Germany 940.44943
      Class events by year regardless of country in 940.444–940.448

.45 Naval operations
.451 Submarine warfare
.451.2 German use
   Class events by year in 940.4514
21 General history of Europe

Western Europe

Class events by year in 940.451

.4513 Allied use

Add to base number 940.4513 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., United States use of submarines 940.451373

.4514 Specific events

.4516 Antisubmarine warfare

Class events by year in 940.4514

.452 Blockades and blockade running

For events by year, see 940.454–940.458

.453 Naval bases

> 940.454–940.458 Events by year

Class comprehensive works in 940.45, events in submarine warfare by year in 940.4514

.454 Events of 1914

.455 Events of 1915

.456 Events of 1916

.457 Events of 1917

.458 Events of 1918

.459 Naval operations of specific countries

Class here ships, crews, units

Add to base number 940.459 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., naval operations of Italy 940.45945

Class events by year regardless of country in 940.454–940.458

.46–.48 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials; prisoner-of-war camps; health and social services; other topics

Add to base number 940.4 the numbers following 940.54 in 940.546–940.548, e.g., prisoner-of-war camps 940.472; however, internment camps relocated from 940.472 to 940.317

1918–

SUMMARY

940.51 1918–1929

.52 1930–1939

.53 World War II, 1939–1945

.54 Military history of World War II

.55 1945–

.51 1918–1929
.52  1930–1939
    Class Holocaust in 940.5318

.53  World War II, 1939–1945
    Class here Sino-Japanese Conflict, 1937–1945
    Class Sino-Japanese Conflict during 1937–1941 in 951.042
    For military history, see 940.54

[.530 8]  World War II with respect to kinds of persons
    Do not use; class in 940.5315

.530 92  Persons
    Class personal narratives in 940.5481–940.5482

.531  Social, political, economic history
    For diplomatic history, see 940.532

.531 1  Causes

.531 12  Political and diplomatic

.531 13  Economic

.531 14  Social and psychological

.531 2  Efforts to preserve or restore peace

.531 4  Political, diplomatic, economic results
    Class results in and effects on a specific country with history of the
    country, e.g., on Norway 948.1045

.531 41  Conferences and treaties
    For consequences of conferences and treaties, see 940.53142

.531 42  Consequences of conferences and treaties

.531 422  Reparations

.531 424  Territorial questions

.531 425  Establishment of new nations

.531 426  Establishment of mandates

.531 44  Reconstruction

.531 5  Relation of kinds of persons to the war
    Class kinds of persons in relation to a specific aspect of the war and
    related events with the aspect or event, e.g., Jews and the Holocaust
    940.5318

.531 503–.531 587  Classes by various characteristics
    Add to base number 940.5315 notation 03–87 from Table 7,
    e.g., scientists 940.53155; however, class refugees in
    940.53159; children and other noncombatants, pacifists, enemy
    sympathizers in 940.5316

728
.531 59  Refugees
.531 6  Noncombatants, pacifists, enemy sympathizers
.531 61  Noncombatants
  Example: children
.531 62  Pacifists
.531 63  Enemy sympathizers
.531 7  Concentration and related camps
  Examples: internment camps [formerly 940.5472], labor camps
  Class the camps as a part of the Holocaust in 940.5318,
  prisoner-of-war camps in 940.5472
.531 709  Historical, geographical, persons treatment
  Use area notation to indicate country maintaining the camps,
  e.g., internment camps maintained by the United States
  940.53170973
  Class camps by location in 940.53174–940.53179
.531 74–.531 79  Camps by location
  Regardless of kind of camp
  Add to base number 940.5317 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
  Manzanar internment camp for Japanese-Americans
  940.531779487
  Class extermination camps in 940.5318
.531 8  Holocaust
.532  Diplomatic history
  Class diplomatic causes in 940.53112, efforts to preserve or restore peace
  in 940.5312, diplomatic results in 940.5314
.532 2  United Nations (Allies)
  Add to base number 940.5322 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
  diplomatic history of Great Britain 940.532241
.532 4  Axis Powers
  Add to base number 940.5324 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
  diplomatic history of Japan 940.532452
.532 5  Neutrals
  Add to base number 940.5325 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
  diplomatic history of Switzerland 940.5325494
Participation of specific groups of countries

Class here national groups, anti- and pro-Axis national groups, mobilization

Class a specific activity with the activity, e.g., diplomatic history among Axis Powers 940.5324

For participation of specific countries, see 940.534–940.539

United Nations (Allies)

Axis Powers

Neutrals

Occupied countries

Class here governments-in-exile, underground movements

For countries occupied by Axis Powers, see 940.5337; by United Nations (Allies) 940.5338

Countries occupied by Axis Powers

Countries occupied by United Nations (Allies)

Participation of specific countries

Class here mobilization in specific countries

Add to base number 940.53 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., participation of Great Britain 940.5341

Class a specific activity with the activity, e.g., efforts by a specific country to preserve or restore peace 940.5312

Military history of World War II

SUMMARY

940.540 01–.540 09 Standard subdivisions

.540 1–.540 9 [General aspects]

.541 Operations and units

.542 Campaigns and battles by theater

.544 Air operations

.545 Naval operations

.546 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

.547 Prisoner-of-war camps; medical and social services

.548 Other topics

.540 01–.540 08 Standard subdivisions

.540 09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class military participation of specific countries in 940.5409, personal narratives in 940.5481–940.5482

.540 1 Strategy

.540 12 United Nations (Allies)

.540 13 Axis Powers
.540 2 Mobilization

For mobilization in specific countries, see 940.534–940.539

.540 3 Afro-Americans and American native peoples as troops

.540 4 Racial minorities as troops

For Afro-Americans and American native peoples as troops, see 940.5403

.540 5 Repressive measures and atrocities

Class concentration and related camps in 940.5317, Holocaust in 940.5318

.540 9 Military participation of specific countries

Add to base number 940.5409 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., military participation of Germany 940.540943

.541 Operations and units

For campaigns and battles by theater, see 940.542; air operations, 940.544; naval operations, 940.545

> 940.541 2–940.541 3 Military units and their operations

Class here organization, history, rosters, service records

Class comprehensive works in 940.541; units engaged in a special service with the service, e.g., ambulance companies 940.54753

For rolls of honor and lists of dead, see 940.5467

.541 2 Military units of United Nations (Allies)

Add to base number 940.5412 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., French units 940.541244

.541 3 Military units of Axis Powers

Add to base number 940.5413 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Japanese units 940.541352

.542 Campaigns and battles by theater

.542 1 In European theater

Add to base number 940.5421 the numbers following —4 in —41–49 from Table 2, e.g., battles in France 940.542144

.542 3 In Middle East and African theaters

.542 5 In east and southeast Asian and East Indian theaters

Examples: theaters covering Asian mainland, Japan, Netherlands East Indies, Philippines

Class Sino-Japanese Conflict during 1937–1941 in 951.042
.542 6 In Pacific Ocean theater
   Examples: theaters covering Hawaiian Islands, South Pacific Ocean islands

   For East Indian theater, see 940.5425
   See also 940.5425 for Japan and Philippines

.542 8 In American theater
.542 9 In other areas

.544 Air operations
   Including antiaircraft defenses
   Class here combined air and naval operations

   For naval operations, see 940.545

[.544 1] Activities
   Number discontinued; class in 940.544

.544 2 Campaigns and battles

   For campaigns and battles by theater, see 940.542

.544 3 Air bases
   Add to base number 940.5443 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., air bases in England 940.544342

.544 9 Operations of specific countries
   Class here aircraft, fliers, units
   Add to base number 940.5449 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., operations of Germany 940.544943
   Class campaigns and battles of specific countries in 940.5442

.545 Naval operations

   For campaigns and battles by theater, see 940.542

.545 1 Submarine warfare
.545 16 Antisubmarine warfare
.545 2 Blockades and blockade running
.545 3 Naval bases

.545 9 Operations of specific countries
   Class here ships, crews, units
   Add to base number 940.5459 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Australian naval operations 940.545994
   Class a specific kind of operation with the operation, e.g., blockades 940.5452
.546 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
   Including commemorative meetings, flag presentations, decorations and awards
   Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event, e.g., Battle of the Coral Sea 940.5426

.546 5 Monuments and cemeteries
   Add to base number 940.5465 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., monuments and cemeteries in France 940.546544

.546 7 Rolls of honor and lists of dead
   Add to base number 940.5467 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., lists of Japanese dead 940.546752

.547 Prisoner-of-war camps; medical and social services

.547 2 Prisoner-of-war camps
   Add to base number 940.5472 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., prisoner-of-war camps maintained by Germany 940.547243
   Internment camps relocated to 940.5317

.547 3 Prisoners exchange

.547 5 Medical services
   For hospitals, see 940.5476

.547 52 Sanitary affairs

.547 53 Ambulance services

.547 54–.547 59 Services of specific countries
   Add to base number 940.5475 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., French medical services 940.547544

.547 6 Hospitals

.547 609 Historical and persons treatment
   Class hospitals in specific places in 940.54763

.547 63 In specific places
   Add to base number 940.54763 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., hospitals in Rome 940.5476345632
   Class hospitals maintained in specific places by specific countries in 940.54764–940.54769

.547 64–.547 69 Maintained by specific countries
   Add to base number 940.5476 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., hospitals maintained by Italy 940.547645

.547 7 Relief and welfare services

.547 709 Historical and persons treatment
   Class activities in specific places in 940.54779
.547 71 Activities of Red Cross
.547 78 Activities conducted by specific countries
   Add to base number 940.54778 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
   activities conducted by Switzerland 940.54778494
   Class Red Cross activities conducted by specific countries in
   940.54771
.547 79 Activities in specific places
   Add to base number 940.54779 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
   welfare activities in Paris 940.5477944361
   Class welfare activities conducted in specific places by specific
   countries in 940.54778, activities of Red Cross in specific places
   in 940.54771
.547 8 Religious life and chaplain services
.548 Other topics

> 940.548 1–940.548 2 Personal narratives
   Class comprehensive works in 940.548, personal narratives on a specific subject
   with the subject, using notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., on blockade running
   940.5452092
.548 1 Personal narratives of individuals from United Nations (Allies)
   Add to base number 940.5481 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
   personal narratives of Britons 940.548141
.548 2 Personal narratives of individuals from Axis Powers
   Add to base number 940.5482 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
   personal narratives of Germans 940.548243
.548 3 Military life and customs of United Nations (Allies)
   Add to base number 940.5483 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
   military life in United States Navy 940.548373
.548 4 Military life and customs of Axis Powers
   Add to base number 940.5484 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
   military life in Luftwaffe 940.548443
.548 5 Unconventional warfare
   Examples: infiltration, intelligence, sabotage, subversion
   For unconventional warfare of United Nations, see 940.5486; of
   Axis Powers, 940.5487; propaganda, 940.5488
.548 6 Unconventional warfare of United Nations (Allies)
   Add to base number 940.5486 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
   intelligence operation of United States 940.548673
.548 7 Unconventional warfare of Axis Powers
   Add to base number 940.5487 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
   intelligence operations of Germany 940.548743

.548 8 Propaganda

.548 809 Historical and persons treatment
   Class propaganda in specific places in 940.54889

.548 86 By United Nations (Allies)
   Add to base number 940.54886 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
   propaganda by United States 940.5488673

.548 87 By Axis Powers
   Add to base number 940.54887 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
   propaganda by Germany 940.5488743

.548 89 Propaganda in specific places
   Add to base number 940.54889 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
   propaganda in United States 940.5488973
   Class propaganda by one side or one country regardless of location
   in 940.54886–940.54887

.55 1945–

.554 1945–1949

.555 1950–1959

.556 1960–1969

.557 1970–1979

.558 1980–1989

.559 1990–1999

941 *British Isles

Class here Great Britain, United Kingdom

See Manual at 941

SUMMARY

941.01–.08 [Historical periods of British Isles]
   .1 Scotland
   .2 Northeastern Scotland
   .3 Southeastern Scotland
   .4 Southwestern Scotland
   .5 Ireland
   .6 Ulster Northern Ireland
   .7 Republic of Ireland
   .8 Leinster
   .9 Munster

*Add as instructed under 930–990

735
SUMMARY

941.01 Early history to 1066

.02-.05 From Norman period through Tudor period, 1066–1603

.06 Stuart and Commonwealth periods, 1603–1714

.07 Period of House of Hanover, 1714–1837

.01 Early history to 1066

Class ancient history to 410 in 936.1

(.012) Ancient history to 410

(Optional number; prefer 936.1)

Add to base number 941.012 the numbers following 936.20 in 942.013–942.019, e.g., period of Danish kings 941.018

.02-.05 From Norman period through Tudor period, 1066–1603

Add to base number 941.0 the numbers following 942.0 in 942.02–942.05, e.g., reign of Henry VIII 941.052

.06 Stuart and Commonwealth periods, 1603–1714

(Optional: Class here Anglo-Dutch Wars; prefer 949.204)

.061 Reign of James I, 1603–1625

.062 Reign of Charles I, 1625–1649

.063 Period as Commonwealth, 1649–1660

For Oliver Cromwell, see 941.064; Richard Cromwell, 941.065

.064 Protectorate of Oliver Cromwell, 1653–1658

.065 Protectorate of Richard Cromwell, 1658–1659

.066 Reign of Charles II, 1660–1685 (Restoration)

.067 1685–1689

Class here reign of James II, 1685–1688

.068 Reigns of William III (of Orange) and Mary II, 1689–1702

.069 Reign of Anne, 1702–1714

.07 Period of House of Hanover, 1714–1837

.071 Reign of George I, 1714–1727

.072 Reign of George II, 1727–1760

(Optional: Class here War of Jenkins’ Ear; prefer 946.055)
.073 Reign of George III, 1760–1820
  Including formation of United Kingdom

.074 Reign of George IV, 1820–1830

.075 Reign of William IV, 1830–1837

.08 Period of Victoria and House of Windsor, 1837–

.081 Reign of Victoria, 1837–1901
  Class here 19th century
  (Option: Class here Crimean War, South African [Second Anglo-Boer] War; prefer 947.073 for Crimean War, 968.048 for South African [Second Anglo-Boer] War)
  Class 1800–1820 in 941.073, 1820–1830 in 941.074, 1830–1837 in 941.075

.082 1901–
  For reign of George V, see 941.083; period of World War II, 941.084; 1945–, 941.085

.082 3 Reign of Edward VII, 1901–1910

.083 Reign of George V, 1910–1936

.084 1936–1945
  Class here reigns of Edward VIII, 1936, and George VI, 1936–1952; period of World War II, 1939–1945
  Class reign of George VI during 1945–1949 in 941.0854, during 1950–1952 in 941.0855

.085 1945–
  Class here reign of Elizabeth II, 1952–

.085 4 1945–1949

.085 5 1950–1959

.085 6 1960–1969

.085 7 1970–1979

.085 8 1980–1989

.085 9 1990–

.1 Scotland
  For northeastern Scotland, see 941.2; southeastern Scotland, 941.3; southwestern Scotland, 941.4

.101 Early history to 1057
  Class ancient history to 410 in 936.1

*Add as instructed under 930–990
Ancient history of northern Britain to 410
(Optional number; prefer 936.1)

.102 1057–1314
Including Battle of Bannockburn, 1314

.103 1314–1424

.104 Reigns of James I–James V, 1424–1542

.105 Reformation period, 1542–1603
Class here 16th century
Class 1500–1542 in 941.104

.106–.108 From personal union with England to present time, 1603–
Add to base number 941.10 the numbers following 941.0 in
941.06–941.08, e.g., reign of Edward VII 941.10823

.2 *Northeastern Scotland
Add to base number 941.2 the numbers following 941.1 in 941.101–941.108,
e.g., Reformation period 941.205

.3 *Southeastern Scotland
Add to base number 941.3 the numbers following 941.1 in 941.101–941.108,
e.g., Reformation period 941.305

.4 *Southwestern Scotland
Add to base number 941.4 the numbers following 941.1 in 941.101–941.108,
e.g., Reformation period 941.405

.5 *Ireland

.501 Early history to 1086
Including Battle of Clontarf, 1014
Class ancient history to 410 in 936.1

(.501 2) Ancient history to 410
(Optional number; prefer 936.1)

.502 1086–1171

.503 Under House of Plantagenet, 1171–1399

.504 Under Houses of Lancaster and York, 1399–1485

.505 Under Tudors, 1485–1603

.506 Under Stuarts, 1603–1691

.507 1691–1799

*Add as instructed under 930–990
General history of Europe

Western Europe

1800–

1800–1899

1900–

1900–1921

Including Sinn Fein Rebellion (Easter Rebellion), 1916; Anglo-Irish War, 1919–1921

1921–1949

1950–1969

1970–

*Ulster

Northern Ireland

1800–

1800–1899

1900–

1900–1920

Including Government of Ireland Act, 1920

1921–1949

1949–1968

1969–

*Republic of Ireland

For Leinster, see 941.8; Munster, 941.9

1800–

1800–1899

1900–

1900–1921

1922–1949

Including period as Irish Free State, 1922–1937; as Eire, 1937–1949

1949–1969

1970–

*Leinster

1800–

Add to base number 941.808 the numbers following 941.708 in 941.7081–941.7082, e.g., 1949–1969 941.80823

*Add as instructed under 930–990
941 *Munster

.908 1800–

Add to base number 941.908 the numbers following 941.708 in 941.7081–941.7082, e.g., 1949–1969 941.90823

942 *England and Wales

See Manual at 941

SUMMARY

942.01 Early history to 1066

.02 Norman period, 1066–1154

.03 Period of House of Plantagenet, 1154–1399

.04 Period of Houses of Lancaster and York, 1399–1485

.05 Tudor period, 1485–1603

.06–.08 From Stuart and Commonwealth periods to present time, 1603–

.01 Early history to 1066

Class ancient history to 410 in 936.2

(.012) Ancient history of southern Britain to 410

(Optional number; prefer 936.2)

Add to base number 942.012 the numbers following 936.20 in 936.201–936.204, e.g., Celtic period 942.0122

.013 Pre-Anglo-Saxon period, 410–449

.014 449–ca. 600

Including reign of King Arthur

.015 Period of Heptarchy, ca. 600–829

Class supremacy of Wessex in 942.016

.015 3 Supremacy of Northumberland, 603–685

.015 7 Supremacy of Mercia, 757–796

.016 Supremacy of Wessex, 829–924

Class here 9th century

Class 800–829 in 942.015

.016 1 Reign of Egbert, 829–839

.016 2 Reign of Ethelwulf, 839–858

.016 3 Reigns of Ethelbald, Ethelbert, Ethelred I, 858–871

.016 4 Reign of Alfred the Great, 871–899

.016 5 Reign of Edward the Elder, 899–924

.017 Reigns of Saxon kings of England, 924–1016

.017 1 Reign of Athelstan, 924–940

*Add as instructed under 930–990
| .017 2 | Reigns of Edmund I, Edred, Edwy, 940–959 |
| .017 3 | Reigns of Edgar and Edward the Martyr, 959–978 |
| .017 4 | Reigns of Ethelred II and Edmund II, 978–1016 |
| .018  | Reigns of Danish kings, 1016–1042 |
|  | Class here 11th century |
|  | Class 1000–1016 in 942.0174, 1042–1066 in 942.019, 1066–1099 in 942.02 |
| .018 1 | Reign of Canute, 1016–1035 |
| .018 2 | Reign of Harold I, 1035–1040 |
| .018 3 | Reign of Hardecanute, 1040–1042 |
| .019  | 1042–1066 |
|  | Contains reigns of Edward the Confessor, 1042–1066, and Harold II, 1066 |
| .02  | Norman period, 1066–1154 |
|  | Class here 12th century |
|  | Class 1154–1199 in 942.03 |
| .021  | Reign of William I, 1066–1087 |
|  | Including Battle of Hastings, 1066 |
| .022  | Reign of William II, 1087–1100 |
| .023  | Reign of Henry I, 1100–1135 |
| .024  | Reign of Stephen, 1135–1154 |
| .03  | Period of House of Plantagenet, 1154–1399 |
| .031  | Reign of Henry II, 1154–1189 |
| .032  | Reign of Richard I, 1189–1199 |
| .033  | Reign of John, 1199–1216 |
| .034  | Reign of Henry III, 1216–1272 |
|  | Class here 13th century |
|  | Class 1200–1216 in 942.033, 1272–1299 in 942.035 |
| .035  | Reign of Edward I, 1272–1307 |
| .036  | Reign of Edward II, 1307–1327 |
| .037  | Reign of Edward III, 1327–1377 |
|  | Class here 14th century |
|  | (Option: Class here Hundred Years’ War; prefer 944.025) |
|  | Class 1300–1307 in 942.035, 1307–1327 in 942.036, 1377–1399 in 942.038 |
.038 Reign of Richard II, 1377–1399
.04 Period of Houses of Lancaster and York, 1399–1485
  Class here Wars of the Roses, 1455–1485
.041 Reign of Henry IV, 1399–1413
.042 Reign of Henry V, 1413–1422
.043 Reign of Henry VI, 1422–1461
.044 Reign of Edward IV, 1461–1483
.045 Reign of Edward V, 1483
.046 Reign of Richard III, 1483–1485
.05 Tudor period, 1485–1603
.051 Reign of Henry VII, 1485–1509
.052 Reign of Henry VIII, 1509–1547
.053 Reign of Edward VI, 1547–1553
.054 Reign of Mary I, 1553–1558
.055 Reign of Elizabeth I, 1558–1603
  Including Spanish Armada, 1588
.06–.08 From Stuart and Commonwealth periods to present time, 1603–
  Add to base number 942.0 the numbers following 941.0 in 941.06–941.08,
  e.g., English Civil War 942.062

943 Central Europe    Germany

SUMMARY

943.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of central Europe
  .001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Germany
  .01–.08 Historical periods of Germany
  .1 Northeastern Germany
  .6 Austria and Liechtenstein
  .7 Czechoslovakia
  .8 Poland
  .9 Hungary

.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of central Europe
  As modified under 930–990

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Germany
  As modified under 930–990
### SUMMARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>943.01</td>
<td>Early history to 843</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.02</td>
<td>Period of early Holy Roman Empire, 843–1519</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.03</td>
<td>Period of Reformation and Counter-Reformation, 1519–1618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.04</td>
<td>1618–1705</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.05</td>
<td>1705–1790</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.06</td>
<td>Period of Napoleonic Wars, 1790–1815</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.07</td>
<td>Period of German Confederation, 1815–1866</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.08</td>
<td>1866–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

> 943.01–943.08 Historical periods of Germany

Class comprehensive works in 943

.01 Early history to 843

Class ancient history to 481 in 936.3

(.012) Ancient history to 481

(Optional number; prefer 936.3)

(.012 1) Earliest period to 113 B.C.

(Optional number; prefer 936.301)

(.012 2) Period of contacts with Roman Republic and Empire, 113 B.C.–481 A.D.

(Optional number; prefer 936.302)

.013 Period of Merovingian dynasty in Germany, 481–751

Class comprehensive works on Merovingian dynasty in France and Germany in 944.013

.014 751–843

Class here Carolingian dynasty in Germany, 751–911

Class comprehensive works on Carolingian dynasty in France and Germany in 944.014

*For 843–911, see 943.021*

.02 Period of early Holy Roman Empire, 843–1519

After Treaty of Verdun, 843

.021 843–911

.022 Period of Conrad I and Saxon emperors, 911–1024

.023 Period of Salian (Franconian) emperors and Lothair II, 1024–1137
.024 Hohenstaufen period, 1138–1254
   Including reign of Frederick I Barbarossa, 1152–1190
   Class here 12th century
   Class 1100–1137 in 943.023

For later Hohenstaufen period, see 943.025

.025 Later Hohenstaufen period and Interregnum, 1198–1273

.026 Period of early Hapsburgs and others, 1273–1378

.027 Period of House of Luxemburg, 1378–1438

.028 Reigns of Albert II and Frederick III, 1438–1493
   Class here 15th century
   Class 1400–1438 in 943.027, 1493–1499 in 943.029

.029 Reign of Maximilian I, 1493–1519

.03 Period of Reformation and Counter-Reformation, 1519–1618

.031 Reign of Charles V, 1519–1556
   Including wars with France; Peasants' War, 1524–1525; Schmalkaldic War, 1546–1547
   (Option: Class wars with France in 944.028)

.032 Reign of Ferdinand I, 1556–1564

.033 Reign of Maximilian II, 1564–1576

.034 Reign of Rudolf II, 1576–1612

.035 Reign of Matthias, 1612–1619

.04 1618–1705

.041 Period of Thirty Years' War, 1618–1648
   Class reign of Matthias during Thirty Years' War in 943.035, of Ferdinand II in 943.042, of Ferdinand III in 943.043

.042 Reign of Ferdinand II, 1619–1637

.043 Reign of Ferdinand III, 1637–1657

.044 Reign of Leopold I, 1658–1705

.05 1705–1790
   Class here rise of Prussia

.051 Reign of Joseph I, 1705–1711

.052 Reign of Charles VI, 1711–1740
Class here reign of Frederick the Great, King of Prussia, 1740–1786

For reign of Charles VII, see 943.054; Francis I, 943.055; Joseph II, 943.057

Reign of Charles VII, 1742–1745

Reign of Francis I, 1745–1765

Including period of Seven Years’ War, 1756–1763

Reign of Joseph II, 1765–1790

Period of Napoleonic Wars, 1790–1815

Including Confederation of the Rhine

Period of German Confederation, 1815–1866

Class here 19th century

Class 1800–1815 in 943.06, 1866–1899 in 943.08

1815–1847

1848–1866

Including Schleswig-Holstein War, 1864; Austro-Prussian War (Seven Weeks’ War), 1866

(Option: Class Schleswig-Holstein War in 948.904)

1866–

1866–1871

Class here period of North German Confederation

For Franco-German War, see 943.082

Franco-German War, 1870–1871

(Option: Class in 944.07)

Reign of William I, 1871–1888

Class here German Empire, 1871–1918

For reigns of Frederick III and William II, see 943.084

Reigns of Frederick III and William II, 1888–1918

Period of Weimar Republic, 1918–1933

Period of Third Reich, 1933–1945

1945–

Class here Federal Republic, 1949–

, comprehensive works on

Federal and Democratic Republics

Class German Democratic Republic in 943.1087

1945–1949
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dewey Decimal Classification</th>
<th>Classifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.087 5</td>
<td>1950–1959</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.087 6</td>
<td>1960–1969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.087 7</td>
<td>1970–1979</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.087 8</td>
<td>1980–1989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.087 9</td>
<td>1990–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.1</td>
<td>*Northeastern Germany</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.108 7</td>
<td>German Democratic Republic, 1949–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class here East Germany, 1945–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Add to base number 943.1087 the numbers following 943.087 in 943.0874–943.0879, e.g., 1960–1969 943.10876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.6</td>
<td>*Austria and Liechtenstein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(.601)</td>
<td>Ancient history of Austria to 481</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Optional number; prefer 936.3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

943.602–943.605 Historical periods of Austria

Class comprehensive works in 943.6

| .602 | Medieval period, 481–1500 |
| .602 2 | 481–976 |
| .602 3 | Period of Babenberg dynasty, 976–1246 |
| .602 4 | 1246–1273 |
| .602 5 | Early period of Hapsburgs, 1273–1500 |
| .603 | 1500–1815 |

*See also 940.2532 for War of the Austrian Succession*

| .604 | 1815–1919 |
| .604 2 | 1815–1847 |
| .604 3 | 1848–1867 |
| .604 4 | Period of Austro-Hungarian Monarchy, 1867–1919 |
| .605 | 1919– |
| .605 1 | Period of Republic, 1919–1938 |
| .605 2 | 1938–1955 |
| .605 22 | Anschluss and war periods, 1938–1945 |

*Add as instructed under 930–990*
943

General history of Europe

Western Europe

.605 23 1945–1955
.605 3 1955–

.64  *Western Austria, and Liechtenstein
.648  †Liechtenstein

Class ancient history to 481 in 936.3

.7  *Czechoslovakia

.702 Early history to 1918

Class here Kingdom of Bohemia

.702 1 To 907

Including Great Moravian Empire

.702 2 907–1526
.702 23 Period of Přemyslid dynasty, 907–1306
.702 24 Period of Luxembourg dynasty, 1306–1526

Including Hussite Wars, 1419–1436

.702 3 1526–1815
.702 32 1526–1620
.702 33 1620–1800
.702 34 1800–1815
.702 4 1815–1918

.703 1918–1945

.703 2 Period of Czechoslovak Republic, 1918–1939
.703 3 1939–1945

Class here Protectorate of Bohemia and Moravia

Slovak Republic relocated to 943.73033

.704 1945–

.704 2 1945–1968

Including reform and repression, 1968

.704 3 1968–

.73  *Slovakia

Add to base number 943.73 the numbers following 943.7 in
943.702–943.704, e.g., Slovak Republic 943.73033 [formerly 943.7033]

*Add as instructed under 930–990
†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods
.8  *Poland

.802  Early history to 1795

.802 2  To 1370

   Including period of Piast dynasty

.802 3  Period of Jagellonian dynasty, 1370–1572

.802 4  Period of elective kings, 1572–1697

.802 5  Period of Saxon dynasty and partitions, 1697–1795

   Including partitions of 1772, 1793, 1795

.803  Period of foreign rule, 1795–1918

.803 2  1795–1862

.803 3  1863–1918

.804  Period of Republic, 1918–1939

.805  1939–

.805 3  1939–1945

.805 4  1945–1956

.805 5  1956–1980

.805 6  1980–

.9  *Hungary

.901  Early history to 894

   Class ancient history to ca. 640 in 939.8

(.901 1)  Ancient history to ca. 640

   (Optional number; prefer 939.8)

.902  Period of Arpad dynasty, 894–1301

.903  Period of elective kings, 1301–1526

.904  Turkish and Hapsburg periods, 1526–1918

.904 1  Turkish period, 1526–1686

.904 2  Hapsburg period, 1686–1918

   For period of Austro-Hungarian Monarchy, see 943.9043

.904 3  Period of Austro-Hungarian Monarchy, 1867–1918

.905  1918–

.905 1  1918–1941

.905 2  1942–1956

   Including uprising and suppression, 1956

.905 3  1956–

*Add as instructed under 930–990

*Add as instructed under 930–990
**France and Monaco**

**SUMMARY**

944.01 Early history to 987
944.02 Period of growth of royal power, 987–1589
944.03 Bourbon period, 1589–1789
944.04 Revolutionary period, 1789–1804
944.05 Period of First Empire, 1804–1815
944.06 Period of Restoration, 1815–1848
944.07 Period of Second Republic and Second Empire (period of Napoleon III), 1848–1870
944.08 1870–

> 944.01–944.08 Historical periods of France

Class comprehensive works in 944

.01 Early history to 987

Class ancient history to 486 in 936.4

(.012) Ancient history to 486

(Optional number; prefer 936.4)

(.012 1) Earliest period to 125 B.C.

(Optional number; prefer 936.401)

(.012 2) Gallo-Roman period, 125 B.C.–486 A.D.

(Optional number; prefer 936.402)

.013 Period of Merovingian dynasty, 486–751

Class here comprehensive works on Merovingian dynasty in France and Germany

For Merovingian dynasty in Germany, see 943.013

.014 Period of Carolingian dynasty, 751–987

Class here comprehensive works on Carolingian dynasty in France and Germany

For Carolingian dynasty in Germany, see 943.014

.02 Period of growth of royal power, 987–1589

.021 Period of House of Capet, 987–1328

Including reigns of Hugh Capet, Robert II, Henry I, 987–1060

Class reigns of other Capetian kings in 944.022–944.024

.022 Reigns of Philip I, Louis VI, Louis VII, 1060–1180

.023 Reigns of Philip II, Louis VIII, Louis IX, 1180–1270

.024 Reigns of Philip III, Philip IV, Louis X, Jean I, Philip V, Charles IV, 1270–1328

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.025 Period of House of Valois, 1328–1589
   Including reigns of Philip VI, Jean II, Charles V, 1328–1380
   Class here Hundred Years’ War, 1337–1453
   (Option: Class Hundred Years’ War in 942.037)
   Class reigns of other Valois kings in 944.026–944.029

.026 Reigns of Charles VI and Charles VII, 1380–1461

.027 Reigns of Louis XI, Charles VIII, Louis XII, 1461–1515
   Class here comprehensive works on French invasions of Italy, 1494–1559
   (Option: Class French invasions of Italy in 945.06)
   Class invasions during period of House of Angoulême in 944.028

.028 Period of House of Angoulême, 1515–1589
   Including reigns of Francis I and Henry II, 1515–1559
   (Option: Class here wars with Holy Roman Emperor Charles V; prefer 943.031)

   For reigns of Francis II, Charles IX, Henry III, see 944.029

.029 Reigns of Francis II, Charles IX, Henry III, 1559–1589

.03 Bourbon period, 1589–1789
   .031 Reign of Henry IV, 1589–1610
   .032 Reign of Louis XIII, 1610–1643
   .033 Reign of Louis XIV, 1643–1715
      Including War of Devolution, 1667–1668
      Class here 17th century
      Class 1600–1610 in 944.031, 1610–1643 in 944.032

   .034 Reign of Louis XV, 1715–1774
      Class here 18th century
      Class a specific part of 18th century not provided for here with the part, e.g., Reign of Terror 944.044

   .035 1774–1789
      Class here period of Louis XVI, 1774–1792
      Class period of Louis XVI during 1789–1792 in 944.041

.04 Revolutionary period, 1789–1804
   .041 Period of Estates-General, National Assembly, Legislative Assembly, 1789–1792
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| .042    | Period of First Republic, 1792–1799  
*For period of National Convention, see 944.043; Directory, 944.045* |
| .043    | Period of National Convention, 1792–1795  
*For Reign of Terror, see 944.044* |
| .044    | Period of Reign of Terror, 1793–1794 |
| .045    | Period of Directory, 1795–1799 |
| .046    | Period of Consulate, 1799–1804 |
| .05     | Period of First Empire, 1804–1815  
Including reign of Louis XVIII, 1814–1815; Hundred Days, 1815  
Class here reign of Napoleon I, 1804–1814  
Class Napoleonic Wars in 940.27 |
| .06     | Period of restoration, 1815–1848  
Class here 19th century  
Class a specific part of 19th century not provided for here with the part, e.g., Second Empire 944.07 |
| .061    | Reign of Louis XVIII, 1815–1824 |
| .062    | Reign of Charles X, 1824–1830 |
| .063    | Period of Louis Philippe, 1830–1848 (July Monarchy) |
| .07     | Period of Second Republic and Second Empire (period of Napoleon III), 1848–1870  
*Option: Class here Franco-German War; prefer 943.082* |
| .08     | 1870– |
| .081    | Period of Third Republic, 1870–1945  
.081 2 | 1870–1899  
Including Paris Commune, 1871 |
| .081 3 | 1900–1914 |
| .081 4 | Period of World War I, 1914–1918 |
| .081 5 | 1918–1939 |
| .081 6 | Period of World War II, 1939–1945 |
| .082    | Period of Fourth Republic, 1945–1958 |
| .083    | Period of Fifth Republic, 1958– |
| .083 6 | 1958–1969 |
| .083 7 | 1970–1979 |
| .083 8 | 1980–1989 |
.083 9 1990–

.9  *Southeastern France and Monaco  Provence region

.94  *Alpes-Maritimes, Corse, Monaco

.949  †Monaco

Class ancient history to 486 in 936.4

945  *Italian Peninsula and adjacent islands  Italy

>  945.01–945.09 Historical periods of Italy
   Class comprehensive works in 945

   .01  Early history to 774
       Including Gothic and Lombard kingdoms, 476–774
       Class ancient history to 476 in 937

   (.012)  Ancient history to 476
           (Optional number; prefer 937)
           Add to base number 945.012 the numbers following 937.0 in
           937.01–937.09, e.g., Punic Wars 945.0124

   .02  Period of Carolingian (Frankish) rule, 774–962

   .03  Period of German emperors, 962–1122

   .04  1122–1300

   .05  Renaissance period, 1300–1494

   .06  1494–1527
       (Option: Class here French invasions of Italy; prefer 944.027)

   .07  Period of Spanish and Austrian domination, 1527–1796

   .08  1796–1900

   .082  Napoleonic period, 1796–1814

   .083  Period of Risorgimento, 1814–1861

   .084  Reigns of Victor Emmanuel II and Umberto I, 1861–1900
       Including 1870–1900 [formerly 945.09]

*Add as instructed under 930–990
†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods
.09 1900–
   1870–1900 relocated to 945.084

.091 Reign of Victor Emmanuel III, 1900–1946
   Class here Fascist period
   (Option: Class here Ethiopian War and Italo-Ethiopian War; prefer 963.043 for Ethiopian War, 963.056 for Italo-Ethiopian War)

.092 Period of Republic, 1946–
   .092 4 1946–1949
   .092 5 1950–1959
   .092 6 1960–1969
   .092 7 1970–1979
   .092 8 1980–1989
   .092 9 1990–

.4 *Emilia-Romagna region and San Marino
   .49 †San Marino
   Class ancient history to 476 in 937.4

.6 *Central Italy and Vatican City
   .63 *Roma (Rome) province and Vatican City
   .634 †Vatican City

.8 *Sicily and adjacent islands
   .85 †Malta
   Class ancient history to 476 in 937.8

946 Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands Spain

.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands
   As modified under 930–990

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Spain
   As modified under 930–990

> 946.01–946.08 Historical periods of Spain
   Class comprehensive works in 946

.01 Early history to 711
   Class here period of Visigothic domination, 415–711
   Class ancient history to 415 in 936.6

*Add as instructed under 930–990
†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods
(0.012) Ancient history to 415
    (Optional number; prefer 936.6)
(0.012 1) Earliest period to ca. 1000 B.C.
    (Optional number; prefer 936.601)
(0.012 2) Period of Greek, Phoenician, early Celtic and Germanic contacts, ca. 1000–218 B.C.
    (Optional number; prefer 936.602)
(0.012 3) Roman period, 218 B.C.–415 A.D.
    (Optional number; prefer 936.603)

.02 Period of Moorish dynasties and reconquest, 711–1479

.03 Reign of Ferdinand V and Isabella I, 1479–1516
    Including union of Castile and Aragon

.04 Period of Hapsburg rulers, 1516–1700
    For period of later Hapsburg rulers, see 946.051
(0.042) Reign of Charles I, 1516–1556
(0.043) Reign of Philip II, 1556–1598

.05 Period of later Hapsburg rulers and Bourbon rulers, 1598–1808
(0.051) Period of later Hapsburg rulers, 1598–1700
    Including reign of Philip III, 1598–1621
    For reign of Philip IV, see 946.052; Charles II, 946.053
(0.052) Reign of Philip IV, 1621–1665
(0.053) Reign of Charles II, 1665–1700
(0.054) 1700–1808
    Class here comprehensive works on Bourbon rulers in Spain
    Class the reign of a specific Bourbon ruler with the reign, e.g., reign of Isabella II 946.072
(0.055) Reign of Philip V, 1700–1746
    Including Anglo-Spanish War (War of Jenkins’ Ear), 1739–1741
    (Option: Class War of Jenkins’ Ear in 941.072)
    See also 940.2526 for War of the Spanish Succession
(0.056) Reign of Ferdinand VI, 1746–1759
(0.057) Reign of Charles III, 1759–1788
(0.058) Reign of Charles IV, 1788–1808

.06 Period of Peninsular War and rule of Joseph Bonaparte, 1808–1814
Reigns of Ferdinand VII and Isabella II, 1814–1868
Including first Bourbon restoration
(Option: Class here Spanish-Moroccan War; prefer 964.03)

Reigns of Alfonso XII and Alfonso XIII, 1874–1931 [formerly 946.08]
(Option: Class here Spanish-American War; prefer 973.89)

Period of Second Republic, 1931–1939
Class here Civil War, 1936–1939

Period of Francisco Franco, 1939–1975

1939–1949
1950–1959
1960–1969
1970–1975

Reign of Juan Carlos I, 1975–

*Eastern Spain and Andorra

†Andorra
Class ancient history to 415 in 936.6

*Andalusia autonomous community and Gibraltar

†Gibraltar
Class ancient history to 415 in 936.6

*Portugal

Early history to 1143
Class ancient history to 415 in 936.6

*Add as instructed under 930–990
†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods
Ancient history to 415

(Optional number; prefer 936.6)

Add to base number 946.9012 the numbers following 946.012 in 946.0121–946.0123, e.g., period of Greek contacts 946.90122

.902 Period of rise and fall of empire, 1143–1640

.903 Period of House of Braganza, 1640–1910

.903 2 1640–1750

Including restoration of Portuguese monarchy

.903 3 1750–1807

Including Pombaline reforms

.903 4 Period of monarchy in exile, 1807–1820

Including period of Peninsular War

.903 5 1820–1847

.903 6 1847–1910

.904 1910–

.904 1 Period of Republic, 1910–1926

.904 2 1926–1968

Including period of Salazar, 1933–1968

Class here Novo Estado, 1933–1974

Class Novo Estado during 1968–1974 in 946.9043

.904 3 1968–1974

.904 4 1974–

947 Eastern Europe Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (Soviet Union)

.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of eastern Europe

As modified under 930–990

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Russia

As modified under 930–990

> 947.01–947.08 Historical periods of Russia

Class comprehensive works in 947

.01 Early history to 862

.02 Kievan period, 862–1240

.03 Period of Tatar suzerainty, 1240–1462
1462–1689

.04 Reign of Ivan III, 1462–1505
.041 Reign of Basil III, 1505–1533
.042 Reign of Ivan IV, (the Terrible), 1533–1584
  Including Livonian War, 1557–1582
  (Option: Class Livonian War in 948.502)
.043 Reigns of Theodore I and Boris Godunov, 1584–1605
.044 Time of Troubles, 1605–1613
  Including reigns of Pseudo-Demetrius I and Pseudo-Demetrius II
.045 Period of House of Romanov, 1613–1917
  Class reigns of specific Romanovs in 947.047–947.083
.046 Reign of Michael, 1613–1645
.047 Reign of Alexis, 1645–1676
.048 Reigns of Theodore III and regent Sophia, 1676–1689
.049 Reign of Peter I (the Great), 1689–1725
  Including Great Northern War, 1700–1721
  (Option: Class Great Northern War in 948.05 or 948.503)
.05 1725–1796
.06 Reigns of Catherine I, Peter II, Anne, Ivan VI, 1725–1741
.061 Reigns of Elizabeth and Peter III, 1741–1762
.062 Reign of Catherine II (the Great), 1762–1796
.063 1796–1855
  Class here 19th century
  Class 1855–1900 in 947.08
.07 Reign of Paul I, 1796–1801
.071 Reign of Alexander I, 1801–1825
  Including period of invasion by Napoleon, 1812
.072 Reign of Nicholas I, 1825–1855
  Including Crimean War, 1853–1856
  (Option: Class Crimean War in 941.081)
.073 1855–
.08 Reign of Alexander II, 1855–1881
  Including Russo-Turkish War, 1877–1878
  (Option: Class Russo-Turkish War in 956.1015)
.082 Reign of Alexander III, 1881–1894

.083 Reign of Nicholas II, 1894–1917

(Optional: Class here Russo-Japanese War; prefer 952.031)

.084 1917–

Class here Communist period; Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, 1923–

For 1953–, see 947.085

.084 1 Period of revolutions, Alexander Kerensky, V. I. Lenin, 1917–1924

.084 2 Period of Joseph Stalin, 1924–1953

(Optional: Class here Russo-Finnish War; prefer 948.97032)

.085 1953–

.085 2 Periods of Georgi Malenkov, Nikolay Aleksandrovich Bulganin, Nikita Sergeyevich Khrushchev, 1953–1964


.085 4 Periods of IU. V. Andropov, K. U. Chernenko, and Mikhail Sergeevich Gorbachev, 1982–

948 *Northern Europe Scandinavia

SUMMARY

948.01–.08 Historical periods of Scandinavia

.1 Norway

.2 Southeastern Norway

.3 Southwestern Norway

.4 Central and northern Norway

.5 Sweden

.6 Southern Sweden

.7 Central Sweden

.8 Northern Sweden

.9 Denmark and Finland

> 948.01–948.08 Historical periods of Scandinavia

Class comprehensive works in 948

.01 Early history to 800

Class ancient history to 481 in 936.3

(.012) Ancient history to 481

(Optional number; prefer 936.3)

.02 Period of migration and conquest, 800–1387

.022 Viking period, 800–1066

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.023 1066–1387
.03 1387–1523
   Class here period of Kalmar Union, 1397–1523
.04 Period of reformation and rise of Sweden, 1523–1648
.05 Period of conflict, 1648–1792
   (Option: Class here Great Northern War; prefer 947.05)
.06 1792–1814
.07 1814–1905
.08 1905–
   .081 1905–1919
   .082 1920–1929
   .083 1930–1939
   .084 1940–1949
   .084 2 Period of World War II, 1940–1945
   .084 3 1945–1949
   .085 1950–1959
   .086 1960–1969
   .087 1970–1979
   .088 1980–
.1 *Norway

   For southeastern Norway, see 948.2; southwestern Norway, 948.3; central and northern Norway, 948.4

   .101 Early history to 1387
      Class ancient history to 481 in 936.3
   (.101 2) Ancient history to 481
      (Optional number; prefer 936.3)
   .102 Period of union with Denmark, 1387–1814
      Including period of Kalmar Union, 1397–1523
   .103 Period of union with Sweden, 1814–1905
   .104 1905–
      .104 1 1905–1945
      .104 5 1945–1959
      .104 6 1960–1969
*Add as instructed under 930–990
.2 *Southeastern Norway

Add to base number 948.2 the numbers following 948.1 in 948.101–948.104, e.g., period of Kalmar Union 948.202

.3 *Southwestern Norway

Add to base number 948.3 the numbers following 948.1 in 948.101–948.104, e.g., period of Kalmar Union 948.302

.4 *Central and northern Norway

Add to base number 948.4 the numbers following 948.1 in 948.101–948.104, e.g., period of Kalmar Union 948.402

.5 *Sweden

For southern Sweden, see 948.6; central Sweden, 948.7; northern Sweden, 948.8

.501 Early history to 1523

Including period of Kalmar Union, 1397–1523

Class ancient history to 481 in 936.3

(.501 2) Ancient history to 481

(Optional number; prefer 936.3)

.502 Period of Vasa dynasty, 1523–1654

(Optional: Class here Livonian War; prefer 947.043)

.503 Period of decline of power, 1654–1818

(Optional: Class here Great Northern War; prefer 947.05)

.504 1818–1905

.505 1905–

.505 1 1905–1945

.505 5 1945–1959

.505 6 1960–1969

.505 7 1970–1979

.505 8 1980–1989

.505 9 1990–

.6 *Southern Sweden

Add to base number 948.6 the numbers following 948.5 in 948.501–948.505, e.g., period of Vasa dynasty 948.602

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.7  *Central Sweden
   Add to base number 948.7 the numbers following 948.5 in 948.501–948.505,
   e.g., period of Vasa dynasty 948.702

.8  *Northern Sweden
   Add to base number 948.8 the numbers following 948.5 in 948.501–948.505,
   e.g., period of Vasa dynasty 948.802

.9  Denmark and Finland
   .900 1–.900 9  Standard subdivisions of Denmark
     As modified under 930–990

   >  948.901–948.905 Historical periods of Denmark
      Class comprehensive works in 948.9
   .901  Early history to 1387
      Class ancient history to 481 in 936.3
   (.901 2)  Ancient history to 481
             (Optional number; prefer 936.3)
   .902  Period of union with Norway and Sweden, 1387–1523
      Class here period of Kalmar Union, 1397–1523
   .903  Period of union with Norway, 1523–1814
      For Great Northern War, see 947.05
   .904  1814–1906
      (Option: Class here Schleswig-Holstein War; prefer 943.076)
   .905  1906–
      .905 1  1906–1945
      .905 5  1945–1959
      .905 6  1960–1969
      .905 7  1970–1979
      .905 8  1980–1989
      .905 9  1990–
   .97  *Finland
      .970 1  Early history to end of Swedish rule, 1809
         For Great Northern War, see 947.05
      .970 2  Period of Russian rule, 1809–1917

*Add as instructed under 930–990
948   Dewey Decimal Classification  948

.970 3 1917–
.970 31 1917–1939
.970 32 1939–1945

Including Russo-Finnish War, 1939–1940
(Option: Class Russo-Finnish War in 947.0842)

.970 33 1945–1982
.970 34 1982–

949   Other parts of Europe

SUMMARY

949.1 Northwestern islands
   .2 Netherlands (Holland)
   .3 Southern Low Countries Belgium
   .4 Switzerland
   .5 Greece
   .6 Balkan Peninsula
   .7 Yugoslavia and Bulgaria
   .8 Romania
   .9 Aegean Sea islands

.1 *Northwestern islands
   .12 *Iceland
      .120 1 Early history to 1262
      .120 2 Medieval period, 1262–1550
      .120 3 1550–1848
      .120 4 Modern period, 1848–1940
       Including independence under Danish crown, 1918–1944
       Class 1940–1944 in 949.1205
      .120 5 1940–
       Class here period of Republic, 1944–

   .15 †Faeroes

.2 *Netherlands (Holland)
   .201 Early history to 1477
       Class ancient history to 481 in 936.3
   (.201 2) Ancient history to 481
       (Optional number; prefer 936.3)
   .202 Period of Hapsburg rule, 1477–1568
   .203 Period of struggle for independence, 1568–1648

*Add as instructed under 930–990
†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods
Period of Dutch Republic, 1648–1795
Including Anglo-Dutch Wars, 1652–1653, 1665–1667; Great Wars against England, France, and allies, 1672–1678; Coalition War, 1690–1697
(Option: Class Anglo-Dutch Wars in 941.06)

1795–1830
Including Batavian Republic, 1795–1806; Kingdom of Holland, 1806–1813
Class here Napoleonic era

1830–1901
Class here 19th century
Class 1800–1830 in 949.205

1901–

Reign of Wilhelmina, 1890–1948
Class reign of Wilhelmina during 1890–1901 in 949.206

Reign of Beatrix, 1980–

Southern Low Countries Belgium

Standard subdivisions of southern Low Countries
As modified under 930–990

Standard subdivisions of Belgium
As modified under 930–990

Historical periods of Belgium
Class comprehensive works in 949.3

Early history to 1477
Class ancient history to 486 in 936.4

Ancient history to 486
(Optional number; prefer 936.4)

Period of foreign rule, 1477–1830

1830–1909
Class here 19th century
Class 1800–1830 in 949.302

1909–

Reign of Albert I, 1909–1934
.304 2  Reign of Léopold III, 1934–1951
.304 3  Reign of Baudouin I, 1951–

.35  *Luxembourg

.350 1  Early history to 1482
Class ancient history to 486 in 936.4

(.350 12)  Ancient history to 486
(Option: Class here ancient history; prefer 936.4)

.350 2  Period of foreign rule, 1482–1830
.350 3  1830–1890
Class here 19th century
Class 1800–1830 in 949.3502, 1890–1899 in 949.35041

.350 4  1890–
.350 41  1890–1918
.350 42  1918–1945
.350 43  1945–

.4  *Switzerland

.401  Early history to 1291
Class ancient history to 486 in 936.4

(.401 2)  Ancient history to 486
(Optional number; prefer 936.4)

.402  1291–1499
.403  1499–1648
.404  1648–1798
Including 1789–1798 [formerly 949.405]

.405  Napoleonic period, 1798–1815
Class here Helvetic Republic, 1798–1803
1789–1798 relocated to 949.404

.406  1815–1900
.406 2  Period of restoration, 1815–1848
.406 3  1848–1900
.407  1900–
.407 1  1900–1918
.407 2  1918–1945
.407 3  1945–

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.5 *Greece

Class here Byzantine Empire

.501 Early history to 717
   Including wars against Avars and Persians
   Class here Eastern Roman (Byzantine) Empire, 323–717
   Class ancient history to 323 in 938

(.501 2) Ancient history to 323
   (Optional number; prefer 938)
   Add to base number 949.5012 the numbers following 938.0 in 938.01–938.09, e.g., Persian Wars 949.50123

.502 Period of Byzantine prosperity, 717–1057

.503 Period of dissolution of Byzantine Empire, 1057–1204

.504 Period of Latin and Greek states and Turkish conquest, 1204–1453

.505 Period of Turkish domination, 1453–1821

.506 Period of monarchy, 1821–1924
   Including Greco-Turkish War, 1896–1897
   (Option: Class Greco-Turkish War in 956.1015)
   For Balkan Wars, see 949.6

.507 1924–

.507 3 Period of Republic, 1924–1935

.507 4 Period of restoration of monarchy, 1935–1967

.507 5 Period of military junta, 1967–1974

.507 6 Period of restoration of democratic rule, 1974–

.56 *Macedonia
   Add to base number 949.56 the numbers following 949.5 in 949.501–949.507, e.g., period of Republic 949.56073
   Class ancient history to 323 in 938.1

.6 *Balkan Peninsula
   Including Balkan Wars, 1912–1913

.61 *Turkey in Europe (Turkish Thrace)

.610 1 History to 1918

.610 11–.610 14 Early history to 1453
   Add to base number 949.6101 the numbers following 949.50 in 949.501–949.504, e.g., period of Byzantine prosperity, 717–1057
   949.61012
   Class ancient history to 323 in 939.8

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.610 15 1453–1918
   Class here period of Ottoman empire, 1453–1922
   Class 1918–1922 in 949.61023

.610 2–.610 3 1918–
   Add to base number 949.61 the numbers following 956.1 in
   956.102–956.103, e.g., 1918–1923 949.61023

.65 *Albania

   .650 1 Early history to 1912
      Class ancient history to 323 in 938.1

   (.650 12) Ancient history to 323
      (Optional number; prefer 938.1)

   .650 2 1912–1946
   .650 3 Period of People’s Republic, 1946–

.7 Yugoslavia and Bulgaria

   .700 01–.700 09 Standard subdivisions
      As modified under 930–990

   .700 1–.700 9 Standard subdivisions of Yugoslavia
      As modified under 930–990

> 949.701–949.702 Historical periods of Yugoslavia
   Class comprehensive works in 949.7

   .701 Early history to 1918
      Class ancient history to ca. 640 in 939.8
      
      For Balkan Wars, see 949.6

   (.701 2) Ancient history to ca. 640
      (Optional number; prefer 939.8)

   .702 1918–

   .702 1 Period of Kingdom, 1918–1939
      Class 1939–1941 in 949.7022

   .702 2 Period of World War II, 1939–1945

*Add as instructed under 930–990
Administration of Josip Broz Tito, 1945–1980

1980–

*Serbia

Early history to 1918

Class ancient history to ca. 640 in 939.8

Ancient history to ca. 640

(Optional number; prefer 939.8)

Ca. 640–1389

Turkish period, 1389–1878

For 1804–1878, see 949.71014

Period of revolt and autonomy, 1804–1878

Period of independence, 1878–1918

1918–

Class here 20th century

Add to base number 949.7102 the numbers following 949.702 in 949.7021–949.7024, e.g., period of World War II 949.71022

Class 1901–1918 in 949.71015

*Bulgaria

Early history to 1878

Class ancient history to ca. 640 in 939.8

Ancient history to ca. 640

(Optional number; prefer 939.8)

Ca. 640–1018

Class here First Bulgarian Empire, ca. 680–1014

Period of Byzantine rule and Second Bulgarian Empire, 1018–1396

Turkish period, 1396–1878

1878–1946

1878–1918

For Balkan Wars, see 949.6

1918–1946

Period of People’s Republic, 1946–

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.8  *Romania

.801  Early history to 1861
    Class ancient history to ca. 640 in 939.8

(.801 2)  Ancient history to ca. 640
    (Optional number; prefer 939.8)

.801 3  Ca. 640–1250

.801 4  Period of Wallachia and Moldavia principalities, 1250–ca. 1500

.801 5  Turkish period, ca. 1500–1821
    Including reign of Michael the Brave, 1593–1601; Phanarist period, 1711–1821

.801 6  1821–1861

.802  Period of monarchy, 1861–1947
    Class here period of Kingdom, 1881–1947
    For Balkan Wars, see 949.6

.803  Period of People’s Republic, 1947–

.9  *Aegean Sea islands

Add to base number 949.9 the numbers following 949.5 in 949.501–949.507, e.g., early Byzantine period 949.901
    (Option: Class ancient history in 949.9012; prefer 939.1)

Class ancient history to 323 in 939.1

.98  *Crete

.980 1  Early history to 961
    Class ancient history to 323 in 939.18

(.980 12)  Ancient history to 323
    (Optional number; prefer 939.18)
    Add to base number 949.98012 the numbers following 938.0 in 938.01–938.09, e.g., mythical age to 775 B.C. 949.980121

.980 2  961–1664

.980 3  Period of Turkish domination, 1664–1898

.980 4  1898–

.980 41  Period of autonomy, 1898–1913

.980 42  Period of incorporation into Greece, 1913–1924

.980 43–.980 46  1924–
    Add to base number 949.9804 the numbers following 949.507 in 949.5073–949.5076, e.g., restoration of monarchy 949.98044

*Add as instructed under 930–990
### SUMMARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subdivision</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.01-.09</td>
<td>Standard subdivisions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.1- .4</td>
<td>Historical periods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>951</td>
<td>China and adjacent areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>952</td>
<td>Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>953</td>
<td>Arabian Peninsula and adjacent areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954</td>
<td>South Asia India</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>955</td>
<td>Iran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>956</td>
<td>Middle East (Near East)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>957</td>
<td>Siberia (Asiatic Russia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>958</td>
<td>Central Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>959</td>
<td>Southeast Asia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **01-.09 Standard subdivisions**
  - As modified under 930–990

- **1 Early history to 1162**

- **2 Period of Mongol and Tatar Empires, 1162–1480**
  - Including reigns of Genghis Khan, ca. 1200–1227; Kublai Khan, ca. 1259–1294; Timur (Tamerlane), ca. 1336–1405

- **3 Period of European exploration and penetration, 1480–1905**

- **4 1905–**
  - .41 1905–1945
  - .42 1945–
  - .424 1945–1949
  - .425 1950–1959
  - .426 1960–1969
  - .427 1970–1979
  - .428 1980–1989
  - .429 1990–1999

### 951 China and adjacent areas

- **.000 1-.000 9 Standard subdivisions**
  - As modified under 930–990

- **.001-.009 Standard subdivisions of China**
  - As modified under 930–990

---

> 951.01–951.05 Historical periods of China

Class comprehensive works in 951
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decimal Classification</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.01</td>
<td>Early history to 960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.015</td>
<td>Period of Northern and Southern dynasties, 420–581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.016</td>
<td>Period of Sui dynasty, 581–618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.017</td>
<td>Period of T’ang dynasty, 618–907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.018</td>
<td>Period of Five dynasties and Ten kingdoms, 907–960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.02</td>
<td>960–1644</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.024</td>
<td>Period of Sung dynasty, 960–1279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.025</td>
<td>Period of Yüan (Mongol) dynasty, 1271–1368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.026</td>
<td>Period of Ming dynasty, 1368–1644</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.03</td>
<td>Period of Ch’ing (Manchu) dynasty, 1644–1912</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.032</td>
<td>1644–1795</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.033</td>
<td>1796–1850</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.034</td>
<td>Period of Taiping Rebellion, 1850–1864</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.035</td>
<td>1864–1911</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.036</td>
<td>Period of Revolution of 1911–1912</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.04</td>
<td>Period of Republic, 1912–1949</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.041</td>
<td>1912–1927</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.042</td>
<td>Period of nationalist government, 1927–1949</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Including Sino-Japanese Conflict during 1937–1941

(Option: Class Sino-Japanese Conflict during 1937–1941 in 952.033)

Class comprehensive works on Sino-Japanese Conflict, 1937–1945, in 940.53
.05 Period of People’s Republic, 1949–
   Class here 20th century
   Class a specific part of 20th century not provided for here with the part, e.g.,
   Revolution of 1911–1912 951.036
.055 1949–1959
.056 1960–1969
   Including Cultural Revolution
.057 1970–1979
.058 1980–1989
.059 1990–

.2 *Southeastern China and adjacent areas
  .24 *East China Sea area
     .249 *Taiwan (Formosa) and adjacent islands
          .249 02 Early history to 1683
          .249 03 Chinese period, 1683–1895
          .249 04 Japanese period, 1895–1945
          .249 05 Period of Republic of China (Nationalist China), 1945–
  .25 *Hong Kong
     .250 1–.250 3 Chinese period to 1843
        Add to base number 951.250 the numbers following 951.0 in
        951.01–951.03, e.g., period of Ming dynasty 951.25026
     .250 4 Period as a British dependency, 1843–
        For 1945–, see 951.2505
     .250 5 1945–
  .26 †Macao
     Class ancient history in 931

.7 *Mongolia
  .73 †Outer Mongolia (Mongolian People’s Republic)

.9 *Korea
  .901 Early history to 1392
  .902 Period of Yi dynasty, 1392–1910
  .903 Japanese period, 1910–1945

*Add as instructed under 930–990
†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods
.904  1945–
.904 1  1945–1950
.904 2  Korean War, 1950–1953
.904 3  1953–

952  *Japan

.01  Early history to 1185
.02  Feudal period, 1185–1868
.021  Kamakura period, 1185–1334
.022  Namboku period, 1334–1392
.023  Muromachi period, 1392–1573
.024  Momoyama period, 1573–1603
.025  Tokugawa (Edo) period, 1603–1868
.03  1868–1945
.031  Meiji period, 1868–1912
   Including Sino-Japanese War, 1894–1895; Russo-Japanese War, 1904–1905
   (Option: Class Sino-Japanese War in 951.035, Russo-Japanese War in 947.083)
.032  Taisho period, 1912–1926
.033  Shōwa period, 1926–
   (Option: Class here Sino-Japanese Conflict, 1937–1941; prefer 951.042)
   For 1945– , see 952.04
.04  1945–
.044  1945–1949
.045  1950–1959
.046  1960–1969
.047  1970–1979
.048  1980–1989
.049  1990–

953  *Arabian Peninsula and adjacent areas

Class early history to 622 in 939.49

(.01)  Early history to 622
   (Optional number; prefer 939.49)
.02  622–1517
*Add as instructed under 930–990
03 Period of Ottoman Empire, 1517–1740
   Class period of struggles to overthrow Turks in 953.04

04 1740–1926
   Class here period of struggles to overthrow Turks, 1740–1918

05 1926–

052 1926–1964

053 1964–

1 *Sinai (Sinai Peninsula)
   Governorate of Egypt
   Add to base number 953.1 the numbers following 962 in 962.01–962.05, e.g.,
   period of Ottoman Empire 953.103
   Class ancient history in 939.48

3 †Southwestern coast of Arabia
   Class ancient history in 939.49

32 †Yemen (Yemen Arab Republic)
   Class ancient history in 939.49

35 †Southern Yemen (People’s Democratic Republic of Yemen)
   Class ancient history in 939.49

5 †Oman and United Arab Emirates
   Class ancient history in 939.49

53 †Oman
   Class ancient history in 939.49

57 †United Arab Emirates
   Class ancient history in 939.49

6 †Persian Gulf States
   Class ancient history in 939.49

   For Oman and United Arab Emirates, see 953.5

63 †Qatar
   Class ancient history in 939.49

65 †Bahrain
   Class ancient history in 939.49

67 †Kuwait
   Class ancient history in 939.49

*Add as instructed under 930–990
†Add as instructed under 930–99; however, do not add historical periods
953

*Saudi Arabia

Class ancient history in 939.49

954

*South Asia  India

Class history of India to 647 in 934

(.01)  Early history to 647

(Optional number; prefer 934)

Add to base number 954.01 the numbers following 934.0 in 934.01–934.07, e.g., reign of Ašoka 954.0145

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0.02</th>
<th>647–1785</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.021</td>
<td>647–997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.022</td>
<td>Period of Muslim conquests, 997–1206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.022 3</td>
<td>Period of Ghazni dynasty, 997–1196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.022 5</td>
<td>Period of Ghor dynasty, 1196–1206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.023</td>
<td>1206–1414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.023 2</td>
<td>Period of slave kings of Delhi, 1206–1290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.023 4</td>
<td>Period of Khalji dynasty, 1290–1320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.023 6</td>
<td>Period of Tughluk dynasty, 1320–1414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.024</td>
<td>1414–1526</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.024 2</td>
<td>Period of Sayyid dynasty, 1414–1451</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.024 5</td>
<td>Period of Lodi dynasty, 1451–1526</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.025</td>
<td>Period of Mogul Empire, 1526–1707</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.025 2</td>
<td>Reign of Babur, 1526–1530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.025 3</td>
<td>Reign of Humayun, 1530–1556</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.025 4</td>
<td>Reign of Akbar, 1556–1605</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.025 6</td>
<td>Reign of Jahangir, 1605–1627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.025 7</td>
<td>Reign of Shahjahan, 1628–1658</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.025 8</td>
<td>Reign of Aurangzeb, 1658–1707</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.029</td>
<td>Period of European penetration, 1707–1785</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.029 2</td>
<td>1707–1744</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Add as instructed under 930–990*
.029 4  Period of Anglo-French conflict, 1744–1757
    Including Battle of Plassey, 1757
.029 6  1757–1772
    Including governorship of Lord Clive, 1757–1767
.029 8  Governorship of Warren Hastings, 1772–1785
.03  Period of British rule, 1785–1947
    Class governorship of Lord Clive in 954.0296, of Warren Hastings in
    954.0298
.031  Period of East India Company, 1785–1858
    031 1  Governorships of Sir John Macpherson, Marquis Cornwallis (1st term),
           John Shore (Lord Teignmouth), 1785–1798
    031 2  Governorships of Marquess Wellesley, Marquess Cornwallis (2nd term),
           Sir George Barlow, 1798–1807
    031 3  Governorships of 1st Earl of Minto, Marquess of Hastings, Earl Amherst,
           1807–1828
    031 4  Governorships of Lord Bentinck, Lord Metcalfe, Earl of Auckland,
           1828–1842
    031 5  Governorships of Earl of Ellenborough and Viscount Hardinge,
           1842–1848
    031 6  Governorship of Marquess of Dalhousie, 1848–1856
    031 7  Governorship of Earl Canning, 1856–1862
           Including Sepoy Mutiny, 1857–1858
           Class governorship of Earl Canning during 1858–1862 in 954.0351
.035  Period of control by crown, 1858–1947
    035 1  Governorships of Earl Canning, 8th Earl of Elgin, Baron Lawrence,
           1858–1868
    035 2  Governorships of Earl of Mayo and Earl of Northbrook, 1869–1876
    035 3  Governorships of Earl of Lytton and Marquess of Ripon, 1876–1884
    035 4  Governorships of Marquis of Dufferin and Marquess of Lansdowne,
           1884–1894
    035 5  Governorships of 9th Earl of Elgin and Marquis of Curzon, 1894–1905
    035 6  Governorships of 4th Earl of Minto and Baron Hardinge, 1905–1916
    035 7  Governorships of Viscount Chelmsford and Marquess of Reading,
           1916–1926
    035 8  Governorships of Earl of Halifax and Marquess of Willingdon,
           1926–1936
    035 9  Governorships of Marquess of Linlithgow, Earl of Wavell, Earl Mountbatten, 1936–1947
954

Dewey Decimal Classification

.04 1947–1971

.042 Prime ministership of Jawaharlal Nehru, 1947–1964

.043 Prime ministership of Lal Bahadur Shastri, 1964–1966

(Option: Class here Indo-Pakistan War, 1965; prefer 954.9045)

.045 First prime ministership of Indira Gandhi, 1966–1977

Class first prime ministership of Indira Gandhi during 1971–1977 in 954.051

.05 1971–

.051 Later half of first prime ministership of Indira Gandhi, 1971–1977

(Option: Class here Indo-Pakistan War, 1971; prefer 954.9205)

.052 1977–


.9 Other jurisdictions

Class here *Pakistan (West and East, 1947–1971)

.904 1947–1971

.904 2 Administration of Mahomed Ali Jinnah, 1947–1948

.904 3 1948–1958

.904 5 Administration of Mohammad Ayub Khan, 1958–1969

Including Indo-Pakistan War, 1965

(Option: Class Indo-Pakistan War, 1965, in 954.043)

.904 6 Administration of Aga Muhammad Yahya Khan, 1969–1971

.91 *Pakistan

.910 4 Period of union of West and East Pakistan, 1947–1971

Add to base number 954.9104 the numbers following 954.904 in 954.9042–954.9046, e.g., administration of Mohammad Ayub Khan 954.91045

.910 5 1971–

For Indo-Pakistan War, 1971, see 954.9205

.92 *Bangladesh

.920 4 Period of union of East and West Pakistan, 1947–1971

Add to base number 954.9204 the numbers following 954.904 in 954.9042–954.9046, e.g., administration of Mahomed Ali Jinnah 954.92042

*Add as instructed under 930–990
954  General history of Asia  Orient  Far East  954

.9205  1971–
Including Indo-Pakistan War, 1971
(Option: Class Indo-Pakistan War, 1971, in 954.051)

.93  *Sri Lanka

.9301  Early history to 1795

.9302  British period, 1795–1948

.9303  1948–

.95  †Maldives

.96  †Nepal

.98  †Bhutan

955  *Iran

Class ancient history to 637 in 935

(.01)  Early history to 637
(Optional number; prefer 935)
Add to base number 955.01 the numbers following 935.0 in 935.01–935.07, e.g., period of Sassanian Empire 955.017

.02  Period of Arab, Turkish, Mongol, Turkoman domination, 637–1499

.03  Period of Persian dynasties, 1499–1794

.04  1794–1906

.05  1906–

.051  1906–1925

.052  Reign of Reza Shah Pahlavi, 1925–1941

.053  Reign of Mohammed Reza Pahlavi, 1941–1979

.054  1979–
Class here period of Ruhollah Khomeini; Iraqi-Iranian Conflict, 1980–
(Option: Class Iraqi-Iranian Conflict, 1980– in 956.7043)

*Add as instructed under 930–990
†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods
956  *Middle East (Near East)*

**SUMMARY**

956.01-.05  [Historical periods]

.1  Turkey and Cyprus

.2  Western Turkey

.3  North central Turkey

.4  South central Turkey and Cyprus

.5  East central Turkey

.6  Eastern Turkey

.7  Iraq

.9  Eastern Mediterranean

.01  Early history to 1900

  Class ancient history to ca. 640 in 939.4

(.012)  Ancient history to ca. 640

  (Optional number; prefer 939.4)

.013  640–1000

.014  Period of Seljuk supremacy, 1000–1300

.015  1300–1900

  Class here Ottoman Empire, ca. 1300–1922

  Class 1900–1918 in 956.02; 1918–1922 in 956.03; a specific part of the
  Ottoman Empire with the part, e.g., Ottoman Empire in Turkey 956.1015

.02  1900–1918

.03  1918–1945

.04  1945–1980

.042  Israel-Arab War, 1948–1949

.044  Sinai Campaign, 1956

.046  Israel-Arab War, 1967 (Six Days’ War)

.048  Israel-Arab War, 1973 (Yom Kippur War)

.05  1980–

.052  Israel-Lebanon-Syria Conflict, 1982–1985

.053  1985–

.1  **Turkey and Cyprus**

  *For divisions of Turkey and Cyprus, see 956.2–956.6*

  .100 01–.100 09  Standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons

  As modified under 930–990

  .100 1–.100 9  Standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of Turkey

  As modified under 930–990

*Add as instructed under 930–990
> 956.101–956.103 Historical periods of Turkey
   Class comprehensive works in 956.1
   .101 Early history to 1918
      Class ancient history to ca. 640 in 939.2
   (.101 2) Ancient history to ca. 640
      (Optional number; prefer 939.2)
   .101 3 640–1100
   .101 4 Period of Seljuk rule, 1100–1300
   .101 5 1300–1918
      Class here period of Ottoman Empire, 1300–1922
      (Option: Class here Russo-Turkish War of 1877–1878,
      Greco-Turkish War; prefer 947.081 for Russo-Turkish War of
      1877–1878, 949.506 for Greco-Turkish War)
      Class 1918–1922 in 956.102
   .102 1918–1950
      Class here 20th century; Republic, 1923–
      Class 1900–1918 in 956.1015, 1950– in 956.103
   .102 3 1918–1923
   .102 4 Administration of Kemal Ataturk, 1923–1938
   .102 5 Administration of Ismet Inonu, 1938–1950
      Including 1945–1950 [formerly also 956.1035]
   .103 1950–
   .103 5 1950–1959
      1945–1950 relocated to 956.1025
   .103 6 1960–1969
   .103 7 1970–1979
   .103 8 1980–1989
   .103 9 1990–1999

> 956.2–956.6 Divisions of Turkey and Cyprus
   Class comprehensive works in 956.1
   For Turkey in Europe, see 949.61
.2  *Western Turkey

Add to base number 956.2 the numbers following 956.1 in 956.101-956.103, e.g., period of Ottoman Empire 956.2015

Class ancient history to ca. 640 in 939.2

.3  *North central Turkey

Add to base number 956.3 the numbers following 956.1 in 956.101-956.103, e.g., period of Ottoman Empire 956.3015

Class ancient Bithya to ca. 640 in 939.25, ancient Paphlagonia in 939.31, ancient Galatia in 939.32

.4  *South central Turkey and Cyprus

Add to base number 956.4 the numbers following 956.1 in 956.101-956.103, e.g., period of Ottoman Empire 956.4015

Class ancient Pisidia to ca. 640 in 939.27, ancient Lycia in 939.28, ancient Pamphylia in 939.29, ancient Cappadocia in 939.34, ancient Cilicia in 939.35, ancient Commagene in 939.36

.45  *Cyprus

.450 1  Early history to 1571

Class ancient history to ca. 640 in 939.37

(.450 12)  Ancient history to ca. 640

(Optional number; prefer 939.37)

.450 2  1571–1878

.450 3  British period, 1878–1960

.450 4  1960–

.5  *East central Turkey

Add to base number 956.5 the numbers following 956.1 in 956.101-956.103, e.g., period of Ottoman Empire 956.5015

Class ancient history to ca. 640 in 939.33

.6  *Eastern Turkey

Add to base number 956.6 the numbers following 956.1 in 956.101-956.103, e.g., period of Ottoman Empire 956.6015

Class ancient Armenia to ca. 640 in 939.55

.7  *Iraq

Class ancient history to 637 in 935

*Add as instructed under 930–990
Ancient history to 637

(Optional number; prefer 935 for Mesopotamia, 939.47 for Arabia Deserta)

Add to base number 956.701 the numbers following 935.0 in 935.01–935.07, e.g., Hellenistic period 956.7016

637–1553

Period of Ottoman Empire, 1553–1920

Period of mandate, 1920–1932

Class here reign of Faisal I, 1921–1933

Class reign of Faisal I during 1932–1933 in 956.7042

Period of independent monarchy, 1932–1958

Contains reigns of Ghazi I, Faisal II

Period of Republic, 1958–

(Option: Class here Iraqi-Iranian Conflict, 1980–955.054)

*Eastern Mediterranean

*Syria

Class early history to ca. 640 in 939.43

Early history to ca. 640

(Optional number; prefer 939.43)

640–1516

Period of Ottoman Empire, 1516–1920

1920–

Period of mandate, 1920–1945

Period of Republic, 1945–

Including period as a part of United Arab Republic, 1958–1961


*Lebanon

Class early history to ca. 640 in 939.44

Early history to ca. 640

(Optional number; prefer 939.44)

640–1926

640–1517

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.920 34  Period of Ottoman Empire, 1517–1920
              Including period of autonomy, 1861–1918
.920 35  Period of mandate, 1920–1941
              Class 1926–1941 in 956.92042
.920 4    1926–
.920 42   1926–1941
.920 43   1941–
              Class Israel-Arab War, 1948–1949, in 956.92042
              For 1975–, see 956.92044
.920 44  Period of civil war and religious strife, 1975–
              Class Israel-Lebanon-Syria Conflict, 1982–1985, in 956.052
.94  *Palestine   Israel
              Class early history to 70 in 933
.940 01  Zionism
              Relocated to 320.54095694
(.940 1) Early history to 70
              (Optional number; prefer 933)
              Add to base number 956.9401 the numbers following 933.0 in
              933.01–933.05, e.g., age of Solomon 956.94012
.940 2  Mishnaic and Talmudic periods, 70–640
.940 3    640–1917
              Including period of Ottoman Empire
.940 4  Period of British control, 1917–1948
.940 5    1948–
.940 52   1948–1967
              Class Israel-Arab War, 1948–1949, in 956.042; Sinai Campaign,
              1956, in 956.044; Israel-Arab War, 1967, in 956.046
.940 53   1967–1974
              Class Israel-Arab War, 1973, in 956.048
.940 54   1974–
              Class Israel-Lebanon-Syria Conflict, 1982–1985, in 956.052

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.949  *Southern district
      Add to base number 956.949 the numbers following 956.94 in
      956.9401–956.9405, e.g., period of British control 956.94904
      Class ancient Judah, Judea in 933; ancient Edom in 939.46

.95  *Jordan
      Class early history to 70 in 933
      (.950 1)  Early history to 70
                (Optional number; prefer 933)
      .950 2  70–640
      .950 3  640–1923
                Including period of Ottoman Empire
      .950 4  1923–
      .950 42  Period of mandate, 1923–1946
      .950 43  Period of Hashemite Kingdom, 1946–
                Class Israel-Arab War, 1948–1949, in 956.042; Israel-Arab War,
                1967, in 956.046
                For 1967– , see 956.95044
      .950 44  1967–

.956  *Karak district
      Add to base number 956.956 the numbers following 956.95 in
      956.9501–956.9504, e.g., period of Hashemite Kingdom 956.956043
      Class ancient Moab to 70 in 939.46

.957  *Maan district
      Add to base number 956.957 the numbers following 956.95 in
      956.9501–956.9504, e.g., period of Hashemite Kingdom 956.957043
      Class ancient Petra to 70 in 939.48

957  *Siberia (Asiatic Russia)
      .03  Pre-Russian period to 1581
      .07  1581–1855
      .08  1855–
            Add to base number 957.08 the numbers following 947.08 in
            947.081–947.085, e.g., period of Siberia under Stalin 957.0842

958  *Central Asia
      (Option: Class here early history to ca. 640; prefer 939.6)
      Class early history to ca. 640 in 939.6
      *Add as instructed under 930–990

783
958  

*Afghanistan

.1  Early history to 1221
   Earliest history to ca. 640 relocated to 939.6

.101  Early history to 1221

.102  1221–1709

.103  1709–1919

.104  1919–
   1919–1933

.104  1  Reign of Muhammad Zahir Shah, 1933–1973


.104  3  Period of Democratic Republic, 1978–

.4  *Turkestan  Soviet Central Asia

   For Turkmenistan, see 958.5, Tadzhikistan, 958.6; Uzbekistan, 958.7

.407  Pre-Russian period to 1855
   Class early history to ca. 640 in 939.6

.408  Russian period, 1855–
   Add to base number 958.408 the numbers following 947.08 in
   947.081–947.085, e.g., later 20th century 958.4085

.5  *Turkmenistan (Turkmen Soviet Socialist Republic)
   Add to base number 958.5 the numbers following 958.4 in 958.407–958.408,
   e.g., pre-Russian period 958.507

.6  *Tadzhikistan (Tadzhik Soviet Socialist Republic)
   Add to base number 958.6 the numbers following 958.4 in 958.407–958.408,
   e.g., Russian period 958.608

.7  *Uzbekistan (Uzbek Soviet Socialist Republic)
   Add to base number 958.7 the numbers following 958.4 in 958.407–958.408,
   e.g., later 20th century 958.7085

959  *Southeast Asia

SUMMARY

959.01–.05  [Historical periods]

.1  Burma

.3  Thailand

.4  Laos

.5  Commonwealth of Nations territories  Malaysia

.6  Cambodia (Khmer Republic, Kampuchea)

.7  Vietnam

.8  Indonesia

.9  Philippines

*Add as instructed under 930–990
| .01 | Early history to 1499 |
| .02 | 1500–1699 |
| .03 | 1700–1799 |
| .04 | 1800–1899 |
| .05 | 1900– |
| .051 | 1900–1941 |
| .052 | Period of Japanese occupation, 1941–1945 |
| .053 | 1945– |
| .1 | *Burma |
| .102 | Early history to 1826 |
| .103 | Period of British conquest, 1826–1885 |
| .104 | Period of British rule, 1886–1948 |
| .105 | 1948– |
| .3 | *Thailand |
| .302 | Early history to 1782 |
| .302 1 | Earliest history to 1219 |
| .302 2 | Sukhothai period, 1219–1350 |
| .302 3 | Ayutthaya period, 1350–1767 |
| .302 4 | Reign of Phraya Taksin, 1767–1782 |
| .303 | 1782–1910 |
| .303 1 | Reign of Phutthayotfa Chulalok (Rama I), 1782–1809 |
| .303 2 | Reign of Phutthalai Naphalai (Rama II), 1809–1824 |
| .303 3 | Reign of Nangklae (Rama III), 1824–1851 |
| .303 4 | Reign of Mongkut (Rama IV), 1851–1868 |
| .303 5 | Reign of Chulalongkorn (Rama V), 1868–1910 |
| .304 | 1910– |
| .304 1 | Reign of Vajiravudh (Rama VI), 1910–1925 |
| .304 2 | Reign of Prajadhipok (Rama VII), 1925–1935 |
| .304 3 | Reign of Ananda Mahidol (Rama VIII), 1935–1946 |
| .304 4 | Reign of Bhumibol Adulyadej (Rama IX), 1946– |
| .4 | *Laos |
| .403 | Early history to 1949 |

Including period as a part of French Indochina, 1893–1954

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.404 1949–
Class here 20th century
Class 1900–1949 in 959.403, military operations in Laos during Vietnamese War in 959.70434

.5 *Commonwealth of Nations territories  Malaysia

.503 Early history to 1946

.504 1946–1963

.505 Period of federation, 1963–
Class here 20th century
Class 1900–1946 in 959.503, 1946–1963 in 959.504

Including separation of Singapore, 1965

.505 2 Prime ministership of Tun Haji Abdul Razak bin Dato’ Hussein, 1971–1976


.505 4 Prime ministership of Mahathir bin Mohamad, 1981–

.55 *Brunei

.550 3 Early history to 1946

.550 5 1946–
Class here 20th century
Class 1900–1946 in 959.5503

.57 *Singapore

.570 3 Early history to 1946

.570 4 1946–1963

.570 5 Periods of federation with Malaysia, 1963–1965, and separate nationhood, 1965–
Class here 20th century
Class 1900–1946 in 959.5703, 1946–1963 in 959.5704

.6 *Cambodia (Khmer Republic, Kampuchea)

.603 Early history to 1949
Including period as a part of French Indochina, 1863–1949

.604 1949–
Class here 20th century
Class 1900–1949 in 959.603, military operations in Cambodia during Vietnamese War in 959.70434

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.7  *Vietnam

.703  Early history to 1949

   Including period as a part of French Indochina, 1883–1954

   Class here comprehensive works on French Indochina

   For Laos as a part of French Indochina, see 959.403; Cambodia as
   a part of French Indochina, 959.603; Indochinese War, 1946–1954,
   959.7041

.704  1949–

.704 1  Indochinese War, 1946–1954

.704 2  1954–1961

.704 3  Vietnamese War, 1961–1975

[.704 308]  Vietnamese War with respect to kinds of persons

   Do not use; class 959.70431

.704 309 2  Persons

   Class personal narratives in 959.70438

.704 31  Social, political, economic history

   Including causes, results, efforts to preserve or restore peace,
   relation of specific classes of persons to the war, internment camps

   Class general diplomatic history in 959.70432; prisoner-of-war
   camps in 959.70437; results in and effects on a specific country
   with history of the country, e.g., on United States 973.923

.704 32  Diplomatic history

   Class diplomatic causes, efforts to preserve or restore peace,
   diplomatic results in 959.70431

.704 33  Participation of specific countries, localities, groups

   Class military participation of specific countries, localities, groups
   in 959.70434

.704 331  North Vietnam

.704 332  South Vietnam

.704 332 2  National Liberation Front

   Class here Vietcong

.704 332 5  Government forces

.704 334–.704 339  Foreign participation

   Add to base number 959.70433 notation 4–9 from Table 2,
   e.g., United States participation 959.7043373

   Class a specific activity with the activity, e.g., efforts to
   preserve or restore peace 959.70431

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.704 34 Military operations
   Including military units
   Class units engaged in a specific type of operation or service with
   the operation or service, e.g., medical units 959.70437

.704 342 Land operations

.704 345 Naval operations

.704 348 Air operations

.704 36 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
   Including decorations and awards, rolls of honor, cemeteries, monuments

.704 37 Prisoner-of-war camps, health and social services

.704 38 Other topics
   Including personal narratives, military life and customs,
   unconventional warfare, propaganda
   Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject,
   e.g., medical units 959.70437

.704 4 1975–

.8 *Indonesia

.801 Early history to 1602
   .801 2 Earliest history to 1478
   .801 5 Period of Muslim rule, 1478–1602

.802 Dutch period, 1602–1945
   .802 1 Period of Dutch East India Company, 1602–1798
   .802 2 Periods under control of British and Netherlands governments,
      1798–1945
      Including Java War, 1825–1830

.803 Period of Republic, 1945–
   Class here 20th century
   Class 1900–1945 in 959.8022

.803 5 1945–1959
   Class here administration of Sukarno, 1945–1967
   Class administration of Sukarno during 1960–1967 in 959.8036

.803 6 1960–1969

.803 7 1970–1979

.803 8 1980–1989

.803 9 1990–

*Add as instructed under 930–990
### General history of Asia

**Philippines**
- Early history to 1564
- Spanish period, 1564–1898
- Period of insurrection against Spanish, 1896–1898
- United States period, 1898–1946
- Philippine-American War, 1898–1901
- Period of United States rule, 1901–1935
- Period of Commonwealth, 1935–1946
- Period of Republic, 1946–
  - Administration of Manuel Roxas, 1946–1948
  - Administration of Elpidio Quirino, 1948–1954
  - Administration of Ramon Magsaysay, 1954–1957
  - Administration of Carlos Garcia, 1957–1961
  - Administration of Diosdado Macapagal, 1961–1965
  - Administration of Ferdinand Marcos, 1965–1986
  - Administration of Corazon Cojuangco Aquino, 1986–

### General history of Africa

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.01-.09</th>
<th>Standard subdivisions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.1-3</td>
<td>[Historical periods]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>961</td>
<td>Tunisia and Libya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>962</td>
<td>Egypt and Sudan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>963</td>
<td>Ethiopia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>964</td>
<td>Northwest African coast and offshore islands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>965</td>
<td>Algeria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>966</td>
<td>West Africa and offshore islands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>967</td>
<td>Central Africa and offshore islands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>968</td>
<td>Southern Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>969</td>
<td>South Indian Ocean islands</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Early history to 640
- 640–1885
  - 640–1450
  - 1450–1799

*Add as instructed under 930–990*
.23 1800–1885
     1885–1899 relocated to 960.312

.3 1885–
  .31 1885–1945
  .312 1885–1914
     Including 1885–1899 [formerly 960.23]
  .314 1914–1918
  .316 1918–1945
  .32 1945–
  .324 1945–1949
  .325 1950–1959
  .326 1960–1969
  .327 1970–1979
  .328 1980–1989
  .329 1990–1999

961 *Tunisia and Libya

Class here North Africa

Class early history to ca. 640 in 939.7

(.01) Early history to ca. 640
     (Optional number; prefer 939.7)

.02 Periods of Arab rule and Ottoman Empire, ca. 640–1830
  .022 Period of Arab rule, ca. 640–ca. 1520
  .023 Period of Ottoman Empire, ca. 1520–1830
     (Option: Class here Tripolitan War with the United States, United States
      War with Algiers; prefer 973.47 for Tripolitan War, 973.53 for War with
      Algiers)

.03 Period of European conquest and hegemony, 1830–1950
     Including 20th century
     Class 1950– in 961.04

.04 1950–
  .045 1950–1959
  .046 1960–1969
  .047 1970–1979

*Add as instructed under 930–990

*Tunisia and Libya

Class here North Africa

Class early history to ca. 640 in 939.7

(.01) Early history to ca. 640
     (Optional number; prefer 939.7)

.02 Periods of Arab rule and Ottoman Empire, ca. 640–1830
  .022 Period of Arab rule, ca. 640–ca. 1520
  .023 Period of Ottoman Empire, ca. 1520–1830
     (Option: Class here Tripolitan War with the United States, United States
      War with Algiers; prefer 973.47 for Tripolitan War, 973.53 for War with
      Algiers)

.03 Period of European conquest and hegemony, 1830–1950
     Including 20th century
     Class 1950– in 961.04

.04 1950–
  .045 1950–1959
  .046 1960–1969
  .047 1970–1979

*Add as instructed under 930–990
General history of Africa

.048 1980–1989
.049 1990–1999

.1 *Tunisia

Class early history to 647 in 939.73

(.101) Early history to 647
(Optional number; prefer 939.73)

.102 Period of Arab rule, 647–1516

.103 Period of Ottoman Empire, 1516–1881

.104 1881–1956

.105 1956–

.105 1 Administration of Habib Bourguiba, 1956–1987

.105 2 1987–

.2 *Libya

Class early history to 644 in 939.74

(.201) Early history to 644
(Optional number; prefer 939.74)

.202 Periods of Arab rule and Ottoman Empire, 644–1911

.203 Period of Italian rule, 1911–1952

.204 1952–

.204 1 Reign of Idris I, 1952–1969

.204 2 Period of Muammar Qaddafi, 1969–

962 Egypt and Sudan

SUMMARY

962.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of Egypt and Sudan

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Egypt

.02–.05 Historical periods of Egypt

.4 Sudan

.5 Eastern and Northern regions of Sudan

.6 Khartoum province and Central region of Sudan

.7 Darfur region of Sudan

.8 Kordofan region of Sudan

.9 Southern regions of Sudan

.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of Egypt and Sudan

As modified under 930–990

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Egypt

As modified under 930–990

*Add as instructed under 930–990
(.01) Early history to 640

(Optional number; prefer 932)

Add to base number 962.01 the numbers following 932.0 in 932.01–932.02, e.g., period of New Kingdom 962.0114

> 962.02–962.05 Historical periods of Egypt

Class comprehensive works in 962, early history in 932

(Optional: Class early history in 962.01; prefer 932)

.02 Period of Arab rule, 640–1517

.03 Period of Ottoman Empire, 1517–1882

.04 Period of British occupation and protectorate, 1882–1922

.05 1922–

.051 Reign of Fuad I, 1922–1936

.052 Reign of Faruk I, 1936–1952, and regency (Fuad II), 1952–1953

For Israel-Arab War, 1948–1949, see 956.042

.053 Administrations of Mohammed Naguib and Gamal Abdel Nasser, 1953–1970

Including United Arab Republic, 1958–1961

Class Syrian part of United Arab Republic in 956.91042

For Sinai Campaign, 1956, see 956.044; Israel-Arab War, 1967, 956.046


For Israel-Arab War, 1973, see 956.048

.055 1981–

Including administration of Muhammad Hosni Mubarak, 1981–

.4 *Sudan

For parts of Sudan, see 962.5–962.9

.401 Early history to 500

.402 500–1820

Specific kingdoms relocated to area of the kingdom in 962.5–962.9, e.g., kingdom of Nobatia 962.5022, of Alwa 962.62022

.402 2 Period of Christian kingdoms, 500–1504

.402 3 Period of Funj Sultanate, 1504–1820

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.403 Period as Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, 1820–1956
   Class here period of Egyptian and British rule

.404 1956–
   Including administration of Jafar Muhammad Numayri, 1969–1985

962.5–962.9 Parts of Sudan
   Class comprehensive works in 962.4

.5 *Eastern and Northern regions of Sudan
   Class early history to 500 in 939.78

(.501) Early history to 500
   Class here ancient Ethiopia
      (Optional number; prefer 939.78)

.502 500–1820

.502 2 Period of Christian kingdoms, 500–1504
   Examples: kingdoms of Mukhara, Nobatia [both formerly 962.402]

.502 3 Period of Funji Sultanate, 1504–1820

.503 Period as a part of Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, 1820–1956

.504 1956–

.6 *Khartoum province and Central region of Sudan
   Add to base number 962.6 the numbers following 962.4 in 962.401–962.404,
   e.g., period as a part of Anglo-Egyptian Sudan 962.603

.7 *Darfur region of Sudan
   Add to base number 962.7 the numbers following 962.4 in 962.401–962.404,
   e.g., period as a part of Anglo-Egyptian Sudan 962.703

.8 *Kordofan region of Sudan
   Add to base number 962.8 the numbers following 962.4 in 962.401–962.404,
   e.g., period as a part of Anglo-Egyptian Sudan 962.803

.9 *Southern regions of Sudan
   Add to base number 962.9 the numbers following 962.4 in 962.401–962.404,
   e.g., period as a part of Anglo-Egyptian Sudan 962.903

963 *Ethiopia

.01 Early history to 640
   Kingdom of Axum relocated to 963.501

   See also 939.78 for ancient Ethiopia (a part of what is now modern Sudan, not modern Ethiopia)

*Add as instructed under 930–990
Reign of Theodore II, 1855–1868

Including reign of John IV, 1872–1889

Reign of Menelik II, 1889–1913

Including reign of Menelik II during 1889–1913 [formerly 963.052], Ethiopian War, 1895–1896

(Option: Class Ethiopian War in 945.091)

1913–1941

Class here 20th century

Class 1900–1913 in 963.043, 1914–1941 in 963.06, 1941– in 963.07

Reign of Menelik II during 1889–1913

Relocated to 963.043

Reign of Lij Yasu, 1913–1916

Period of Jah Rastafari (Haile Selassie) as regent and king, 1917–1930

Reign of Haile Selassie (Jah Rastafari) as emperor, 1930–1974

Class reign of Haile Selassie during 1935–1974 in 963.056–963.06

Italo-Ethiopian War, 1935–1936

(Option: Class in 945.091)

Period of Italian rule, 1936–1941

1941–1974

Including deposition of Haile Selassie, 1974

1974–

Including chairmanship of Mengistu Haile-Mariam, 1977–

Somali-Ethiopian conflicts, 1977–

*Eritrea province

Early history to 640

Including period of kingdom of Axum [formerly 963.01]

Northwest African coast and offshore islands

Standard subdivisions of northwest African coast and offshore islands

As modified under 930–990

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.001-.009 Standard subdivisions of Morocco
   As modified under 930-990
(.01) Ancient history to 647
   (Optional number; prefer 939.71)

> 964.02-964.05 Historical periods of Morocco
   Class comprehensive works in 964, early history to 647 in 939.71
   (Option: Class early history to 647 in 964.01; prefer 939.71)
   .02 Periods of Arab and Berber rule, 647-1830
   .03 1830-1899
      Including Spanish-Moroccan War, 1859-1860
         (Option: Class Spanish-Moroccan War in 946.072)
      Class here 19th century
      Class 1800-1830 in 964.02
   .04 1900-1956
      Including reign of Muhammad V, 1927-1961
      Class here period of French and Spanish protectorates, 1912-1956
      Class reign of Muhammad V during 1956-1961 in 964.05
   .05 1956-
      Including reign of Muhammad V during 1956-1961, Hassan II, 1961-
   .9 *Canary Islands
   .906 Early history to 1402
   .907 Periods of French, Portuguese, Spanish rule, 1402-1927
   .908 Period as Provinces of Spain, 1927-
   .908 1 1927-1939
   .908 2-.908 3 Periods of Francisco Franco and Juan Carlos I, 1939-
      Add to base number 964.908 the numbers following 946.08 in
      946.082-946.083, e.g., 1960-1969 964.90826

965 *Algeria
   Class early history to 647 in 939.71
   (.01) Early history to 647
      (Optional number; prefer 939.71)
   .02 Periods of Arab and Berber rule and Ottoman Empire, 647-1830
*Add as instructed under 930-990
.03 Period of French rule, 1830–1962
   For 1900–1962, see 965.04

.04 1900–1962

.05 1962–
   Including administration of Chadli Bendjedid, 1979–

.5 *Northeastern departments
   Add to base number 965.5 the numbers following 965 in 965.01–965.05, e.g., period of French rule 965.503
   Class ancient Numidia to 647 in 939.72

.7 *Sahara departments
   Add to base number 965.7 the numbers following 965 in 965.01–965.05, e.g., period of French rule 965.703
   Class ancient Gaetulia to 647 in 939.77

966 *West Africa and offshore islands

SUMMARY

966.01–.03 Historical periods
   .1 Mauritania
   .2 Mali, Burkina Faso, Niger
   .3 Senegal
   .4 Sierra Leone
   .5 Gambia, Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Cape Verde
   .6 Liberia and Ivory Coast
   .7 Ghana
   .8 Togo and Benin
   .9 Nigeria

.01–.03 Historical periods
   Add to base number 966.0 the numbers following 960 in 960.1–960.3, e.g., early history to 640 966.01

.1 *Mauritania

.101 Early history to 1903
   .101 6 300–1200
      Class here comprehensive works on period of Ghana Empire
      Class period of Ghana Empire in Mali history in 966.2301
   .101 7 1200–1500
      Class here period of Mali Empire

.103 French period, 1903–1960
   .105 1960–
*Add as instructed under 930–990
.2 *Mali, Burkina Faso, Niger

.201 Early history to ca. 1900

.201 7 1200–1400
  Class here period of Mali Empire

.201 8 1400–1500
  Class period of Mali Empire in Mauritanian history in 966.1017

.202 French period, ca. 1900–1960

.203 1960–

.23 *Mali

.230 1 Early history to 1902
  Class comprehensive works on Mali Empire in 966.2017

.230 3 Period as French Sudan, 1902–1960
  Class here French period

.230 5 1960–
  Class here administration of Moussa Traoré, 1968–

.25 *Burkina Faso
  Former name: Upper Volta

.250 1 Early history to 1897
  Including kingdom of Mossi

.250 3 French period, 1897–1960

.250 5 1960–
  Including administration of Thomas Sankara, 1983–1987

.26 *Niger

.260 1 Early history to 1900

.260 3 French period, 1900–1960

.260 5 1960–
  Including administration of Seyni Kountché, 1974–1987

.3 *Senegal

.301 Early history to 1895
  Including kingdom of Tekrur

.303 French period, 1895–1960

*Add as instructed under 930–990
966

Dewey Decimal Classification

.305 1960–
Including administration of Abdou Diouf, 1981–; Confederation of Senegambia, 1982–
Class Gambian part of Senegambia in 966.5103

.4 *Sierra Leone

.401 Early history to 1787
.402 Period as a British colony, 1787–1896
.403 Period as both colony and protectorate, 1896–1961
.404 1961–

.5 *Gambia, Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Cape Verde

.51 *Gambia

.510 1 Early history to 1807
.510 2 Period as a British colony, 1807–1965
.510 3 Administration of Dawada Kairaba Jawara, 1965–
Including period as a part of Senegambia, 1982–

.52 *Guinea

.520 1 Early history to 1882
.520 3 Period as French Guinea, 1882–1958
.520 5 1958–

.57 *Guinea-Bissau

.570 1 Early history to 1879
.570 2 Period as Portuguese Guinea, 1879–1974
.570 3 1974–

.58 *Cape Verde

.580 1 Early history to 1900
.580 2 1900–1975
.580 3 Administration of Aristides Pereira, 1975–

.6 Liberia and Ivory Coast

.62 *Liberia

.620 1 Early history to 1847
.620 2 1847–1945
.620 3 1945–
Including administration of Samuel K. Doe, 1980–

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.68 *Ivory Coast
.680 1 Early history to 1904
.680 3 French period, 1904–1960
.680 5 Administration of Félix Houphouët-Boigny, 1960–

.7 *Ghana

See also 966.1016 for Ghana Empire

.701 Early history to 1874
.701 6 Period of Akan states, 1295–1740
   Examples: Akwamu, Bono kingdoms
.701 8 Period of Asante (Ashanti) empire, 1740–1874
.703 Period as Gold Coast, 1874–1957
   Class here British period
.705 1957–

.8 Togo and Benin

.81 *Togo
.810 1 Early history to 1894
.810 2 German period, 1894–1914
.810 3 Anglo-French period, 1914–1960
.810 4 1960–
   Including administration of Gnassingbé Eyadéma, 1967–

.83 *Benin

See also 966.9301 for kingdom of Benin

.830 1 Early history to 1904
.830 18 Period of kingdom of Dahomey, 1600–1904
.830 3 French period, 1904–1960
.830 5 1960–

.9 *Nigeria

.901 Early history to 1886
[.901 3–.901 8] Specific realms
   Relocated to area of each realm in 966.91–966.98, e.g., kingdom of Benin 966.9301, Fulani empire 966.9501, kingdom of Kanem-Bornu 966.9801

*Add as instructed under 930–990
966  
Dewey Decimal Classification  

.903  Period as a British colony, 1886–1960
.905  1960–
.905 1  1960–1967
.905 3  1970–
Including administration of Ibrahim Badamosi Babangida, 1983–

[.99]  Islands of Gulf of Guinea
Relocated to 967.1

967  
*Central Africa and offshore islands

Class here Sub-Saharan Africa (Africa south of the Sahara)

Class each specific part of Sub-Saharan Africa not provided for here with the part, e.g., Nigeria 966.9

SUMMARY

967.01–.03  Historical periods
.1  Cameroon, Sao Tome and Principe, Equatorial Guinea
.2  Gabon and Republic of the Congo
.3  Angola
.4  Central African Republic and Chad
.5  Zaire, Rwanda, Burundi
.6  Uganda and Kenya
.7  Djibouti and Somalia
.8  Tanzania
.9  Mozambique

.01–.03  Historical periods
Add to base number 967.0 the numbers following 960 in 960.1–960.3, e.g., early history to 640 967.01

.1  *Cameroon, Sao Tome and Principe, Equatorial Guinea
Class here Islands of Gulf of Guinea [formerly 966.99], Lower Guinea area

.11  *Cameroon

.110 1  Early history to 1884
.110 2  Period as Kamerun, 1884–1916
Class here German period
.110 3  Anglo-French period, 1916–1959
.110 4  1960–
Including administration of Paul Biya, 1982–

.15  *Sao Tome and Principe

.150 1  Early history to 1975

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.150 2 Period of Republic, 1975–

.18 *Equatorial Guinea
.180 1 Early history to 1469
.180 2 Portuguese, British, Spanish periods, 1469–1968
.180 3 1968–

Including administration of Teodoro Obiang Nguema Mbasogo, 1979–

.2 *Gabon and Republic of the Congo
.201 Early history to 1910
.203 Period as French Equatorial Africa, 1910–1959

Class here comprehensive works on French Equatorial Africa [formerly 967.2403]

For Ubangi-Shari as part of French Equatorial Africa, see 967.4103; Chad as part of French Equatorial Africa, 967.4302

.205 1959–

.21 *Gabon
.210 1 Early history to 1839
.210 2 French period, 1839–1960

Including period as a part of French Equatorial Africa

.210 4 1960–

Including administration of Omar Bongo, 1967–

.24 *Republic of the Congo
.240 1 Early history to 1885
.240 3 Period as Middle Congo, 1885–1960

Class here French period

Comprehensive works on French Equatorial Africa relocated to 967.203

.240 5 1960–

Including administration of Denis Sassou Nguesso, 1979–

.3 *Angola
.301 Early history to 1648

Specific kingdoms relocated to area of the kingdom in 967.31–967.35, e.g., Lunda kingdom 967.3401

*Add as instructed under 930–990
967 Dewey Decimal Classification 967

.302 1648–1899
   Including 17th century
   Class 1600–1648 in 967.301

.303 1900–1975

.304 1975–
   Including administrations of António Agostinho Neto, José Eduardo dos Santos

.4 *Central African Republic and Chad

.41 *Central African Republic

.410 1 Early history to 1890

.410 3 Period as Ubangi-Shari, 1890–1960
   Class here French period, period as part of French Equatorial Africa

.410 5 1960–

.43 *Chad

.430 1 Early history to 1850
   Including kingdom of Kanem
   Class Kanem-Bornu in 966.9801

.430 2 Colonial period, 1850–1960
   Including period as part of French Equatorial Africa

.430 4 1960–
   Including administration of Hissein Habré, 1982–

.5 Zaire, Rwanda, Burundi

.51 *Zaire

.510 1 Early history to 1885
   Specific kingdoms relocated to specific area of kingdom in
   967.511–967.518, e.g., kingdom of Kongo 967.511401, of Luba 967.51801

.510 2 Belgian period, 1885–1960

.510 22 Period as Congo Free State, 1885–1908

.510 24 Period as Belgian Congo, 1908–1960

.510 3 1960–
   Class here administration of Mobutu Sese Seko, 1965–

.57 *Rwanda and Burundi
   Class here former Ruanda-Urundi

.570 1 Early history to 1899

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.570 2  German period, 1899–1917
.570 3  Belgian period, 1917–1962
.570 4  1962–
.571  *Rwanda
   .571 04  1962–
   Including administration of Juvénal Habyarimana, 1973–
.572  *Burundi
   .572 04  1962–
   Including administration of Jean-Baptiste Bagaza, 1976–1987

.6  *Uganda and Kenya
    Class here East Africa
   .601  Early history to 1894
   .603  1894–1961
   .604  1961–
   .61  *Uganda
      .610 1  Early history to 1894
      Including kingdoms of Ankole, Buganda, Bunyoro, Busoga, Karagwe
      .610 3  British period, 1894–1962
      .610 4  1962–
      Including administrations of A. Milton Obote, Idi Amin, Yoweri Museveni
   .62  *Kenya
      .620 1  Early history to 1895
      .620 3  British period, 1895–1963
      .620 4  Administrations of Jomo Kenyatta and Daniel Arap Moi, 1963–

.7  *Djibouti and Somalia
    Class here Somaliland
   .71  *Djibouti
      .710 1  Early history to 1881
      .710 3  French period, 1881–1977
      .710 32  Period as French Somaliland, 1881–1967
      .710 34  Period as French Territory of the Afars and Issas, 1967–1977
      .710 4  1977–
*Add as instructed under 930–990
.73 *Somalia

.730 1 Early history to 1884
    Including kingdom of Mogadishu

.730 3 Period of British and Italian control, 1884–1960

.730 5 1960–
    Including administration of Maxamed Siyaad Barre, 1969–
    Class Somali-Ethiopian conflicts, 1977– , in 963.07

.8 *Tanzania

.804 Period as United Republic, 1964–
    Including administration of Julius K. Nyerere, 1964–1985

.81 *Zanzibar and Pemba regions

.810 1 Early history to 1700

.810 2 Period of Arab rule, 1700–1890

.810 3 Period as a British protectorate, 1890–1963

.810 4 1963–

.82 *Tanganyika

.820 1 Early history to 1884

.820 2 German period, 1884–1916

.820 3 British period, 1916–1961

.820 4 1961–

.9 *Mozambique

.901 Early history to 1648

.902 1648–1900
    Including 17th century
    Class here Portuguese period, 1648–1974
    Class 1600–1648 in 967.901
    For 1900–1975, see 967.905

.903 1900–1975

.905 1975–
    Including administration of Samora Machel, 1975–1986

*Add as instructed under 930–990
*Southern Africa   Republic of South Africa

See Manual at 968

SUMMARY

968.02–.06 Historical periods of Republic of South Africa
  .2 Transvaal
  .4 Natal
  .5 Orange Free State
  .7 Cape of Good Hope
  .8 Botswana, Lesotho, Swaziland, Namibia
  .9 Zimbabwe, Zambia, Malawi

> 968.02–968.06 Historical periods of Republic of South Africa

  Class comprehensive works in 968
  .02 Early history to 1488
  .03 Period of European exploration and settlement, 1488–1814
  .04 1814–1910
  .041 1814–1835
    Class here Mfecane (Difaqane)
  .042 Great Trek, 1835–1838
  .044 1838–1854
  .045 1854–1899

  See also 968.2046 for First Anglo-Boer War

  .048 South African (Second Anglo-Boer) War, 1899–1902
    (Option: Class South African (Second Anglo-Boer) War in 941.081)
  [.048 08] South African War with respect to kinds of persons
    Do not use; class 968.0481
  .048 092 Persons
    Class personal narratives in 968.0488
  .048 1 Social, political, economic history
    Including causes, results, efforts to preserve or restore peace, relation
    of specific classes of persons to the war, internment camps
    Class general diplomatic history in 968.0482; prisoner-of-war camps
    in 968.0487; results in and effects on a specific country with history
    of the country, e.g., on Great Britain 941.0823
  .048 2 Diplomatic history
    Class diplomatic causes, efforts to preserve or restore peace,
    diplomatic results in 968.0481
.048 3 Participation of specific countries, localities, groups
   Class military participation of specific countries, localities, groups in 968.0484

.048 31 Great Britain

.048 32 Boer Republics

.048 4 Military operations
   Including military units
   Class units engaged in a specific type of operation or service with the operation or service, e.g., medical units 968.0487

.048 6 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
   Including decorations and awards, rolls of honor, cemeteries, monuments

.048 7 Prisoner-of-war camps, health and social services

.048 8 Other topics
   Including personal narratives, military life and customs, unconventional warfare, propaganda
   Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., medical units 968.0487

.049

1902–1910

.05 Period of Union, 1910–1961

.052 Prime ministership of Louis Botha, 1910–1919

.053 First prime ministership of Jan Christiaan Smuts, 1919–1924

.054 Prime ministership of James Barry Munnik Hertzog, 1924–1939

.055 Second prime ministership of Jan Christiaan Smuts, 1939–1948

.056 Prime ministership of Daniel François Malan, 1948–1954


.058 Prime ministership of Hendrik Frensch Verwoerd, 1958–1966
   Including Sharpeville Massacre, 1960
   For 1961–1966, see 968.061

.06 Period as Republic, 1961–

.061 Period of prime ministership of Hendrik Frensch Verwoerd under republic, 1961–1966


.062 7 1976–1977
   Class here Soweto and related riots

.063 Prime ministership of P. W. Botha, 1978–
Botswana, Lesotho, Swaziland

Relocated to 968.8

*Transvaal

Early history to 1835

1835–1910

- Class here 19th century
- Class 1800–1835 in 968.203

Period of Great Trek and Boer settlement, 1835–1852

Period as South African Republic, 1852–1877

Period of British control, 1877–1881

Including First Anglo-Boer War, 1880–1881

1881–1899

Jameson raid, 1895–1896

Period of South African (Second Anglo-Boer) War, 1899–1902

Period as Transvaal Colony, 1902–1910

Periods of union and republic, 1910–

Add to base number 968.20 the numbers following 968.0 in 968.05–968.06, e.g., period of World War II 968.2055

*Natal

Early history to 1824

Period of early Nguni kingdoms, ca. 1500–1816

Examples: kingdoms of Mthethwa, Nd wandwe, Qwabe

Reign of Shaka, 1816–1828

Including 1820–1824 [formerly 968.404]

Class reign of Shaka during 1824–1828 in 968.4041

1824–1910

Class here period of Zululand, 1816–1879

1820–1824 relocated to 968.4039

For reign of Shaka, see 968.4039

Period of early British settlement, 1824–1835

Class here reign of Dingaan, 1828–1840

Class reign of Dingaan during 1835–1840 in 968.4042

Period of Great Trek and Boer settlement, 1835–1843

Including Battle of Blood River, 1838; republic of Natalia

*Add as instructed under 930–990
Period as a British colony, 1843–1899
  Including reign of Cetewayo, 1872–1879; Zulu War, 1879;
  annexation of Zululand, 1897

Period of South African (Second Anglo-Boer) War, 1899–1902

1902–1910

Periods of union and republic, 1910–

Add to base number 968.40 the numbers following 968.0 in 968.05–968.06, e.g., period of World War I 968.4052

*Orange Free State

Early history to 1828

1828–1910

Class here 19th century

Class 1800–1828 in 968.503

Periods of Great Trek and as Orange River Sovereignty, 1835–1854

Period as Orange Free State, 1854–1899

Period of South African (Second Anglo-Boer) War, 1899–1902

Period as Orange River Colony, 1902–1910

Periods of union and republic, 1910–

Add to base number 968.50 the numbers following 968.0 in 968.05–968.06, e.g., prime ministership of James Barry Munnik Hertzog 968.5054

*Cape of Good Hope

Early history to 1488

Period of exploration and settlement, 1488–1814

1488–1652

Period of Dutch control, 1652–1795
  Including 1780–1795 [formerly 968.7033]

Class period of control by Batavian Republic in 968.7033

1795–1806

Contains periods of British occupation, 1795–1803, control by Batavian Republic, 1803–1806

1780–1795 relocated to 968.7032, 1806–1814 to 968.7042

*Add as instructed under 930–990
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.704</td>
<td>1806–1910</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.704 2</td>
<td>Period of British control, 1806–1854</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including 1806–1814 [formerly 968.7033], period of Great Trek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class period of British occupation, 1795–1803, in 968.7033</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.704 5</td>
<td>Period of self-government, 1854–1899</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.704 8</td>
<td>Period of South African (Second Anglo-Boer) War, 1899–1902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.704 9</td>
<td>1902–1910</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.705–.706</td>
<td>Union and republic, 1910–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Add to base number 968.70 the numbers following 968.0 in 968.05–968.06, e.g., first prime ministership of Jan Christiaan Smuts 968.7053

### .8

**Botswana, Lesotho, Swaziland [all formerly 968.1], Namibia**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.801–.803</td>
<td>Historical periods</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Add to base number 968.80 the numbers following 960 in 960.1–960.3, e.g., 20th century 968.803

Historical periods of Namibia relocated to 968.8101–968.8103

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.81</td>
<td>*Namibia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### >

968.810 1–968.810 3 Historical periods of Namibia [formerly 968.801–968.803]

Class comprehensive works in 968.81

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.810 1</td>
<td>Early history to 1884</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.810 2</td>
<td>German period, 1884–1915</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.810 3</td>
<td>South African period, 1915–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### .83

**Botswana**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.830 1</td>
<td>Early history to 1885</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.830 2</td>
<td>Period as Bechuanaland, 1885–1966</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class here British period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.830 3</td>
<td>1966–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Including administration of Seretse Khama, 1966–1980

### .85

**Lesotho**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.850 1</td>
<td>Early history to 1868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.850 2</td>
<td>Period as Basutoland, 1868–1966</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class here British period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.850 3</td>
<td>Reign of Mosheshoe II, 1966–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Including prime ministership of Leabua Jonathan, 1966–1986

*Add as instructed under 930–990*
.87 *Swaziland

.870 1 Early history to 1840
.870 2 British period, 1840–1968
.870 3 1968–

Including reigns of Sobhuza II, 1968–1982; Mswari III, 1986–

.9 *Zimbabwe, Zambia, Malawi

.901 Early history to 1888
.902 Period of British control, 1888–1953
.903 Period as Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland (Central African Federation), 1953–1963

Class here prime ministership of Roy Welensky, 1956–1963
.904 1964–

.91 *Zimbabwe

.910 1 Early history to 1889

Including Karanga kingdoms of Changamire, the Monomotapas
.910 2 Period as Southern Rhodesia, 1889–1953

Class here British period
.910 3 Period of federation, 1953–1963
.910 4 Period as Rhodesia, 1964–1980

Class here prime ministership of Ian Douglas Smith, 1965–1979
.910 5 Period as Republic of Zimbabwe, 1980–

Class here prime ministership of Robert Gabriel Mugabe, 1980–

.94 *Zambia

.940 1 Early history to 1890

Including kingdoms of the Barotse, of the Bemba
.940 2 Period of British control, 1890–1953

Contains periods as North-eastern Rhodesia and North-western Rhodesia provinces, 1890–1911; as Northern Rhodesia, 1911–1953
.940 3 Period of federation, 1953–1963
.940 4 Period as Republic of Zambia, 1964–

Class here administration of Kenneth D. Kaunda, 1964–

.97 *Malawi

.970 1 Early history to 1891

Including kingdom of Malawi

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.970 2  Period as Nyasaland, 1891–1953
    Class here British period
.970 3  Period of federation, 1953–1963
.970 4  Administration of H. Kamuzu Banda, 1964–

969  †South Indian Ocean islands

.1  *Madagascar
   .101  Early history to 1895
       Including kingdoms of Betsimisaraka, Boina, Menabe, Merina
   .103  French period, 1895–1960
   .105  1960–
       Including administration of Didier Ratsiraka, 1975–

.4  †Comoros (Federal and Islamic Republic of the Comoros)

.6  †Seychelles

.7  †Chagos Islands

.8  *Réunion and Mauritius
   .81  *Réunion
      .810 2  Early history to 1946
      .810 4  Period as a Department of France, 1946–
   .82  *Mauritius
      .820 1  Early history to 1810
      .820 2  Period of British rule, 1810–1968
      .820 3  1968–

.9  †Isolated islands
    Contains Amsterdam, Cocos (Keeling), Crozet, Kerguelen, Prince Edward,
    Saint Paul

*Add as instructed under 930–990
†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods
970 General history of North America

SUMMARY

970.001-.009 Standard subdivisions
.01-.05 Historical periods

971 Canada
972 Middle America Mexico
973 United States
974 Northeastern United States (New England and Middle Atlantic states)
975 Southeastern United States (South Atlantic states)
976 South central United States Gulf Coast states
977 North central United States
978 Western United States
979 Great Basin and Pacific Slope region of United States Pacific Coast states

.001-.003 Standard subdivisions

.004 Racial, ethnic, national groups

Add to base number 970.004 notation 03–99 from Table 5, e.g., general history and civilization of North American native peoples in North America 970.00497

(Optional: Class North American native peoples in North America in 970.1, specific native peoples in 970.3)

Specific native peoples in a specific place relocated to the place in 971–979 with use of subdivision 00497 from table under 930–990, e.g., the Hopi in Arizona 979.1004974

Class history and civilization of North American native peoples in a specific place before European discovery and conquest with the place, without using notation 00497, e.g., Aztecs before 1519 972.018

See Manual at 970.004

.005-.009 Standard subdivisions

As modified under 930–990

> 970.01–970.05 Historical periods

Class comprehensive works in 970

.01 Early history to 1599

.011 Earliest history to 1492

Including pre-Columbian claims

For Chinese claims, see 970.012; Norse claims, 970.013; Welsh claims, 970.014

.012 Chinese claims

.013 Norse claims

.014 Welsh claims
970.015–970.019 Period of European discovery and exploration

Class comprehensive works in 970.01

.015 Discoveries by Columbus

.016 Spanish and Portuguese explorations

.017 English explorations

.018 French explorations

.019 Explorations by other nations

.02 1600–1699

.03 1700–1799

.04 1800–1899

.05 1900–

.051 1900–1918

Class here period of World War I, 1914–1918

.052 1918–1945

Class here period of World War II, 1939–1945

.053 1945–

.053 4 1945–1949

.053 5 1950–1959

.053 6 1960–1969

.053 7 1970–1979

.053 8 1980–1989

.053 9 1990–1999

(.1) North American native peoples

Indians of North America

(Optional number; prefer 970.00497)

Class special topics in 970.3–970.5

(.3) Specific native peoples

(Optional number; prefer 971–979 with use of subdivision 00497 from table under 930–990, e.g., the Hopi in Arizona 979.1004974)

Arrange alphabetically by name of people

Class government relations with specific native peoples in 970.5
Native peoples in specific places in North America

(Optional number; prefer 971–979 with use of subdivision 00497 from table under 930–990, e.g., native peoples in United States 973.0497, in Arizona 979.100497)

Add to base number 970.4 the numbers following — 7 in notation 71–79 from Table 2, e.g., Indians in Arizona 970.491

Class government relations in specific places in 970.5, specific native peoples in specific places in 970.3

Government relations with North American native peoples

History and policy

(Optional number; prefer 323.1197 for comprehensive works; a specific subject with the subject, e.g., Black Hawk War 973.56, relation to the state in Canada 323.1197071)

971–979 Countries and localities

Class specific native peoples in a specific place [formerly 970.00497] with the place in 971–979 with use of subdivision 00497 from table under 930–990, e.g., the Hopi in Arizona 979.1004974

(Option: Class native peoples in specific places in North America in 970.4)

Class comprehensive works in 970

*Canada

### SUMMARY

971.01–.06 Historical periods

| .1 | British Columbia |
| .2 | Prairie Provinces |
| .3 | Ontario |
| .4 | Quebec |
| .5 | Atlantic Provinces  | Maritime Provinces |
| .6 | Nova Scotia |
| .7 | Prince Edward Island |
| .8 | Newfoundland and Labrador, Saint-Pierre and Miquelon |
| .9 | Northern territories |

### SUMMARY

971.01 Early history to 1763

| .02 | Period of early British rule, 1763–1791 |
| .03 | Period of Upper and Lower Canada, 1791–1841 |
| .04 | Period of Province of Canada, 1841–1867 |
| .05 | Period of Dominion of Canada, 1867–1911 |
| .06 | 1911– |

*Add as instructed under 930–990
> 971.01–971.06 Historical periods

Class comprehensive works in 971

.01 Early history to 1763

.011 Earliest history to 1632

.0111 Period before European discovery and exploration

.0112 Norse explorations

.0113 French explorations

.0114 English explorations

.016 Period of French and English expansion, 1632–1689

.0162 Period of Company of New France, 1632–1663

.0163 1663–1689

.018 Period of struggle of France and England for supremacy, 1689–1763

Including periods of War of the League of Augsburg, 1688–1697; War of the Spanish Succession, 1701–1714; War of the Austrian Succession, 1740–1748

Class here comprehensive works on period as a French royal province, 1663–1763

(Option: Class here North American aspects of War of the League of Augsburg, War of the Spanish Succession, War of the Austrian Succession; prefer 973.25 for War of the League of Augsburg, War of the Spanish Succession, 973.26 for War of the Austrian Succession)

Class comprehensive works on War of the League of Augsburg in 940.2525, War of the Spanish Succession in 940.2526, War of the Austrian Succession in 940.2532; North American aspects of War of the League of Augsburg, War of the Spanish Succession in 973.25, War of the Austrian Succession in 973.26

For 1663–1689, see 971.0163

.0187 Expulsion of Acadians, 1755

.0188 Period of Seven Years’ War, 1756–1763

(Option: Class here North American aspects of Seven Years’ War; prefer 973.26)

Class comprehensive works on Seven Years’ War in 940.2534, North American aspects in 973.26

.02 Period of early British rule, 1763–1791

.022 1763–1774

Including Quebec Act, 1774

(Option: Class here Pontiac’s conspiracy, 1763–1764; prefer 973.27)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dewey Decimal Classification</th>
<th>Period of American Revolution, 1774–1783</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including settlement of Loyalists from United States, 1774–1789</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class settlement of Loyalists during 1783–1789 in 971.028</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.028</td>
<td>1783–1791</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class here Constitutional Act, 1791</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.03</td>
<td>Period of Upper and Lower Canada, 1791–1841</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.032</td>
<td>1791–1812</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.034</td>
<td>Period of War of 1812, 1812–1814</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Option: Class here War of 1812; prefer 973.52)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.036</td>
<td>1814–1837</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.038</td>
<td>Period of rebellions of 1837–1838</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including Family Compact of Upper Canada, Chateau Clique of Lower Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.039</td>
<td>1838–1841</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class here Durham mission and report, 1838–1839; Act of Union, 1840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.04</td>
<td>Period of Province of Canada, 1841–1867</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.042</td>
<td>1841–1864</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.048</td>
<td>Period of Fenian activities, 1866–1871</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.049</td>
<td>Period of Confederation, 1864–1867</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including Charlottetown and Quebec Conferences, 1864; British North America Act, 1867</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>For period of Fenian activities, see 971.048</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.05</td>
<td>Period of Dominion of Canada, 1867–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>For 1911–, see 971.06</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.051</td>
<td>First prime ministership of Sir John A. Macdonald, 1867–1873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including Riel’s first (Red River) rebellion, 1869–1870</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class Fenian activities during 1867–1871 in 971.048</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.052</td>
<td>Prime ministership of Alexander Mackenzie, 1873–1878</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.054</td>
<td>Second prime ministership of Sir John A. Macdonald, 1878–1891</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including Riel’s second (Northwest) rebellion, 1885</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.055</td>
<td>1891–1896</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.056</td>
<td>Prime ministership of Sir Wilfrid Laurier, 1896–1911</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
971

General history of North America

.06  1911–

.061  1911–1921

.061 2  Prime ministership of Sir Robert Laird Borden, 1911–1920

.061 3  First prime ministership of Arthur Meighen, 1920–1921

.062  1921–1935

.062 2  First and second prime ministerships of William Lyon Mackenzie King, 1921–1930

  Including second prime ministership of Arthur Meighen, 1926

.062 3  Prime ministership of Richard Bedford Bennett, 1930–1935

.063  1935–1957

.063 2  Third prime ministership of William Lyon Mackenzie King, 1935–1948


.064  1957–

.064 2  Prime ministership of John G. Diefenbaker, 1957–1963


.064 4  First prime ministership of Pierre Elliott Trudeau, 1968–1979

.064 5  Prime ministership of Joe (Charles Joseph) Clark, 1979–1980


  Including prime ministership of John Turner, 1984

.064 7  Prime ministership of Brian Mulroney, 1984–

> 971.1–971.9 Specific provinces and territories

Class comprehensive works in 971

.1  *British Columbia

  .101  Early history to 1790

  .102  Period of settlement and colony, 1790–1871

  Including colony of New Caledonia

  .103  Period as a Province of Canada, 1871–

  For 1945–, see 971.04

  .104  1945–

.2  *Prairie Provinces

  .201  Early history to 1869

  Including Rupert’s Land

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.202 1869–1945
.203 1945–
.23 *Alberta
Add to base number 971.23 the numbers following 971.2 in 971.201–971.203, e.g., establishment as a Province of Canada, 1905, 971.2302
.24 *Saskatchewan
Add to base number 971.24 the numbers following 971.2 in 971.201–971.203, e.g., establishment as a Province of Canada, 1905, 971.2402
.27 *Manitoba
Add to base number 971.27 the numbers following 971.2 in 971.201–971.203, e.g., establishment as a Province of Canada, 1870, 971.2702
.3 *Ontario
.301 Early history to 1791
.302 Period of Upper Canada and Act of Union, 1791–1867
.303 Period as a Province of Canada, 1867–
For 1945– , see 971.304
.304 1945–
.4 *Quebec
.401 Early history to 1763
.401 2 Earliest history to 1608
Including period of explorations by Jacques Cartier, 1534–1535
.401 4 French period, 1608–1763
.402 British period, 1763–1867
Including period of Lower Canada, 1791–1841
.403 Period as a Province of Canada, 1867–
For 1945– , see 971.404
.404 1945–
.5 *Atlantic Provinces Maritime Provinces
For Nova Scotia, see 971.6; Prince Edward Island, 971.7; Newfoundland and Labrador, 971.8
[.501–.504] Historical periods of New Brunswick
Relocated to 971.5101–971.5104
*Add as instructed under 930–990
### New Brunswick

#### 971.5101 Early history to 1784

#### 971.5102 Period as separate province, 1784–1867

#### 971.5103 Period as a Province of Canada, 1867–

*For 1945–, see 971.5104

#### 971.5104 1945–

### Nova Scotia

#### 601 Early history to 1763

*Including Acadia*

#### 602 Period as a British colony, 1763–1867

#### 603 Period as a Province of Canada, 1867–

*For 1945–, see 971.604

#### 604 1945–

### Prince Edward Island

#### 701 Early history to 1769

#### 702 Period as separate province, 1769–1873

#### 703 Period as a Province of Canada, 1873–

*For 1945–, see 971.704

#### 704 1945–

### Newfoundland and Labrador, Saint-Pierre and Miquelon

#### 801 Early history to 1855

#### 802 1855–1934

#### 803 Period of suspension of parliamentary government, 1934–1949

#### 804 Period as a Province of Canada, 1949–

### Labrador

#### 8201 Early history to 1763

#### 8202 Period when claimed by Lower Canada (Quebec) and Newfoundland, 1763–1927

#### 8203 Period as dependency of Newfoundland, 1927–1949

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.820 4 Period as part of Newfoundland, 1949–
.88 †Saint-Pierre and Miquelon
.9 *Northern territories
Add to base number 971.9 the numbers following 971.2 in 971.201–971.203, e.g., 1945– 971.903

972  Middle America  Mexico

SUMMARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>972.000 1–.000 9</th>
<th>Standard subdivisions of Middle America</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.001–.009</td>
<td>Standard subdivisions of Mexico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.01–.08</td>
<td>Historical periods of Mexico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.8</td>
<td>Central America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.9</td>
<td>West Indies (Antilles) and Bermuda</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

.000 1–.000 9  Standard subdivisions of Middle America
As modified under 930–990

.001–.009  Standard subdivisions of Mexico
As modified under 930–990

>  972.01–972.08 Historical periods of Mexico

Class comprehensive works in 972

.01  Early history to 1519

.016  Classical period, ca. 100–ca. 900

.017  Ca. 900–1325
Class here period of Toltec empire, ca. 900–ca. 1200

.018  Aztec period, 1325–1519
Including 1516–1519 [formerly 972.02]

.02  Conquest and colonial period, 1519–1810
1516–1519 relocated to 972.018

.03  Revolutionary period and period of independence, 1810–1822

.04  Periods of first empire and republic, 1822–1845
Class here 19th century
Class a part of 19th century not provided for here with the part, e.g., period of second empire 972.07

.05  Period of war with United States, 1845–1848
(Option: Class here Mexican War; prefer 973.62)

*Add as instructed under 930–990
†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

820
.06 Period of reaction and reform, 1848–1861
.07 Period of European intervention, 1861–1867
    Class here period of second empire, 1864–1867
.08 Period of Republic, 1867–
    081 1867–1917
    081.07 1867–1876
    081.08 Porfiriato, 1876–1910
        Class here administrations of Porfirio Díaz, 1876–1880, 1884–1910
    081.09 Period of Mexican Revolution, 1910–1917
    082 1917–1964
    082.01 Administrations of Venustiano Carranza and Adolfo de la Huerta, 1917–1920
    082.02 Administration of Álvaro Obregón, 1920–1924
    082.03 Administration of Plutarco Elías Calles, 1924–1928
    082.04 Administrations of Emilio Portes Gil, Pascual Ortiz Rubio, Abelardo L. Rodríguez, 1928–1934
    082.05 Administration of Emilio Portes Gil, 1928–1930
    082.06 Administration of Pascual Ortiz Rubio, 1930–1932
    082.07 Administration of Abelardo L. Rodríguez, 1932–1934
    082.08 Administration of Lázaro Cárdenas, 1934–1940
    082.09 Administration of Manuel Ávila Camacho, 1940–1946
    082.10 Administration of Miguel Alemán, 1946–1952
    082.11 Administration of Adolfo Ruiz Cortines, 1952–1958
    082.12 Administration of Adolfo López Mateos, 1958–1964
    083 1964–
    083.01 Administration of Gustavo Díaz Ordaz, 1964–1970
    083.02 Administration of Luis Echeverría Álvarez, 1970–1976
    083.03 Administration of José López Portillo, 1976–1982
    083.04 Administration of Miguel de la Madrid Hurtado, 1982–

> 972.8–972.9 Other parts of Middle America
Class comprehensive works in 972
*Add as instructed under 930–990
.8 *Central America

.801 Early history to 1502
.802 Period of European discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1535
.803 Colonial period, 1535–1821
.804 1821–1899
    Including period of United Provinces of Central America, 1823–1840
.805 1900–
    .805 1 1900–1944
    .805 2 1944–1979
    .805 3 1979–

.81 *Guatemala

.810 1 Early history to 1502
.810 16 Mayan period, ca. 300–ca. 900
    Class here comprehensive works on Mayan period in Middle America
    Class a specific aspect of the Mayan period not provided for here with the aspect, e.g., Mayan period from ca. 900 to 1325 in Mexico 972.6017
.810 2 Period of European discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1524
    1524–1535 relocated to 972.8103
.810 3 Colonial period, 1524–1821
    Including 1524–1535 [formerly 972.8102]
.810 4 1821–1871
    1871–1899 relocated to 972.81051
.810 42 1821–1839
    Class here period as a part of United Provinces of Central America, 1823–1839
.810 44 1839–1871
    Class here administration of Rafael Carrera, 1839–1865
.810 5 1871–
.810 51 1871–1931
    Including 1871–1899 [formerly 972.8104]
    1931–1945 relocated to 972.81052
.810 52 1931–1986
    Including 1931–1945 [formerly 972.81051], 1979–1986 [formerly 972.81053]

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.82  *Belize

.820 1  Early history to 1502

.820 2  Period of Spanish discovery and colonization, 1502–1638
       Including 1535–1638 [formerly 972.8203]

.820 3  1638–1862
       Including 1821–1862 [formerly 972.8204]
       Class here period of British involvement, 1638–1963
       1535–1638 relocated to 972.8202

       For period as a British colony, see 972.8204

.820 4  Period as a British colony, 1862–1963
       Including 1900–1945 [formerly 972.82051], 1945–1963 [formerly
       972.82052]
       1821–1862 relocated to 972.8203

.820 5  1964–

[.820 51]  1900–1945
       Relocated to 972.8204

[.820 52]  1945–1979
       Use of this number for 1964–1979 discontinued; class in 972.8205
       1945–1963 relocated to 972.8204

[.820 53]  1979–
       Number discontinued; class in 972.8205

.83  *Honduras

.830 1  Early history to 1502

.830 2  Period of Spanish discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1542
       Including 1535–1542 [formerly 972.8303]

.830 3  Colonial period, 1542–1821
       1535–1542 relocated to 972.8302

.830 4  1821–1838
       Class here period as a part of United Provinces of Central America,
       1823–1838
       1838–1899 relocated to 972.83051

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.830 5
1838–

.830 51
1838–1924
Including 1838–1899 [formerly 972.8304]
1924–1945 relocated to 972.83052

.830 52
1924–1978
Including 1924–1945 [formerly 972.83051]

.830 53
1978–

.84
*El Salvador

.840 1
Early history to 1524
Including 1502–1524 [formerly 972.8402]

.840 2
Period of Spanish discovery, exploration, conquest, 1524–1542
Including 1535–1542 [formerly 972.8403]
1502–1524 relocated to 972.8401

.840 3
Colonial period, 1542–1821
1535–1542 relocated to 972.8402

.840 4
1821–1859
1859–1899 relocated to 972.84051

.840 42
1821–1839
Class here period as a part of United Provinces of Central America, 1823–1839

.840 44
1839–1859

.840 5
1859–

.840 51
1859–1931
Including 1859–1899 [formerly 972.8404]
1931–1945 relocated to 972.84052

.840 52
1931–1979
Including 1931–1945 [formerly 972.84051]

.840 53
1979–

.85
*Nicaragua

.850 1
Early history to 1502

.850 2
Period of Spanish discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1527
1527–1535 relocated to 972.8503

.850 3
Colonial period, 1527–1821
Including 1527–1535 [formerly 972.8502]

*Add as instructed under 930–990
### General History of North America

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.850 4</th>
<th>1821–1893</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1893–1899 relocated to 972.85051</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.850 42</th>
<th>1821–1838</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class here period as a part of United Provinces of Central America, 1823–1838</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.850 44</th>
<th>1838–1893</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.850 5</th>
<th>1893–</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.850 51</th>
<th>1893–1934</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Including 1893–1899 [formerly 972.8504]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class here period of interventions by United States, 1909–1933</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1934–1945 relocated to 972.85052</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.850 52</th>
<th>1934–1979</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Including 1934–1945 [formerly 972.85051]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.850 53</th>
<th>1979–</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Costa Rica

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.86</th>
<th>1900–1945</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Early history to 1502</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.860 1</th>
<th>1502–1560</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Period of Spanish discovery, exploration, conquest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Including 1535–1560 [formerly 972.8603]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.860 2</th>
<th>1560–1821</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Colonial period</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1535–1560 relocated to 972.8602</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.860 4</th>
<th>1821–1948</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.860 42</th>
<th>1821–1838</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class here period as a part of United Provinces of Central America, 1823–1838</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.860 44</th>
<th>1838–1948</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Including 1900–1945 [formerly 972.86051], 1945–1948 [formerly 972.86052]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.860 5</th>
<th>1948–</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[.860 51]</th>
<th>1900–1945</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Relocated to 972.86044</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[.860 52]</th>
<th>1945–1979</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use of this number for 1948–1979 discontinued; class in 972.8605</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1945–1948 relocated to 972.86044</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[.860 53]</th>
<th>1979–</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number discontinued; class in 972.8605</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Add as instructed under 930–990*
.87  *Panama

.870 1  Early history to 1514
      1514–1550 relocated to 972.8702

.870 11  Early history to 1501

.870 12  Period of Spanish discovery, exploration, conquest, 1501–1514

.870 2  Colonial period, 1514–1821
      Including 1514–1550 [formerly 972.8701]; period as a part of Viceroyalty of New Granada, 1739–1810

.870 3  Period as a part of Gran Colombia, 1821–1903

[.870 4]  1903–1904
      Relocated to 972.87051

.870 5  1903–

.870 51  1903–1977
      Including 1903–1904 [formerly 972.8704], 1945–1977 [formerly 972.87052]

[.870 52]  1945–1977
      Relocated to 972.87051

.870 53  1977–

.9  *West Indies (Antilles) and Bermuda

Class here Caribbean Area

Class a part of Caribbean Area not provided for here with the part, e.g., Venezuela 987

.901  Early history to 1492

.902  Period of European discovery and early colonial period, 1492–1608

.903  1608–1801

.904  1801–1902

.905  1902–

.905 1  1902–1945

.905 2  1945–

.91  *Cuba

.910 1  Early history to 1492

.910 2  Period of European discovery, exploration, conquest, 1492–1514

.910 3  1514–1763

.910 4  1763–1810

*Add as instructed under 930–990
### General History of North America

- **.910 5** 1810–1899
  
  *For Spanish-American War, see 973.89*

- **.910 6** 1899–
  
  Class here period of Republic, 1902–

- **.910 61** Period of American military occupation, 1899–1902

- **.910 62** 1902–1933

- **.910 63** 1933–1958

- **.910 64** Period of Fidel Castro, 1959–

- **.92** *Jamaica and Cayman Islands*
  
  > 972.920 1–972.920 6 Historical periods of Jamaica
  
  Class comprehensive works in 972.92

  - **.920 1** Early history to 1494
  
  - **.920 2** 1494–1607
  
  - **.920 3** 1607–1832
  
  - **.920 31** Last period of Spanish rule, 1607–1655
  
  - **.920 32** 1655–1692
    
    Including Great Earthquake, 1692
  
  - **.920 33** 1692–1782
  
  - **.920 34** 1782–1832
    
    Class here antislavery struggle and emancipation
  
  - **.920 4** 1832–1904
    
    Class here 19th century
  
    Class 1801–1832 in 972.92034

  - **.920 5** 1904–1962
    
    Class here 20th century
  
    Class 1901–1904 in 972.9204, 1962– in 972.9206

  - **.920 6** Period of independence, 1962–

  - **.921** †Cayman Islands

  - **.93** *Dominican Republic*
    
    - **.930 1** Early history to 1492
    
    - **.930 2** Period of European discovery and early colonial period, 1492–1608
    
    - **.930 3** 1608–1801

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

For Dominica, see 972.9841

.972 †Virgin Islands .973 †Anguilla and Saint Christopher-Nevis .974 †Antigua and Barbuda .975 †Montserrat .976 †Guadeloupe .977 †Leeward Netherlands islands

*Add as instructed under 930–990
†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods
.98 †Windward and other southern islands
.981 †Barbados
.982 †Martinique
.983 *Trinidad and Tobago
.983 01 Early history to 1498
.983 02 Spanish period, 1498–1797
.983 03 British period, 1797–1962
.983 04 Period of independence, 1962–
.984 †Windward Islands
.984 1 †Dominica
.984 3 †Saint Lucia
.984 4 †Saint Vincent and the Grenadines
   For Carriacou, see 972.9845
.984 5 †Grenada and Carriacou
.986 †Netherlands islands
   For Leeward Netherlands islands, see 972.977
.99 †Bermuda

973 United States

SUMMARY

973.01–.09 Standard subdivisions
   .1 Early history to 1607
   .2 Colonial period, 1607–1775
   .3 Periods of Revolution and Confederation, 1775–1789
   .4 Constitutional period, 1789–1809
   .5 1809–1845
   .6 1845–1861
   .7 Administration of Abraham Lincoln, 1861–1865   Civil War
   .8 Reconstruction period, 1865–1901
   .9 1901–

   .01–.09 Standard subdivisions
      As modified under 930–990
      (If optional notation 734–739 from Table 2 is chosen, use 973.01–973.09
      for historical periods, and 973.001–973.009 for standard subdivisions)

   .1 Early history to 1607
      Add to base number 973.1 the numbers following 970.01 in 970.011–970.019,
      e.g., French explorations 973.18

*Add as instructed under 930–990
†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods
Colonial period, 1607–1775

> 973.21–973.22 Period of early settlements, 1607–1643

Class comprehensive works in 973.21; specific European settlements with the settlement in 974–975, e.g., settlement of Jamestown 975.5425101

.21 Period of Virginia settlements, 1607–1620

.22 Period of other early settlements, 1620–1643

  Including Pequot War, 1636–1638

.23 1643–1664

.24 1664–1689

  Including King Philip’s War, 1675–1676

.25 1689–1732

  Including King William’s War (North American aspect of War of the League of Augsburg), 1688–1697; Queen Anne’s War (North American aspects of War of the Spanish Succession), 1701–1714

  (Option: Class North American aspects of King William’s War, Queen Anne’s War in 971.018)

Class comprehensive works on War of the League of Augsburg in 940.2525, on War of the Spanish Succession in 940.2526

.26 Period of extension of English rule, 1732–1763

  Including King George’s War (North American aspects of War of the Austrian Succession), 1740–1748; French and Indian War (North American aspects of Seven Year’s War), 1756–1763

  (Option: Class North American aspects of War of the Austrian Succession in 971.018, of Seven Years’ War in 971.0188)

Class comprehensive works on War of the Austrian Succession in 940.2532, on Seven Years’ War in 940.2534

.27 End of colonial period, 1763–1775

  Including Pontiac’s Conspiracy, 1763–1764

  (Option: Class Pontiac’s Conspiracy in 971.022)

Class events of 1763–1775 as causes of American Revolution in 973.311

Periods of Revolution and Confederation, 1775–1789

.308 Kinds of persons during 1775–1789

  Class relation of kinds of persons to the Revolution in 973.315

.309 2 Persons

  Class personal narratives in 973.38
SUMMARY

973.31 Social, political, economic history
.32 Diplomatic history
.33 Operations
.34 Military units
.35 Naval history
.36 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
.37 Prisoner-of-war camps; health and social services
.38 Other topics

.31 Social, political, economic history

For diplomatic history, see 973.32

.311 Causes

.311 1 Stamp Act, 1765–1766
.311 2 Commercial restrictions
    For tax on tea, see 973.3115

.311 3 Quartering of troops and Boston Massacre, 1770
.311 4 Taxation and representation
.311 5 Tax on tea and Boston Tea Party, 1773
.311 6 Boston Port Bill, 1774

.312 Continental Congress

.313 Declaration of Independence, 1776

.314 Loyalists (Tories)
    Class settlement of Loyalists in Canada in 971.024

.315 Relation of kinds of persons to the Revolution
    Add to base number 973.315 notation 03–99 from Table 7, e.g., doctors 973.31561

.316 Results
    For Treaty of Peace, see 973.317

.317 Treaty of Peace (Versailles Treaty), 1783
.318 Period of confederation, 1783–1789

> 973.32–973.38 Aspects of American Revolution

Class comprehensive works in 973.3
.32 Diplomatic history
Class here relations of United States with other nations
Add to base number 973.32 the numbers following —4 in notation 41–49
from Table 2, e.g., relations with France 973.324
For Treaty of Paris, see 973.317

.33 Operations
For naval operations, see 973.35

.331 Of 1775
.331 1 Battles of Lexington and Concord, 1775
.331 2 Battle of Bunker Hill, 1775
.332 Of 1776–January 3, 1777
.333 Of 1777
Class Battle of Princeton in 973.332
For winter at Valley Forge, see 973.3341

.334 Of 1778
.334 1 Winter at Valley Forge, 1777–1778
.335 Of 1779
.336 Of 1780
.337 Of 1781
.338 Of 1782
.339 Of 1783

.34 Military units
Class here organization, history, rosters, service records
Class operations of military units in 973.33, units engaged in a special
service with the service, e.g., privateering 973.35
For naval units, see 973.35; rolls of honor, lists of dead, 973.36

.341 British troops
For mercenary troops, see 973.342; American native peoples as
allies, 973.343

.342 Mercenary troops

.343 American native peoples as allies of British

.344–.345 American troops
Add to base number 973.34 the numbers following —7 in notation 74–75
from Table 2, e.g., Pennsylvania troops 973.3448
.346 Auxiliary troops on American side
    Including Polish, Spanish, Swedish
    For French troops, see 973.347

.347 French troops

.35 Naval history
    Class here operations, ships, units
    Including privateering

.36 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
    Including rolls of honor, lists of dead
    Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event, e.g., Battle of Bunker Hill 973.3312

.37 Prisoner-of-war camps; health and social services
    Including exchange of prisoners

.371 British prisons and prison ships

.372 American prisons

.375 Medical services
    For hospitals, see 973.376

.376 Hospitals

.38 Other topics
    Including personal narratives, military life and customs
    Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on medical services 973.375

.381 Treason
    For treason of Benedict Arnold, see 973.382; of Charles Lee, 973.383

.382 Treason of Benedict Arnold

.383 Treason of Charles Lee

.385 American secret service and spies
    Class here comprehensive works on secret service and spies
    For British secret service and spies, see 973.386

.386 British secret service and spies

.388 Propaganda
973 Dewey Decimal Classification 973

.4 Constitutional period, 1789–1809
   .41 Administration of George Washington, 1789–1797
      Including period of Indian wars, 1790–1791 [formerly 973.42]
      For second term, see 973.43
   [.42] Period of Indian wars, 1790–1791
      Relocated to 973.41
   .43 Second term of the administration of George Washington, 1793–1797
   .44 Administration of John Adams, 1797–1801
      Class here period of troubles with France, 1797–1800 [formerly 973.45]
   [.45] Period of troubles with France, 1797–1800
      Relocated to 973.44
   .46 Administration of Thomas Jefferson, 1801–1809
      For Tripolitan War, see 973.47; second term, 973.48
   .47 Tripolitan War, 1801–1805
      (Option: Class in 961.023)
   .48 Second term of the administration of Thomas Jefferson, 1805–1809

.5 1809–1845

Class here 19th century
Class events of 1809–1845 as causes of Civil War in 973.711; a specific part of
19th century not provided for here with the part, e.g., Civil War 973.7

.51 Administration of James Madison, 1809–1817
   For War of 1812, see 973.52; war with Algiers, 973.53
   .52 War of 1812, 1812–1814
      (Option: Class in 971.034)
      .520 92 Persons
         Class personal narratives in 973.528
   .521 Social, political, economic history
      Including causes, results
      For diplomatic history, see 973.522
   .522 Diplomatic history
      Relations of United States with other nations
   .523 Operations
      For naval operations, see 973.525
   .523 8 In the South
      For Battle of New Orleans, see 973.5239

834
973.523  Battle of New Orleans, 1814

.524  Military units

Class here organization, history, rosters, service records

Class operations of military units in 973.523, units engaged in a special service with the service, e.g., privateering 973.525

For naval units, see 973.525; rolls of honor, lists of dead, 973.526

.524 1  British troops

.524 2  American native peoples as allies of the British

.524 4–.524 7  American troops

Add to base number 973.524 the numbers following —7 in notation 74–77 from Table 2, e.g., Pennsylvania troops 973.52448

.525  Naval history

Class here operations, ships, units

Including privateering

.525 4  Battle of Lake Erie, 1813

.525 6  Battle of Lake Champlain, 1814

.526  Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Including rolls of honor, lists of dead

Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event, e.g., Battle of Lake Erie 973.5254

.527  Prisoner-of-war camps; health and social services

Including exchange of prisoners

.527 5  Medical services

Including hospitals

.528  Other topics

Including personal narratives, military life and customs

Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on medical services 973.5275

.528 5  Secret service and spies

.53  War with Algiers, 1815

(Option: Class in 961.023)

.54  Administration of James Monroe, 1817–1825

Including First Seminole War, 1818; Missouri Compromise, 1820

.55  Administration of John Quincy Adams, 1825–1829
.56 Administration of Andrew Jackson, 1829–1837
   Including Black Hawk War, 1832
   (Option: Class Black Hawk War in 970.5)
   .561 Nullification movement
   .57 Administration of Martin Van Buren, 1837–1841
   Including Second Seminole War, 1835–1842
   .58 Administrations of William Henry Harrison and John Tyler, 1841–1845
   .6 1845–1861
      Class events of 1845–1861 as causes of Civil War in 973.711
   .61 Administration of James Knox Polk, 1845–1849
      Including Wilmot Proviso, 1847
      For Mexican War, see 973.62
   .62 Mexican War, 1845–1848
      (Option: Class in 972.05)
      .620 92 Persons
         Class personal narratives in 973.628
   .621 Social, political, economic history
      Including causes, results
      For diplomatic history, see 973.622
   .622 Diplomatic history
      Relations of United States with other nations
   .623 Operations
      For naval operations, see 973.625
   .624 Military units
      Class here organization, history, rosters, service records
      Class operations of military units in 973.623, units engaged in a special
      service with the service, e.g., naval operations 973.625
      For naval units, see 973.625; rolls of honor, lists of dead, 973.626
   .625 Naval history
      Operations, ships, units
   .626 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
      Including rolls of honor, lists of dead
      Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with
      the event, e.g., capture of Chapultepec 973.623
| .627 | Prisoner-of-war camps; health and social services |
| .627 5 | Medical services  
| | Including hospitals |
| .628 | Other topics  
| | Including personal narratives, military life and customs, unconventional warfare, propaganda  
| | Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on prisoner-of-war camps 973.627 |
| .63 | Administration of Zachary Taylor, 1849–1850 |
| .64 | Administration of Millard Fillmore, 1850–1853  
| | Including Compromise of 1850 |
| .66 | Administration of Franklin Pierce, 1853–1857 |
| .68 | Administration of James Buchanan, 1857–1861  
| | For Dred Scott decision, see 973.7115; John Brown’s Raid, 973.7116 |
| .7 | Administration of Abraham Lincoln, 1861–1865 Civil War |
| [.708] | Civil War with respect to kinds of persons  
| | Do not use; class 973.715 |
| .709 2 | Persons  
| | Class personal narratives in 973.781–973.782 |

**SUMMARY**

| 973.71 | Social, political, economic history |
| .72 | Diplomatic history |
| .73 | Operations |
| .74 | Military units |
| .75 | Naval history |
| .76 | Celebrations, commemorations, memorials |
| .77 | Prisoner-of-war camps; health and social services |
| .78 | Other topics |

| .71 | Social, political, economic history  
| | For diplomatic history, see 973.72 |
| .711 | Causes  
| | For the South and secession, see 973.713 |
| .711 2 | Extension of slavery |
| .711 3 | Wilmot Proviso, 1847, and compromises  
| | Examples: Missouri Compromise, 1820; Compromise of 1850 |
| .711 4 | Abolition movement |
| .711 5 | Fugitive slaves  
| | Including underground railroad, Dred Scott decision |
.7116 John Brown’s Raid, 1859

.712 Efforts to preserve or restore peace
   *For compromises, see 973.7113*

.713 The South and secession
   Confederate States of America in the war

.714 Results
   Including Emancipation Proclamation, 1863; establishment of
   Freedmen’s Bureau, 1865
   Class a result as a specific event with the event, e.g., Reconstruction
   973.8

.715 Relation of kinds of persons to the war

.71503-.71587 Occupational and miscellaneous groups
   Add to base number 973.715 notation 03–87 from Table 7, e.g.,
   doctors 973.71561; however, class refugees in 973.7159, southern
   Union sympathizers in 973.717, northern Confederate
   sympathizers in 973.718

.7159 Refugees

.717 Southern Union sympathizers

.718 Northern Confederate sympathizers

.72 Diplomatic history

.721 Relations of Confederacy with other nations

.722 Relations of Union with other nations

.73 Operations
   *For naval operations, see 973.75*

.7301 Strategy
   Do not use for philosophy and theory; class in 973.73

.73012 Union side

.73013 Confederate side

.731 Opening phase, 1861–April, 1862

.732 May-August, 1862

.733 September, 1862–May, 1863

.7336 Lee’s invasion of Maryland, 1862

.734 June-August, 1863

.7344 Siege and fall of Vicksburg, 1863

.7349 Battle of Gettysburg, 1863
.735 September-December, 1863
.735 9 Chattanooga campaign, 1863
.736 January-May, 1864
.737 June-December, 1864
.737 8 Sherman’s March to the Sea and Savannah campaign, 1864
.738 1865
.74 Military units

Class here organization, history, rosters, service records

Class operations of military units in 973.73, units engaged in a special
service with the service, e.g., privateering 973.75

For naval units, see 973.75; rolls of honor, lists of dead, 973.76

.741 Union troops

For state units, see 973.744-973.749

.741 5 Black troops

.742 Confederate troops

For state units, see 973.744-973.749

.744-.749 State units

Add to base number 973.74 the numbers following —7 in notation 74-79
from Table 2, e.g., Ohio troops 973.7471

.75 Naval history

Including operations, privateering, blockade running

.752 Battle of Monitor and Merrimac, 1862

.754 Battle of Kearsarge and Alabama, 1864

.757 Confederate Navy

Ships and units

.758 Union navy

Ships and units

.76 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Including rolls of honor, lists of dead

Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the
event, e.g., Battle of Antietam 973.7336

.77 Prisoner-of-war camps; health and social services

Including exchange of prisoners

.771 Confederate prisoner-of-war camps
.772 Union prisoner-of-war camps
.775 Medical services
   For hospitals, see 973.776
.776 Hospitals
.777 Welfare work
   Including United States Sanitary Commission
.778 Religious life and chaplain services
.78 Other topics

> 973.781–973.782 Personal narratives
   Class comprehensive works in 973.78; personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on prisoner-of-war camps 973.77
.781 Personal narratives of individuals from Union side
.782 Personal narratives of individuals from Confederate side
.783 Military life and customs of Union side
   Class here comprehensive works on military life and customs
   For military life and customs of Confederate side, see 973.784
.784 Military life and customs of Confederate side
.785 Union secret service and spies
   Class here comprehensive works on secret service and spies
   For Confederate secret service and spies, see 973.786
.786 Confederate secret service and spies
.788 Propaganda
.8 Reconstruction period, 1865–1901
.81 Administration of Andrew Johnson, 1865–1869
.82 Administration of Ulysses Simpson Grant, 1869–1877
.83 Administration of Rutherford Birchard Hayes, 1877–1881
.84 Administrations of James Abram Garfield and Chester Alan Arthur, 1881–1885
.85 First administration of Grover Cleveland, 1885–1889
.86 Administration of Benjamin Harrison, 1889–1893
.87 Second administration of Grover Cleveland, 1893–1897
.88 Administration of William McKinley, 1897–1901
   For Spanish-American War, see 973.89

.89 Spanish-American War, 1898
   (Option: Class in 946.074)

.890 92 Persons
   Class personal narratives in 973.898

.891 Social, political, economic history
   Including causes, results
   For diplomatic history, see 973.892

.892 Diplomatic history
   Relations of United States with other nations

.893 Operations
   For naval operations, see 973.895

.893 3 Cuban campaign, 1898

.893 5 Puerto Rican campaign, 1898

.893 7 Philippine campaign, 1898

.894 Military units
   Class here organization, history, rosters, service records
   Class operations of military units in 973.893, units engaged in a special service with the service, e.g., naval operations 973.895
   For naval units, see 973.895; rolls of honor, lists of dead, 973.896

.895 Naval history
   Class here operations, ships, units

.896 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
   Including rolls of honor, lists of dead
   Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event, e.g., Battle of Manila Bay 973.895

.897 Prisoner-of-war camps; health and social services

.897 5 Medical services
   Including hospitals

.898 Other topics
   Including personal narratives, military life and customs, unconventional warfare, propaganda
   Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on prisoner-of-war camps 973.897
973

Dewey Decimal Classification

.9 1901–

.91 1901–1953

.911 Administration of Theodore Roosevelt, 1901–1909

.912 Administration of William Howard Taft, 1909–1913

.913 Administration of Woodrow Wilson, 1913–1921

.914 Administration of Warren Gamaliel Harding, 1921–1923

.915 Administration of Calvin Coolidge, 1923–1929

.916 Administration of Herbert Clark Hoover, 1929–1933

.917 Administration of Franklin Delano Roosevelt, 1933–1945

.918 Administration of Harry S Truman, 1945–1953

.92 1953–

.921 Administration of Dwight David Eisenhower, 1953–1961

.922 Administration of John Fitzgerald Kennedy, 1961–1963

.923 Administration of Lyndon Baines Johnson, 1963–1969

  Class here period of Vietnamese War, 1961–1975
  period in 973.924, 1974–1975 period in 973.925


.925 Administration of Gerald Rudolph Ford, 1974–1977


.927 Administration of Ronald Reagan, 1981–

> 974–979 Specific states of United States

Class comprehensive works in 973

For Hawaii, see 996.9

> 974–975 Northeastern and southeastern United States

Add to notation for each term identified by † as follows:

01 Early history to 1620
02 Colonial period, 1620–1776
03 1776–1865
04 1865–
041 1865–1918
042 1918–1945
043 1945–

Class comprehensive works in 974

842
### *+Northeastern United States (New England and Middle Atlantic states)*

| .1 | *+Maine |
| .2 | *+New Hampshire |
| .3 | *+Vermont |
| .4 | *+Massachusetts |
| .5 | *+Rhode Island |
| .6 | *+Connecticut |
| .7 | *+New York |
| .8 | *+Pennsylvania |
| .9 | *+New Jersey |

### *+Southeastern United States (South Atlantic states)*

| .1 | *+Delaware |
| .2 | *+Maryland |
| .3 | *District of Columbia (Washington) |
|   | Early history to 1799 |
| .301 | 1800–1865 |
| .302 | 1865–1933 |
| .303 | 1933– |
| .304 |  |
| .4 | *+West Virginia |
| .5 | *+Virginia |
| .6 | *+North Carolina |
| .7 | *+South Carolina |
| .8 | *+Georgia |
| .9 | *Florida |
| .901 | Early history to 1763 |
| .902 | English period, 1763–1783 |
| .903 | Spanish period, 1783–1821 |
| .904 | Territorial period, 1821–1845 |
| .905 | Early statehood period, 1845–1865 |

*Add as instructed under 930–990
†Add historical periods as instructed under 974–975
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dewey Decimal Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>976</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*South central United States</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.01 Early history to 1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.02 1700–1799</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.03 1800–1865</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.04 1865–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.041 1865–1918</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.042 1918–1945</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.043 1945–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.1 *Alabama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.101 Early history to 1701</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.102 French period, 1701–1763</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.103 British period, 1763–1783</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.104 Spanish and territorial periods, 1783–1817</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.105 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1817–1865</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.106 1865–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.106 1 1865–1918</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.106 2 1918–1945</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.106 3 1945–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2 *Mississippi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add to base number 976.2 the numbers following 976.1 in 976.101–976.106, e.g., British period 976.203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3 *Louisiana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.301 Early history to 1718</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.302 French period, 1718–1763</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.303 Spanish period, 1763–1803</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.304 French and territorial periods, 1803–1812</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.305 Early statehood period, 1812–1865</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.306 1865–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.306 1 1865–1918</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Add as instructed under 930–990
General history of North America

.4  *Texas

.401  Early history to 1680
.402  Spanish and French periods, 1680–1821
.403  Mexican period, 1821–1836
.404  Period of the Republic, 1836–1846
.405  Early statehood period, 1846–1865
.406  1865–
.406 1  1865–1918
.406 2  1918–1945
.406 3  1945–

.6  *Oklahoma

.601  Early history to 1682
.602  French and Spanish periods, 1682–1803
.603  Period of Indian Territory, 1803–1866
.604  Territorial and early statehood periods, 1866–1907
.605  1907–
.605 2  1907–1945
.605 3  1945–

.7  *Arkansas

.701  Early history to 1686
.702  French and Spanish periods, 1686–1803
.703  Preterritorial and territorial periods, 1803–1836
.704  Early statehood period, 1836–1865
.705  1865–
.705 1  1865–1918
.705 2  1918–1945
.705 3  1945–

.8  *Tennessee

.801  Early history to 1682
.802  French, Spanish, English periods, 1682–1769

*Add as instructed under 930–990
.901 Early history to 1736
.902 1736–1792
    Including periods of French, British, Virginian control; Transylvania Colony
.903 Early statehood period, 1792–1865
.904 1865–
.904 1 1865–1918
.904 2 1918–1945
.904 3 1945–

977 *North central United States

.01 Early history to 1787
.02 1787–1865
.03 1865–
.031 1865–1918
.032 1918–1945
.033 1945–

.1 *Ohio

.101 Early history to 1763
.102 British and early United States periods, 1763–1787
.103 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1787–1865
.104 1865–
.104 1 1865–1918
.104 2 1918–1945
.104 3 1945–

*Add as instructed under 930–990
**Indiana**
Add to base number 977.2 the numbers following 977.1 in 977.101–977.104, e.g., territorial period 977.203

**Illinois**
Add to base number 977.3 the numbers following 977.1 in 977.101–977.104, e.g., territorial period 977.303

**Michigan**
Add to base number 977.4 the numbers following 977.1 in 977.101–977.104, e.g., territorial period 977.403

**Wisconsin**
Add to base number 977.5 the numbers following 977.1 in 977.101–977.104, e.g., territorial period 977.503

**Minnesota**

- .601 Early history to 1660
- .602 French period, 1660–1783
- .603 Preterritorial period, 1783–1849
- .604 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1849–1900
  - .605 1900–
  - .605 2 1900–1918
  - .605 3 1918–1945
  - .605 3 1945–

**Iowa**

- .701 Early history to 1838
- .702 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1838–1899
  - .703 1900–
  - .703 1 1900–1918
  - .703 2 1918–1945
  - .703 3 1945–

**Missouri**

- .801 Early history to 1750
- .802 French and Spanish periods, 1750–1803
- .803 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1803–1899
  - .804 1900–
  - .804 1 1900–1918

*Add as instructed under 930–990*
978  *Western United States

01 Early history to 1799
02 1800–1899
03 1900–
031 1900–1918
032 1918–1945
033 1945–

1  *Kansas

101 Early history to 1803
102 Territorial period, 1803–1861
103 Statehood period, 1861–
103.1 1861–1918
103.2 1918–1945
103.3 1945–

2  *Nebraska

201 Early history to 1854
202 Territorial period, 1854–1867
203 Statehood period, 1867–
203.1 1867–1918
203.2 1918–1945
203.3 1945–

3  *South Dakota

301 Early history to 1861
302 Territorial period, 1861–1889
303 Statehood period, 1889–
303.1 1889–1918
303.2 1918–1945
303.3 1945–

4  *North Dakota

Add to base number 978.4 the numbers following 978.3 in 978.301–978.303, e.g., territorial period 978.402

*Add as instructed under 930–990
*.6 *Montana
.601 Early history to 1864
.602 Territorial period, 1864–1889
.603 Statehood period, 1889–
.603 1 1889–1918
.603 2 1918–1945
.603 3 1945–

*.7 *Wyoming
.701 Early history to 1868
.702 Territorial period, 1868–1890
.703 Statehood period, 1890–
.703 1 1890–1918
.703 2 1918–1945
.703 3 1945–

*.8 *Colorado
.801 Early history to 1803
.802 Acquisition and territorial periods, 1803–1876
.803 Statehood period, 1876–
.803 1 1876–1918
.803 2 1918–1945
.803 3 1945–

*.9 *New Mexico
.901 Early history to 1598
.902 Spanish period, 1598–1821
.903 Mexican period, 1821–1848
.904 Territorial period, 1848–1912
.905 Statehood period, 1912–
.905 2 1912–1945
.905 3 1945–

*Add as instructed under 930–990
979 *Great Basin and Pacific Slope region of United States  Pacific Coast states

Add to base number 979 the numbers following 978 in 978.01-978.03, e.g.,
1900-  979.03

.1 *Arizona

Add to base number 979.1 the numbers following 978.9 in 978.901-978.905,
e.g., territorial period 979.104

.2 *Utah

.201 Early history to 1848
.202 Territorial period, 1848-1896
.203 Statehood period, 1896-
  .203 1 1896-1918
  .203 2 1918-1945
  .203 3 1945-

.3 *Nevada

.301 Early history to 1861
.302 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1861-1899
.303 1900-
  .303 1 1900-1918
  .303 2 1918-1945
  .303 3 1945-

.4 *California

.401 Early history to 1769
.402 Spanish period, 1769-1822
.403 Mexican period, 1822-1848
.404 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1848-1899
.405 1900-
  .405 1 1900-1918
  .405 2 1918-1945
  .405 3 1945-

*Add as instructed under 930-990
### Oregon
- Early history to 1778
- Spanish and British periods, 1778–1819
- Preterritorial and territorial periods, 1819–1859
- Statehood period, 1859–
  - 1859–1918
  - 1918–1945
  - 1945–

### Idaho
- Early history to 1863
- Territorial period, 1863–1890
- Statehood period, 1890–
  - 1890–1918
  - 1918–1945
  - 1945–

### Washington
- Early history to 1818
- British and preterritorial periods, 1818–1853
- Territorial period, 1853–1889
- Statehood period, 1889–
  - 1889–1918
  - 1918–1945
  - 1945–

### Alaska
- Early history to 1799
- Russian period, 1799–1867
- Preterritorial period, 1867–1912
- Territorial period, 1912–1959
- Statehood period, 1959–

*Add as instructed under 930–990*
980 General history of South America

Class here Latin America

For Middle America, see 972

SUMMARY

980.001-.009 Standard subdivisions
.01-.03 Historical periods

981 Brazil
982 Argentina
983 Chile
984 Bolivia
985 Peru
986 Colombia and Ecuador
987 Venezuela
988 Guiana
989 Paraguay and Uruguay

.001-.003 Standard subdivisions

.004 Racial, ethnic, national groups

Add to base number 980.004 notation 03–99 from Table 5, e.g., general history and civilization of South American native peoples in South America 980.00498

(Option: Class South American native peoples in South America in 980.1, specific native peoples in 980.3)

Specific native peoples in a specific place relocated to the place in 981–989 with use of subdivision 00498 from table under 930–990, e.g., the Arua in Pará state 981.15004984

Class prehispanic history and civilization of South American native peoples in a specific place with the place, without using notation 00498, e.g., Incas before 1519 985.01

.005-.009 Standard subdivisions

As modified under 930–990

> 980.01–980.03 Historical periods

Class comprehensive works in 980

.01 Early history to 1806

.012 Prehispanic period to 1498

.013 Period of European discovery, exploration, colonization, 1498–1806

.02 Period of struggles for independence, 1806–1830

.03 1830–1999

.031 1830–1899

Class here 19th century

Class 1801–1806 in 980.013, 1806–1830 in 980.02

.032 1900–1918
.033 1918–1949
    Class here 20th century
    Class a specific part of 20th century not provided for here with the part,
    e.g., 1950–1959 980.035

.035 1950–1959

.036 1960–1969

.037 1970–1979

.038 1980–1989

.039 1990–1999

(1) **South American native peoples (Indians)**
    (Optional number; prefer 980.00498)
    Class special topics in 980.3–980.5

(3) **Specific native peoples**
    (Optional number; prefer 981–989 with use of subdivision 00498 from table
    under 930–990, e.g., the Arua in Pará state 981.15004984)
    Arrange alphabetically by name of people
    Class government relations with specific native peoples in 980.5

(4) **Native peoples in specific places in South America**
    (Optional number; prefer 981–989 with use of subdivision 00498 from table
    under 930–990, e.g., native peoples in Brazil 981.00498)
    Add to base number 980.4 the numbers following —8 in notation 81–89 from
    Table 2, e.g., native peoples in Brazil 980.41
    Class government relations in specific places in 980.5, specific native peoples in
    specific places in 980.3

(5) **Government relations with native South Americans**
    (Optional number; prefer 323.1198 for comprehensive works; a specific subject
    with the subject, e.g., conquest of Incas by Pizarro 985.02, relation to state in
    Chile 323.1198083)

> **981–989 Countries and localities**

Class a specific native people in a specific place [formerly 980.00498] with the
place in 981–989 with use of subdivision 00498 from table under 930–990,
e.g., the Arua in Pará state 981.15004984
    (Option: Class South American native peoples in specific places in South
    America in 980.4)

Class comprehensive works in 980
981 *Brazil

.01 Early history to 1533
.012 Prehispanic period to 1500
.013 Period of European explorations, 1500–1533
.02 Period of hereditary captaincies, 1533–1549
.03 Colonial period, 1549–1822
.04 Period of Empire, 1822–1889

For Paraguayan War, see 989.205

.05 Period of First Republic, 1889–1930
.06 Period of Second Republic, 1930–

Class here 20th century
Class 1901–1930 in 981.05

.061 Period of Getúlio Vargas, 1930–1954

Including administrations of José Finol Linhares and Eurico Gaspar Dutra, 1945–1951

.062 1954–1967

Contains administrations of João Café Filho, Carlos Coimbra da Luz, Nereu Ramos, Juscelino Kubitschek, Jânio Quadros, João Belchior Marques Goulart, Humberto de Alencar Castelo Branco

.063 1967–

Contains administrations of Artur da Costa e Silva, Emílio Garrastazu Médici, Ernesto Geisel, João Baptist de Oliveira Figueiredo

982 *Argentina

.01 Prehispanic period to 1516
.02 Period of European discovery, conquest, colonization, 1516–1810
.022 Period of European discovery and conquest, 1516–1580
.023 Colonial period, 1580–1810

For period of viceroyalty of La Plata, 1776–1810, see 982.024

.024 Period of viceroyalty of La Plata, 1776–1810
.03 Period of struggle for independence, 1810–1829
.04 1829–1861

Class here 19th century
Class 1801–1810 in 982.024, 1810–1829 in 982.03, 1861–1900 in 982.05

.05 1861–1910

For Paraguayan War, see 989.205

*Add as instructed under 930–990
| .06 | 1910-             |
| .061 | 1910–1946       |
| .062 | First administration of Juan Domingo Perón, 1946–1955 |
| .063 | 1955–1973       |
| .064 | 1973-            |
|      | Including second administration of Juan Domingo Perón, 1973–1974; administration of Isabel Perón, 1974–1976 |

**983  *Chile**

| .01 | Prehispanic period to 1535 |
| .02 | Period of European discovery and conquest, 1535–1560 |
| .03 | Colonial period, 1560–1810 |
| .04 | Period of early republics, 1810–1861 |
|      | Class here 19th century |
|      | Class a specific part of 19th century not provided for here with the part, e.g., 1879–1883 in 983.061 |
|      | For period of autocratic republic, 1830–1861, see 983.05 |
| .05 | Period of autocratic republic, 1830–1861 |
| .06 | Period of later republics, 1861– |
| .061 | Period of liberal republic, 1861–1891 |
|      | Including War of the Pacific, 1879–1883 |
|      | (Option: Class War of the Pacific in 984.045) |
| .062 | Revolution of 1891 |
| .063 | Period of parliamentary republic, 1891–1925 |
| .064 | 1925–1973 |
|      | Class here 20th century |
|      | Class 1901–1925 in 983.063, 1973– in 983.065 |
| .064 1 | 1925–1932 |
| .064 2 | 1932–1946 |
| .064 3 | 1946–1958 |
| .064 4 | Administration of Jorge Alessandrí Rodriguez, 1958–1964 |
| .064 5 | Administration of Eduardo Frei Montalva, 1964–1970 |
| .064 6 | Administration of Salvador Allende Gossens, 1970–1973 |
| [.064 7] | Period of military rule, 1973– |
|      | Relocated to 983.065 |

*Add as instructed under 930–990*
.065 Period of military rule, 1973— [formerly 983.0647]

984 *Bolivia

.01 Prehispanic period to 1532
   Including period of Inca rule
.02 Period of European discovery and conquest, 1532–1559
.03 Colonial period, 1559–1809
.04 1809–1899
.041 Period of struggle for independence, 1809–1825
.042 Period of formation of the Republic, 1825–1831
.044 Administration of Andrés Santa Cruz, 1831–1839
   Including Peru-Bolivian Confederation, 1836–1839
.045 1839–1883
   (Option: Class here War of the Pacific; prefer 983.061)
.046 Period of conservative republic, 1883–1899
.05 1899–
.051 1899–1952
   (Option: Class here Chaco War; prefer 989.2071)
.052 1952–
   Including revolution of 1952

985 *Peru

.01 Prehispanic period to 1519
   Including Incan rule
.02 Period of European discovery and conquest, 1519–1555
   (Option: Class conquest in 980.5)
.03 Colonial period, 1555–1808
.04 Period of struggle for independence, 1808–1824
.05 1824–1867
   Class here 19th century
   Including Peru-Bolivian Confederation, 1836–1839
   Class a specific part of 19th century not provided for here with the part, e.g.,
   1867–1883 985.061
.06 1867–

*Add as instructed under 930–990
985  General history of South America  985

.061 1867–1883
   For War of the Pacific, see 983.061

.062 Period of reconstruction, 1883–1895

.063 1895–

.063 1 1895–1933

.063 2 1933–1968

.063 3 1968–

986  *Colombia and Ecuador

.1 *Colombia

.101 Early history to 1550

.102 Colonial period, 1550–1810
   Including periods as Viceroyalty of New Granada, 1718–1724 and
   1740–1810
   Class here comprehensive works on Viceroyalty of New Granada
   For Panama as part of Viceroyalty of New Granada, see 972.8702;
   Ecuador as part of Viceroyalty of New Granada, 986.602;
   Venezuela as part of Viceroyalty of New Granada, 987.03

.103 Period of struggle for independence, 1810–1819

.104 Period of Gran Colombia, 1819–1830
   Class here comprehensive works on Gran Colombia
   For Panama as a part of Gran Colombia, see 972.8703; Ecuador as
   part of Gran Colombia, 986.604; Venezuela as part of Gran
   Colombia, 987.05

.105 1830–1863

.105 2 Period of Republic of New Granada, 1830–1858

.105 3 Period of Granadine Confederation, 1858–1863

.106 Period of later republics, 1863–

.106 1 Period of United States of Colombia, 1863–1886

.106 2 Period of Republic of Colombia, 1886–
   For 1930– , see 986.1063

.106 3 1930–
   Class here 20th century
   Class 1901–1930 in 986.1062

.106 31 Period of liberal domination, 1930–1946

.106 32 1946–

*Add as instructed under 930–990

857
.6 *Ecuador

.601 Early history to 1562
.
.602 Colonial period, 1562–1810
    Including period as part of Viceroyalty of New Granada, 1740–1810
.
.603 Period of struggle for independence, 1810–1822
.
.604 Period as part of Gran Colombia, 1822–1830
    Class here Quito Presidency
.
.605 1830–1859
    Including period of formation of Republic
.
.606 1860–1895
.
.607 1896–
.
.607 1 1896–1925
.
.607 2 1925–1948
.
.607 3 1948–1960
.
.607 4 1960–

987 *Venezuela

.01 Prehispanic period to 1498
.
.02 Period of discovery and conquest, 1498–1528
.
.03 Colonial period, 1528–1810
    Including 1806–1810 [formerly 987.04], period as part of Viceroyalty, 1740–1810
.
.04 Period of struggle for independence, 1810–1821
    Including 1819–1821 [formerly 987.05]
    1806–1810 relocated to 987.03
.
.05 Period as part of Gran Colombia, 1821–1830
    1819–1821 relocated to 987.04
.
.06 Period of Republic, 1830–
.
.061 1830–1864
.
.062 1864–1899
    Class here period of Antonio Guzmán Blanco, 1870–1888
.
.063 1899–
.
.063 1 1899–1935
.
.063 12 Period of Cipriano Castro, 1899–1908

*Add as instructed under 930–990
| .063 13 | Period of Juan Vicente Gómez, 1908–1935 |
| .063 2  | 1935–1959                                 |
| .063 3  | 1959–                                      |

988  *Guiana

| .01  | Early history to 1815                  |
| .02  | 1815–1945                              |
| .03  | 1945–                                   |

Class here 20th century

Class 1901–1945 in 988.02

| .1   | *Guyana                                 |
| .2   | *French Guiana (Guyane)                |
| .3   | *Surinam                                |

989  Paraguay and Uruguay

| .2   | *Paraguay                               |
| .201 | Prehispanic period to 1524              |
| .202 | Period of European discovery, exploration, conquest, 1524–1537 |
| .203 | Colonial period, 1537–1811              |
| .204 | Period of struggle for independence, 1811–1814 |
| .205 | Period of dictatorship, 1814–1870        |
|      | Including Paraguayan War (War of the Triple Alliance), 1865–1870 |
| .206 | 1870–1902                               |
| .207 | 1902–                                   |
| .207 1 | 1902–1940                                |
|      | Including Chaco War, 1933–1935          |
|      | (Option: Class Chaco War in 984.051)    |
| .207 2 | 1940–1958                                |
| .207 3 | 1958–                                   |

| .5   | *Uruguay                                |
| .501 | Prehispanic period to 1516              |
| .502 | Period of European discovery and conquest, 1516–1724 |
| .503 | Colonial period, 1724–1811              |
| .504 | Period of struggle for independence, 1811–1830 |
|      | Including 1825–1830 [formerly 989.505]  |

*Add as instructed under 930–990
0.505 Period of Republic, 1830–
  1825–1830 relocated to 989.504

  For 1886–, see 989.506; Paraguayan War, 989.205

[0.505 5] 1830–1886
  Number discontinued; class in 989.505

0.506 1886–
  0.506 1 1886–1917
  0.506 2 1917–1933
  0.506 3 1933–1951
  0.506 4 1951–1966
  0.506 5 1966–

990 General history of other parts of world, of
extraterrestrial worlds  Pacific Ocean islands

  0.01–0.09 Standard subdivisions of Pacific Ocean islands
    As modified under 930–990

[991] [Unassigned]
  Most recently used in Edition 17

[992] [Unassigned]
  Most recently used in Edition 17

993 *New Zealand

  993.01–993.03 Historical periods [formerly 993.101–993.103]
    Class comprehensive works in 993

    0.01 Early history to 1840
      Including history of Maoris before European settlement, of European settlers

    0.02 Colonial period, 1840–1908

    0.021 Period as a Crown colony, 1840–1853
      Including Maori Wars of 1843–1847

    0.022 Period of provincial governments, 1853–1876
      Class here comprehensive works on Maori Wars

        For Maori Wars of 1843–1847, see 993.021

    0.023 Period of centralized government, 1876–1908

*Add as instructed under 930–990
### 993

**History of other areas**

| .03 | Dominion period, 1908– |
| .031 | 1908–1918 |
| .032 | 1918–1945 |
| .035 | 1945–1969 |
| .037 | 1970– |

#### .1 Specific islands

Use of this number for comprehensive works on New Zealand discontinued; class in 993

** [.101–.103] Historical periods**

Relocated to 993.01–993.03

** [.2–.7] Melanesia**

Relocated to 995

### 994 *Australia*

| .01 | Early history to 1788 |
| .02 | Period of settlement and growth, 1788–1851 |
| .03 | Period of development of self government, 1851–1901 |
| .031 | Period of gold discovery and consolidation, 1851–1891 |
| .032 | 1891–1901 |
| .04 | Period of Commonwealth, 1901– |

*For 1945–1966, see 994.05; 1966– *, 994.06

| .041 | 1901–1922 |
| .042 | 1922–1945 |

Including first prime ministership of Robert Gordon Menzies, 1939–1941

| .05 | 1945–1966 |

Class here second prime ministership of Robert Gordon Menzies, 1949–1966

| .06 | 1966– |
| .061 | 1966–1972 |
| .062 | 1972–1975 |
| .063 | 1976– |

*Add as instructed under 930–990*
995  †Melanesia [formerly also 993.2–993.7]  New Guinea

Class here Oceania
Class Polynesia in 996

> 995.1–995.7 New Guinea
Class comprehensive works in 995

.1  *Irian Jaya
Add to base number 995.1 the numbers following 959.8 in 959.801–959.8103, e.g., period of administration of Sukarno 995.1035

.3  *Papua New Guinea  New Guinea region
For Papuan region, see 995.4; Highlands region, 995.6; Momase region, 995.7; Bismarck Archipelago, 995.8; North Solomons Province, 995.92

.301 Early history to 1884
.302 1884–1942
.302 1 1884–1921
Class here German New Guinea
.302 2 1921–1942
Class here period as Territory of New Guinea, 1921–1949
Class 1942–1945 in 995.303, 1945–1949 in 995.304
.303 Period of World War II, 1942–1945
.304 1945–1975
Class here Territory of Papua and New Guinea, 1949–1975
.305 Period of independence, 1975–

.4  *Papuan region
.401 Early history to 1884
.402 1884–1942
.402 1 Period as British New Guinea, 1884–1906
.402 2 1906–1942
Class here period as Territory of Papua, 1906–1949
Class 1942–1945 in 995.403, 1945–1949 in 995.404
.403 Period of World War II, 1942–1945

*Add as instructed under 930–990
†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods
History of other areas

.404 1945–1975
Class here Papuan region as a part of Territory of Papua and New Guinea, 1949–1975

.405 Period of independence, 1975–

.6 *Highlands region
Add to base number 995.6 the numbers following 995.3 in 995.301–995.305, e.g., period of World War II 995.603

.7 *Momase (Northern coastal) region
Add to base number 995.7 the numbers following 995.3 in 995.301–995.305, e.g., period of World War II 995.703

.8 *Bismarck Archipelago
Add to base number 995.8 the numbers following 995.3 in 995.301–995.305, e.g., period of World War II 995.803

.9 †Other parts of Melanesia

.92 *North Solomons Province
Add to base number 995.92 the numbers following 995.3 in 995.301–995.305, e.g., period of World War II 995.9203

.93 †Solomon Islands

.95 †Vanuatu

.97 †New Caledonia

996 Other parts of Pacific Polynesia

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Polynesia
As modified under 930–990

.1 †Southwest central Pacific, and isolated islands of southeast Pacific

.11 †Fiji

.12 †Tonga (Friendly Islands)

.13 †American Samoa

.14 †Western Samoa

.15 †Tokelau (Union Islands)

.18 †Isolated islands of southeast Pacific

.2 †South central Pacific

.3 †Southeast central Pacific
For isolated islands of southeast Pacific, see 996.18

.4 †Line Islands
*Add as instructed under 930–990
†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods
.5 +West central Pacific (Micronesia) Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands
.6 +Federated States of Micronesia and Republic of Belau (Palau)
.7 +Mariana Islands
.8 +Islands of eastern Micronesia
   .81 +Kiribati
   .82 +Tuvalu
   .83 +Marshall Islands
   .85 +Nauru (Pleasant Island)
.9 North central Pacific Hawaii
   .900 01-.900 09 Standard subdivisions of north central Pacific
       As modified under 930-990
   .900 1-.900 9 Standard subdivisions of Hawaii
       As modified under 930-990

> 996.902-996.904 Historical periods of Hawaii
   Class comprehensive works in 996.9
   .902 Early history to 1898
   .902 7 Period of kingdom, 1810-1893
   .902 8 Period of republic, 1893-1898
   .903 Territorial period, 1898-1959
   .904 Statehood period, 1959-
   .99 +Outlying islands

997 +Atlantic Ocean islands
   Class each specific island or group of islands not provided for here with the island or group of islands, e.g., Azores 946.99
   .1 +Falklands and Bouvet
   .3 +Saint Helena and dependencies

998 +Arctic islands and Antartica
   .2 +Greenland

999 Extraterrestrial worlds
   Class here speculation on and the search for intelligent life on other worlds
   Do not add from table under 930-990
   +Add as instructed under 930-990; however, do not add historical periods
The 20th edition of the Dewey Decimal Classification was designed by Lisa Hanifan of Albany, New York. Edition 20 is the first edition to be generated from an online database. Database design, technical support, and programming for this edition were provided by John J. Finni and Cora M. Arsenault from Inforonics, Inc., of Littleton, Massachusetts. Composition was done in Times Roman and Helvetica on a Linotronic L100 under the supervision of Inforonics, Inc. The book was printed and bound by Hamilton Printing Company of Rensselaer, New York.